



CONFLUENCE

DOCUMENTATION

0.1 Getting Started	6
0.0.1 Dashboard	7
0.0.2 Page Layout in View Mode	8
0.0.3 Confluence Glossary	10
0.0.4 Confluence Icons	13
0.0.5 Keyboard Shortcuts	15
0.1 Creating Content	18
0.0.1 Using the Editor	18
0.0.1.1 Working with Text Effects	21
0.0.1.2 Working with Links	23
0.0.1.2.1 Linking to Pages	23
0.0.1.2.2 Linking to Images	25
0.0.1.2.3 Linking from an Image	27
0.0.1.2.4 Linking to Attachments	28
0.0.1.2.5 Linking to Blog Posts	29
0.0.1.2.6 Linking to Personal Spaces and User Profiles	30
0.0.1.2.7 Working with Anchors	30
0.0.1.2.8 Using a Link to Create a New Email Message	31
0.0.1.2.9 Linking to Confluence Pages from Outside Confluence	32
0.0.1.2.10 Trackback	32
0.0.1.3 Working with Tables	32
0.0.1.4 Using Images	33
0.0.1.4.1 Displaying Images	34
0.0.1.4.2 Image File Formats	37
0.0.1.5 Using Autocomplete	37
0.0.1.6 Using Special Characters	41
0.0.1.6.1 Inserting Emoticons and Icons	41
0.0.1.6.2 Inserting Symbols	42
0.0.1.7 Working with the Macro Browser	43
0.0.1.7.1 Inserting JIRA Issues	46
0.0.1.8 Working with Drafts	48
0.0.1.8.1 Configuring the Time Interval at which Drafts are Saved	49
0.0.1.8.2 Concurrent Editing and Merging Changes	49
0.0.1.8.3 Resuming the Editing of a Draft	50
0.0.1.8.4 Recording Change Comments	51
0.0.2 Creating a Page	52
0.0.3 Adding Blog Posts	54
0.0.4 Working with Templates	55
0.0.4.1 Adding a Template	56
0.0.4.2 Creating a Page using a Template	57
0.0.4.3 Editing a template	58
0.0.4.4 Removing a Template	59
0.0.4.5 Confluence Wiki Markup	59
0.0.4.6 Form Field Markup for Templates	66
0.0.5 Working with the Office Connector	67

0.0.5.1 Office Connector Prerequisites	68
0.0.5.2 Displaying Office Files in Confluence	70
0.0.5.3 Importing an Office Document into Confluence	71
0.0.5.4 Editing an Office Document from Confluence	74
0.0.5.5 Editing an Office Spreadsheet from Confluence	77
0.0.5.6 Editing an Office Presentation from Confluence	80
0.0.5.7 Installing the Firefox Add-On for the Office Connector	83
0.0.6 Importing Content Into Confluence	91
0.0.6.1 Importing Pages from Disk	92
0.1 Sharing Content	92
0.0.1 Network Overview	92
0.0.1.1 Subscribing to a Network RSS Feed	94
0.0.2 Using Mentions	95
0.0.3 E-mailing a Page	96
0.0.4 Exporting Confluence Pages and Spaces to Other Formats	97
0.0.4.1 Exporting Confluence Pages and Spaces to HTML	97
0.0.4.2 Exporting Confluence Pages and Spaces to PDF	98
0.0.4.2.1 Customising Exports to PDF	100
0.0.4.2.2 Creating PDF in Another Language	108
0.0.4.3 Exporting to a Word document	108
0.0.4.4 Exporting Confluence Pages and Spaces to XML	109
0.1 Watching Changes	110
0.0.1 Watching a Page or Blog Post	110
0.0.2 Watching a Space	112
0.0.3 Managing Watchers	114
0.0.4 Subscribing to Email Notifications of Updates to Confluence Content	115
0.0.5 Subscribing to RSS Feeds within Confluence	115
0.0.5.1 Using pre-specified RSS feeds	116
0.0.5.2 Using the RSS Feed Builder	116
0.0.5.3 Working with RSS Feeds	118
0.0.5.3.1 RSS Readers Compatibility	118
0.1 Searching Confluence	119
0.0.1 Text Tokenisation and Filtering	125
0.0.2 Searching the People Directory	126
0.0.3 Confluence Search Syntax	127
0.0.4 Confluence Search Fields	129
0.0.5 Ranking of Search Results	133
0.1 Organising Content	136
0.0.1 Working with Pages	136
0.0.1.1 Moving a Page	136
0.0.1.2 Working with Page Families	138
0.0.1.2.1 Viewing a Page's Family	138
0.0.1.2.2 Setting a Page Family to Alphabetical Order	138
0.0.1.3 Using the Documentation Theme	140
0.0.1.4 Sequential Order of Pages	142
0.0.1.5 Viewing Page Information	142
0.0.1.6 Copying a Page	143
0.0.1.7 Working with Comments	144
0.0.1.7.1 Adding a Comment	145
0.0.1.7.2 Deleting Comments	145
0.0.1.7.3 Editing a Comment	145
0.0.1.7.4 Linking to Comments	146
0.0.1.8 Recently Viewed Content	146
0.0.1.9 Renaming a Page	147
0.0.1.10 Deleting a Page	148
0.0.1.10.1 Purging Deleted Pages	148
0.0.1.10.2 Restoring a Deleted Page	148
0.0.1.11 Page History and Page Comparison Views	149
0.0.1.11.1 Restoring an Older Version of a Page	151
0.0.1.11.2 Viewing an Older Version of a Page	151
0.0.1.12 Using a WebDAV Client to Work with Pages	152
0.0.2 Working with Blog Posts	152
0.0.2.1 Deleting Blog Posts	152
0.0.2.2 Editing Blog Posts	153
0.0.2.3 Viewing Blog Posts	153
0.0.3 Working with Spaces	154
0.0.3.1 Viewing Space Activity	155
0.0.3.2 Viewing All Confluence Spaces	157
0.0.3.3 Administering Spaces	160
0.0.3.4 Deleting a Space	161
0.0.3.5 Setting up a New Global Space	161
0.0.3.6 Setting up your Personal Space	162
0.0.3.7 Browsing a space	165
0.0.3.7.1 Editing Space Details	166
0.0.3.7.2 Managing Orphaned Pages	166
0.0.3.7.3 Managing Undefined Pages	167
0.0.3.7.4 Viewing Hierarchy of Pages within a Space	167
0.0.3.7.5 Viewing Pages Alphabetically	168
0.0.3.7.6 Viewing Recently Updated Content	168
0.0.3.7.7 Viewing Space Details	168

0.0.3.8 Space Backup and Restore	169
0.0.4 Archiving Mail Overview	169
0.0.4.1 Adding a Mail Account	170
0.0.4.2 Deleting Mail	171
0.0.4.3 Fetching Mail	171
0.0.4.4 Importing Mail	172
0.0.4.5 Managing Mail Accounts	173
0.0.4.6 Restoring Mail	173
0.0.4.7 Viewing Mail	174
0.0.5 Working with Labels	175
0.0.5.1 Adding a Global Label	176
0.0.5.2 Adding a Personal Label	177
0.0.5.3 Using Labels to Categorise Spaces	177
0.0.5.4 Navigating Pages by Label	179
0.0.5.5 Removing a Label from a Page	181
0.0.5.6 Using Label Macros to Categorise Wiki Content	181
0.0.5.7 Viewing Global Labels	182
0.0.5.8 Viewing Labelled Pages	183
0.0.5.9 Viewing Personal Labels	184
0.0.5.10 Viewing Popular Labels	185
0.0.6 Working with Favourites	185
0.0.6.1 Adding Favourites	186
0.0.6.2 Removing Favourites	186
0.0.6.3 Viewing Favourites	187
0.0.7 Working with Attachments	188
0.0.7.1 Using Drag-and-Drop in Confluence	189
0.0.7.2 Attaching Files to a Page	191
0.0.7.3 Attachment Versions	192
0.0.7.4 Deleting an Attachment	193
0.0.7.5 Displaying a List of Attachments in a Page	193
0.0.7.6 Downloading Attachments	195
0.0.7.7 Editing Attachment Properties	195
0.0.7.8 Embedding Multimedia Content	196
0.0.7.9 Embedding PowerPoint Presentations in a Page	198
0.0.7.10 Finding an Attachment	199
0.0.7.11 Moving an Attachment	200
0.0.7.11.1 Choose a Page	200
0.0.7.12 Viewing Attachment Details	201
0.1 Customising Confluence	202
0.0.1 Personal Customisations	203
0.0.1.1 User Profile Overview	203
0.0.1.1.1 Changing Password	205
0.0.1.1.2 Editing User Settings	205
0.0.1.1.3 Editing Your User Profile	208
0.0.1.1.4 Email Address Privacy	209
0.0.1.1.5 Updating Email Address	210
0.0.1.1.6 Choosing a Profile Picture	210
0.0.1.1.7 Viewing User Profile	213
0.0.1.1.8 Viewing and Revoking OAuth Access Tokens	214
0.0.1.2 Choosing Your Homepage	216
0.0.1.3 Customising your Personal Dashboard	216
0.0.2 Customising the Look and Feel	217
0.0.2.1 Applying a Theme to a Space	217
0.0.2.1.1 Configuring the Documentation Theme	218
0.0.2.1.2 Configuring the Easy Reader Theme	224
0.0.2.2 Changing a Space's Logo	226
0.0.2.3 Changing the Confluence Browser Icon, aka favicon	227
0.0.2.4 Customising Layouts for a Space	227
0.0.2.5 Editing a Space's Colour Scheme	229
0.0.2.6 Styling Confluence with CSS	230
0.0.2.6.1 Basic Styling Tutorial	232
0.0.2.6.2 Styling Fonts in Confluence	233
0.0.2.6.3 Styling Tabs in Confluence	234
0.0.2.6.4 Using CSS to Customise the Easy Reader Theme	236
0.0.3 Permissions Overview	237
0.0.3.1 Page Restrictions	239
0.0.3.1.1 Setting a Page's Restrictions	241
0.0.3.1.2 Viewing a Page's Restrictions	243
0.0.3.1.3 Viewing Restricted Pages	243
0.0.3.2 Site Administrators and their Permissions	244
0.0.3.2.1 Contacting Confluence Administrators	244
0.0.3.3 Space Administrators and their Permissions	244
0.0.3.4 Space Permissions Overview	245
0.0.3.4.1 Assigning Space Permissions	246
0.0.3.4.2 Revoking Space Permissions	248
0.0.3.4.3 Viewing Space Permissions	248
0.0.3.5 Users and Groups	249
0.0.3.5.1 Searching for Users	250
0.0.4 Working with Confluence Gadgets	253
0.0.4.1 Adding a Confluence Gadget to a JIRA Dashboard	254

0.0.4.2 Configuring Confluence Gadgets for Use in Other Applications	258
0.0.4.3 Confluence Gadgets	260
0.0.4.3.1 Activity Stream Gadget	262
0.0.4.3.2 Confluence News Gadget	262
0.0.4.3.3 Confluence Page Gadget	263
0.0.4.3.4 Confluence Quicknav Gadget	266
0.0.4.4 Adding JIRA Gadgets to a Confluence Page	267
0.0.5 Working with Macros	267
0.0.5.1 Anchor Macro	272
0.0.5.2 Attachments Macro	272
0.0.5.3 Blog Posts Macro	272
0.0.5.4 Change-History Macro	274
0.0.5.5 Chart Macro	274
0.0.5.6 Cheese Macro	282
0.0.5.7 Children Display Macro	283
0.0.5.7.1 Child Page 1	284
0.0.5.7.2 Child Page 2	284
0.0.5.8 Code Block Macro	284
0.0.5.9 Column Macro	286
0.0.5.10 Content by Label Macro	287
0.0.5.11 Content by User Macro	289
0.0.5.12 Contributors Macro	289
0.0.5.13 Contributors Summary Macro	291
0.0.5.14 Create Space Button Macro	294
0.0.5.15 Detailssummary Macro	295
0.0.5.16 Excerpt Include Macro	295
0.0.5.17 Excerpt Macro	296
0.0.5.18 Expand Macro	297
0.0.5.19 Favourite Pages Macro	298
0.0.5.20 Gadget Macro	298
0.0.5.21 Gallery Macro	299
0.0.5.22 Global Reports Macro	301
0.0.5.23 HTML Include Macro	302
0.0.5.24 HTML Macro	302
0.0.5.25 IM Presence Macro	303
0.0.5.26 Include Page Macro	304
0.0.5.26.1 Sample Include Page	304
0.0.5.27 Info Macro	304
0.0.5.28 JIRA Issues Macro	305
0.0.5.29 JIRA Macro	309
0.0.5.30 JIRA Portlet Macro	309
0.0.5.31 JUnit Report Macro	312
0.0.5.32 Labels List Macro	313
0.0.5.33 Livesearch Macro	314
0.0.5.34 Loremipsum Macro	315
0.0.5.35 Metadata Macro	315
0.0.5.36 Multimedia Macro	316
0.0.5.37 Navigation Map Macro	316
0.0.5.38 Network Macro	317
0.0.5.39 Noformat Macro	318
0.0.5.40 Note Macro	319
0.0.5.41 Page Index Macro	319
0.0.5.42 Page Tree Macro	320
0.0.5.42.1 Sample Page Tree	322
0.0.5.42.2 Sample Page Tree 2	322
0.0.5.43 Page Tree Search Macro	322
0.0.5.44 Panel Macro	323
0.0.5.45 Popular Labels Macro	324
0.0.5.46 Profile Picture Macro	324
0.0.5.47 Recently Updated Dashboard Macro	325
0.0.5.48 Recently Updated Macro	326
0.0.5.49 Recently Used Labels Macro	328
0.0.5.50 Related Labels Macro	329
0.0.5.51 RSS Feed Macro	329
0.0.5.52 Search Results Macro	331
0.0.5.53 Section Macro	332
0.0.5.54 Space Details Macro	333
0.0.5.55 Space Jump Macro	334
0.0.5.56 Spaces List Macro	335
0.0.5.57 Status Macro	335
0.0.5.58 Table of Contents Macro	336
0.0.5.59 Table of Content Zone Macro	339
0.0.5.60 Tasklist Macro	341
0.0.5.61 Tip Macro	344
0.0.5.62 User List Macro	345
0.0.5.63 User Profile Macro	345
0.0.5.64 User Status List Macro	346
0.0.5.65 View File Macro	347
0.0.5.66 Warning Macro	349
0.0.5.67 Widget Connector Macro	350

0.0.5.67.1 Widget Connector Examples	356
0.0.6 Guides to Specific Uses of Confluence	359
0.0.6.1 Developing Technical Documentation on Confluence Wiki	359
0.0.6.1.1 Creating your Technical Documentation Space	360
0.0.6.1.2 Using Templates in Technical Documentation	367
0.0.6.1.3 Re-using Content in Technical Documentation	368
0.0.6.1.4 Managing the Life Cycle of your Technical Documentation	372
0.0.6.1.5 Providing PDF Versions of your Technical Documentation	377
0.0.6.1.6 Exporting and Printing Technical Documentation	380
0.0.6.1.7 Essential Confluence Features for Technical Documentation	383
0.0.6.1.8 Confluence Plugins for Technical Documentation	392
0.0.6.1.9 Further Reading about Developing Technical Documentation on Confluence	398
0.0.6.2 Developing a Knowledge Base on Confluence Wiki	398
0.0.6.2.1 Creating Your Knowledge Base Space	399
0.0.6.2.2 Using Templates and Formatting Macros in a Knowledge Base	411
0.0.6.2.3 Proactive Communications in a Knowledge Base	413
0.0.6.2.4 Additional Plugins for a Knowledge Base	414
0.0.6.3 Developing an Intranet on Confluence Wiki	414

Confluence User's Guide

Welcome

About

The **Confluence User's Guide** begins with an overview of the key features of [Confluence](#), and goes on to describe the use of Confluence as a knowledge management tool and a collaborative environment. If you still have a question that has not been answered, [please ask us](#).

This guide assumes that your Confluence site uses the default theme. If your site's theme has been customised, menu items, and the look and feel, may appear differently from those in this guide.

For more documentation please visit [Confluence Documentation Home](#).

Download



You can [download the Confluence documentation](#) in PDF, HTML or XML formats.

Confluence User's Guide

Getting Started

Creating Content

Sharing Content

Watching Changes

Searching Confluence

Organising Content

Customising Confluence

Getting Started

Getting to know Confluence:

- [The Dashboard](#)
- [Page Layout](#)
- [Spaces in Confluence](#)
- [Other Users](#)

Personalising Confluence:

- [Change your password](#)
- [Update your User Profile](#)
- [Create your personal space](#)
- [Choose the homepage you see when you log in](#)
- [Customise the dashboard for yourself](#)
- [Get notifications about changes](#)

Things to do:
Add a page Add a blog post Add a space

Helpful Stuff:
Confluence Icons Keyboard Shortcuts Confluence Glossary

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Dashboard

The dashboard is the front page of a Confluence site. It provides an overview of the site, access to all spaces to which you have 'view' permission, and displays a list of the most recently updated content within them.

You can go to the dashboard from anywhere in your site by clicking **Dashboard** at the top-left of the page.

The dashboard is divided into three sections:

- **Welcome message** — the welcome message for the site. Confluence Administrators can [customise this message](#) using the [Administration Console](#).
- **Spaces, Pages, Network** — tabs that display your [favourite](#) content and people.
 - **Spaces** displays all the [spaces](#) to which you have access in the Confluence site, as well as the spaces you have marked as favourites.
 - **Pages** displays the [pages](#) you have marked as favourites.
 - **Network** displays the [users](#) that you are following (or who are following you).
- **Recent activity** — tabs that display recently updated content in **All** spaces, your **Favourite** spaces, or by space **Categories**.
 - **All Updates** displays updates from all spaces that you have permission to view.
 - **Favourite Spaces** displays updates from your [favourite](#) spaces.
 - **Network** displays the [users](#) that you are following (or who are following you).
 - **Space Categories** displays updates from spaces in the [category](#) you have selected from the list.

The screenshot shows the Confluence 4.0 Dashboard. At the top, there's a navigation bar with 'Dashboard', 'Browse', 'Edwin Dawson', and a search bar. Below this, the main content area is divided into two columns. The left column features a 'Dashboard' section with a 'Sea Dog' space, which includes a Dalmatian dog image. Below this, there's a 'Global Spaces' section listing 'Confluence 4.0 Doc Theme Sandbox' and 'Confluence 4.0 Sandbox'. The right column displays a list of updates from various users, including Fabian Kraemer, Stefan Saasen, Anatoli Kazatchkov, Ryan Ackley, Bill Arconati, John Masson, and David Taylor. Each update entry includes a user profile picture, name, and a list of recent changes or attachments.

Notes

- The dashboard is the only place in Confluence where you can [add a new space](#) to the site. Use **Add Space** on the **Spaces** tab.
- By default, the dashboard is the home page for the Confluence site. However, you can set any other page in Confluence as the home page using the [Space Admin](#) tab or your [user profile](#) settings.
- Administrators can [customise the global dashboard](#) that all users see.
- Users can [customise the dashboard](#) for themselves.
- There are quick [Add Page](#) and [Add Blog Post](#) buttons at the top right of the dashboard.
- Clicking **view change** beside a page name displays a 'comparison view' against the content's previous version.
- The [Feed Builder](#) link is now in the Browse menu.
- The [People Directory](#) link is now in the Browse menu.

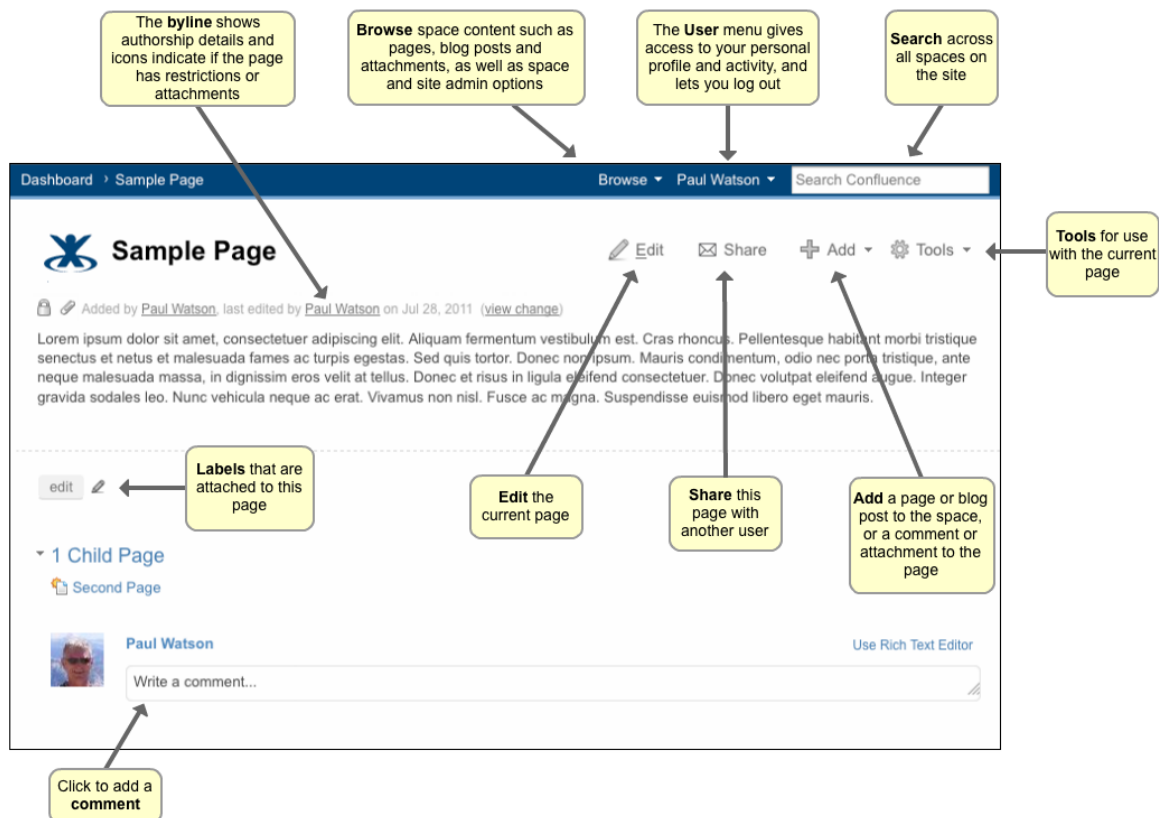
Related Topics

[Confluence Glossary](#)
[Confluence Icons](#)
[Working with Spaces](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Page Layout in View Mode

The image below shows the menus and other controls on a typical Confluence page.



Menu or option	Explanation
Browse	Gives access to wiki content such as pages, blog posts, etc, and allows you to browse the People Directory. If you are an administrator, the space and site administration options appear here too.
User	After you have logged in, your name will appear at top right of the screen. This is the 'User' menu, and allows you to log out, access your user profile or view your editing history, personal labels and page watches. You can also retrieve drafts of pages you are editing.
Search	Type into this box and press 'Enter' to search.
Edit	Edit the current page. (Or press 'E'.)
Share	Email a link to the current page to another Confluence user.
Add	Add things to a page, or add new a new page or blog post to the space.
Tools	Miscellaneous actions relating to the page.
Byline	Shows who originally authored, and who most recently edited, the page.
Byline Icons	A small padlock icon indicates page restrictions. A paperclip icon indicates that the page has attachments. Both icons are clickable, leading to the 'Page Information' and 'Attachments' pages, respectively.
Labels	Shows labels (or tags) attached to the current page. (Or press 'L'.)
Add a Comment	Click in the text box to begin writing a comment. (Or press 'M'.)

Related Topics

[Using the Editor](#)

[Overview of Spaces](#)
[Overview of Pages](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Confluence Glossary

Administration Console

The Administration Console is the interface for the global administration of Confluence.

Only [administrators](#) can access the Administration Console.

Administrators

The Confluence permission scheme allows the following main levels of administrator permissions:

- System Administrator – full administrative access to Confluence.
- Confluence Administrator – access to most of the Confluence administrative functions, but excluding those which could compromise the security of the Confluence system.

Please refer to the [overview of global permissions](#) for details of the functions which each level of administrator can perform.

CamelCase

CamelCase is a form of markup commonly used in wikis where words compounded together LikeThis without spaces are used to create links.

In Confluence, Camelcasing can be turned on from the Administration Console.

Change Comment

A change comment is a short description entered during the edit of a page to record the changes being made in the edit.

Child Pages

Creating child pages is a means of hierarchically organising content in Confluence. A child page can only have one parent page.

Comments

A comment may be a remark, question, or any other additional information you wish to add to a page pertaining to the topic the page covers. You can comment on any page or news item in Confluence.

Confluence Administrators

The Confluence permission scheme allows the following main levels of administrator permissions:

- System Administrator – full administrative access to Confluence.
- Confluence Administrator – access to most of the Confluence administrative functions, but excluding those which could compromise the security of the Confluence system.

Please refer to the [overview of global permissions](#) for details of the functions which each level of administrator can perform.

Custom Decorators

Decorator files are used to define layouts in Confluence. They are vmd files and require knowledge of the language, [Velocity](#), to edit.

Dashboard

The dashboard is the front page of a Confluence site. It provides an overview of the site, access to all spaces, and displays a list of the most recently updated content within them.

Form Field Markup

Form field markup is a specialised markup for creating form fields and is used when creating page templates.

Global Administrators

A global administrator is the same as a [system administrator](#).

Global Spaces

Global spaces contain content on any theme or topic of your choice.

For more information about *global spaces* and *personal spaces*, see [Working with Spaces](#).

Hover Profile

The hover profile is the pop-up you see when the mouse pointer pauses over a Confluence user's name. Use the hover profile to follow the user, visit their profile, and more.

JIRA

JIRA is Atlassian's award winning Issue tracking and project management application.

Visit Atlassian's website to learn [more about JIRA](#).

Labels

Labels are user-defined tag words assigned to pages to categorise content in Confluence.

Macros

A macro is a command wrapped inside curly braces {...} used to perform programmatic functions and generate more complex content structures in Confluence.

Blog Posts

A blog post may be a journal entry, status report or any other timely information pertaining to a space.

Notifications

A notification is an email message sent to you updating you of changes to pages and spaces you choose to 'watch'.

Orphaned Pages

An orphaned page is a page without any incoming links.

Pages

Pages are the primary means of storing information in Confluence and are the building blocks of spaces.

Parent Page

A parent page is a page that has one or more child pages. It may itself be a child of another page.

People Directory

The [People Directory](#) contains a list of all users in your Confluence site. Each user's name links to their [personal space](#).

Permalink

A permalink is the url used to link to specific content items like comments.

Personal Spaces

Personal spaces belong to particular users, and rather than being listed on the [Dashboard](#), are available from the [People Directory](#).

For more information about *global spaces* and *personal spaces*, see [Working with Spaces](#).

RSS Feeds

An RSS feed is a format for delivering summaries of regularly changing web content. RSS is read by RSS newsreader programs.

You will need an RSS reader to subscribe to feeds within Confluence.

Confluence acts as an RSS reader for feeds from sites outside of Confluence.

RSS Reader

An RSS reader is a specialised RSS program (also called aggregator) that displays the contents of RSS feeds for you. To subscribe to RSS feeds within Confluence, you will need an RSS reader.

Site Administrators

The Confluence permission scheme allows two levels of administrator permissions:

- System Administrator – full administrative access to Confluence.
- Confluence Administrator – access to most of the Confluence administrative functions, but excluding those which could compromise the security of the Confluence system.

Please refer to the [overview of global permissions](#) for details of the functions which each level of administrator can perform.

System Administrators

The Confluence permission scheme allows two levels of administrator permissions:

- System Administrator – full administrative access to Confluence.
- Confluence Administrator – access to most of the Confluence administrative functions, but excluding those which could compromise the security of the Confluence system.

Please refer to the [overview of global permissions](#) for details of the functions which each level of administrator can perform.

Space Administrators

A space administrator is a user with the 'Space Admin' permission for the space. A user with this permission can perform a host of functions relating to the management of a space and has complete access to the space regardless of any other control settings or permissions.

Permissions for a space are only assigned and modified by space administrators.

Spaces

A space is an area within Confluence, containing your wiki pages. You can think of each space as a sub-site, or mini-site, each with its own home page.

There are two types of spaces: [global spaces](#) and [personal spaces](#).

Templates

A template is a pre-defined page that can be used as a prototype when creating pages. Templates are useful for giving pages a common style or format.

Themes

Themes are pre-defined 'look and feel' styles which are configured from the administration menu and can be applied across Confluence or to a single space.

Thumbnails

As of Confluence 4.0, all images on the page that aren't links are displayed as thumbnails: when you click on an image the full-size image is displayed in a pop-up.

Tiny links

A tiny link is the shortened url of a page which is useful when sending links to the page, for example, via email.

Trackback

Trackback is a mechanism by which two sites can stay informed each time one site refers to the other by means of trackback 'pings'.

In Confluence, Trackback is enabled from the Administration Console.

Trackback Autodiscovery

Trackback autodiscovery is a block of code that can be placed in a web-page to describe where trackback pings should be sent for that page. You can read the [technical specification for autodiscovery here](#).

When Trackback is enabled, Confluence uses Trackback Autodiscovery to ping pages that are linked to, and to advertise its own pages as being able to receive pings.

Undefined Links

An undefined link is a link to a page that has not yet been created. Clicking on the page link allows you create the page.

User Profile

Every user account in Confluence is linked to a profile that contains user related information and options to configuring user preferences.

Watching a Page or Blog Post

When you watch a page, you are sent an email notification whenever that page has been modified.

Watching a Space

When you watch a space, you are sent an email notification whenever content has been added or modified in that space.

Wiki

Pioneered by Ward Cunningham, and named after the Hawaiian word for 'quick', a wiki is a website that makes it easy for anyone to contribute pages, and link them together.

Wiki Markup

This is the markup used to write and edit page templates in Confluence.








Related Topics























[Confluence Icons](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Confluence Icons

Icons are used throughout Confluence to provide quick links and indicators. The most frequently used icons are:

Icon	Description
	Indicates that restrictions apply to the current page. Click to see the restrictions and edit them.
	Indicates that there are attachments to the current page. Click to open the 'Attachments View'.
	Go to the people directory .
	View a user profile .
	Go to a personal space .
	Go to a global space .
	View a space's homepage.

	View a page .
	Add a page .
	Add a child page to the current page.
	View a blog post .
	This page has been edited since you last viewed it. Click to view the page.
	View a comment .
	View a piece of archived mail that has been imported into Confluence.
	View a page that has been imported into Confluence.
	View an attachment .
	This page/space/person is currently a favourite . Click to remove from your favourites.
	Add this page, space or person to your favourites .
	You are currently watching this page or space. Click to stop watching.
	Start watching this page or space.
	Subscribe to a pre-defined RSS feed.
	Export the contents of this space to PDF , HTML and XML .
	Define labels .
	Choose a space's theme .
	Choose a space's colour scheme .
	Define a layout for a space, its pages and/or blog posts.
	View space permissions .
	View page permissions .
	Manage watchers .

Related Topics

[Dashboard](#)
[Confluence Glossary](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Keyboard Shortcuts

Confluence provides a number of keyboard shortcuts that you can use to speed up your editing and viewing. This page describes the keyboard shortcuts for the English language. The shortcut keys (letters of the alphabet) may be different in other languages.



Quick guide to keyboard shortcuts

- Press the key combination **Shift+?** in Confluence to see all the keyboard shortcuts available.

On this page:

- Keyboard Shortcuts
 - All Screens
 - Editor
 - Tables (in the Editor)
 - View Screen
 - Autocomplete
- Viewing a List of Available Keyboard Shortcuts
- Disabling and Re-Enabling Keyboard Shortcuts
- Notes
- Related Topics

Keyboard Shortcuts

The first section below describes the keyboard shortcuts that are available on all Confluence screens. Subsequent sections describe the shortcuts specific to each type of screen.

All Screens

Windows	Action	Mac OS X
/	Enable the quick search	/
Ctrl+S	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Submit (where a form is active). Editor -- save the Confluence page. Outside the editor -- save the browser page. 	Cmd+S
G then D	Go to the dashboard	G then D
G then S	Browse the current space	G then S
?	Open the Keyboard Shortcut help	?
[	Toggle the left-hand navigation bar, when the space is using the Documentation theme .	[

Editor

Windows	Action	Mac OS X
Ctrl+Alt+0	Apply the paragraph style.	Cmd+0
Ctrl+Alt+(1–6)	Apply a heading level (of the number chosen) to the current line.	Cmd+(1–6)
Ctrl+Alt+7	Apply the preformatted style.	Cmd+7
Ctrl+Alt+8	Apply the block quote style.	Cmd+8

Ctrl+Shift+A	Open the Macro Browser.	Cmd+Shift+A
Ctrl+B	Make the selected text bold .	Cmd+B
Ctrl+Shift+B	Format text as a bulleted list.	Cmd+Shift+B
Ctrl+Shift+D	Insert wiki markup. (Opens the Wiki Markup dialog.)	Cmd+Shift+D
Ctrl+Shift+E	Preview the page you are editing.	Cmd+Shift+E
Ctrl+Shift+F	Toggle full screen mode.	Cmd+Shift+F
Ctrl+I	Make the selected text <i>italic</i> .	Cmd+I
Ctrl+Shift+J	Insert a JIRA issue. (Opens the Insert JIRA Issue dialog.)	Cmd+Shift+J
Ctrl+K	Insert a link. (Opens the Insert Link dialog.)	Cmd+K
Ctrl+Shift+K	Suggests a list of pages or other locations to link to from your page. More about autocomplete...	Cmd+Shift+K
Ctrl+M	Insert an image. (Opens the Insert Image dialog.)	Cmd+M
Ctrl+Shift+M	Suggests a list of images, documents and other files to embed in your page. More about autocomplete...	Cmd+Shift+M
Ctrl+Shift+N	Format text as a numbered list.	Cmd+Shift+N
Ctrl+S	Save the page you are editing.	Cmd+S
Ctrl+Shift+S	Format text with a strike through.	Cmd+Shift+S
Ctrl+Alt+Q	Apply the quote style to the current line.	Cmd+Alt+Q
Ctrl+U	Make the selected text <u>underlined</u> .	Cmd+U
Ctrl+Y	Revert an action that was undone.	Cmd+Y
Ctrl+Z	Undo the most recent action.	Cmd+Z
Ctrl+Alt+7	Apply the default paragraph style to the current line.	Cmd+7
Tab	Indent current line (only in bulleted lists and numbered lists).	Tab
Shift+Tab	'Outdent' current line (only in bulleted lists and numbered lists).	Shift+Tab

Tables (in the Editor)

Windows	Action	Mac OS X
Ctrl+Shift+C	Copy the current table row.	Cmd+Shift+C
Ctrl+Shift+I	Insert a table. (Opens the Insert Table dialog.)	Cmd+Shift+I
Ctrl+Shift+V	Paste the current table row.	Cmd+Shift+V

Ctrl+Shift+X	Cut the current table row.	Cmd+Shift+X
Alt+Up Arrow	Add a row above the current row.	Alt+Up Arrow
Alt+Down Arrow	Add a row below the current row.	Alt+Down Arrow

View Screen

Windows	Action	Mac OS X
B	Create a blog post.	B
C	Create a child page of your current page.	C
E	Edit a page or blog post, or return to Edit mode when previewing.	E
K	Open the Link To dialog.	K
L	Add or edit labels.	L
M	Add a comment to a page or blog post.	M
S	Share the current page	S
T	View attachments.	T
V	Return to page view (only if you are viewing page attachments).	V
W	Add or edit watchers.	W

Autocomplete

Key	Action
[	See a list of suggested pages or other locations to link to from your page.
!	See a list of suggested images, multimedia files and documents to embed in your page.
{	See a list of suggestions as you begin typing a macro name.
@	See a list of suggested users to mention.

See more about using [autocomplete](#).

Viewing a List of Available Keyboard Shortcuts

Choose **Browse > Keyboard Shortcuts** (or press the key combination Shift+?) to show the Keyboard Shortcuts dialog.

In the Keyboard Shortcuts dialog, you can:

- Select the **General** tab to view global, page and blog post shortcuts.
- Select the **Editor** tab to view the text editing and formatting shortcuts.
- Select the **Editor Autoformatting** tab to view the wiki markup and autoformatting shortcuts.

Disabling and Re-Enabling Keyboard Shortcuts

Keyboard shortcuts are enabled by default. If required, you can disable general keyboard shortcuts. You cannot disable the editor keyboard shortcuts.

To disable or re-enable general keyboard shortcuts:

1. Choose **Browse > Keyboard Shortcuts** (or press the key combination Shift+?).
2. Click the **General** tab on the left of the Keyboard Shortcuts dialog.
3. Select or clear the **Enable General Shortcuts** checkbox as required.

Notes



Supported Web Browsers

Please ensure that you are using one of the web browsers supported by Confluence. If you are using an unsupported browser or browser version, some features may not work correctly. You can find the list of supported web browsers and browser versions on this page: [Supported Platforms](#).

- The Keyboard Shortcuts dialog also displays the trigger characters for the Confluence autocomplete feature. See [Using Autocomplete](#).

Related Topics

Confluence keyboard shortcuts are consistent with JIRA keyboard shortcuts. Please see the JIRA documentation: [Using Keyboard Shortcuts](#).

[Confluence Wiki Markup](#)

[Using Autocomplete](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Creating Content

You can create the following types of content in Confluence:

- [Pages](#)
- [Blog posts](#)
- [Comments](#)

For each of these, you [use the editor](#) to enter and format the text, and to embed content, or add links to other pages.

When you first create the page, you can choose a [template](#) that the page should be based on.

When you first save the page, you can choose where the page should be located.

You can also [import content into Confluence](#) from a variety of other sources.

Related Topics

[Organising Content](#)
[Managing Users](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Using the Editor

The editor in Confluence provides an easy and fast way to create and edit Confluence pages, blog posts and comments. It allows you to enter content as you would in a Word document, to apply formatting simply by clicking buttons on a toolbar, and to embed other content and files into the page.

You begin an [editing session](#) by clicking **Edit** at the top of a page (or by pressing 'E' on the keyboard) when viewing a Confluence page or blog post.



Permissions

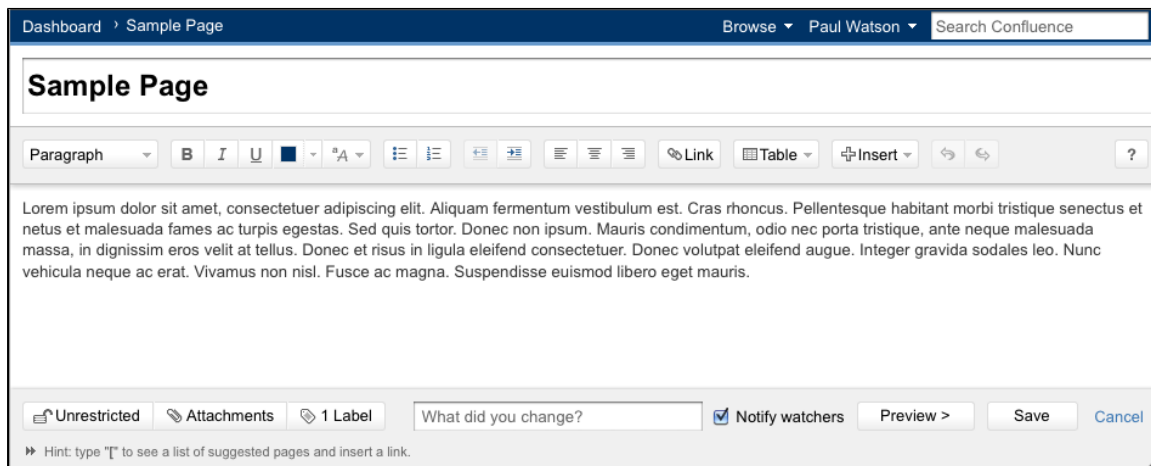
To edit a page, you need the 'Add Pages' permission for that space, which is assigned by a [space administrator](#) from the Space Administration screens. See [space permissions](#) or contact a space administrator for more information.

Note that the options available to you when editing depend on the [permissions](#) granted to you by the space administrator.

On this page:

- [The Toolbar](#)
- [An Editing Session](#)
- [Embedding Content in the Page](#)
- [Things to Help You Work Faster](#)
 - [Autoformatting](#)
 - [Autocomplete](#)
 - [Drag-and-Drop](#)
 - [Keyboard Shortcuts](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Screenshot: The Confluence Editor



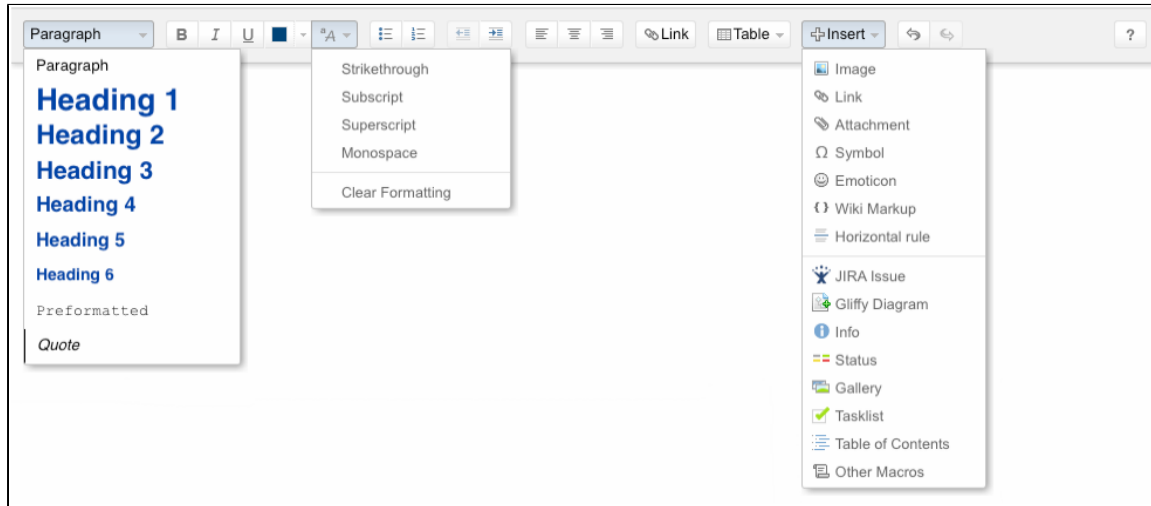
Page Item	Explanation
Page title	This name is used in links to the page.
Page content	Type content for the page here.
Editor toolbar	Provides tools to format and colour content, create lists and tables, indent and align text, and insert other content into the page such as symbols, links, images, multimedia files and macros.
Restrictions	View the current page restrictions , and control who can view or edit the page.
Attachments	View, and manage, the attached files on the page.
Labels	Add labels to a page, to categorise the page content.
Change comment	Type a comment that describes the changes you have made.
Notify watchers	When selected, users who are watching the page will be receive email notification of your changes to the page.
Preview	See how your changes will appear, without saving the page.
Save	Save the changes you have made to the page. (Ctrl+S)
Cancel	End the editing session, without saving any changes.

The Toolbar

The editor toolbar allows you to:

- Apply paragraph styles and character formatting (such as bold, italics, superscript).
- Choose colour for text.
- Create numbered and bulleted lists.
- Set the indenting and alignment for text and images.
- Create [links](#) to other pages, attachments, anchors and external resources.
- Add [tables](#), and add, remove, cut and paste rows and columns, highlight cells, rows and columns, and merge and split cells.
- [Insert other content](#) into the page, such as images, multimedia, attachments, symbols and wiki markup.
- Use [macros](#) to add other types of content, such as a list of JIRA issues or a table of contents.

Screenshot: The Editor Toolbar



An Editing Session

You start an editing session whenever you:

- create a new [page](#), [blog post](#) or [page comment](#)
- edit an existing page, blog post or comment (by pressing 'E' on the keyboard, or clicking **Edit**).

While in an editing session, you can also:


- Name, or rename, a page or blog post. Note that [renaming](#) has effects that you should consider.
- Add a [comment](#) describing the changes you made.
- Chose whether or not people [watching](#) the page get notified of the change you made
- Add [labels](#) to the page.

Confluence automatically saves [drafts](#) of your page as you work. If another user begins editing the same page as you, Confluence will display a message, and will try to [merge the changes](#) when you save your page.

Click **Cancel** (at the bottom of the page) if you want to end the session without saving any changes.

The session ends when you click **Save**.

When you create a new page you can [choose the location](#) where the page should be saved. You can also [move a page](#) after it has been saved, to make it a [child page](#) of a different page, or to move it to another space.

 To see changes between different versions of the page, look at the [history](#) of the page.

Embedding Content in the Page

Click **Insert** on the editor toolbar to embed any of the following types of content so that they are displayed on your page:

- An [image](#).
- A [link](#) to another Confluence page or external URL, or a [link to an attachment or image](#).
- An [emoticon](#), [symbol](#) or horizontal line.
- A [macro](#). Choose either a specific macro, or **Other Macros**, from the **Insert** menu.

Things to Help You Work Faster

Autoformatting

You can type Confluence wiki markup directly into the editor to have Confluence "auto-format" your text on the fly. To learn more, click **?** on the editor toolbar and choose the 'Editor Autoformatting' tab.

Autocomplete

When editing a page or blog post, you can enter a trigger character to show a list of suggested links, media files or macros to add to your page. This feature is called 'autocomplete' and provides you with a fast editing solution if you prefer to use key strokes rather than pointing and clicking with the mouse.

Quick summary of autocomplete:

Type:	To see suggested:
[	pages and blog posts
!	multimedia files
{	macros
@	mentions

For details, see [Using Autocomplete](#).

Drag-and-Drop

You can drag a file such as an image, video, audio file, Office document or PDF file, directly into the editor. The contents of the file will be embedded into the page or blog post. Please refer to the following pages for more information:

- [Using Drag-and-Drop in Confluence](#) – Using Confluence's drag-and-drop feature, including details about its requirements and configuration.
- [Displaying Images](#) – Embedding images onto a Confluence page or blog post.
- [Embedding Multimedia Content](#) – Embedding videos, audio files and other multimedia files onto a Confluence page or blog post.
- [Displaying Office Files in Confluence](#) – Embedding Office and PDF files onto a Confluence page or blog post.

Keyboard Shortcuts

You can view the [Keyboard Shortcuts](#) dialog by clicking ? on the toolbar.

Related Topics

[Page Layout in View Mode](#)

[Working with Tables](#)

[Displaying Images](#)

[Editing and Removing Links](#)

[Linking to Images](#)

[Linking to Attachments](#)

[Inserting Emoticons and Icons](#)

[Inserting Symbols](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Working with Text Effects

The Confluence editor supports most text effects available in standard text editing applications.

See also [Using the Editor](#).

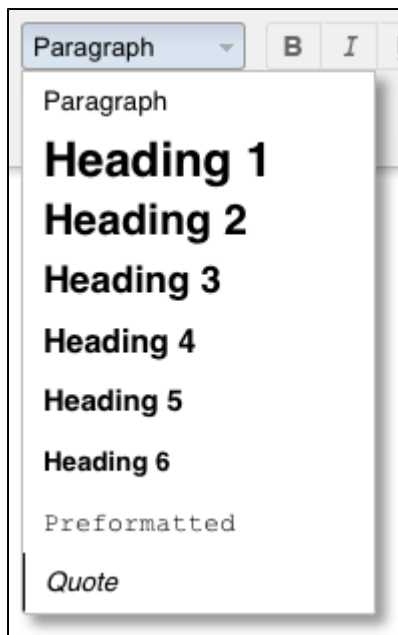
On this page:

- [Applying Paragraph Styles](#)
- [Applying Character Formats](#)
- [Applying Text Colours](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Applying Paragraph Styles

Choose a paragraph style from the editor toolbar, or click in the paragraph and use one of the [keyboard shortcuts](#) Ctrl+(0–8) .

Screenshot: Choosing paragraph styles from the editor toolbar




Applying Character Formats

To apply a character format, select the text and click one of the editor toolbar buttons, or use a [keyboard shortcut](#). Some formats are available from the 'More' menu.

Screenshot: Text formatting buttons on the editor toolbar



Format	Shortcut Key
Bold	Ctrl+B
<i>Italics</i>	Ctrl+I
<u>Underline</u>	Ctrl+U
Strikethrough	Ctrl+Shift+S
Sub ^{script}	none
Super ^{script}	none
Monospace	none

 Choose **Clear Formatting** from the 'More' menu to remove all formatting.

Applying Text Colours

To apply colour to text, select the text and click the 'Colour' button. Choose which colour is applied using the 'More colours' button.

Screenshot: Picking colours from the editor toolbar



Related Topics

[Using the EditorKeyboard Shortcuts](#)

[Keyboard Shortcuts](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Working with Links

Confluence makes adding links as simple as possible. You can link to content anywhere within the Confluence site or on another web site.

You can add links to the following types of content:

- [Pages](#) in the same space, in another space, or outside Confluence (i.e. webpages)
- [Blog posts](#)
- [Pages that haven't yet been created](#), but for which you require a placeholder on the current page.
- [Attachments](#), such as images and multimedia files
- [User profiles or personal spaces](#)

You can also [link from an image](#), and use a link to begin composing a [new email message](#).

You create all these kinds of links using the 'Insert Link' dialog that is available in the editor (choose **Insert > Link**). You can also create links:

- using [autocomplete](#) as a shorthand way of creating the most common types of links.
- by copying a link from one page and paste it when editing another page.

You can [edit and remove links](#) while editing the page, using the link properties panel.



Handy Hints

- Links in Confluence will not break even when you rename pages or move them between spaces on your site. This only works for page links that use the relative link syntax, for example `[Renaming a Page]`.
- Looking for a link type not shown above? You might find a [plugin](#) can help you.

Related Topics

[Working with Anchors](#)

[Trackback](#)

[Linking to Confluence Pages from Outside Confluence](#)

[Working with Attachments](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Linking to Pages

This page describes how to create a link in your Confluence page to another page.

You can create links on your page to:

- Other pages in the Confluence site.
- Webpages outside of Confluence.
- Anchors or headings, on the same page or other pages.

You can also create a link to a non-existent Confluence page.

You can use the following methods to create links:

- Autocomplete - to link to Confluence pages or a non-existent page.
- The 'Insert Link' dialog - to link to Confluence pages and webpages.
- Cutting and pasting a link from your browser - to link to Confluence pages and webpages.

On this page:

- [Linking to Confluence Pages](#)
 - [Adding a Link using Autocomplete](#)
 - [Adding a Link using the Insert Link Dialog](#)
 - [Copying and Pasting a Link from your Web Browser](#)
- [Linking to Webpages](#)
- [Linking to an Anchor or Heading](#)
- [Linking to an Undefined Confluence Page](#)
- [Linking using a Shortcut Link](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Linking to Confluence Pages**Adding a Link using Autocomplete**

You can use autocomplete to create a link to any page in the Confluence site, if you know the name of the page you want to link to.

You can type [to see a list of suggested links. For details, see [Using Autocomplete](#).

Adding a Link using the Insert Link Dialog**To create a new link using the 'Insert Link' dialog:**

1. While editing the page, place your cursor at the point where you want to create the link, or highlight the text that you want linked.
2. Click **Link** in the toolbar, or press **Ctrl+K**. See [keyboard shortcuts](#) for more information.
3. Choose one of the tabs on the left to help you find the page or other location that you want to link to:
 - **Search**— Use this option to link to a page or file in Confluence.
 - Start typing the page name into the text box. Confluence will suggest options as you type.
 - If necessary, limit the search to the current space.
 - Select your link destination from the autocomplete results, or click **Search** and select the link destination from the search results.
 - **Recently Viewed**— Use this option to link to a page in Confluence.
 - Select your link destination from recently-visited pages.
4. Enter link text that will be displayed on the page, if required. If you have not highlighted text in the page, and leave the 'Link Text' text box empty, the link will display the destination page name or URL.
5. Click **Insert**.

Copying and Pasting a Link from your Web Browser**To paste a link from your web browser:**

1. In your web browser, select and copy the title of a Confluence page.
2. Edit your Confluence page and paste the title where you want the link to appear.

Linking to Webpages

Use the 'Insert Link' dialog to link to an external web page.

To create a link to a webpage:

1. While editing the page, place your cursor at the point where you want to create the link, or highlight the text that you want linked.
2. Click **Link** in the toolbar, or press **Ctrl+K**. See [keyboard shortcuts](#) for more information.
3. Click **Web Link** and enter or paste the web address into the **URL** text box.
4. Enter link text that will be displayed on the page if required. If you have not highlighted text in the page, and leave the 'Link Text' text box empty, the link will display the destination page name or URL.
5. Click **Insert**.

You can also simply copy and paste a link to a webpage into your Confluence page, as described above.

Linking to an Anchor or Heading

You can link to an anchor or heading that is on the same page, on another page in the same space, or on a page in another space of the same Confluence site.

To link to an anchor or heading:

1. Click **Link** in the toolbar, or press **Ctrl+K**, while editing the page.
2. Click **Advanced** and enter the anchor name (or heading) into the **Link** box, using the following syntax:

Anchor or heading location	Link syntax for anchor	Link syntax for heading
Same page	#anchorname	#headingname
Different page	pagename#anchorname	pagename#headingname
Page in another space	spacekey:pagename#anchorname	spacekey:pagename#headingname

For more information about link syntax, see [Confluence Wiki Markup](#).

3. Enter link text that will be displayed on the page, if required. If you leave the **Link Text** box empty, the link will display the destination page name or URL.
4. Click **Insert**.

- Note that when linking to a heading, `headingname` is case-sensitive and must be entered without spaces
- Note that when linking to an anchor, `anchorname` is case-sensitive, and `pagename` must be entered with spaces as in the title.

See [Working with Anchors](#) for more information.

Linking to an Undefined Confluence Page

You may want to insert a link pointing to a Confluence page that does not yet exist, but which you intend to create later. This type of link is called an [undefined link](#).

To add an undefined link for later creation of a page:

1. Edit the page in which the link should appear.
2. Type '[' to trigger autocomplete, and type the name of the undefined page.
3. Choose **Insert Link to Create Page**.

When you save the page, Confluence colours the undefined link red. When someone clicks on the link, the new page is opened in 'Edit' mode. You can then enter the page name, add content and save the page, as [usual](#).

Linking using a Shortcut Link

If you have [configured shortcut links](#) on your Confluence site, then you can link to an external site using a shortcut link that looks like this: `CONF-17025@jira`. Our Confluence site (where this documentation is housed) is configured to allow shortcut links to our JIRA site, using the shortcut `@jira`. So the shortcut link `CONF-17025@jira` produces [this link](#).

To add a shortcut link using the 'Insert Link' dialog:

1. Click **Link** in the toolbar, or press **Ctrl+K**. See [keyboard shortcuts](#) for more information.
2. Click **Advanced** and enter or paste the shortcut link into the **Link** box. Shortcut links are case-insensitive.
3. Enter link text that will be displayed on the page, if required. If you leave the **Link Text** box empty, the link will display the destination page name or URL.
4. Click **Insert**.

You can also type '[' and choose **Insert Web Link > Advanced** to enter a shortcut link.

See [Configuring Shortcut Links](#) for more details.

Related Topics

[Working with Links](#)

[Trackback](#)

[Linking to Confluence Pages from Outside Confluence](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Linking to Images

This page describes how to insert a link on your Confluence page that points to an image. Linking to an image is a way to have text on a page that, when clicked, takes the user to that image.

**Quick guide to linking to an image**

1. Click **Link** on the editor toolbar.
2. Select one of these options:
 - **Search** – Search for and link to any image or file attached to any page in your Confluence site.
 - **Attachments** – Link to an image or file attached to the current Confluence page.

The rest of this page gives more details of the above procedure and additional options.

On this page:

- [Adding a Link with the Link Browser](#)
- [Adding a Link using Autocomplete](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

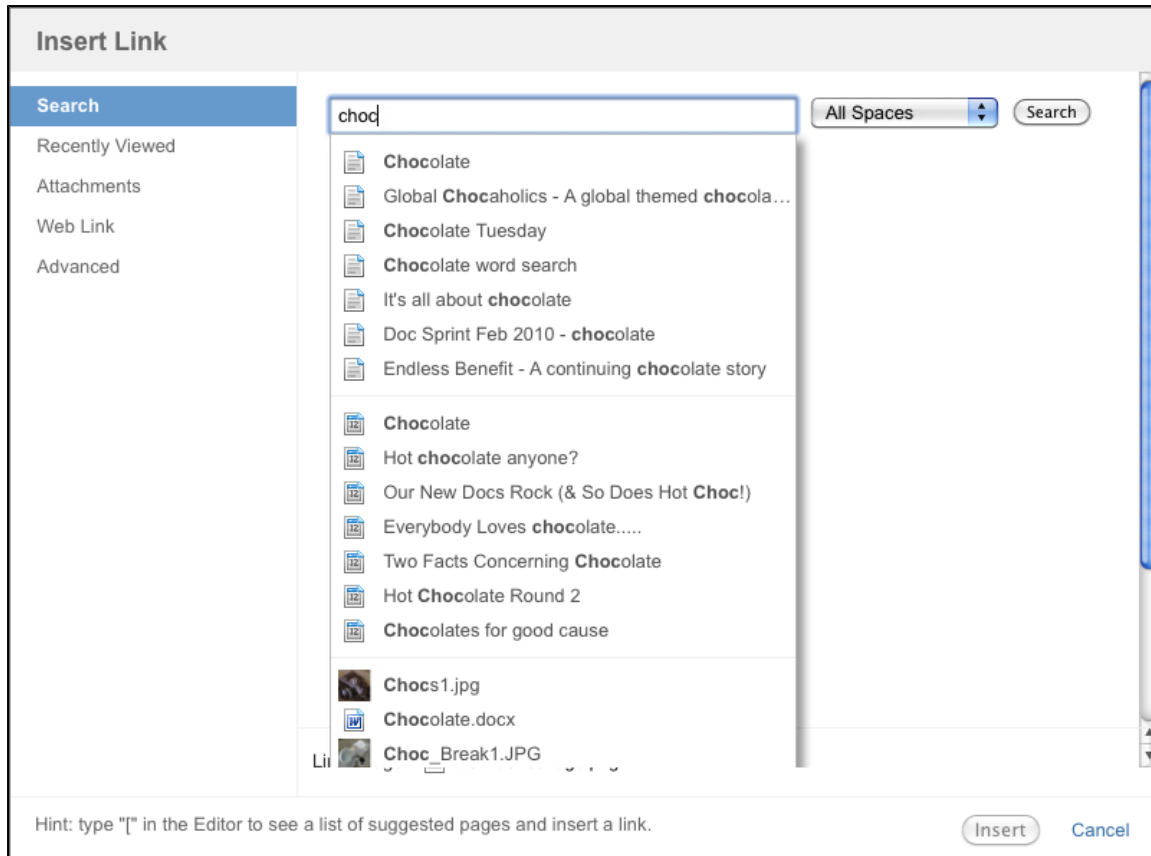
Adding a Link with the Link Browser**To link to an image that is attached to the current page:**

1. Edit the page where you want to insert the link.
2. Click **Link** on the toolbar.
3. Choose the **Attachments** tab in the left-hand panel. You will see a list of all files attached to the page. Now you can:
 - Select an image that is already attached to the page.
 - Attach a new image to the page by clicking **Browse** and uploading your file.
4. Enter the **Link Text**. These are the words that will appear as the hyperlink on the page.
5. Click **Insert**.

To link to an image that is attached to any Confluence page:

1. Edit the page where you want to insert the link.
2. Click **Link** on the toolbar.
3. Select the **Search** option in the left-hand panel.
4. Start typing the name of the image. Confluence will suggest image files. If the image does not appear in the list, click **Search**.
5. Click the image name in the autocomplete results or the search results.
6. Click **Insert**.

Screenshot: The link browser, showing autocomplete in the 'Search' option



Adding a Link using Autocomplete

You can use the autocomplete functionality to link to an image attached to any Confluence page.

You can type [to see a list of suggested links. For details, see [Using Autocomplete](#).

Related Topics

[Linking to Attachments](#)
[Editing and Removing Links](#)
[Displaying Images](#)

Linking from an Image

This page describes how to create a link from an image on one page to another page or URL. When the user clicks the image, they will be redirected to the linked page or other resource.

To create a link from an image:

1. Display the image on the page. The image can either be attached to the page or available on another page. See [Displaying Images](#).
2. Create the link by clicking on the image and then clicking **Link** in the properties panel. Specify the link target using the 'Insert Link' dialog. See [Linking to Pages](#).

You can edit the link by clicking on the image, when editing the page, and clicking **Edit Link** in the properties panel.

Screenshot: The properties panel for an image



Related Topics

[Using Images](#)
[Working with Links](#)
[Working with Attachments](#)
[Displaying Images](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Linking to Attachments

This page describes how to add a text link pointing to a file attached to your Confluence page. When a reader clicks the link, the file is displayed in the browser.



Quick guide to linking to an attachment

1. Click **Link** on the editor toolbar.
2. Select one of these options:
 - **Search** – to search for and link to any image or file attached to any page in your Confluence site.
 - **Recently Viewed** – to link to a recently visited page.
 - **Attachments** – to link to an image or file attached to the current Confluence page.
 - **Web Link** – to link to any webpage.

On this page:

- [Adding a Link using Autocomplete](#)
- [Adding a Link using the Link Browser](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Adding a Link using Autocomplete

You can use autocomplete to add a text link to a file or image attached to any Confluence page.

You can type [to see a list of suggested links. For details, see [Using Autocomplete](#).

Adding a Link using the Link Browser

The 'link browser' is the 'Insert Link' or 'Edit Link' dialog that appears when you click **Link** in the editor toolbar.

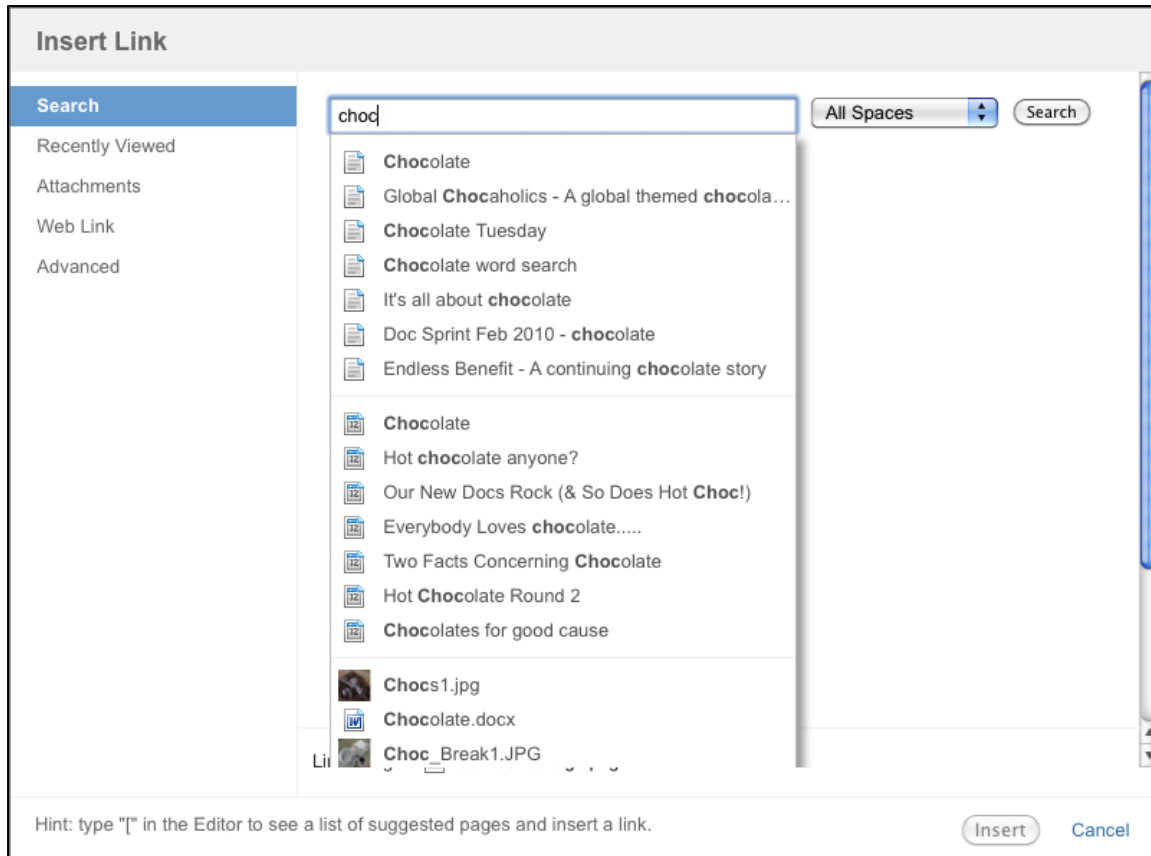
To link to a file or image that is attached to the current page:

1. Edit the page where you want to insert the link.
2. Click **Link** in the editor toolbar, and then the **Attachments** tab. You will see a list of all files attached to the page. Now you can do one of the following:
 - Click on the file that you want to link to, if it is already attached to the page.
 - Attach a new file to the page by clicking **Browse** and uploading your file.
3. Enter the **Link Text**. These are the words that will appear as the hyperlink on the page.
4. Click **Insert** to add the link.

To link to a file or image that is attached to any Confluence page:

1. Edit the page where you want to insert the link.
2. Click **Link** in the editor toolbar, and then the **Search** tab.
3. Start typing the name of the file or image. Confluence will offer a list of matching file names. If the file does not appear, click **Search** to find pages that contain the search text.
4. Click the required file in the list or the search results.
5. Enter the **Link Text**. These are the words that will appear as the hyperlink on the page.
6. Click **Insert** to add the link.

Screenshot: The link browser, showing autocomplete in the 'Search' option



Related Topics

[Linking to Images](#)
[Editing and Removing Links](#)

Linking to Blog Posts

You can link to blog posts in similar ways to how you [link to pages](#). Only two methods are described on this page.

You can also use the Blog Posts macro to display a [dynamic list of blog posts](#) on your page.



You must create the blog post first

Linking to a blog post that has not been created yet will not result in a link. Blog posts are very tightly bound to the time at which they were created, so it makes no sense to link to them before they exist.

Linking to a Blog Post using Autocomplete



You need to know the title of the blog post.

You can use autocomplete to create a link to any blog post in the Confluence site, if you know the name of the post you want to link to.

You can type `[` to see a list of suggested links. For details, see [Using Autocomplete](#).

Linking to a Blog Post using its URL



You need to know the absolute path to the blog post.

To create a link to a blog post using the 'Insert Link' dialog:

1. While editing the page, place your cursor at the point where you want to create the link, or highlight the text that you want linked.
2. Click **Link** in the toolbar, or press **Ctrl+K**. See [keyboard shortcuts](#) for more information.
3. Click **Web Link** and enter or paste the absolute path to the blog post into the **URL** text box.
4. Enter link text that will be displayed on the page if required. If you have not highlighted text in the page, and leave the 'Link Text' text box empty, the link will display the destination page name or URL.
5. Click **Insert**.

Related Topics

[Working with Blog Posts](#)
[Working with Links](#)
[Blog Posts Macro](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Linking to Personal Spaces and User Profiles

This page describes how to add a link to a user's personal space or user profile from within another Confluence page.

You can link to a user's personal space (or user profile) easily if you know their username.

If the user does not have a personal space, then the link will go to their user profile.

Linking to a User's Personal Space using Autocompletion

You can use autocomplete to create a link to a user's personal space in the Confluence site. Trigger autocomplete and start typing their name.

You can type [to see a list of suggested links. For details, see [Using Autocomplete](#).

Linking to a User's Personal Space using the Insert Link Dialog

1. While editing the page, place your cursor at the point where you want to create the link, or highlight the text that you want linked.
2. Click **Link** in the toolbar, or press **Ctrl+K**. See [keyboard shortcuts](#) for more information.
3. Click the **Search** tab on the left.
4. Start typing the user's name into the search field. Confluence will suggest options as you type.
5. Select the user from the autocomplete results.
6. Enter link text that will be displayed on the page, if required. If you have not highlighted text in the page, and leave the 'Link Text' text box empty, the link will display the destination page name or URL.
7. Click **Insert**.

Related Topics

[User Profile Overview](#)
[Setting up your Personal Space](#)
[Working with Links](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Working with Anchors

The Anchor macro allows you to link to specific parts of a page. Anchor links can be especially useful when navigating between sections of a long document or when you want to link to a segment of a page and not to the page as a whole.

Anchors are invisible to the reader when the page is rendered.

There are two steps to using an anchor:

1. Create the anchor for the content.
2. Create the link to the anchor.

On this page:

- [Creating an Anchor](#)
- [Parameters](#)
- [Linking to an Anchor or Heading](#)
- [Notes](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Creating an Anchor

You use the Anchor macro to create an anchor for content that you want to be able to link to.

To add the Anchor macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Anchor Name	None; name must be supplied	This is the value for <code>anchortext</code> that you use when creating the link.

Linking to an Anchor or Heading

You can link to an anchor or heading that is on the same page, on another page in the same space, or on a page in another space of the same Confluence site.

To link to an anchor or heading:

1. Click **Link** in the toolbar, or press **Ctrl+K**, while editing the page.
2. Click **Advanced** and enter the anchor name (or heading) into the **Link** box, using the following syntax:

Anchor or heading location	Link syntax for anchor	Link syntax for heading
Same page	#anchortext	#headingname
Different page	pagename#anchortext	pagename#headingname
Page in another space	spacekey:pagename#anchortext	spacekey:pagename#headingname

For more information about link syntax, see [Confluence Wiki Markup](#).

3. Enter link text that will be displayed on the page, if required. If you leave the **Link Text** box empty, the link will display the destination page name or URL.
 4. Click **Insert**.
- Note that when linking to a heading, `headingname` is case-sensitive and must be entered without spaces
 - Note that when linking to an anchor, `anchortext` is case-sensitive, and `pagename` must be entered with spaces as in the title.

Notes

- If you are adding an anchor to the site welcome message, it can only be linked to from another page. Internal-only links will not render.
- Page titles and links to other spaces can be combined with anchors and attachments, but you **can't** use attachments and anchors in the same link.

Related Topics

[Working with Links](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Using a Link to Create a New Email Message

This page describes how to insert a link that, when clicked, launches the default email client.



You can provide your own text to use as the link text instead of the 'mailto' tag.

To insert a link that creates a new email message:

1. Edit the page on which you want to insert the link.
2. Choose **Insert > Link** and select the **Web Link** tab.
3. Enter an email address, such as 'jsmith@non.existent.corp.com'.
4. Enter your own link text, if required.
5. Click **Save**.


Related Topics

[Working with Links](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Linking to Confluence Pages from Outside Confluence

Sometimes you may want to link to a Confluence page from outside of Confluence, such as from another website or from within an email. In this case, you should consider using a link to a 'permanent' URL (also called a 'permalink'), in case the name of the Confluence page changes.

 If you are linking to a page from another page in the same Confluence site, it is better to use an internal wiki link rather than a permalink. Confluence can keep track of internal links and will let you know if the link is broken, such as when someone removes the linked page. See [Linking to Pages](#). Internal wiki links are automatically updated if the page is renamed. This only works for page links that use the relative link syntax, for example [Renaming a Page].

To link to a page's permanent URL:

1. Choose **Tools** > **Link to this Page**.
2. Copy the **Tiny Link** and paste it into your email or external web page. This will create a link to the latest version of your Confluence page.

Related Topics

[Linking to Pages](#)
[Working with Links](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Trackback

Trackback is a mechanism by which two sites can stay informed each time one site refers to the other by means of trackback 'pings'.

In Confluence, Trackback is enabled by a [site administrator](#) from the [Administration Console](#). When Trackback is enabled, any time you link to an external webpage that supports [Trackback Autodiscovery](#), Confluence will send a Trackback ping to that page to inform it that it has been linked to.

Confluence pages also support Trackback Autodiscovery, and when Trackback is enabled can receive trackback pings sent by other sites.

To see who has sent a Trackback ping to a Confluence page:

1. Go to the page.
2. Choose **Tools** > **Info** to go to the 'Information' view for the page.

Any Trackback pings the page has received will be listed under the page's **Incoming Links**



Confluence incoming trackback pings only work with referenced pages that are public (anonymously viewable)

See more information about the [Information View](#).

Related Topics

[Enabling Trackback](#)
[Managing External Referrers](#)
[Linking to Pages](#)
[Working with Links](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Working with Tables

The Confluence editor provides several table editing features.
















Inserting a Table

To create a table:

1. While editing the page, place your cursor at the point where you want to insert the table.
2. Click **Table** on the toolbar.
3. Click in a cell to set the number of columns and rows for your table.

Table Operations

While editing a page, the following table operations are available from the toolbar.

Table operation	Toolbar button
Insert an empty row above the current one	
Insert an empty row below the current one	
Remove the current row	
Cut the current row and copy it to the Clipboard	
Copy the current row to the Clipboard	
Paste the row from the Clipboard to the current row	
Insert an empty column to the left of the current one	
Insert an empty column to the right of the current one	
Remove the current column	
Merge the selected cells	
Split the selected merged cells	
Highlight the current row	
Highlight the current column	
Highlight the current cell	
Remove the table	

Related Topics

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Using Images

Confluence allows you to add images to a page, or a blog post, either individually, or as a gallery that can be viewed as a slide show. All images on the page are displayed as thumbnails: when you click on an image the full-size image is displayed in a pop-up.

In general, you display an image on a page by either of the following:

- Attach the image to the page first, and then edit the page to choose where the image should appear.

- Insert an image on the page, where the image is attached to another Confluence page, or is available on an external webpage.

You can also add text links to a page that point to an image located elsewhere.

More information about using images in Confluence can be found here:

- [Displaying an image on a Confluence page.](#)
- [Linking from an image.](#)
- [Linking to images.](#)

Related Topics

[Image File Formats](#)
[Choosing a Profile Picture](#)
[Working with Attachments](#)
[Embedding PowerPoint Presentations in a Page](#)
[Gallery Macro](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Displaying Images

An image can be displayed on a Confluence page in the following cases:

- The image is attached to the page.
- The image is attached to another page of the same Confluence site, even if in another space.
- The image is on a remote webpage.

Once the image is displayed on the page, you can:

- Move the image to a new position on the page simply by cutting and pasting.
- Change how the image appears on the page.
- [Link from an image](#) to another page.

On this page:

- [Displaying an image attached to the page](#)
- [Displaying an image attached to a different page](#)
- [Displaying an image from a remote webpage](#)
- [Controlling the image appearance](#)
- [Setting Other Image Attributes](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Displaying an image attached to the page

There are several methods for [attaching image files to a page](#).

Once you have attached an image to a page, there are different methods for choosing where on the page the image should appear:

Using the 'Insert Image' dialog

Once an image is attached to the page, you can edit the page to choose where the image should appear.

To position an attached image on the page:

1. While editing the page, position the cursor where you want to place the image.
2. Choose **Insert > Image** and click on the **Attached Images** tab.
3. Select the required image and click **Insert** (or just double-click on the image).

Using autocomplete

Once an image is attached to the page, you can use autocomplete while editing the page to choose where the image should appear.

To position an attached image on the page:

1. While editing the page, position the cursor where you want to place the image.
2. Trigger the autocomplete function by typing '!'.
 3. Choose the image from the list that appears.

Using drag-and-drop

Depending on the browser you are using, you can attach and position an image in one step. While you are editing a page, simply [drag-and-drop](#) an image file on to the page. The image is attached to the page and is placed at the current cursor position.

Displaying an image attached to a different page

You can display an image that is attached to a different page of the same Confluence site, as long as you know the name of the image. This approach can make it easier to manage your images by allowing you to keep them all in the same place.

To display an image attached to a different page:

1. While editing the page, position the cursor where you want to place the image.
2. Choose **Insert > Image** and click on the **Search** tab.
3. Type in the name of the image.
4. Choose whether to search the current space or **All Spaces** and click **Search**.
5. Select the required image from the search results and click **Insert**.

Alternatively, you can simply cut and paste the image from another page.

Displaying an image from a remote webpage

You can display an image from a remote webpage on your Confluence page, without needing to attach it to your page. You need to know the URL for the image, not for the webpage it appears on. Note that you should have permission to use that image on your page.

To display an image located on a webpage:

1. While editing the page, position the cursor where you want to place the image.
2. Choose **Insert > Image** and click on **From the Web**.
3. Type in the URL for the image. An example is: http://www.atlassian.com/software/confluence/images/icon_customerslove_big.png
4. Click **Preview** to check that the URL and image are correct.
5. Click **Insert**.

Alternatively, you can simply cut and paste the image from a webpage.

Controlling the image appearance

When editing the page, click on the image to show the image properties panel. The panel allows you to set the display size for the image and choose whether the image has a border. See also [Linking from an Image](#).

To set the size of the image, do one of the following:

- Click on one of the size 'preset' buttons (the image width in pixels is displayed to the left).
- Click on the image size text and enter a new image width in pixels.

Note that images are displayed as [thumbnails](#).

To add a border to the image:

- Click **Border** in the image properties panel.

To add a hyperlink to the image:

- Click **Link** in the image properties panel. For more detail, see [Linking from an Image](#).

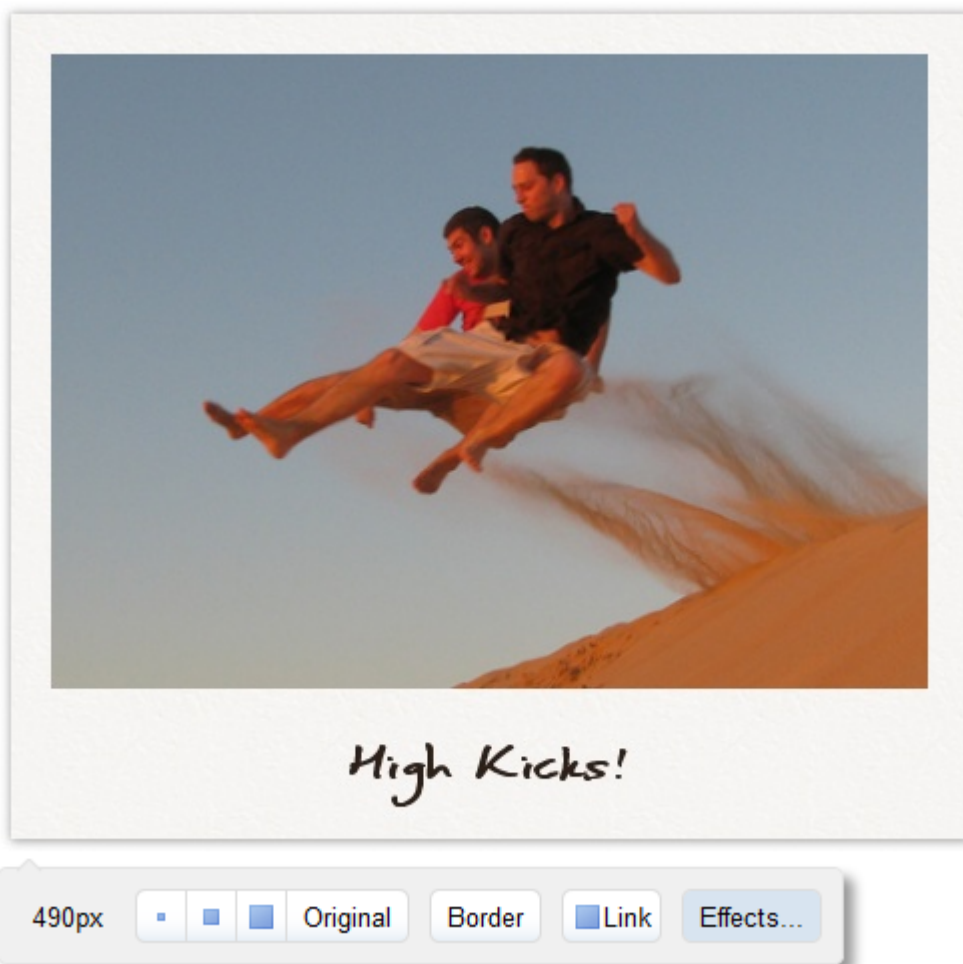
To align an image:

- Select the image and click the paragraph alignment buttons on the editor [toolbar](#).

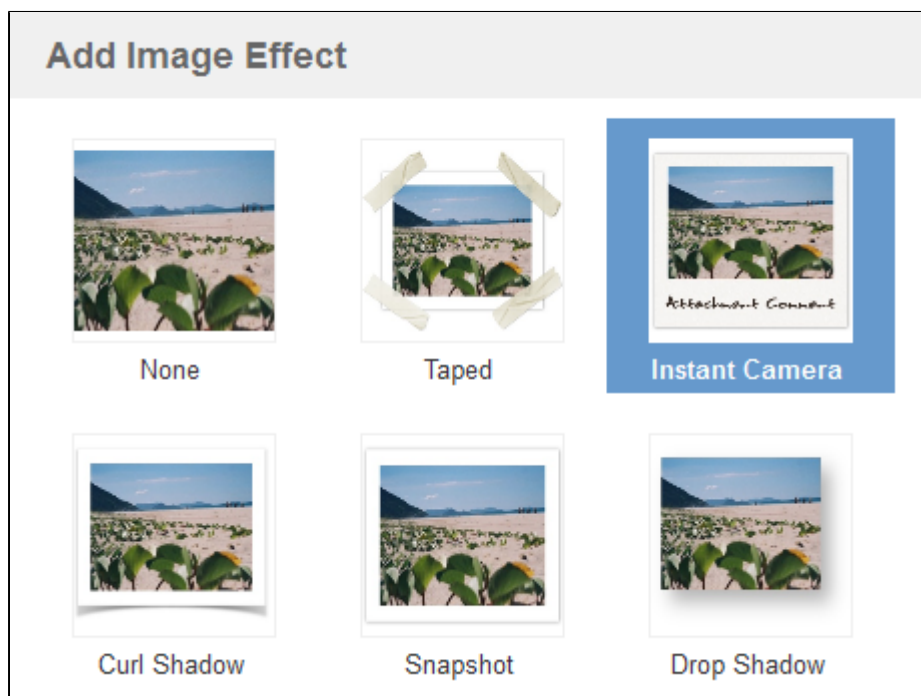
To add border effects to an image:

- Click **Effects** in the image properties panel and make a choice.

Screenshot: The image properties panel beneath an image



Screenshot: Examples of image border effects



Setting Other Image Attributes

Certain attributes such as alt-text, title and other HTML parameters can still be set by using the **Insert > Wiki Markup** function from the editor toolbar, then using the syntax described in [Confluence Wiki Markup](#).

Related Topics

[Using Images](#)
[Working with Links](#)
[Working with Attachments](#)

Image File Formats

Confluence allows you to attach image files of any format to a page. However, your ability to display them depends on the image file formats supported by the browser you are using.

Confluence supports the following image formats for its Thumbnail and Gallery macros :

- gif
- jpeg
- png

The bmp format is not supported.

Related Topics

[Using Images](#)

[Displaying images](#)

[Gallery Macro](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Using Autocomplete

When using the Confluence editor, you can type a trigger character or press a [keyboard shortcut](#) to see a list of suggested links, files or macros to add to your page, or to mention another user (and automatically notify them of this).

On this page:

- [Summary of Autocomplete](#)
- [Using Autocomplete for Links](#)
- [Using Autocomplete for Images, Videos, Audio Files and Documents](#)
- [Using Autocomplete for Macros](#)
- [Using Autocomplete for Mentions](#)
- [Cancelling Autocomplete](#)
- [Enabling and Disabling Autocomplete](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Summary of Autocomplete

What You Want to Do	Trigger Character	Keyboard Shortcut	Description
Add a link on your page	[	Ctrl+Shift+K	See a list of suggested pages or other locations to link to from your page. More...
Display an image, video, audio file or document on your page	!	Ctrl+Shift+M	See a list of suggested images, multimedia files and documents to embed in your page. More...
Add a macro on your page	{	None	See a list of suggestions as you begin typing a macro name. More...
Notify another user by email that you have mentioned them on your page	@	None	See a list of suggested users to mention. More...

Using Autocomplete for Links

Type '[', or press Ctrl+Shift+K, to see a list of suggested pages or other locations to link to from your page. You can link to pages, user profiles, images, documents and other file attachments.

To autocomplete a link:

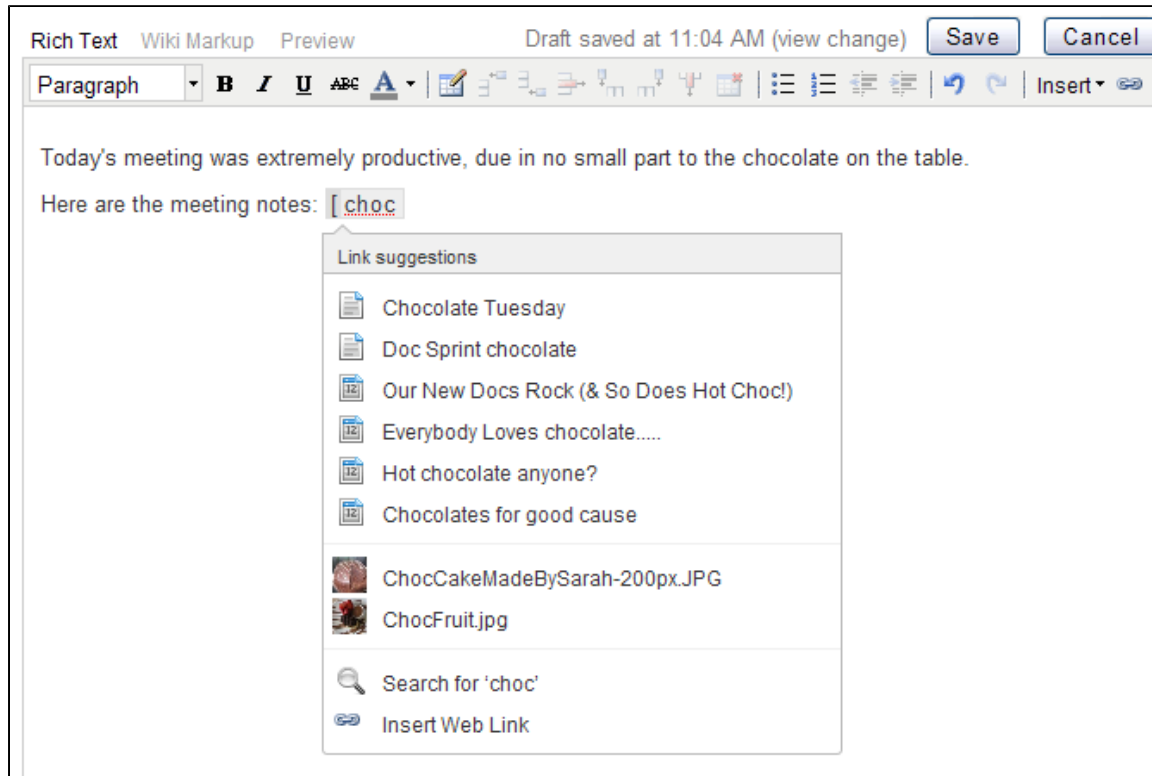
1. Edit the page.
2. Click where you want to insert a link and do one of the following:

- Type '!' and then the first few characters of the page title, user's name, image name or file name.
 - Type the first few characters of the page title, user's name, image name or file name (or select relevant text) and then press Ctrl+Shift+K.
3. Click the relevant link from the list of suggestions.

If the item you need is not in the list, either:

- Choose **Search for 'xxx'** to continue looking for the page within Confluence, or
- Choose **Insert Web Link** to insert a link to an external web page using the Link Browser.

Screenshot: Autocomplete for a Link



Using Autocomplete for Images, Videos, Audio Files and Documents

You can use the autocomplete as a fast way of embedding images, videos, audio files and documents into your page. Type an exclamation mark or press Ctrl+Shift+M to see a list of suggested images, multimedia files and documents to display on your page. You can use autocomplete to embed the following file types:

- Images – any format that Confluence supports. See [Image File Formats](#).
- Videos, audio files and all multimedia formats that Confluence supports. See [Embedding Multimedia Content](#).
- Office documents supported by the [Confluence Office Connector](#): Word, Excel and PowerPoint.
- PDF files.

i Autocomplete works most efficiently for files that are already attached to the Confluence page. See [Attaching Files to a Page](#).

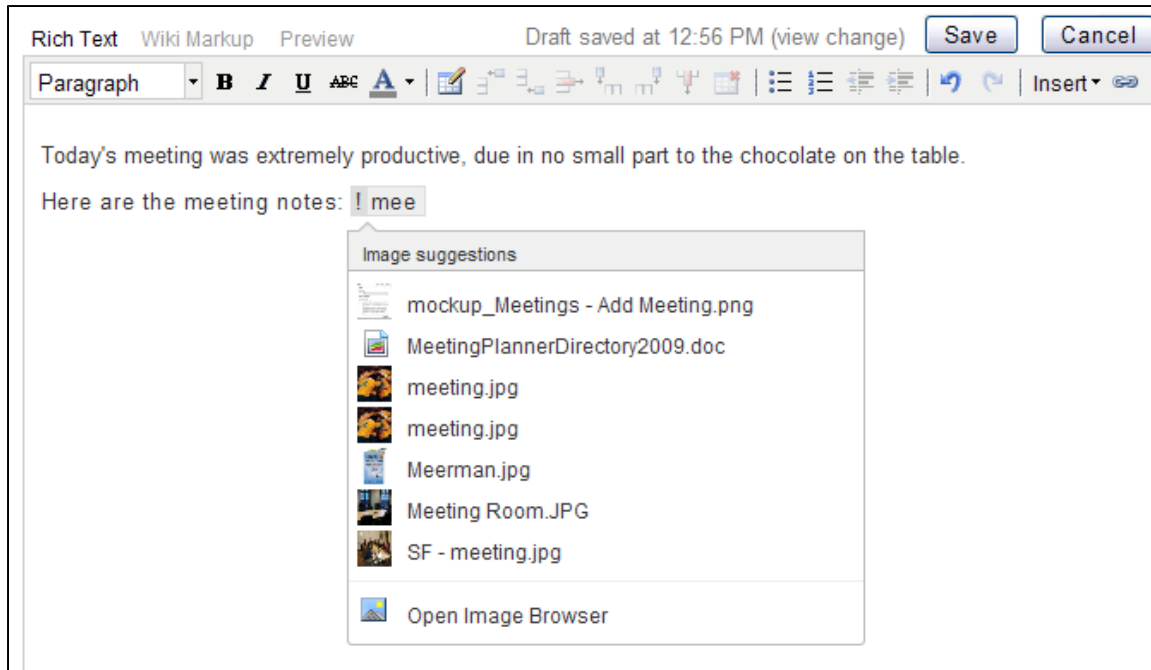
To embed an image, video, audio file or document:

1. Edit the page.
2. Click where you want to insert the image, video, audio file or document and do one of the following:
 - Type '!' and then the first few characters of the image, file or document name.
 - Type the first few characters of the name of the image, file or document (or select relevant text) and then press Ctrl+Shift+M.
3. Choose the relevant file from the list of suggestions.

If the item you need is not in the list, either:

- Choose **Open Image Browser** to find images and documents using the Image Browser, or
- Choose **Insert Other Media** to embed videos, audio and other multimedia files using the [Macro Browser](#). Insert the 'Multimedia' macro to display your multimedia file.

Screenshot: Autocomplete for an Image or Document



Using Autocomplete for Macros

Type '{' to see a list of suggested macros to add to your page.

Autocomplete provides access to all available macros in your Confluence site, including any [user macros](#) that your administrator has added and made visible to all.

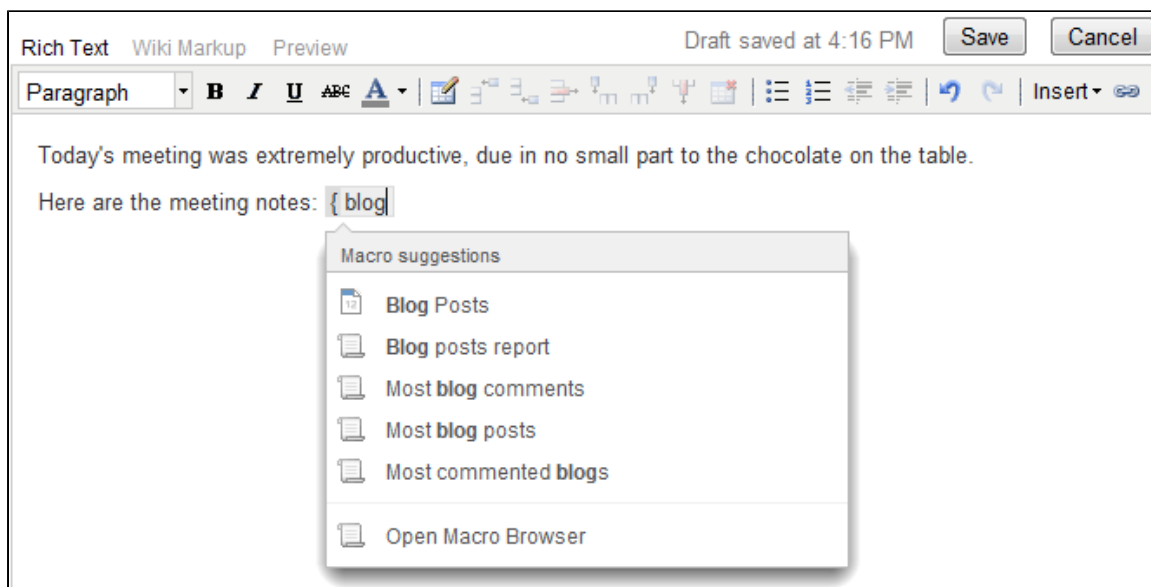
i You need to know the name of macro. Autocomplete for macros will only match the name of the macro, not the description.

To autocomplete a macro using '{':

1. Edit the page.
2. Click where you want to insert the macro.
3. Type '{' and then the first few characters of the macro name.
4. Choose the relevant macro from the list of suggestions.
5. Configure the macro as described in [Working with the Macro Browser](#).

If the macro you need is not in the list, select **Open Macro Browser** in the list of suggestions to continue looking for the macro in the [Macro Browser](#).

Screenshot: Autocomplete for a Macro



Using Autocomplete for Mentions

You can use autocomplete to automatically notify another Confluence user that you have mentioned them in a page, blog post, comment or status update.

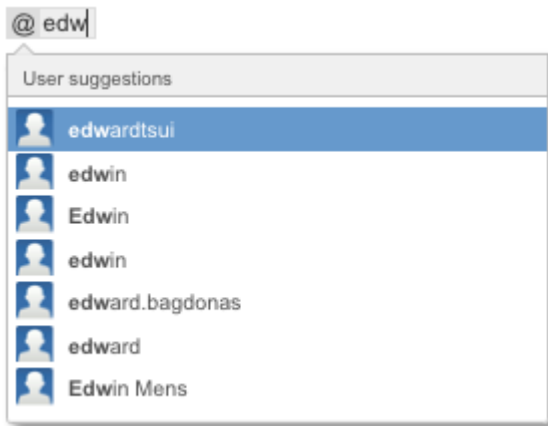
Type '@' to see a list of suggested users to mention. When you save the page, an email is automatically sent to the user to notify them that they have been mentioned on that page (if they have permission to view the page or blog post). This works for new and updated pages, blog posts, comment and status updates.

i You need to know the user's real name – autocomplete for mentions suggests users' full names only, not their usernames.

To autocomplete a mention using '@':

1. Edit the page.
2. Click where you want to insert a mention and type '@' and then the first few characters of the user's real name.
3. Choose the user's name from the list of suggestions.

Screenshot: Autocomplete for mentions



Cancelling Autocomplete

The autocomplete starts automatically when you press the trigger characters. You may want to close the autocomplete menu or escape from autocomplete once it has started.

There are a few different ways to stop the autocomplete once it has started:

- Press the escape key, 'Esc', on your keyboard.
- Click somewhere else in the editor panel.
- Press an arrow key to move out of the autocomplete area.
- For the *link* autocomplete only: enter a right-hand square bracket, like this:]

Enabling and Disabling Autocomplete

You can turn off the triggering of autocomplete by the '[' and ']' characters. This will prevent the autocomplete from starting automatically when you press one of the trigger characters. You can also turn it back on again.

Notes:

- This setting does not affect the keyboard shortcuts for autocomplete (Ctrl+Shift+K and Ctrl+Shift+M). Even if the trigger characters are disabled, you can still use the keyboard shortcuts for autocomplete.
- This setting affects only you. Other people using Confluence can enable or disable the setting on their user profiles independently.
- Note that autocomplete is enabled by default.

To enable or disable the autocomplete trigger characters:

1. Go to **your name** (the 'User' menu) at the top of the page and choose **Settings**.
2. Choose **Editor** under 'Your Settings' in the left-hand panel.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. Either:
 - Disable autocompletion by selecting **Disable Autocomplete**.
 - Enable autocompletion by clearing **Disable Autocomplete**.
5. Click **Submit**.

Screenshot: User Settings for the Editor

Profile Network Status Updates Labels Watches Drafts Settings Extensions

Gadgets

View OAuth Access Tokens

Your Settings

General
Email
Editor

Editor Settings

☐ **Disable Autocomplete**
Disable Autocomplete in the Editor, where it allows links to be inserted with the trigger `[`, images with the trigger `!` and user mentions with the trigger `@`.

☐ **Disable Autoformatting**
Disable Autoformatting in the Editor, where it allows wiki-formatted text to be converted to its Rich Text equivalent (e.g. `"h1. title"` for a heading).

Edit

Related Topics

[Working with Links](#)

[Using Images](#)

[Working with Macros](#)

[Keyboard Shortcuts](#)

[User Profile Overview](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Using Special Characters

There are different kinds of special characters that you can add to Confluence content (pages, blog posts, comments):

Symbols

Symbols are special characters such as © and ™.

To insert a symbol, choose **Insert > Symbol**, and click on the required symbol.

Emoticons and Icons

Emoticons and icons are special characters such as 😊 and ✅.

To insert an emoticon or icon, simply type the [character combination](#) for it.

Related Topics

[How to Disable Emoticons](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Inserting Emoticons and Icons

Adding Emoticons

There are two ways to add an emoticon, or smiley, to your Confluence page.

By choosing an emoticon from those available:

1. Choose **Insert > Emoticon** when editing, to display the available emoticons.
2. Click on an emoticon to insert it.

By typing a character combination:

You can insert emoticons by typing commonly-used character combinations. For example, the following code appears as an emoticon when the page is rendered.

```
;) )
```

This example creates this emoticon: 😊 .

The emoticons (and other icons) available in Confluence, and the character combinations that create them, are shown in this table:

Image																				
Notation	:)	:(	:P	:D	;	(y)	(n)	(i)	(/)	(x)	(!)	(+)	(-)	(?)	(on)	(off)	(*)	(*r)	(*g)	(

Preventing Emoticons from Appearing

To prevent Confluence from turning parts of text into emoticons, 'escape' the character sequence by inserting a '\' character.

For example, this character sequence contains an emoticon:

```
(-example_here;)
```

This example appears as: (-example_here 😊).

To 'escape' the emoticon sequence, insert a slash as in the following example:

```
(-example_here\;)
```

The characters will then appear exactly as typed.

Related Topics

[Displaying Images](#)

[How to Disable Emoticons](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

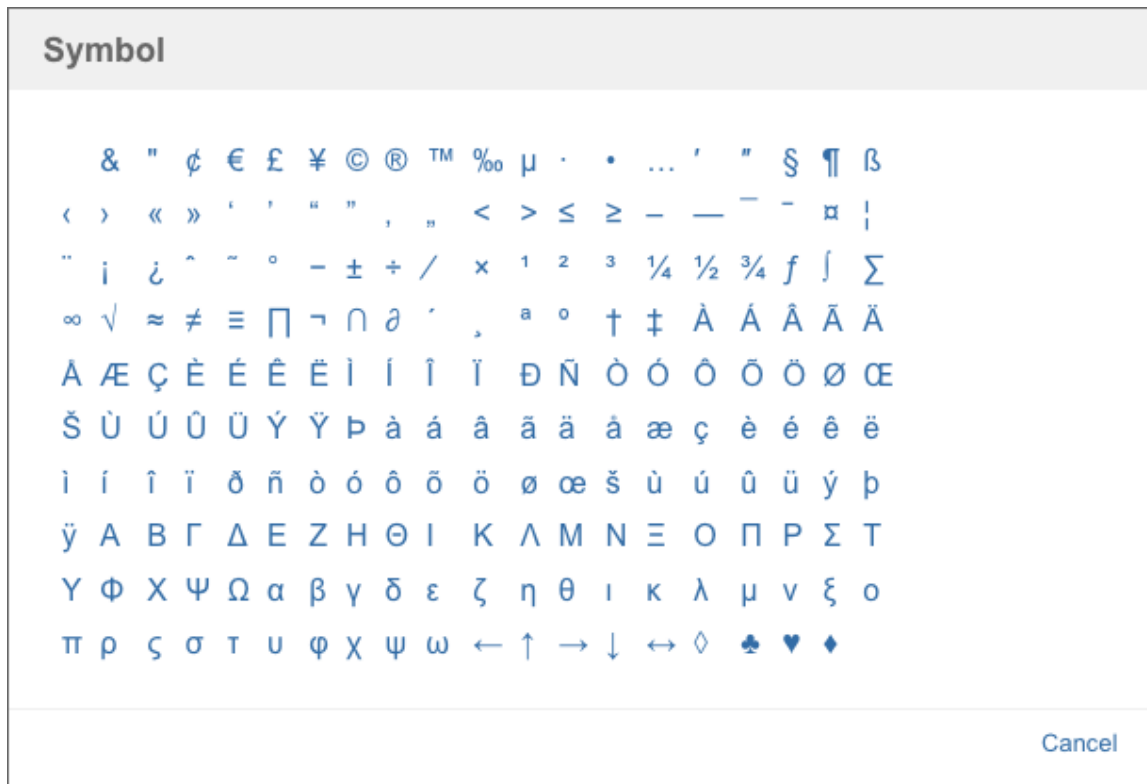
Inserting Symbols

There are various symbols, or special characters, that you can add to your Confluence page.

To insert a symbol:

1. Choose **Insert** > **Symbol**. This will display the 'Insert Custom Character' window.
2. Click on the required symbol to insert it.

Screenshot : Available symbols



Related Topics

[Inserting Emoticons and Icons](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Working with the Macro Browser

The Macro Browser allows you to browse through Confluence's extensive range of macros and to preview them before adding them to your page.

The Macro Browser provides access to all available macros in your Confluence site, including any [user macros](#) and plugins that your administrator has added and made visible to all.

On this page:

- [Accessing the Macro Browser](#)
- [Finding a Macro](#)
 - [Browsing by Category](#)
 - [Searching](#)
- [Adding a Macro to a Page or Blog Post](#)
- [Editing a Macro](#)
 - [Macro Browser Smart Fields](#)
 - [Macro Placeholders](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Accessing the Macro Browser

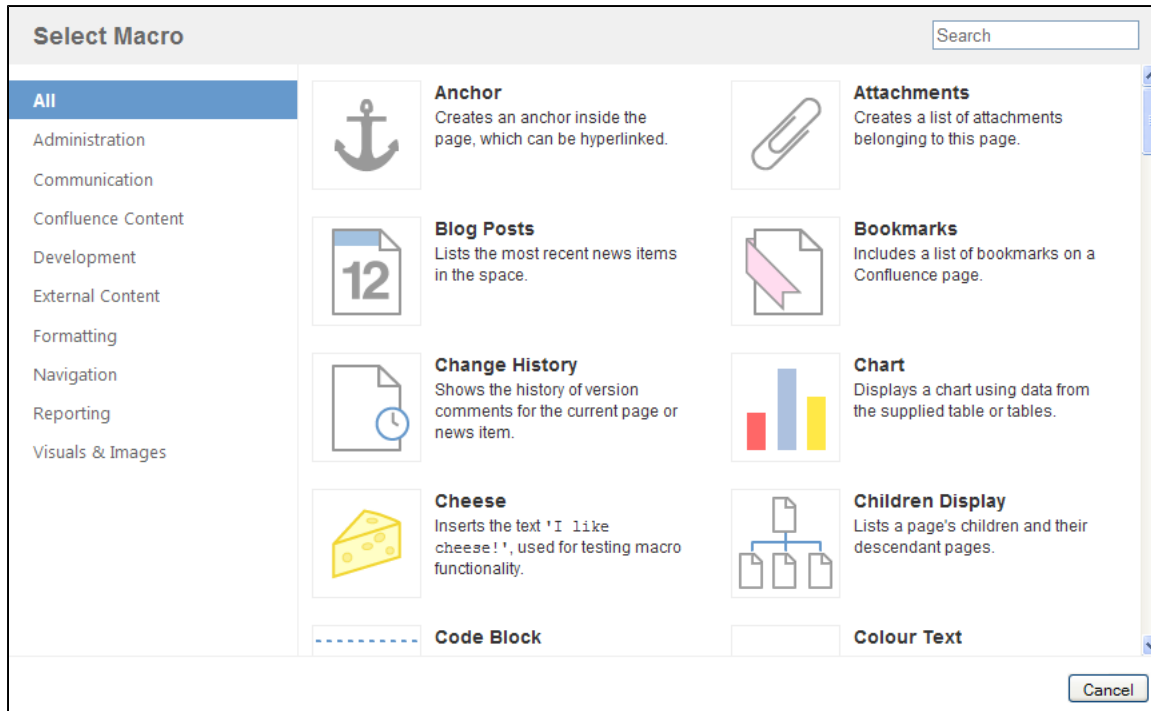
You can access the Macro Browser whenever you edit a page, blog post or comment.

To access the Macro Browser:

1. Log in to Confluence, if you have not already done so.
2. Edit a page or blog post.
3. Click where you want to insert the macro.
4. Either choose **Insert > Other Macros**, or type '{' and choose **Open Macro Browser**.

Each macro is represented in the Macro Browser by its icon, its name and a brief description of its function.

Screenshot: Macro Browser



Finding a Macro

The Macro Browser provides two methods for finding a macro:

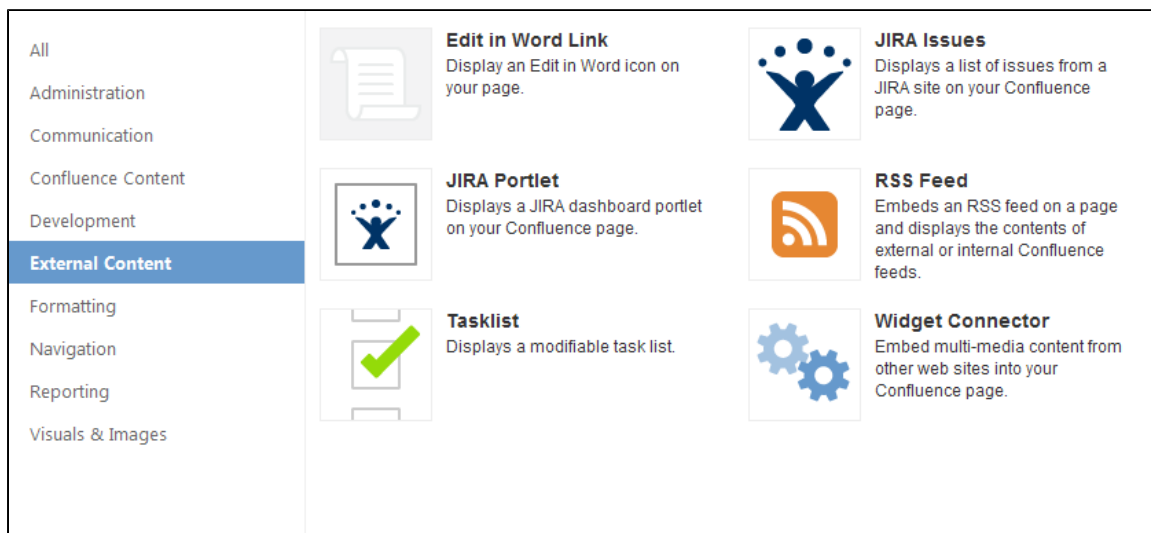
- Browsing by category
- Searching

You can also simply type '{' to see a list of suggested macros. For more details, see [Using Autocomplete](#).

Browsing by Category

Each macro is assigned to one or more categories. Click a category name to see the macros in that category.

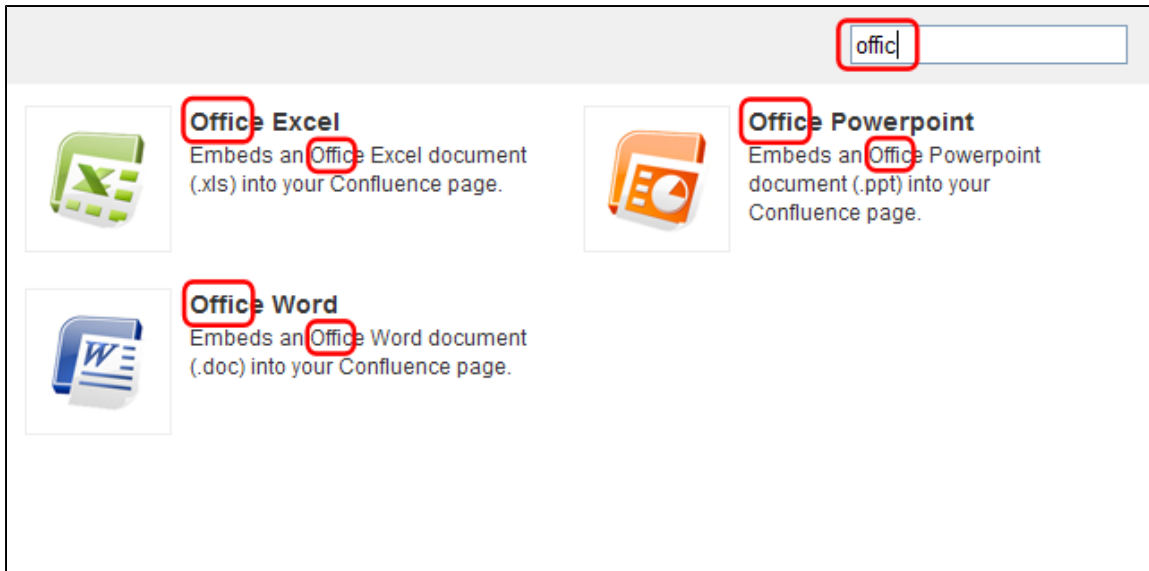
Screenshot: Macro Browser List Restricted by Category



Searching

Enter a word or words into the search field at the top of the Macro Browser. As you start typing, the macro list is filtered to show only those macros whose name or description matches the characters you have entered.

Screenshot: Macro Browser List Restricted by Word Search



Adding a Macro to a Page or Blog Post

When you choose a macro and add it to a page or blog post, you may need to configure the macro's parameters.

To choose and configure a macro:

1. Access the Macro Browser and browse to the required macro as described above, if you have not already done so.
2. Click the required macro to choose it. The Macro Browser window changes to the 'Edit Macro' mode with a preview pane on the left and parameter pane on the right.
3. If necessary, modify the macro's parameters in the parameter pane. Some parameters allow [auto-completion](#).
4. Click **Refresh** to preview the effect of your changes to the macro's parameters.
5. Click **Insert** to add the macro to the page or blog post.



Not all macros can be previewed in the Macro Browser. This is often the case with macros that require the page to be saved first to render correctly, such as the Table of Contents Macro, or macros that do not generate output, such as the Anchor Macro. Nevertheless, you can still use the Macro Browser to browse for these macros and set their specific parameters before inserting them into your page.

Editing a Macro

You can edit a macro that has already been added to a page or blog post, modifying the parameter data and previewing the changes.

To edit a macro:

1. Edit the page or blog post containing the macro you wish to edit.
2. Click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit**.
3. Modify the macro's parameters in the parameter pane. Some parameters allow [auto-completion](#).
4. Click **Refresh** to preview the effect of your changes to the macro's parameters.
5. Click **Save** in the Macro Browser to save your changes.

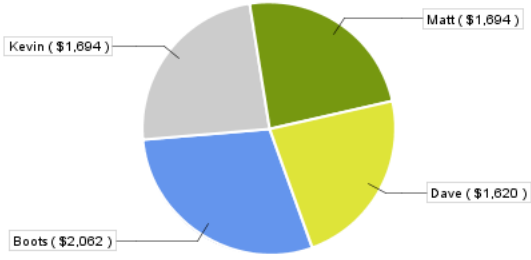


To leave the Macro Browser at any time, click its **Cancel** button or simply press the 'ESC' key.

Screenshot: Editing an Existing Macro with the Macro Browser in 'Macro Preview' Mode

Edit 'Chart' Macro

Preview



Refresh

Type

pie

Chart Title

Sales by Rep

X-axis Label

Y-axis Label

Show Legend?

☐

Display Orientation

vertical

Stacked Values

☐

Shows stacked values for bar and area charts.

Show in 3D

☐

Width (pixel value only)

500

Save

Cancel

Macro Browser Smart Fields

If a macro's parameter requires the entry of a single username, space key or page title, the macro browser provides an 'auto-complete' feature to help you enter the correct value. Use the up- and down-arrows on your keyboard to move up and down the dropdown list of matching items and select the appropriate item. This feature functions similarly to the [Quick Navigation Aid](#) when searching Confluence pages.

Screenshot: Macro Browser Smart Fields

Displays the excerpted contents from another page within the same space. [Documentation](#)

Page Containing the Excerpt *

Mon

Monkey Trousers

Monkey Butter

Monkey Island

Barrel of Monkeys

Macro Placeholders

Macro placeholders are displayed in the editor where you have added a macro to the page.

When editing a page, you can:

- Double-click a macro placeholder to open the Macro Browser (or click on the placeholder and choose **Edit**), where you can edit the macro's parameters.
- Select a macro placeholder to cut, copy and paste the macro.

Related Topics

[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Inserting JIRA Issues

If your Confluence site is connected to a JIRA site using an [application link](#), you can easily insert individual issues from this JIRA site directly

into text on your Confluence page using the 'Insert JIRA Issue' dialog. Each issue inserted onto the page is linked to the issue in JIRA itself.

Using the 'Insert JIRA Issue' dialog, you can also:

- Create a new issue on the JIRA site *and* insert the issue onto your page.
- Insert a table of JIRA issues onto your page based on the results of a search (using [JIRA Query Language \(JQL\) syntax](#)).

i If your Confluence site is not connected to any JIRA site via an application link, this feature will not be available. However, you can still list JIRA issues on a page or blog post using the [JIRA issues macro](#).

On this page:

- [Inserting a JIRA Issue from a List of Recently Viewed Issues](#)
- [Creating a New JIRA Issue and Inserting it](#)
- [Searching for JIRA Issues and Inserting them](#)
- [Notes](#)
- [Related Topics](#)



Quick guide to inserting JIRA issues

- Choose **Insert > JIRA Issue** from the editor toolbar.
 - To insert a single issue, use either:
 - **Recently Viewed** — Insert an issue onto your page from a list of issues you have recently viewed on the JIRA server.
 - **Create New Issue** — Create a new issue on the JIRA server and insert it into your page.
 - **Search** — Use JQL syntax to narrow down a list of issues, from which you can select one to insert onto a page.
 - To insert a table of issues:
 - Click **Search** on the 'Insert JIRA Issues' dialog, use JQL syntax to narrow down a list of issues and choose to insert the list onto a page.

i If Confluence is connected to more than one JIRA server, ensure that you choose the appropriate JIRA server before using this dialog to select, create or search for issues.

Inserting a JIRA Issue from a List of Recently Viewed Issues

To insert a JIRA issue onto a page from a list of recently viewed issues on a JIRA site:

1. Choose **Insert > JIRA Issue** from the editor toolbar.
2. Go to the **Recently Viewed** tab of the 'Insert JIRA Issue' dialog.
3. If necessary, select a JIRA server from the **Server** list. See the [notes below](#) regarding OAuth outgoing authentication.
4. Select an issue from your list of recently viewed JIRA issues on the JIRA site. The number of items in the list is defined in JIRA.

Creating a New JIRA Issue and Inserting it


i This feature works best with JIRA issue types whose mandatory field requirements have not been altered. With the exception of a JIRA issue's 'Component/s' or 'Fix Version/s' fields, you cannot use this dialog to add an issue whose issue type has customised mandatory field requirements upon issue creation.

To create a new JIRA issue on a JIRA site and insert this issue onto a page:

1. Go to the **Create New Issue** tab of the 'Insert JIRA Issue' dialog.
2. Complete the dialog:

Setting	Description
Server	The available JIRA servers. See the notes below regarding OAuth outgoing authentication.
Project	The project on the selected JIRA server to which the new issue will be added.
Issue Type	The type of issue to log in this project.
Summary	A one-line summary for the issue.
Component/s	Choose one or more components which apply to this issue.

Version/s	Choose one or more versions in which the issue will be addressed.
Description	A more detailed description about the issue.

 Some of these fields may not be visible if they have been customised in your JIRA project.

3. Click **Insert** to create the JIRA issue and insert it onto the page.

Searching for JIRA Issues and Inserting them

To search a JIRA site for a subset of issues matching a JQL query and insert one or more of these issues:

1. Choose **Insert > JIRA Issue** from the editor toolbar.
2. Go to the **Search** tab of the 'Insert JIRA Issue' dialog.
3. Enter a [JQL query](#).
4. If necessary, select the JIRA server whose issues you want to insert.
5. Click **Search** to find the issues on the JIRA server which match your JQL query. The first 20 issues retrieved by your JQL query are displayed.
 - To insert a single issue, select the issue from your list and click **Insert**.
 - To insert the full list of issues, select the **Insert all query results as a table** check box before clicking **Insert**.

Notes

The issues from a JIRA site which you can access in the 'Insert JIRA Issues' dialog depends on the application link's *outgoing authentication* used by Confluence to communicate with that JIRA site. While you can always access publicly visible issues:

- If 'Trusted Applications' outgoing authentication is used — you can also view issues restricted to an account on JIRA whose user name matches your user name in Confluence.
- If 'OAuth' outgoing authentication is used, you may need to click **Login & Approve** at this point to gain access to the JIRA server and restricted issues. You can also view issues restricted to the user account that you 'Login & Approve' (to the JIRA site) on the 'Insert JIRA Issues' dialog.
- If 'Basic Access' outgoing authentication is used — you can also view issues restricted to the user account configured for the JIRA site's 'outgoing authentication'.

Related Topics

[JIRA Issues Macro](#)

Working with Drafts

A draft is a 'snapshot' of unsaved page content, which Confluence creates automatically at regular intervals while you are editing a page or blog post. This can minimise the loss of work if your Confluence site experiences a problem, since you can retrieve the page content from your last saved draft.

On this page:

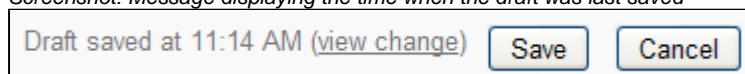
- [How are drafts implemented in Confluence?](#)
- [Viewing Unsaved Changes](#)
- [Viewing Drafts](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

How are drafts implemented in Confluence?

At regular intervals, Confluence automatically saves a draft of the page you are editing. If a network failure or system error prevents you from saving your page, you can retrieve its last saved draft and continue working on the page from (or almost from) where you left off.

- Drafts are created while you are adding and editing a page or blog post. Each new draft replaces the previously saved draft.
- Each time Confluence saves a draft, it displays a message and the time of the last save near the **Save** button on the edit screen.

Screenshot: Message displaying the time when the draft was last saved



Whenever you edit a page and click one of the other page tabs, Confluence will automatically save a draft. When you click on the **Edit** tab again, Confluence will let you know that a version of the page you are editing was not saved and will give you the option to resume editing it.

- By default, Confluence saves a draft of your page once every thirty seconds. However, a [Confluence administrator](#) can [configure how often drafts are saved](#).

Drafts Possess the Following Characteristics

- A user only has access to the drafts of pages they have been working on and whose content has not yet been saved.
- A user cannot create a draft explicitly.
- A user's drafts are listed in the 'Drafts' tab of their [profile](#).
- Once a user has [resumed editing a draft](#), or chosen to discard it, it is removed from their drafts tab.

Viewing Unsaved Changes

While editing a page or blog post, you can view any 'unsaved' changes you have made since the last automatically saved draft, by clicking **view change** (near the **Save** button).

Screenshot: Segment of the Unpublished Changes Window

Unpublished Changes for 'Working with Drafts Overview'

At regular intervals, Confluence will automatically save the page you are editing and maintain a copy of it as a draft. If some system failure or error prevents you from saving your changes, you can retrieve the draft and continue working on it.

A draft is a snapshot version of a page which Confluence saves automatically at regular intervals while you are editing the page. Confluence saves these interim versions even if you do not save the page yourself. This is a useful feature that minimises loss of work if your Confluence site experiences a problem.

At regular intervals, Confluence will automatically save the page you are editing and maintain a copy of it as a draft. If some system failure or error prevents you from saving your changes, you can retrieve the draft and continue working on it.

* Drafts are created while you are adding and editing a page or blog post.

\\ \\

...

Key

~~This line was removed.~~

This ~~word~~ was removed. This word was added.

This line was added.

Viewing Drafts

Your drafts are listed on the **Drafts** tab of your user profile.

To see your drafts:

Go to **your name** (the 'User' menu) at the top of the page and choose **Drafts**.

Related Topics

[Resuming the Editing of a Draft](#)
[Configuring the Time Interval at which Drafts are Saved](#)
[Concurrent Editing and Merging Changes](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence Documentation Home](#) page.

Configuring the Time Interval at which Drafts are Saved

By default, Confluence saves a draft of your page once every thirty seconds. However, as described below, a [Confluence administrator](#) can configure how often drafts are saved.

As a [Confluence administrator](#), you can set the time interval at which drafts are saved as follows:

1. Go to the Confluence 'Administration Console':
 - Choose **Browse > Confluence Admin**. The 'Administrator Access' login screen will be displayed.
 - Enter your password and click **Confirm**. You will be temporarily logged into a [secure session](#) to access the 'Administration Console'.
2. Click **General Configuration** in the left-hand panel.
3. Edit the setting for **Draft Save Interval**.

Related Topics

[Working with Drafts](#)
[Resuming the Editing of a Draft](#)

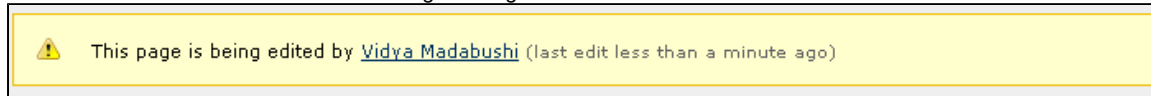
Concurrent Editing and Merging Changes

Sometimes, two or more people may edit a page at the same time. When this happens, Confluence will do its best to ensure that nobody's changes are lost.

How will I know if someone else is editing the same page as I am?

If another user is editing the same page as you, Confluence will display a message above your edit screen letting you know who the other user is and when the last edit was made.

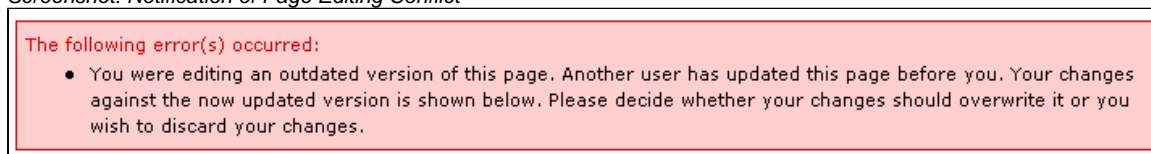
Screenshot: Notification of Simultaneous Page Editing



What happens if two of us are editing the same page and the other user saves before I do?

If someone else has saved the page before you, when you click 'Save', Confluence will check if there are any conflicts between your changes and theirs. If there are no conflicting changes, Confluence will merge both the edits successfully. If there are any conflicts, Confluence will display them for you and give you the option to either '**Overwrite**' the other user's changes, '**Merge your changes**' manually, or '**Discard**' them.

Screenshot: Notification of Page Editing Conflict



Example Scenario

For example, Alice and Bob both edit the same page at the same time.

If Alice clicks save before Bob, Bob is now effectively editing an out-of-date version of the page. When Bob clicks save, Confluence will examine his changes to see if any overlap with Alice's. If the changes do not overlap (i.e. Alice and Bob edited different parts of the page), Bob's changes will be *merged* with Alice's automatically.

If Bob's changes overlap with Alice's, Confluence will display an error message to Bob showing where Alice has changed the page, and giving Bob the options to overwrite Alice's changes with his own, to re-edit the document to incorporate Alice's work, or to cancel his own changes entirely.

Related Topics

[Page History and Page Comparison Views](#)
[Viewing Page Information](#)
[Working with Drafts](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#).


Resuming the Editing of a Draft

If you have typed some content into a Confluence page or blog post, Confluence will save a draft of it, even if you were not able to successfully save the page or blog post, or add a title to it.

There are two ways to resume editing an unsaved page or blog post:

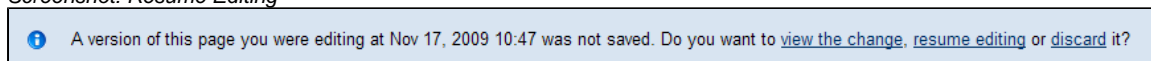
A. Using your drafts view. To resume editing a draft from this view:

1. Go to **your name** (the 'User' menu) at the top of the page and choose **Drafts**.
2. Click **Resume Editing** next to the appropriate draft to resume editing that draft.

 If you had not yet entered a page title, the draft will be listed with the title '*Untitled*'.

B. If you had created a new page or blog post but did not save it, then when you next [add a page](#) or blog post in that space, Confluence will ask you if you want to resume editing the page that was not saved. If you click **resume editing**, the draft and its unsaved content will be restored, allowing you to continue editing it.

Screenshot: Resume Editing




What happens if I am editing the draft of a page that has since been updated?

When this happens, Confluence will display a message informing you that you are editing an outdated page. If there are no conflicts between the two versions, Confluence will give you the option to **Merge and Resume editing**.

If there are any conflicts, Confluence will give you the option to **View the Conflict** or to **Discard** your changes.

Screenshot: Editing Conflict in Draft

 A version of this page you were editing at Dec 19, 2005 09:39 was not saved. The page has since been updated. The changes made conflict with your changes and cannot be merged. Do you want to [view the conflict](#) or [discard](#) your changes?

Related Topics

[Working with Drafts](#)

Recording Change Comments

A 'change comment' is a short description that summarises the changes made to a page during an editing session. Change comments are a useful way of keeping track of the history of a page.

A change comment is not the same as a comment added to a page. Refer to [Working with Comments](#) for information about that type of comment.

Note that once a change comment has been added and the page has been saved, it is not possible to update or remove the change comment.

On this page:

- [Entering a Change Comment](#)
- [Viewing a Change Comment](#)
- [Viewing a History of Change Comments](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Entering a Change Comment


You can enter change comments in the field located below the edit screen:

Screenshot: Entering change comments


Viewing a Change Comment

Once a comment has been added, it becomes visible in the view mode of the page, so that users are aware of the most recent changes made to a page. If a comment has been recorded, you will see a **show comment** link below the page title. Click the link to view the comment.

Screenshot: The 'show comment' link




Sample page


 1 Added by [Administrator](#), last edited by [Administrator](#) on Mar 02, 2011 ([view change](#)) [show comment](#)

The **hide comment** link allows you to hide the comment again, so that it does not distract you from the content of the page.

Screenshot: The 'hide comment' link



Sample page

 1 Added by [Administrator](#), last edited by [Administrator](#) on Mar 02, 2011 ([view change](#)) [hide comment](#)

Comment: Added the cheese macro.

Viewing a History of Change Comments

The change comments for a page are recorded under the 'Recent Changes' section of the page's 'Info' view and in the page's 'History' view.

Screenshot: History of change comments on Info view

Recent Changes		
Since you last logged in: Administrator made 4 changes. (view)		
Time	Editor	
Mar 02, 2011 17:15	Administrator	view changes
Added the cheese macro.		
Mar 02, 2011 17:15	Administrator	view changes
Mar 02, 2011 17:04	Administrator	view changes
Mar 02, 2011 17:04	Administrator	view changes

Screenshot: History of change comments on History view

Version	Date	Changed By	Operations
<input type="checkbox"/> CURRENT (v. 12)	Mar 02, 2011 17:15	Administrator: Added the cheese macro.	
<input type="checkbox"/> v. 11	Mar 02, 2011 17:15	Administrator	Restore this version
<input type="checkbox"/> v. 10	Mar 02, 2011 17:04	Administrator	Restore this version

Related Topics

[Viewing Page Information](#)

[Page History and Page Comparison Views](#)

[Take me back to Confluence User's Guide](#)

Creating a Page

The usual ways to create a page are described below.

Once you create a page, you can:

- add content to it [using the editor](#)
- set the [page's location](#) in the Confluence site, before you save the page.

You can always [move the page](#) to a different location in the page tree, or to a different space, after you have saved the page.

You may like to read about [writing blog posts](#).



Permissions

To create a page, you need the 'Create Pages' permission for that space, which is assigned by a [space administrator](#) from the Space Administration screens. See [space permissions](#) or contact a space administrator for more information.

On this page:

- [Add a page from the dashboard](#)
- [Add a page from any page in a space](#)
- [Add a page using an undefined link](#)
- [Setting Page Location](#)
- [Importing an Office Document into One or More Confluence Pages](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Add a page from the dashboard

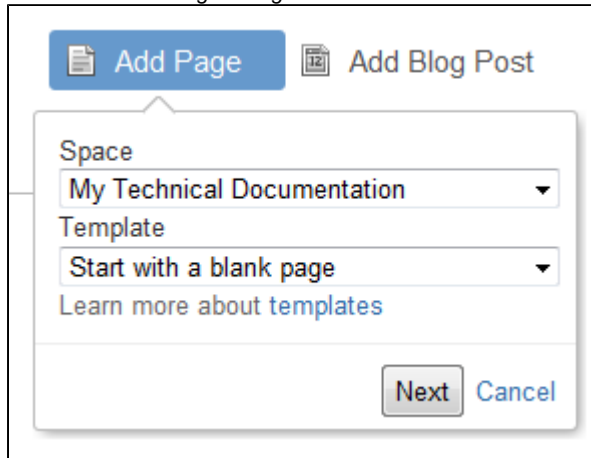
You can quickly add a page from the [dashboard](#) without having to browse to a specific space. Confluence adds the new page at the root of

the space.

To add a new page from the dashboard:

1. Click **Add Page** at the top right of the dashboard.
2. Select the [space](#) where you want to add the page and choose a template on which to base the page content. For more details about using a template, see [Creating a Page using a Template](#).
3. Click **Next**. Confluence opens the page in 'Edit' mode.

Screenshot: Add Page dialog on the Confluence dashboard



Add a page from any page in a space

By default, Confluence adds the new page as a [child page](#) of the current page.

To add a new page:

1. Go to any page in the space.
2. Choose **Add > Page**.

Note that you will only see the **Add Page** link if you have permission to create pages for the space. You can also create a page [using a template](#).



Pages with large amounts of text content

One user reported having problems saving a page that contained approximately 700 kilobytes (700,000 characters) or more of text content. Refer to [CONF-16467](#) for more information. Some browsers appear to be more susceptible to this issue than others. While it is highly unlikely that your page content will ever reach this size, if you work with large pages, structuring your content [into separate pages](#) will help to avoid this issue.

Add a page using an undefined link

You may want to insert a link pointing to a Confluence page that does not yet exist, but which you intend to create later. This type of link is called an [undefined link](#).

To add an undefined link for later creation of a page:

1. Edit the page in which the link should appear.
2. Type **[** to trigger autocomplete, and type the name of the undefined page.
3. Choose **Insert Link to Create Page**.

When you save the page, Confluence colours the undefined link red. When someone clicks on the link, the new page is opened in 'Edit' mode. You can then enter the page name, add content and save the page, as [usual](#).

Setting Page Location

While you are editing a new page you can set the page's location to any space of your Confluence site.

To set the location for a new page:

1. While editing the page, click **Location**.
2. Use the tabs on the left of the 'Set Page Location' dialog to help you find the new space and parent page for your page, that is, the location where you want to move your page. The 'Current location' and 'New location' breadcrumb trails at the bottom of the dialog

indicate the current parent page and new parent page.

3. If you want to move a page to a different position amongst the child pages, select **Reorder** to see a list of sibling pages when you click **Move**.
4. Click **Move**.
5. If you are reordering the child pages, click in the list to set the new position for the page and click **Reorder**.

See also [Moving a Page](#).

Screenshot: Setting page location for a new page

Set Page Location

Help

Advanced


Search

Recently Viewed


Browse

Specify the new parent page for this page and its children by space and title.

New space:



New parent page:



Start typing a page title to see a list of suggestions.

Current location:

Paul Watson › Home

New location:

Confluence › Confluence - JIRA Linking

☐ Reorder

Move

Cancel

Importing an Office Document into One or More Confluence Pages

The Office Connector allows you to import a Word document into Confluence, optionally creating one or more new pages. See [Importing an Office Document into Confluence](#).

Related Topics

[Creating a Page using a Template](#)
[Working with Drafts](#)
[Linking Pages](#)
[Page Restrictions](#)
[Working with the Office Connector](#)
[Moving a Page](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Adding Blog Posts

To add a blog post for a space, you require 'Create Blog' permission which is assigned by a [space administrator](#). See [Space permissions](#) or contact a space administrator for more information.

On this page:

- [From the Dashboard](#)
- [From Any Page](#)
- [Notes](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

From the Dashboard

You can add a blog post to any space from the [Dashboard](#), without having to browse to that space.

To add a blog post from the Dashboard:

1. Click **Add Blog Post** at the top right of the Dashboard.
2. Select the space where you want to add the blog post.
3. Click **Next**. Confluence will open the **Add Blog Post** screen in edit mode.
4. Type your content as you would for any other page in Confluence.
5. Preview and click **Save** when you are finished.

From Any Page

You can add a blog post from any page (other than the Dashboard) in the space.

To add a blog post from any page:

1. Click **Add** near the top right of the page and choose **Blog Post**. Confluence will open the **Add Blog Post** screen in edit mode.
2. Type your content as you would for any other page in Confluence.
3. Preview and click **Save** when you are finished.

Notes

- Add [labels](#) if you want to categorise information this way.
- If you want to backdate your blog post, edit the date in **Posting Date**. You cannot set a date after today's. Also, you can only set the date when *creating* the blog post, not when editing it.
- You can view the blog for the current space by opening the **Browse** menu and selecting **Blog**. Your blog post should be listed.

Related Topics

[Creating a Page](#)
[Working with Blog Posts](#)
[Editing Blog Posts](#)
[Linking to Blog Posts](#)
[Deleting Blog Posts](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Working with Templates

When you add a new page, you do not have to write the content from scratch. Instead, you can base your new page on a template. A template is a Confluence page with predefined content.

Some examples of where templates are useful:

- A software development project may have a template for use cases.
- A systems administration space may have a template for defining what information is kept about each server.

On this page:

- [Global Templates and Space Templates](#)
- [Creating a Template](#)
- [Using a Template](#)
- [Useful Plugins](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Global Templates and Space Templates

In Confluence, there are two places to store your templates:

- **Global templates:** These are defined by [site administrators](#) through the [Administration Console](#) and are available in every space.
- **Space templates:** These are defined by [space administrators](#) on the space administration screens, and are only available in the space in which they are defined.

Site administrators can also [import predefined templates](#).

Creating a Template

You need to be a [space administrator](#) to create a space template.

You can write your template using Confluence [wiki markup](#). You can also use [special form markup](#) if you wish to define form fields that the author will complete when adding the page.

See [Adding a Template](#) for further information about creating a space template.

See [Global Templates](#) for information about creating a global template.

Screenshot: Template variables available when adding a template

Using a Template

Templates are only used when adding a page. Once a page has been created, the template is no longer linked to the page. All further editing is performed as if the template was never used. Some plugins provide expanded functionality.

See [Creating a Page using a Template](#) for further information about using a space template.

Useful Plugins

Before installing a plugin into your Confluence site, please check the plugin's information page to see whether it is supported by Atlassian, by another vendor, or not at all. See our guidelines on [plugin support](#).

Two popular plugins provide extended template functionality:

- [Zones plugin](#).
- [Scaffolding plugin](#).

Below is a comparison:

Field	Default	Zones Plugin	Scaffolding Plugin
Description	Basic	Flexible	Powerful
Saves page version history	✓	✓	✓
Allows return to form version	✗	✓	✓
Suitable for dynamic data	✗	✗	✓
Has a library of examples	✗	✗	✓

Related Topics

[Adding a Template](#)
[Form Field Markup for Templates](#)
[Global Templates](#)
[Importing Templates](#)
[Creating a Page using a Template](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Adding a Template

You need to be a [space administrator](#) to create a space template.

To add a template for a space:

1. a. From any page in the space, choose **Browse > Advanced**.
b. Click **Templates** in the left-hand panel.
c. Click **Add New Space Template**.

2. The 'Create Template' screen will appear. Enter a name for your template in the **Name** text field and an optional description in the **Description** text field.
3. Using regular [Confluence wiki markup](#) and [form field markup](#) (if you are using forms), enter content in the text box. See the screenshot below.
4. Click **Edit** next to 'Labels' if you want to use [labels](#) to categorise information. Add your labels. These labels will be included in all pages created using this template.
5. Preview and click **Save**. Your template will be added to the list of space templates.

To view the space templates, choose **Browse > Advanced > Templates**.

Screenshot: creating a Confluence page template

Preview & Edit Template

Pages Blog Labels Attachments Mail Advanced Space Admin

Preview start

Customer Order Form

Product	Quantity	Price	Total
<input type="text"/> (Product)	<input type="text"/> (Qty)	<input type="text"/> (Price)	<input type="text"/> (Total)

Preview end

Name **Description**

h3. Customer Order Form

```
|| Product || Quantity || Price || Total ||
| @Product@ | @Qty@ | @Price@ | @Total@ |
```

Related Topics

[Creating a Page using a Template](#)
[Working with Templates](#)
[Editing a template](#)
[Removing a Template](#)
[Browsing a space](#)
[Working with Pages](#)

[Working with Labels](#)

[Take me back to Confluence User's Guide](#)

Creating a Page using a Template

Confluence allows you to create a page based on a global template (available to all spaces) or a space template (available only to that space). This page is intended for users who have already [created a template](#).



Labels are copied from the template

If the template contains [labels](#), the template labels will automatically be included in the new page created from that template.

To create a page using an existing template:

1. Do either of the following:
 - At the top of the Dashboard, click **Add Page**. Choose the space that contains the template you want to use.
 - At the top of any other page, choose **Add > Page from template**. This link is only displayed if there are templates already defined. If you do not see this link, then an administrator will have to create a template before you can use it.
2. Choose a template from the list and click **Next**. This will display one of the following:
 - A new page based on the template, if the template does not contain a form.
 - The Template Variables page, if the template contains a form. Type values into the form fields and click **Insert Variables**.

This will display a new page based on the template, with the variable values you entered.

3. Type a name for the page where you see 'New Page'.
4. Add more content or make further changes as required.
5. Click **Save**.

Screenshot: creating a page from a template

Add Page - Template Variables

Step 2: Fill in template variables

Choose values for the variables in this template. These values will be automatically inserted into the template for you in the correct locations.

Customer Order Form

Product	Quantity	Price	Total
Unobtainium (Product)	1 (Qty)	\$5,999.95 (Price)	\$5,999.95 (Total)

<< Back Insert Variables

Screenshot: previewing your page

New Page

Paragraph B I U ■ A

Customer Order Form

Product	Quantity	Price	Total
Unobtainium	1	\$5,999.95	\$5,999.95

Related Topics

[Adding a Template](#)
[Editing a template](#)
[Removing a Template](#)
[Form Field Markup for Templates](#)
[Browsing a space](#)
[Working with Templates](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Editing a template

You need to be a [space administrator](#) to modify a space template.

To edit a template:

1. Choose **Browse > Advanced > Templates**. A list of templates for the space is displayed.
2. Click the **Edit** link for the template to be modified.
3. Make changes, or add new content, as you would when [creating a template](#), using [form field markup](#), if required.
4. Click **Update** to save your changes.

Related Topics

[Adding a Template](#)

[Creating a Page using a Template](#)
[Working with Templates](#)
[Working with Pages](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Removing a Template

You need to be a [space administrator](#) to remove a space template.



Warning

Deleted templates cannot be restored.

To remove a space template:

1. Choose **Browse > Advanced** and click **Templates** in the left-hand panel. A list of templates for the space is displayed.
2. Click **Remove** beside the template you wish to delete.
3. Click **OK** to confirm the deletion.

Related Topics

[Editing a template](#)
[Adding a Template](#)
[Creating a Page using a Template](#)
[Working with Templates](#)
[Working with Pages](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Confluence Wiki Markup

This page describes the wiki markup used for page templates and in some administration screens in Confluence.

You can use wiki markup to write content for a [page template](#). This content will appear in every page that uses the template. You can also use [special form markup](#) if you wish to define form fields that the page author will complete when adding the page.

Markup is also used in the following places:

- When [creating links](#) using the **Advanced** tab of the Links Browser.
- When using the Wiki Markup dialog in the Confluence editor (choose **Insert > Wiki Markup**).
- When working with some administration screens, such as the Theme Configuration screen.



Please note that documentation for the wiki markup syntax for using macros can be found [here](#) in the Confluence 3.5 documentation.

On this page:

- [Headings](#)
- [Lists](#)
- [Tables](#)
- [Text Effects](#)
- [Text Breaks](#)
- [Links](#)
- [Images](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Headings

You can use wiki markup to create headings in a page template.

Creating a header is easy. Simply place "hn." at the start of your line (where n can be a number from 1-6).

What you need to type	What you will get
h1. Biggest heading	Biggest heading

h3. Big heading	<i>Big heading</i>
h5. Small heading	<i>Small heading</i>

Note that Confluence treats all headings as [anchors](#).

Lists

Wiki markup allows you to create bulleted or numbered lists, and is flexible enough to allow a combination of the two list types.

i If you need to separate the text within lists using line breaks, make sure you do so using a double slash (//). Empty lines may disrupt the list.

Simple lists

Use the hyphen (-) to create simple lists.
Make sure there is a space between the hyphen and your text.

What you need to type	What you will get
<pre>- some - bullet - points</pre>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • some • bullet • points

Bulleted lists

Use the asterisk (*) to create bullets. For each subsequent level, add an extra asterisk.
Make sure there is a space between the asterisk and your text.

What you need to type	What you will get
<pre>* some * bullet ** indented ** bullets * points</pre>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • some • bullet <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • indented • bullets • points

Numbered lists

Use the hash (#) to create numbered lists.
Make sure there is a space between the hash and your text.

What you need to type	What you will get
<pre># a # numbered # list</pre>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. a 2. numbered 3. list

A second level of hashes will produce a sub-list, such as the **alphabetical** sub-list shown below.

What you need to type	What you will get
-----------------------	-------------------

<pre># Here's a sentence. ## This is a sub-list point. ## And a second sub-list point. # Here's another sentence.</pre>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Here's a sentence. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> This is a sub-list point. And a second sub-list point. Here's another sentence.
---	---

Try a third level of hashes to produce a sub-sub-list.

What you need to type	What you will get
<pre># Here's a sentence. ## This is a sub-list point. ### Third list level. ### Another point at the third level. ## And a second sub-list point. # Here's another sentence.</pre>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Here's a sentence. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> This is a sub-list point. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Third list level. Another point at the third level. And a second sub-list point. Here's another sentence.



In numbered lists as described above, the format of the 'number' displayed at each list level may be different, depending upon your browser and the style sheets installed on your Confluence instance. So in some cases, you may see letters (A, B, C, etc; or a, b, c, etc) or Roman numerals (i, ii, iii, etc) at different list levels.

Mixed lists

What you need to type	What you will get
<pre># Here #* is #* an # example #* of #* a # mixed # list</pre>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Here <ul style="list-style-type: none"> is an example <ul style="list-style-type: none"> of a mixed list

Tables

You can use wiki markup to create tables in a page template.

Confluence allows you to create two types of tables.

Table Type 1

Allows you to create a simple table with an optional header row. You cannot set the width of the columns in this table. Use double bars for a table heading row.

What you need to type:

<pre>| |heading 1| |heading 2| |heading 3| | |cell A1|cell A2|cell A3| |cell B1|cell B2|cell B3|</pre>
--

What you will get:

heading 1	heading 2	heading 3
cell A1	cell A2	cell A3
cell B1	cell B2	cell B3

You can also use a vertical header.

What you need to type:

```
| |heading 1|col A1|col A2|col A3|
| |heading 2|col B1|col B2|col B3|
```

What you will get:

heading 1	col A1	col A2	col A3
heading 2	col B1	col B2	col B3

Table Type 2

This method allows you to specify the width of the columns in the table.

What you need to type

```
{section:border=true}

{column:width=30%}
Text for this column goes here. This is the smaller column with a width of only 30%.
{column}

{column:width=70%}
Text for this column goes here. This is the larger column with a width of 70%.
{column}

{section}
```

What you will get

Text for this column goes here. This is the smaller column with a width of only 30%.

Text for this column goes here. This is the larger column with a width of 70%.

 For more details please see the [Column Macro](#) and the [Section Macro](#).

Advanced Formatting

Colour and Other Formatting

To add colour and other formatting to your tables, you can use the [Panel Macro](#) within columns. More table-formatting options may be available if your Confluence administrator has installed additional [macros](#).

Lists

Here's an example of how to embed lists in a table:

What you need to type

```

||Heading 1||Heading 2||
|* Item 1
* Item 2
* Item 3|# Item 1
# Item 2
# Item 3|

```

What you will get

Heading 1	Heading 2
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Item 1 Item 2 Item 3 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Item 1 Item 2 Item 3

Text Effects

Use the markup shown in the examples below to format the text in your page templates.

What you need to type	What you will get
<code>*strong*</code>	strong
<code>*bold text*</code>	bold text
<code>_emphasis_</code>	<i>emphasis</i>
<code>_italics_</code>	<i>italics</i> <i>Hint:</i> To italicise parts of a word, add braces (curly brackets) around the underscore. For example, Thing{ <code>_</code> }x_ gives you this: Thingx
<code>??citation??</code>	<i>citation</i>
<code>-deleted-</code>	deleted
<code>+inserted+</code>	<u>inserted</u>
Text with <code>^superscript^</code>	Text with ^{superscript} Hint: There are two ways to make superscripts work, when used directly after another word or character: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Add a space before the superscript. For example, kg/m ^3^ gives you this: kg/m ³ Add braces (curly brackets) around the superscript markup. For example, kg/m{<code>^3^</code>} gives you this: kg/m ³
Text with <code>~subscript~</code>	Text with _{subscript}

<code>{{monospaced}}</code>	monospaced
bq. Here's how you make a paragraph appear as a block quotation.	<div>Here's how you make a paragraph appear as a block quotation.</div>
<code>{color:red}look ma, red text!{color}</code>	look ma, red text!

Text Breaks

Paragraph Break

In a Confluence page template, a continuous line of text with two carriage returns at its end forms a paragraph. This is equivalent to a continuous line of text followed by a blank line.


When rendered into HTML, the result is a line of text wrapped in a set of `<p></p>` tags.

Line Break

Confluence provides two options for forcing a line break within a paragraph of text:

- Implicitly, by entering a single carriage return at its end.
- Explicitly, by entering two consecutive backslashes: `\\`

When rendered into HTML, the result is a paragraph of text that is split into separate lines by `
` tags, wherever a forced line break appears.

 For most purposes, explicit line breaks are not required because a single carriage return is enough.

The examples below show how to use explicit line breaks.

What you need to type	What you will get
here is some text \\ divided \\ using line \\ \\ breaks\\	here is some text divided using line breaks
This is a short list: * Point 1 Text to go with point 1 * Point 2 \\ \\ Text to go with point 2 with a break	This is a short list: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Point 1 Text to go with point 1 • Point 2 Text to go with point 2 with a break


If you wish to use multiple consecutive line breaks, each should be separated by a space character. For example, use

`\\ \\`

for two consecutive line breaks.

Horizontal Rule

Use four dashes (----) to create a horizontal rule.

 Make sure that the dashes are on a separate line from the rest of the text.

What you need to type	What you will get

here is some text ----- divided by a horizontal rule	here is some text <hr/> divided by a horizontal rule
--	---

Links

You can use wiki markup to create links in a page template.

What you need to type	What you will get
[#anchor]	A link to an anchor on the same page.
[Confluence Wiki Markup^attachment.ext]	A link to a file attached to the page.
[pagetitle]	A link to a page.
[pagetitle#anchor]	A link to an anchor on another page.
[pagetitle^attachment.ext]	A link to a file attached to another page.
[spacekey:pagetitle]	A link to a page in another space.
[spacekey:pagetitle#anchor]	A link to an anchor on a page in another space.
[spacekey:pagetitle^attachment.ext]	A link to a file attached to a page in another space.
[/2004/01/12/blogposttitle]	A link to a blog post.
[spacekey:/2004/01/12/blogposttitle]	A link to a blog post in another space.
[/2004/01/12]	A link to a whole day's blog posts.
[spacekey:/2004/01/12]	A link to a whole day's blog posts in another space.
[spacekey:]	A link to the space homepage (or the space summary page of the space).
[~username]	A link to the user profile page of a particular user.
[phrase@shortcut]	A shortcut link to the specified shortcut site. Shortcuts are configured by the site administrator.
[http://confluence.atlassian.com]	A link to an external resource.
[mailto:legendaryservice@atlassian.com]	A link to an email address.
[file://z:/file/on/network/share.txt]	A link to a file on your computer or on a network share that you have mapped to a drive. <i>This only works on Internet Explorer.</i>

Note that Confluence treats headings as anchors, so you can link to headings using this pattern: [spacekey:pagename#headingname], where headingname is case-sensitive and must be entered without spaces.

For each of these link forms:

- You can prepend a link alias, so that alternate text is displayed on the page. Example: [link alias|pagetitle#anchor]
- You can append a link tip, which appears as a tooltip. Example: [pagetitle#anchor|link tip]

Images

Images, from attached files or remote sources, can be displayed in a page template.

What you need to type	What you will get
<code>!http://www.host.com/image.gif!</code>	An image from a remote source is displayed on the page. Uses a fully qualified URL.
<code>!attached-image.gif!</code>	An image file attached to the page is displayed.
<code>!pageTitle^image.gif!</code>	An image file attached to a different page is displayed.
<code>!spaceKey:pageTitle^image.gif!</code>	An image file attached to a page in a different space is displayed.
<code>!/2010/05/23/My Blog Post^image.gif!</code>	An image file attached to a blog post is displayed.
<code>!image.jpg|thumbnail!</code>	The image is displayed as a thumbnail on the page (only works with images that are attached to the page). Users can click on the thumbnail to see the full-sized image. Thumbnails must be enabled by the site administrator for this to work.
<code>!image.gif|align=right, vspace=4!</code>	For any image, you can specify attributes of the HTML image tag as a comma separated list of name=value pairs.

Available HTML image tags include:

Image tag	Details
<code>align</code>	Available values are 'left', 'right', 'bottom', 'center', 'top'.
<code>border</code>	Specifies the width of the border (in pixels).
<code>bordercolor</code>	Use with the 'border' tag. Specify colours by name or hex value.
<code>hspace</code>	Specifies the amount of whitespace to be inserted to the left and right of the image (in pixels).
<code>vspace</code>	Specifies the amount of whitespace to be inserted above and below the image (in pixels).
<code>width</code>	Specifies the width of the image (in pixels). This will override the natural width of the image.
<code>height</code>	Specifies the height of the image (in pixels). This will override the natural height of the image.
<code>title</code>	Specifies alternate text for the image, which is displayed when the pointer hovers over the image.
<code>alt</code>	Specifies alternate text for the image. This text is retrievable via search, and contributes to accessibility of the page for text-only viewing.

Related Topics

[Form Field Markup for Templates](#)
[Global Templates](#)
[Importing Templates](#)
[Adding a Template](#)
[Creating a Page using a Template](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Form Field Markup for Templates



Please note, form field markup should only be used in templates. It does not work in wiki pages.

Templates are written using [wiki markup](#), with special markup to insert form fields. When a user creates a page using a template that contains form fields, the user will be prompted to key in data. The data will be captured and stored in the new page.

Here are the three kinds of form fields supported and the markup to create them:

Text field		Creates a text input field for a variable called VAR.
Text area		Creates a 5 x 10 text-area for a variable called VAR.
Drop down menu		<p>Creates a drop-down box containing the values "one", "two", "three" and "four".</p> <p>Note: The values in the drop-down list can only contain letters, numbers and underscores.</p> <p>The dropdown list values <i>cannot</i> include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • special characters, such as '&' • punctuation marks, such as ':' • brackets, such as ''

Every input field must have a unique name. If you have more than one text input field in the same template with the same name, Confluence will make sure that they all end up with the same value (This is useful if you need the same information in more than one place in the page).

For an example, please see [Adding a Template](#).



Warning

There must be no spaces between the @-signs in the markup. This means you can't have items in your drop-down lists that contain spaces.

Improved Markup

The above formatting is the basic markup bundled with Confluence, but some plugins expand on this markup to provide greater functionality. Links to these plugins and a comparison can be found in the [Working with Templates](#).

Related Topics

[Working with Templates](#)
[Scaffolding Plugin](#)
[Adding a Template](#)
[Editing a template](#)
[Creating a Page using a Template](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Working with the Office Connector

The Office Connector is bundled with Confluence 2.10 and later. It allows you to:

- Import an Office document into Confluence format
- Attach an Office document to a Confluence page and display its content in Confluence, without converting the content.
- Edit the attached document in the Office application, directly from the Confluence page.



Please be aware that source code is currently not available for the Confluence Office Connector.

Table of Contents

- [Office Connector Prerequisites](#)
- [Displaying Office Files in Confluence](#)
- [Importing an Office Document into Confluence](#)
- [Editing an Office Document from Confluence](#)
- [Editing an Office Spreadsheet from Confluence](#)
- [Editing an Office Presentation from Confluence](#)
- [Installing the Firefox Add-On for the Office Connector](#)

Related Topics

[View File Macro](#)

[Configuring the Office Connector in the *Confluence Administration Guide*](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Office Connector Prerequisites

The page describes the software and setup you need to use the [Office Connector](#).



Your [System Administrator](#) can enable or disable the Office Connector or parts of it. The Office Connector options can appear in different places on your Confluence page, depending on the themes and configuration of your Confluence site. Please refer to [Configuring the Office Connector](#) in the *Confluence Administration Guide* and discuss any configuration problems with your administrator.

On this page:

- [Overall Prerequisites](#)
- [Prerequisites for Viewing Office and PDF Files in Confluence](#)
- [Prerequisites for Importing Office Documents into Confluence](#)
- [Prerequisites for Editing Office Files Directly From Confluence](#)
- [Related Topics](#)



The information on this page *does not apply* to **Confluence OnDemand**.

Overall Prerequisites

- Ensure that Java 5 (JDK 1.5) or higher is installed on your Confluence server.
- The **WebDAV plugin** must be enabled, because the Office Connector uses WebDAV to transfer information to and from Office documents. Note that the WebDAV plugin is bundled with Confluence, and can be enabled or disabled by the [System Administrator](#). If necessary, refer to the instructions on [enabling plugins](#) and [configuring the WebDAV options](#).
- Ensure that your Confluence server's **base URL** is set correctly. (Check it by going to the 'General Configuration' screen in the Confluence Administration Console, as described in [Configuring the Server Base URL](#).) When a user edits a wiki page in Word and then uploads the page back to the Confluence server, the base URL determines where the document will be saved. If the base URL is incorrect, the documents may be saved to a different Confluence server.

Prerequisites for Viewing Office and PDF Files in Confluence

If you want to use the [View File macro](#), or to [view Office files](#) attached to a Confluence page, you need the setup described below.

Browsers and Flash Player

You can use any browser to view an Office file on a wiki page or attachment view, provided that you have installed [Adobe Flash Player](#) version 9 or later. You do not need to have an Office desktop application installed on your computer in order to view Office files in Confluence.

File Types

Confluence can display files compatible with Microsoft Office 97-2007, and PDF files, of the following types:

- `.doc` and `.docx`
- `.xls` and `.xlsx`

- .ppt and .pptx
- .pdf

Prerequisites for Importing Office Documents into Confluence

- Document import can import Microsoft Word documents of the file types .doc and .docx. These must be valid Word 97-2007 format documents.

Prerequisites for Editing Office Files Directly From Confluence

The Office Connector allows you to edit Office files embedded in a wiki page or from the page's attachments view.

To make use of these editing capabilities, you will need the setup described below.

Browsers

- If you are using Firefox, you will need to install a Firefox add-on. Firefox will prompt you to do this, the first time the add-on is required. You will find instructions in [Installing the Firefox Add-On for the Office Connector](#).

Office File Editors

To edit Office files, you will need to have [Microsoft Office](#) or [OpenOffice](#) installed. (See the configuration matrix below.)

- If you are using Firefox, you can choose which of the above editors you want to use. The Firefox add-on allows you to configure this option for each file type. See [Installing the Firefox Add-On for the Office Connector](#).
- If you are using Internet Explorer, you will need Microsoft Office. You cannot edit Office files in OpenOffice when using Internet Explorer.

Configuration Matrix



Chrome does not have WEBDAV plugging/support so this feature will not work. Please refer to [CONF-23322](#) for information on the progress of the issue.

You need one of the following software combinations to edit Office files from your wiki page:

Operating System	Office Version	Browser
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Windows 7, • Windows Vista, or • Windows XP with Service Pack 2 or 3 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • OpenOffice 2.x – 3.x, or • Microsoft Office XP, 2003, 2007 or 2010 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Internet Explorer 8.x – 9.x, or • Firefox 4.x – 5.x
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mac OS X 10.5 and 10.6 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • OpenOffice 2.x – 3.x • The "Edit in Word" feature is known to work in OpenOffice 3.2.0. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Firefox 4.x – 5.x
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Linux 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • OpenOffice 2.x – 3.x The only known supported Office editor for Linux is OpenOffice. But in theory it should work with any WebDAV-aware application. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Firefox 4.x – 5.x

Related Topics

[Working with the Office Connector](#)

- [Office Connector Prerequisites](#)
- [Displaying Office Files in Confluence](#)
- [Importing an Office Document into Confluence](#)
- [Editing an Office Document from Confluence](#)
- [Editing an Office Spreadsheet from Confluence](#)
- [Editing an Office Presentation from Confluence](#)
- [Installing the Firefox Add-On for the Office Connector](#)


[Configuring the Office Connector in the *Confluence Administration Guide*](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Displaying Office Files in Confluence

Confluence can display Office files that are attached to a page. If you have an Office application installed, you will also be able to edit these Office files in your Office application.

These are two of the ways that Confluence can interact with Office files. For an overview of all Office Connector features, please refer to [Working with the Office Connector](#).

 Your [System Administrator](#) can enable or disable the Office Connector or parts of it. The Office Connector options can appear in different places on your Confluence page, depending on the themes and configuration of your Confluence site. Please refer to [Configuring the Office Connector](#) in the *Confluence Administration Guide* and discuss any configuration problems with your administrator.

On this page:

- [Prerequisites](#)
- [Attaching and Displaying Office Files and PDF Files](#)
- [Viewing and Editing the Attached Office Files](#)
- [Troubleshooting](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Prerequisites

If you want to use the [View File macro](#), or to [view Office files](#) attached to a Confluence page, you need the setup described below.

Browsers and Flash Player

You can use any browser to view an Office file on a wiki page or attachment view, provided that you have installed [Adobe Flash Player](#) version 9 or later. You do not need to have an Office desktop application installed on your computer in order to view Office files in Confluence.

File Types

Confluence can display files compatible with Microsoft Office 97-2007, and PDF files, of the following types:

- .doc and .docx
- .xls and .xlsx
- .ppt and .pptx
- .pdf

Attaching and Displaying Office Files and PDF Files

There are two ways to do this in Confluence:


- Attach Office files to a page and display them in a Confluence page [using the View File or Attachments macros](#)
- Attach an Office or PDF file to a page and embed its contents onto the page by simply [dragging and dropping it into the editor window](#)

To attach and display Office files in Confluence using macros:

1. Attach the Office file(s) to a Confluence page:
 - View the Confluence page on which you want to display your document.
 - Choose **Tools > Attachments**.
 - Browse for your Office files and upload them to the Confluence page. Refer to detailed instructions in [Attaching Files to a Page](#).
2. Now you have two options for displaying the attached document:
 - You can embed the document into the Confluence page, using one of the Office Word, Office Excel, Office PowerPoint or View PDF macros. These macros can be found using the [macro browser](#). Refer to the detailed instructions in the [View File macro](#) topic.
 - You can display a list of page attachments using the [Attachments macro](#). People viewing the page will be able to click the **View** link to see the Office or PDF document in Confluence.

To attach and display an Office file on a Confluence page using 'drag and drop':

- Drag the Office file from your computer and drop it into the editor window. Only one file can be dragged and dropped at a time. The appropriate [View File macro](#) placeholder will appear in the position where you dragged the file. However, the contents of the file will be rendered in full when you preview, or save and view, the page.

 Older browser versions require [Google Gears](#) to have been installed for you to use drag and drop. Refer to [Using Drag-and-Drop in Confluence](#) for information about setting up Google Gears.

Viewing and Editing the Attached Office Files

If an Office document is [attached to a Confluence page](#), you can view the attached Office document from within Confluence. View the Office document in one of the following ways:

- Search for the Office document by file name, then click **View** next to the Office document on the Search results page. (See [Searching Confluence](#).)
- View the list of attachments for a specific Confluence page, then click **View** next to the Office document on the Attachments page. (See [Viewing Attachment Details](#).)
- View a list of attachments displayed on a page via the Attachments macro, then click **View** next to the Office document in the list of attachments. (See [Displaying a List of Attachments in a Page](#).)
- View a Confluence page which has the Office document embedded in the page via the View File macro. (See [View File Macro](#).)

Any Confluence user who has an Office application installed will also be able to launch their Office editor from within Confluence:

- [Editing an Office Document from Confluence](#).
- [Editing an Office Presentation from Confluence](#).
- [Editing an Office Spreadsheet from Confluence](#).

Troubleshooting

Problems? Please refer to our guide to the [Office Connector limitations and known issues](#).

Related Topics

[View File Macro](#)

[Working with the Office Connector](#)

- [Office Connector Prerequisites](#)
- [Displaying Office Files in Confluence](#)
- [Importing an Office Document into Confluence](#)
- [Editing an Office Document from Confluence](#)
- [Editing an Office Spreadsheet from Confluence](#)
- [Editing an Office Presentation from Confluence](#)
- [Installing the Firefox Add-On for the Office Connector](#)


[Configuring the Office Connector in the *Confluence Administration Guide*](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Importing an Office Document into Confluence

The Office Connector in Confluence allows you to import an Office document into Confluence, so that the document's content is copied onto one or more Confluence pages.

This is just one of the ways Confluence can interact with Office documents. For an overview of all Office Connector features, please refer to [Working with the Office Connector](#).

 Your [System Administrator](#) can enable or disable the Office Connector or parts of it. The Office Connector options can appear in different places on your Confluence page, depending on the themes and configuration of your Confluence site. Please refer to [Configuring the Office Connector](#) in the *Confluence Administration Guide* and discuss any configuration problems with your administrator.

The simplest way to import an Office document is to import the entire content of the document into a single wiki page. By default, the content of the document will be created as a new wiki page.

More advanced options allow you to import the content into a new page, to split a single document into more than one wiki page, and to resolve conflicts in the titles of your pages.

These options are described below.

On this page:

- [Prerequisites](#)
- [Importing an Office Document](#)
- [Splitting an Office Document into Multiple Wiki Pages](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Prerequisites

Prerequisites for the Office Connector's document import feature:

- Document import can import Microsoft Word documents of the file types `.doc` and `.docx`. These must be valid Word 97-2007 format documents.

For a full list of Office Connector prerequisites and limitations, please refer to:

- [Office Connector Prerequisites](#)
- [Office Connector Limitations and Known Issues](#)

Importing an Office Document

The simplest way to import an Office document is to import the entire content of the document into a single wiki page.

This method will replace any existing content on the wiki page.

To import an Office document onto a single wiki page:

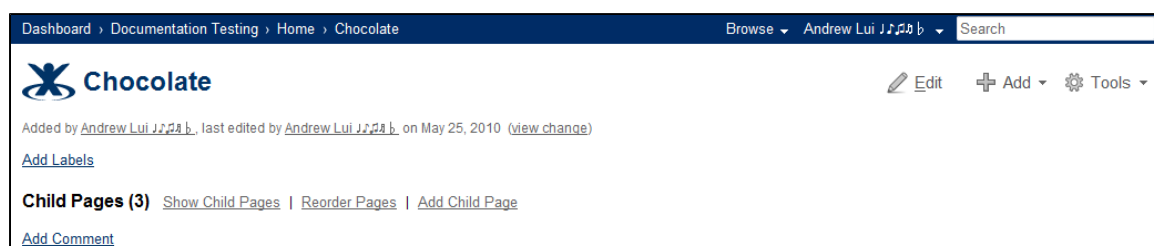
1. Create a page in Confluence (see [Creating a Page](#)) or go to an existing page whose content you want replaced.
2. Choose **Tools > Import Word Document**.
3. Click **Browse** and find the Office document on your local drive or network.
4. Click the **Open** or **Upload** button provided by your browser. The path and file name of the document will now appear in the text box on the Office Connector import screen.
5. Click **Next** on the Office Connector import screen. The import document options screen will display.
6. The import document options are:

Option	Description
Root page title	The title of the wiki page that will contain the information from your imported document.
Import as a new page in the current space	A new wiki page will be created with the page title specified above.
Replace <pagename>	The contents of the existing page will be replaced. The page will be renamed to the page title specified above.
Delete existing children of <pagename>	The existing child pages of the page you are replacing will be deleted.
Rename imported pages if page name already exists	Assign new names to any new page which would otherwise have a duplicate name. The content of existing pages will remain unchanged.
Replace existing pages with imported pages of the same title	If imported pages have titles equal to existing pages, then the content of the Office document will overwrite the content on the existing page. Page history will be preserved.
Remove existing pages with the same title as imported pages	If imported pages have titles equal to existing pages, then the existing pages will be deleted. This will remove the page history as well as the content.
Split by heading	The content of the Office document will be split over multiple wiki pages. If you don't want to split your document into multiple wiki pages, leave the default Don't split option selected. For more information on splitting your document, please see below .

7. Click **Import**.

When the upload has finished, the content of the Office document will have been transformed into Confluence page content. You can now view and edit this page in the usual way. There is no connection between the original Office document and this wiki page.

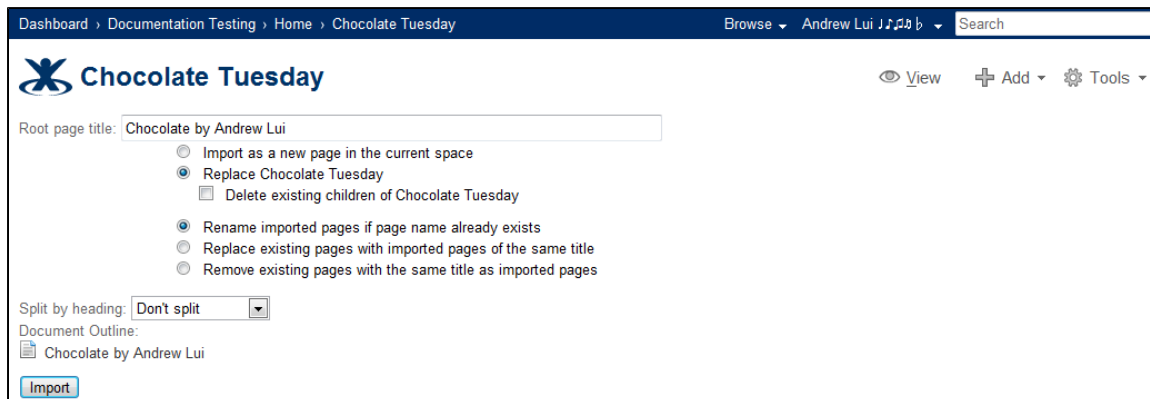
Screenshot: Empty page ready for import



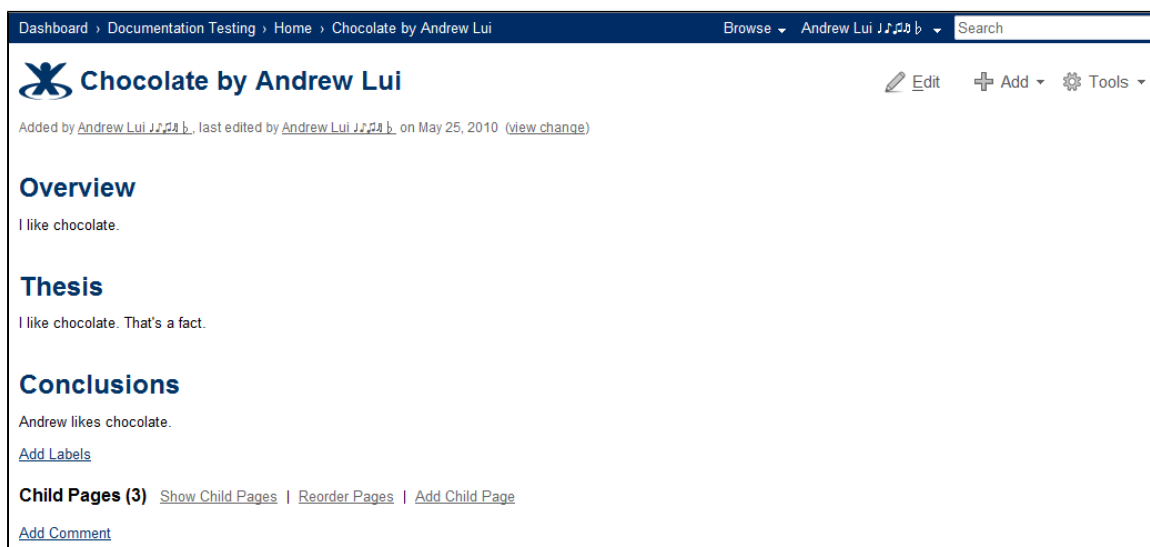
Screenshot: Selecting Office document to import



Screenshot: Importing an Office document



Screenshot: Page after import



Splitting an Office Document into Multiple Wiki Pages

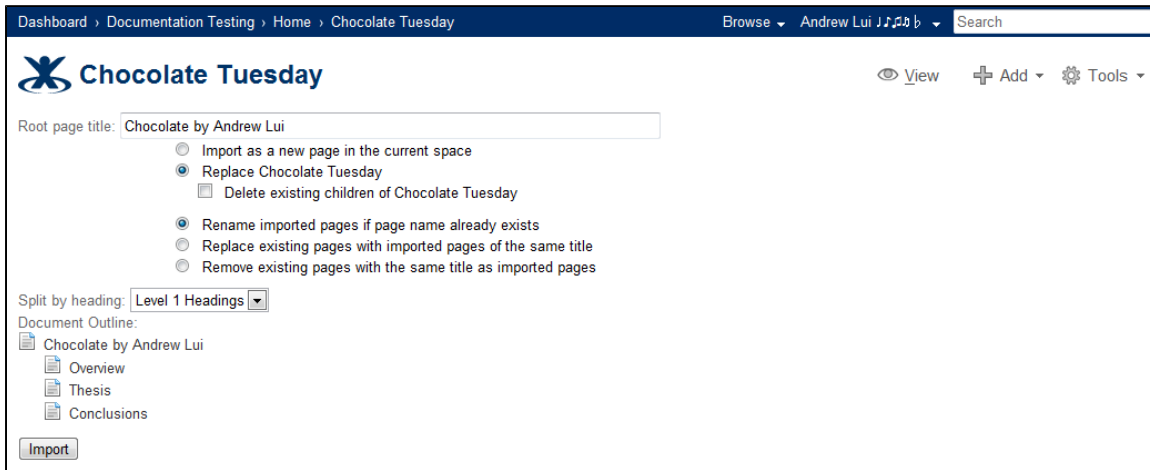
When importing an Office document, you can split a single document into more than one wiki page, based on the heading styles in the document.

By default, the page names will be the same as the heading text. This may result in a conflict, if a page already exists with the same title. You can instruct the importer how to handle such conflicts.

To import an Office document into multiple wiki pages:

1. Import an Office document as [described above](#). On the import document options screen, choose how to split your document in the '**Split by heading**' field:
 - '**Split by heading**' — If you want to split the content under each heading in your document into separate child pages, select the desired heading level to split by. A preview of the page hierarchy that will be created by the split will be displayed under '**Document Outline**'. Each bullet point in the 'Document Outline' represents a new page after import into Confluence.
2. Click '**Import**' to import your document.
3. When the upload has finished, the content of the Office document will have been transformed into Confluence page content. You can now view and edit this page in the usual way. There is no connection between the original Office document and this wiki page.

Screenshot: Splitting a single Office document into multiple wiki pages



Related Topics

Working with the Office Connector

- [Office Connector Prerequisites](#)
- [Displaying Office Files in Confluence](#)
- [Importing an Office Document into Confluence](#)
- [Editing an Office Document from Confluence](#)
- [Editing an Office Spreadsheet from Confluence](#)
- [Editing an Office Presentation from Confluence](#)
- [Installing the Firefox Add-On for the Office Connector](#)

Configuring the Office Connector in the *Confluence Administration Guide*

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Editing an Office Document from Confluence

When viewing a wiki page that displays an attached Office document, you can launch your Office editor directly from Confluence. This allows you to edit a Word document from within Confluence and save it back to Confluence.

This is just one of the ways Confluence can interact with Office documents. For an overview of all Office Connector features, please refer to [Working with the Office Connector](#).

i Your [System Administrator](#) can enable or disable the Office Connector or parts of it. The Office Connector options can appear in different places on your Confluence page, depending on the themes and configuration of your Confluence site. Please refer to [Configuring the Office Connector](#) in the *Confluence Administration Guide* and discuss any configuration problems with your administrator.

On this page:

- [Prerequisites for Editing an Attached Office Document](#)
- [Editing an Office Document in your Office Application](#)
- [Troubleshooting](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Prerequisites for Editing an Attached Office Document

The Office Connector allows you to edit Office files embedded in a wiki page or from the page's attachments view.

To make use of these editing capabilities, you will need the setup described below.

Browsers

- If you are using Firefox, you will need to install a Firefox add-on. Firefox will prompt you to do this, the first time the add-on is required. You will find instructions in [Installing the Firefox Add-On for the Office Connector](#).

Office File Editors

To edit Office files, you will need to have [Microsoft Office](#) or [OpenOffice](#) installed. (See the configuration matrix below.)

- If you are using Firefox, you can choose which of the above editors you want to use. The Firefox add-on allows you to configure this option for each file type. See [Installing the Firefox Add-On for the Office Connector](#).
- If you are using Internet Explorer, you will need Microsoft Office. You cannot edit Office files in OpenOffice when using Internet Explorer.

Configuration Matrix



Chrome does not have WEBDAV plugging/support so this feature will not work. Please refer to [CONF-23322](#) for information on the progress of the issue.

You need one of the following software combinations to edit Office files from your wiki page:

Operating System	Office Version	Browser
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Windows 7, Windows Vista, or Windows XP with Service Pack 2 or 3 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> OpenOffice 2.x – 3.x, or Microsoft Office XP, 2003, 2007 or 2010 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Internet Explorer 8.x – 9.x, or Firefox 4.x – 5.x
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mac OS X 10.5 and 10.6 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> OpenOffice 2.x – 3.x The "Edit in Word" feature is known to work in OpenOffice 3.2.0. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Firefox 4.x – 5.x
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Linux 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> OpenOffice 2.x – 3.x The only known supported Office editor for Linux is OpenOffice. But in theory it should work with any WebDAV-aware application. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Firefox 4.x – 5.x

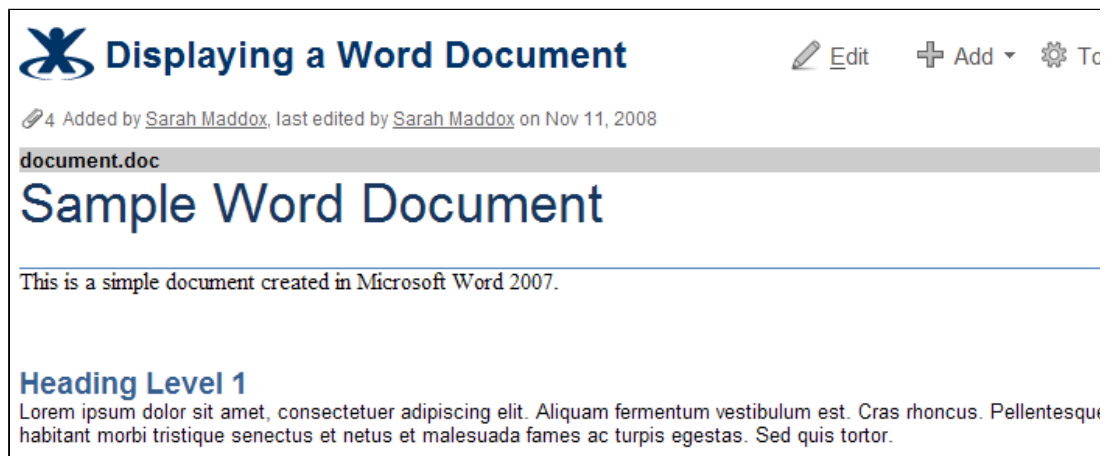
Editing an Office Document in your Office Application

To edit an Office document in your Office application:

1. There are two ways to do this:

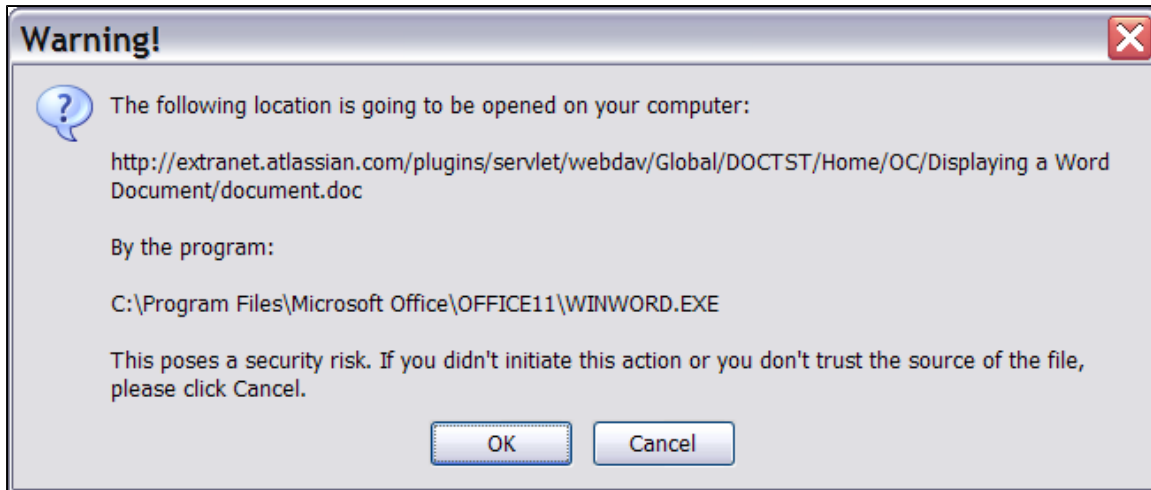
- From an Office document embedded on a page:
 - Open a Confluence page with an Office document embedded on it.
 - Move your mouse pointer to the top of the document embedded in the Confluence page, until the hidden title bar appears.

Screenshot: The title bar showing 'document.doc' above an embedded Office document

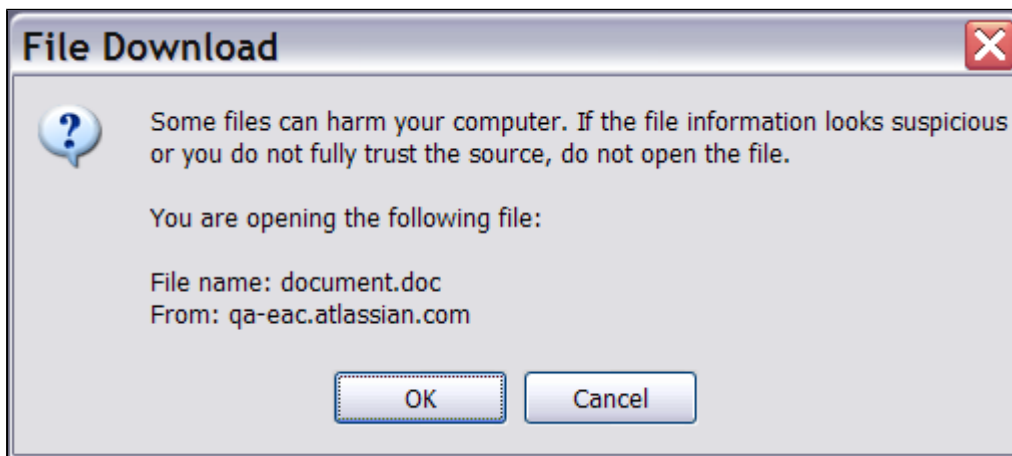


- Click the title bar above the embedded document.
- From an Office document in a list of attachments:
 - If an Office file is attached to a Confluence page, you can edit this file directly in your compatible Office application, in one of the following ways:
 - View the list of attachments for a specific Confluence page, then click **Edit** next to the Office file on the Attachments page. (See [Viewing Attachment Details](#).)
 - View a list of attachments displayed on a page via the Attachments macro, then click **Edit** next to the Office file in the list of attachments. (See [Displaying a List of Attachments in a Page](#).)
2. A window will pop up, asking you to confirm that you want to open this document.

Screenshot: Confirmation window in Firefox

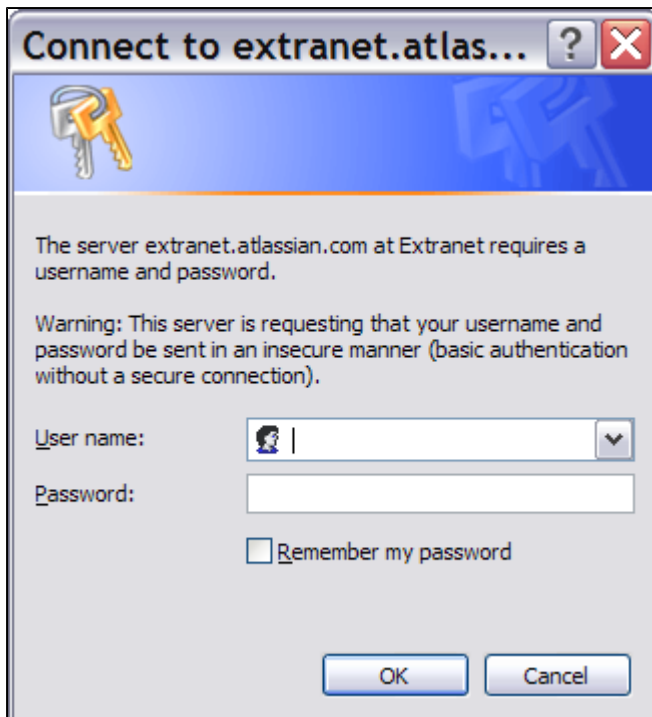


Screenshot: Confirmation window in Internet Explorer



3. Click 'OK'. Now you may be asked to log in to your Confluence server.

Screenshot: Logging in to Confluence



4. Enter your Confluence username and password, then click 'OK'.
5. The Office document will open in your Office application.
6. Make the necessary changes, then save the document. It will be saved back into Confluence.

Troubleshooting

Problems? Please refer to our guide to the [Office Connector limitations and known issues](#).

Related Topics

Working with the Office Connector

- [Office Connector Prerequisites](#)
- [Displaying Office Files in Confluence](#)
- [Importing an Office Document into Confluence](#)
- [Editing an Office Document from Confluence](#)
- [Editing an Office Spreadsheet from Confluence](#)
- [Editing an Office Presentation from Confluence](#)
- [Installing the Firefox Add-On for the Office Connector](#)


Configuring the Office Connector in the *Confluence Administration Guide*

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Editing an Office Spreadsheet from Confluence

When viewing a wiki page that displays an attached Office document, you can launch your Office editor directly from Confluence. This allows you to edit an Excel spreadsheet from within Confluence and save it back to Confluence.

This is just one of the ways Confluence can interact with Office documents. For an overview of all Office Connector features, please refer to [Working with the Office Connector](#).

 Your [System Administrator](#) can enable or disable the Office Connector or parts of it. The Office Connector options can appear in different places on your Confluence page, depending on the themes and configuration of your Confluence site. Please refer to [Configuring the Office Connector](#) in the *Confluence Administration Guide* and discuss any configuration problems with your administrator.

On this page:

- [Prerequisites for Editing an Attached Office Spreadsheet](#)
- [Editing an Office Spreadsheet in your Office Application](#)
- [Troubleshooting](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Prerequisites for Editing an Attached Office Spreadsheet

The Office Connector allows you to edit Office files embedded in a wiki page or from the page's attachments view.

To make use of these editing capabilities, you will need the setup described below.

Browsers

- If you are using Firefox, you will need to install a Firefox add-on. Firefox will prompt you to do this, the first time the add-on is required. You will find instructions in [Installing the Firefox Add-On for the Office Connector](#).

Office File Editors

To edit Office files, you will need to have [Microsoft Office](#) or [OpenOffice](#) installed. (See the configuration matrix below.)

- If you are using Firefox, you can choose which of the above editors you want to use. The Firefox add-on allows you to configure this option for each file type. See [Installing the Firefox Add-On for the Office Connector](#).
- If you are using Internet Explorer, you will need Microsoft Office. You cannot edit Office files in OpenOffice when using Internet Explorer.

Configuration Matrix



Chrome does not have WEBDAV plugging/support so this feature will not work. Please refer to [CONF-23322](#) for information on the progress of the issue.

You need one of the following software combinations to edit Office files from your wiki page:

Operating System	Office Version	Browser
------------------	----------------	---------

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Windows 7, Windows Vista, or Windows XP with Service Pack 2 or 3 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> OpenOffice 2.x – 3.x, or Microsoft Office XP, 2003, 2007 or 2010 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Internet Explorer 8.x – 9.x, or Firefox 4.x – 5.x
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mac OS X 10.5 and 10.6 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> OpenOffice 2.x – 3.x The "Edit in Word" feature is known to work in OpenOffice 3.2.0. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Firefox 4.x – 5.x
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Linux 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> OpenOffice 2.x – 3.x The only known supported Office editor for Linux is OpenOffice. But in theory it should work with any WebDAV-aware application. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Firefox 4.x – 5.x


Editing an Office Spreadsheet in your Office Application

To edit an Office spreadsheet in your Office application:




1. There are two ways to do this:

- From an Office spreadsheet embedded on a page:
 - Open a Confluence page with an Office document embedded on it.
 - Move your mouse pointer to the top of the spreadsheet embedded in the Confluence page, until the hidden title bar appears.

Screenshot: The title bar showing 'spreadsheet.xls' above an embedded Excel spreadsheet



Displaying an Excel Spreadsheet

 Edit
  Add
  To

4 Added by [Sarah Maddox](#), last edited by [Sarah Maddox](#) on Nov 11, 2008

spreadsheet.xls

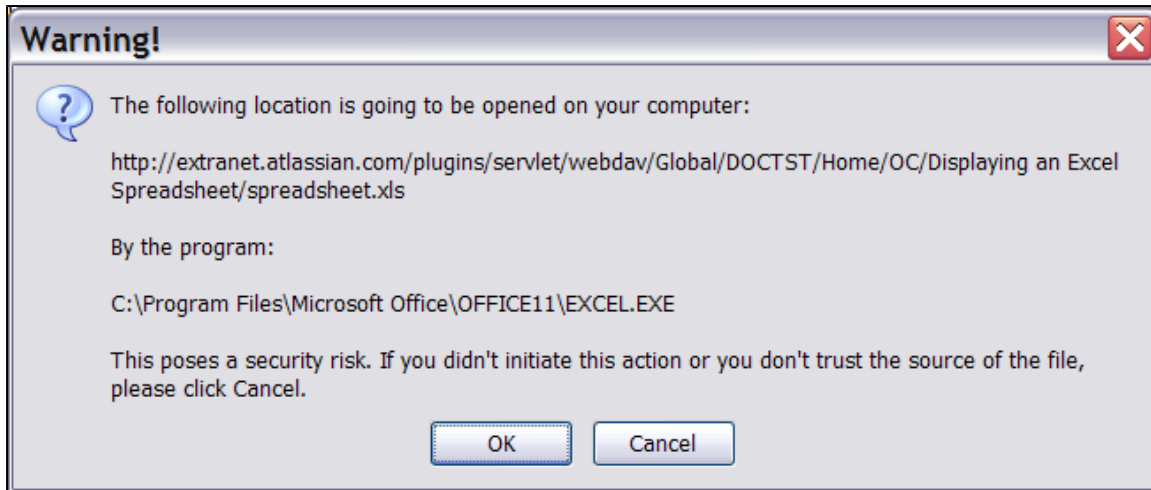
Task	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday	Sunday	Total
	11/3/08	11/4/08	11/5/08	11/6/08	11/7/08	11/8/08	11/9/08	
Planning	5	3						8
Design	3	5	2					10
Development			6	5	5			16
Testing				2	3			5
Admin				1				1

[Add Labels](#)

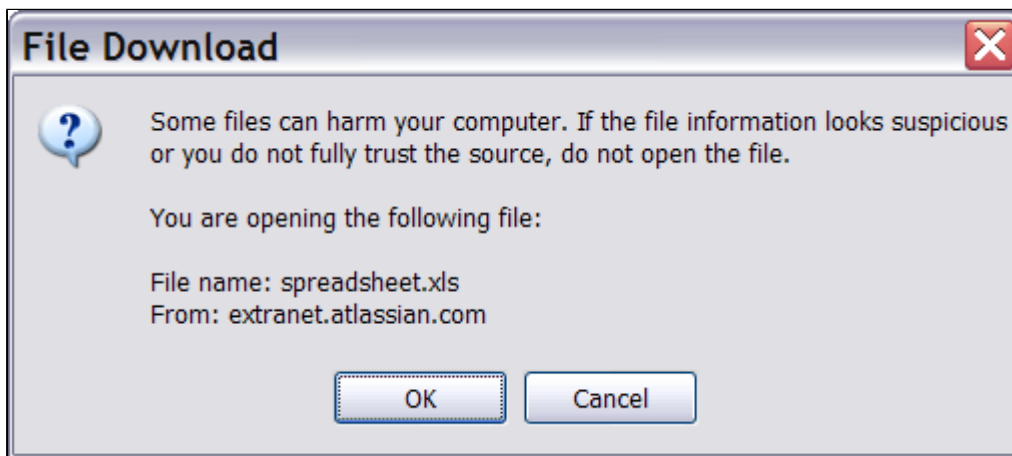
[Add Comment](#)

- Click the title bar above the embedded spreadsheet.
- From an Office spreadsheet in a list of attachments:
 - If an Office file is attached to a Confluence page, you can edit this file directly in your compatible Office application, in one of the following ways:
 - View the list of attachments for a specific Confluence page, then click **Edit** next to the Office file on the Attachments page. (See [Viewing Attachment Details](#).)
 - View a list of attachments displayed on a page via the Attachments macro, then click **Edit** next to the Office file in the list of attachments. (See [Displaying a List of Attachments in a Page](#).)
2. A window will pop up, asking you to confirm that you want to open this document.

Screenshot: Confirmation window in Firefox

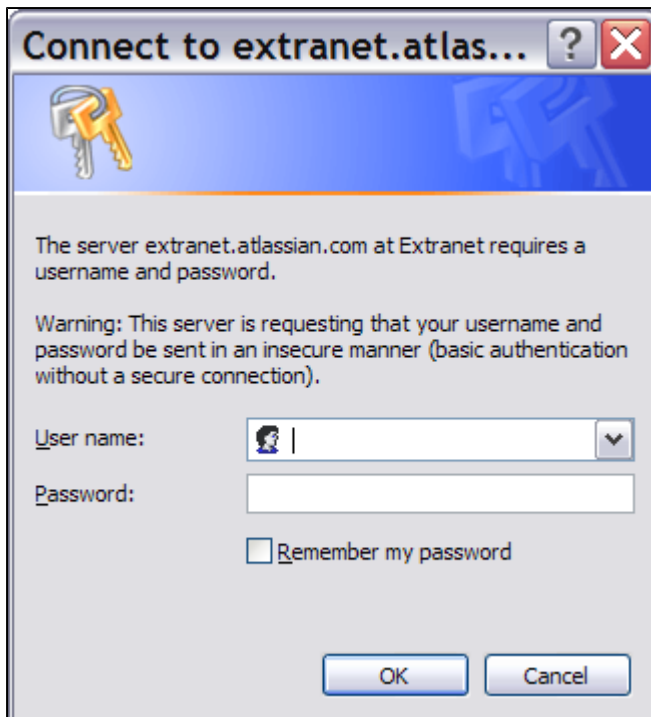


Screenshot: Confirmation window in Internet Explorer



3. Click 'OK'. Now you may be asked to log in to your Confluence server.

Screenshot: Logging in to Confluence



4. Enter your Confluence username and password, then click 'OK'.
5. The Office spreadsheet will open in your Office application.
6. Make the necessary changes, then save the spreadsheet. It will be saved back into Confluence.

Troubleshooting

Problems? Please refer to our guide to the [Office Connector limitations and known issues](#).

Related Topics

Working with the Office Connector

- [Office Connector Prerequisites](#)
- [Displaying Office Files in Confluence](#)
- [Importing an Office Document into Confluence](#)
- [Editing an Office Document from Confluence](#)
- [Editing an Office Spreadsheet from Confluence](#)
- [Editing an Office Presentation from Confluence](#)
- [Installing the Firefox Add-On for the Office Connector](#)


Configuring the Office Connector in the *Confluence Administration Guide*

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Editing an Office Presentation from Confluence

When viewing a wiki page that displays an attached Office document, you can launch your Office editor directly from Confluence. This allows you to edit a PowerPoint presentation from within Confluence and save it back to Confluence.

This is just one of the ways Confluence can interact with Office documents. For an overview of all Office Connector features, please refer to [Working with the Office Connector](#).

 Your [System Administrator](#) can enable or disable the Office Connector or parts of it. The Office Connector options can appear in different places on your Confluence page, depending on the themes and configuration of your Confluence site. Please refer to [Configuring the Office Connector](#) in the *Confluence Administration Guide* and discuss any configuration problems with your administrator.

On this page:

- [Prerequisites for Editing an Attached Office Presentation](#)
- [Editing an Office Presentation in your Office Application](#)
- [Troubleshooting](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Prerequisites for Editing an Attached Office Presentation

The Office Connector allows you to edit Office files embedded in a wiki page or from the page's attachments view.

To make use of these editing capabilities, you will need the setup described below.

Browsers

- If you are using Firefox, you will need to install a Firefox add-on. Firefox will prompt you to do this, the first time the add-on is required. You will find instructions in [Installing the Firefox Add-On for the Office Connector](#).

Office File Editors

To edit Office files, you will need to have [Microsoft Office](#) or [OpenOffice](#) installed. (See the configuration matrix below.)

- If you are using Firefox, you can choose which of the above editors you want to use. The Firefox add-on allows you to configure this option for each file type. See [Installing the Firefox Add-On for the Office Connector](#).
- If you are using Internet Explorer, you will need Microsoft Office. You cannot edit Office files in OpenOffice when using Internet Explorer.

Configuration Matrix



Chrome does not have WEBDAV plugging/support so this feature will not work. Please refer to [CONF-23322](#) for information on the progress of the issue.

You need one of the following software combinations to edit Office files from your wiki page:


Operating System	Office Version	Browser
------------------	----------------	---------

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Windows 7, Windows Vista, or Windows XP with Service Pack 2 or 3 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> OpenOffice 2.x – 3.x, or Microsoft Office XP, 2003, 2007 or 2010 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Internet Explorer 8.x – 9.x, or Firefox 4.x – 5.x
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mac OS X 10.5 and 10.6 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> OpenOffice 2.x – 3.x The "Edit in Word" feature is known to work in OpenOffice 3.2.0. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Firefox 4.x – 5.x
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Linux 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> OpenOffice 2.x – 3.x The only known supported Office editor for Linux is OpenOffice. But in theory it should work with any WebDAV-aware application. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Firefox 4.x – 5.x

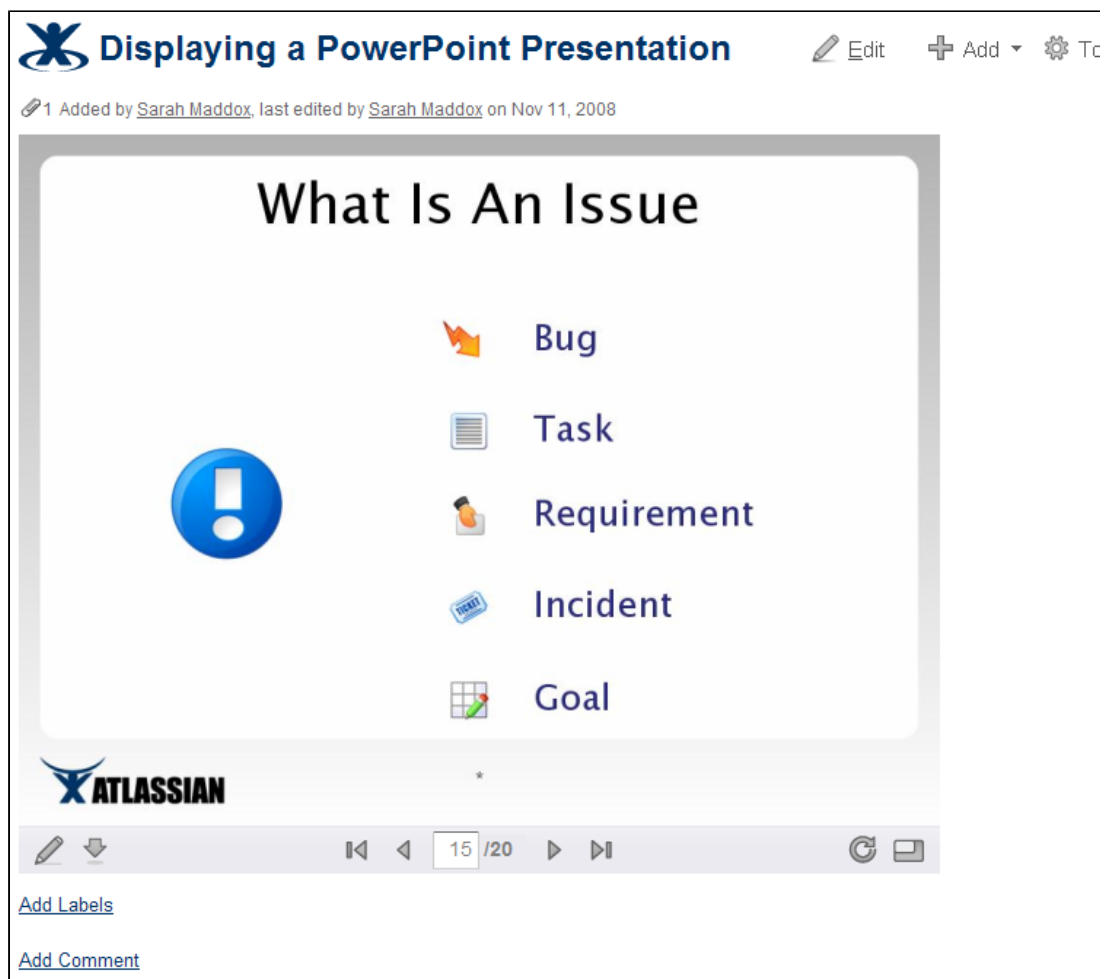
Editing an Office Presentation in your Office Application

To edit an Office presentation in your Office application:

1. There are two ways to do this:

- From an Office presentation embedded on a page:
 - Open a Confluence page with an Office presentation embedded on it.
 - Click the 'Edit' icon  on the bottom frame of the slide show.

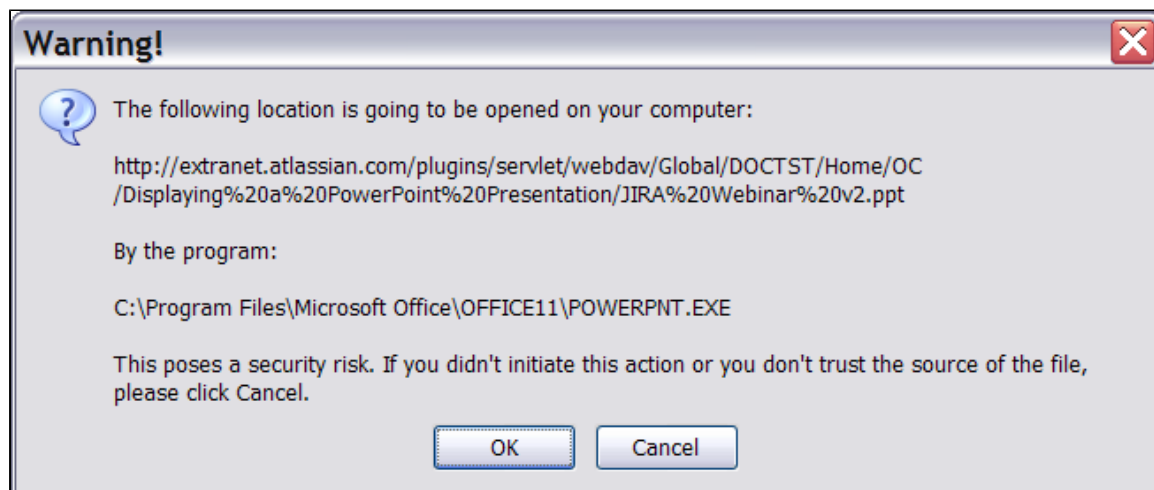
Screenshot: PowerPoint presentation displayed on a Confluence page



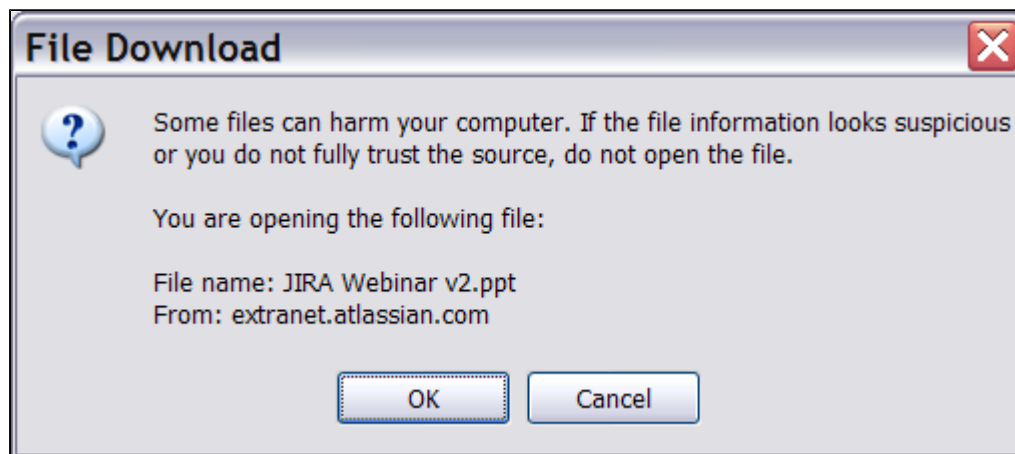
- From an Office document in a list of attachments:
 - If an Office file is [attached to a Confluence page](#), you can edit this file directly in your compatible Office application, in one of the following ways:
 - View the list of attachments for a specific Confluence page, then click **Edit** next to the Office file on the Attachments page. (See [Viewing Attachment Details](#).)
 - View a list of attachments displayed on a page via the Attachments macro, then click **Edit** next to the Office file in the list of attachments. (See [Displaying a List of Attachments in a Page](#).)

2. A window will pop up, asking you to confirm that you want to open this document.

Screenshot: Confirmation window in Firefox



Screenshot: Confirmation window in Internet Explorer



3. Click 'OK'. Now you may be asked to log in to your Confluence server.

Screenshot: Logging in to Confluence



4. Enter your Confluence username and password, then click 'OK'.

5. The presentation will open in your Office application.
6. Make the necessary changes, then save the presentation. It will be saved back into Confluence.

Troubleshooting

Problems? Please refer to our guide to the [Office Connector limitations and known issues](#).

Related Topics

[Working with the Office Connector](#)

- [Office Connector Prerequisites](#)
- [Displaying Office Files in Confluence](#)
- [Importing an Office Document into Confluence](#)
- [Editing an Office Document from Confluence](#)
- [Editing an Office Spreadsheet from Confluence](#)
- [Editing an Office Presentation from Confluence](#)
- [Installing the Firefox Add-On for the Office Connector](#)

[Configuring the Office Connector in the Confluence Administration Guide](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Installing the Firefox Add-On for the Office Connector

If you are using Firefox as your browser, you will need to install an add-on into Firefox (the Firefox **WebDAV Launcher**) in order to use some features of the Office Connector. You will be prompted to install the add-on the first time you try to use a function which requires it.

For an overview of all Office Connector features, please refer to [Working with the Office Connector](#).



Supported Web Browsers

Please ensure that you are using one of the web browsers supported by Confluence. If you are using an unsupported browser or browser version, some features may not work correctly. You can find the list of supported web browsers and browser versions on this page: [Supported Platforms](#).

On this page:

- [Installing the Firefox Add-On](#)
- [Configuring the Add-On](#)
- [Security Risks](#)
- [Information about this Firefox Add-On](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

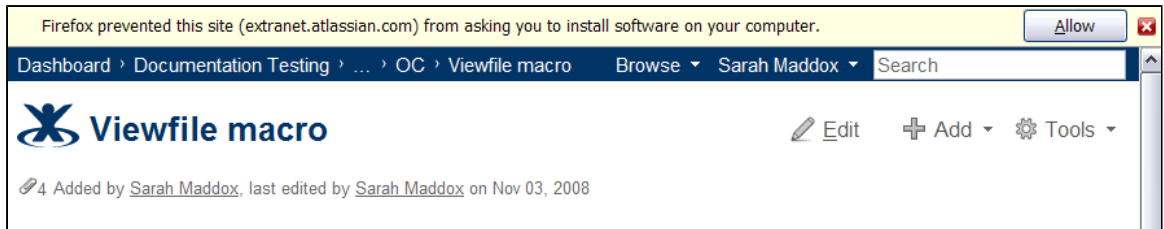
Installing the Firefox Add-On

You will be prompted to install the add-on the first time you try to use a function which requires it. The add-on is required for editing a wiki page in Office, or for editing an Office document which is displayed on a wiki page.

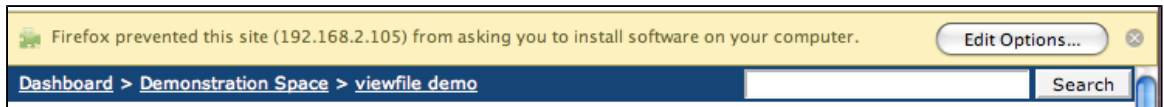
1. When you choose an option which requires the Firefox add-on, you will see a popup window like this one:



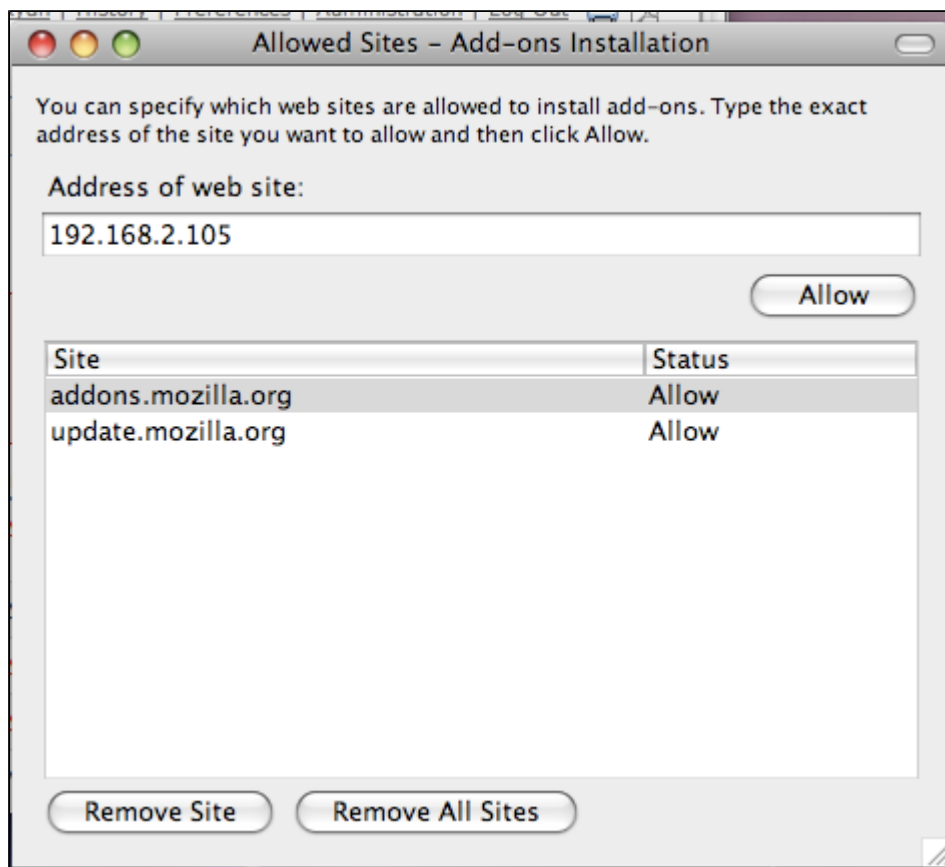
2. Click 'OK'. Some browsers may now ask you to confirm the download with a message bar across the top of the page, beneath the browser's address bar.
 - You may see a message like the yellow bar shown here:



- Click **'Allow'**.
- Or you may see a similar message with an 'Edit Options' button like this:

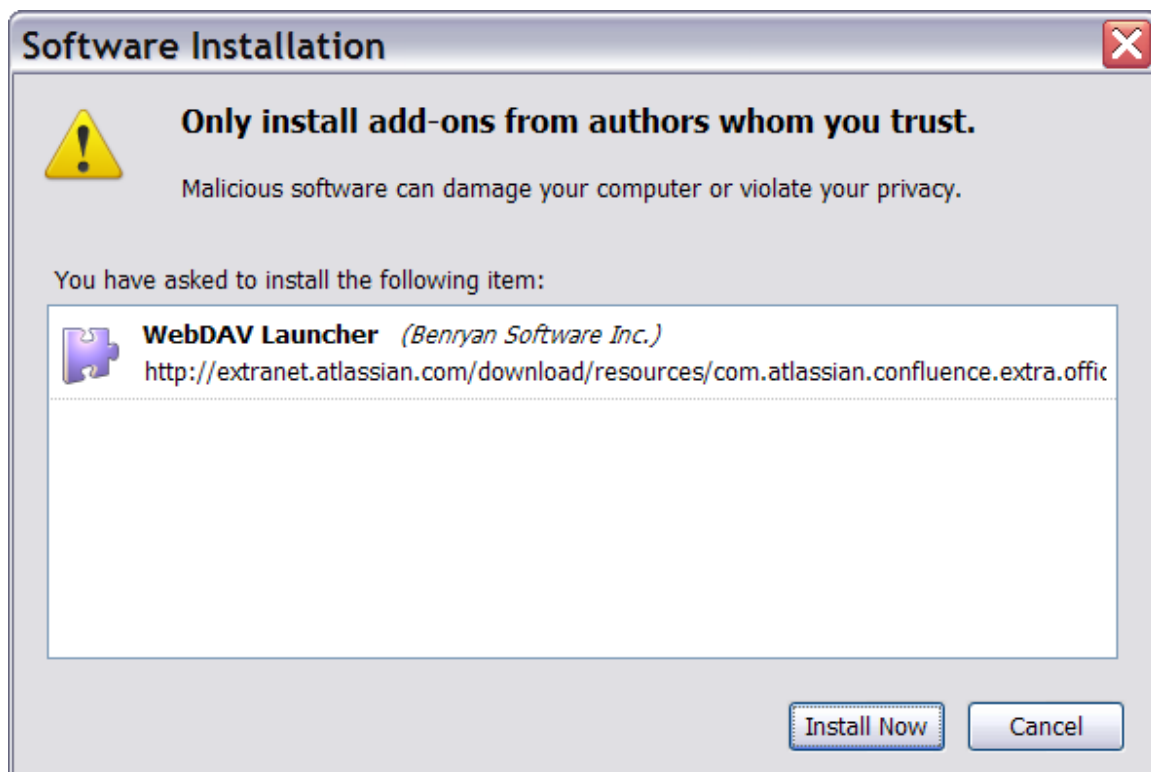


- If you see the above message, click **'Edit Options'**. You will then see an 'Allowed Sites' window like this one:

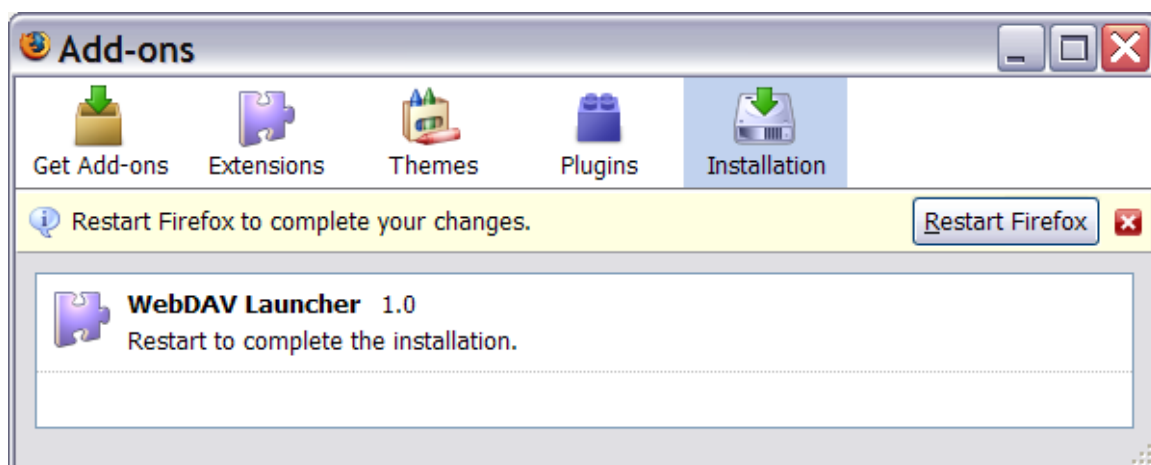


This window lets you tell Firefox that your Confluence server is allowed to install add-ons into Firefox. The **'Address of web site'** box should already contain the address of your Confluence server.

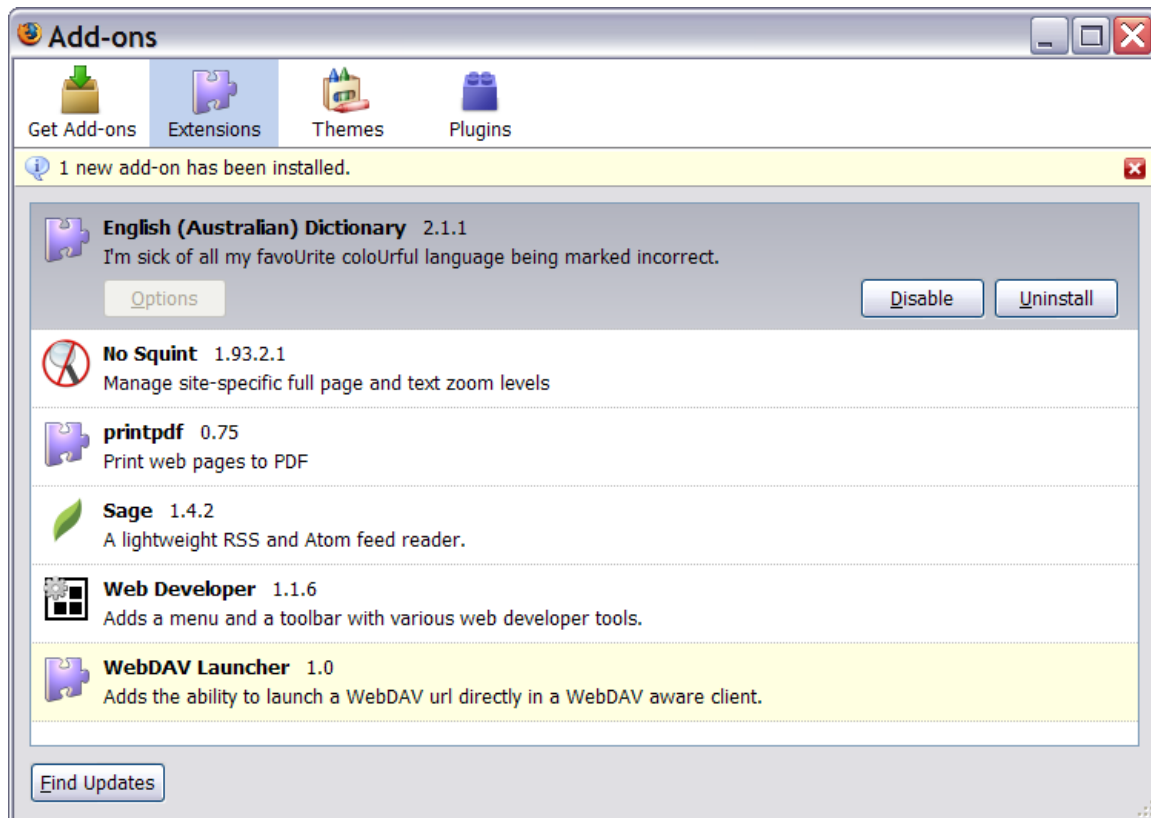
- Click the **'Allow'** button to add your Confluence server to the list.
 - Go back to your Confluence page and try to edit your Office document again, e.g. by clicking **'Edit in Word'** again. Now you will see the option to install the add-on.
3. A 'Software Installation' window will appear, asking you to confirm the installation. The window will look something like the one below, but the URL will be the address of your own Confluence server:



4. Click 'Install Now'. The installation will happen and a window will pop up asking you to restart Firefox:



5. Make sure you have saved all your Confluence pages and any other work in your browser, then restart Firefox.
6. If Firefox asks you to confirm the restart, confirm it.
7. Firefox will close all the browser windows and will then start up again. You will see a window confirming that a new add-on has been installed, like this:



Configuring the Add-On

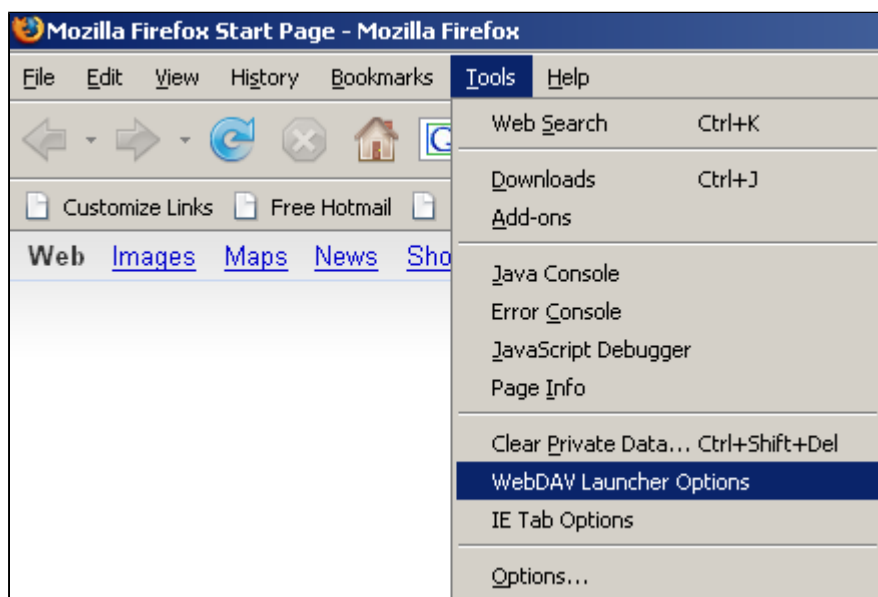
After you have installed the add-on into Firefox, you will need to configure it. Basically, you will associate a desktop application (editor) with each relevant file type. This tells the Office Connector which application to launch when it encounters a link to an editable file. The configuration is slightly different for each operating system, as described below.

Configuring the Add-On in Windows

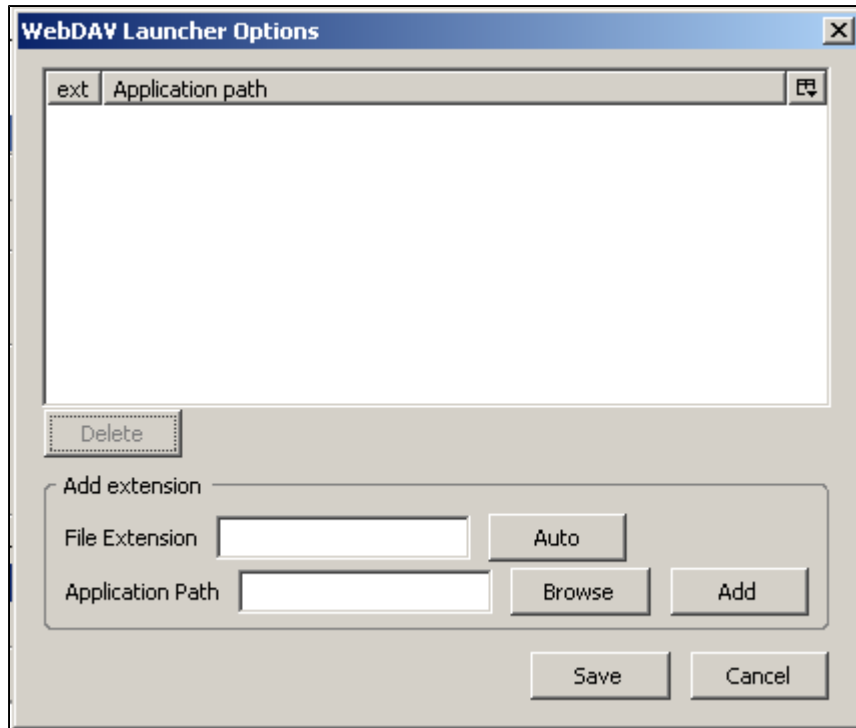
The add-on can will automatically configure itself on Windows via the system registry. The first time you edit a new file type, the add-on will look up the default editor for that file type and make that the permanent setting.

If you want to override the registry settings, or if for some reason the automatic configuration is not working, you can configure the Firefox add-on manually.

1. In Firefox, go to the **Tools** menu and select **'WebDAV Launcher Options'**, as shown in this screenshot:



2. A 'WebDAV Launcher Options' window will appear, allowing you to associate a specific file type (file extension) with a desktop application (editor). The window looks like this one:

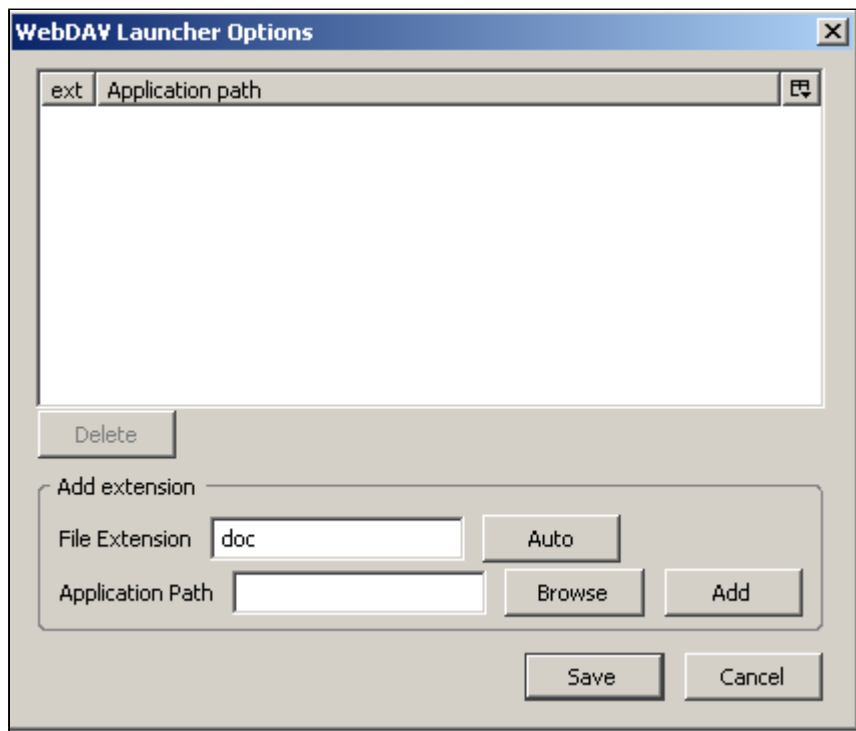


3. In the **File Extension** box, enter the extension for a particular file type. For example, you may want to associate the 'doc' file extension with Microsoft Word 2003 or earlier. To do this, you would type 'doc' in the File Extension text box.

i If you use or have recently upgraded to Office 2007

In addition to the original Office 2003 file extensions (that is, 'doc', 'ppt' and 'xls'), you *should additionally* configure the WebDAV launcher to handle the new Office 2007-specific file extensions for Microsoft Word ('docx'), Microsoft Excel ('xlsx') and PowerPoint ('pptx').

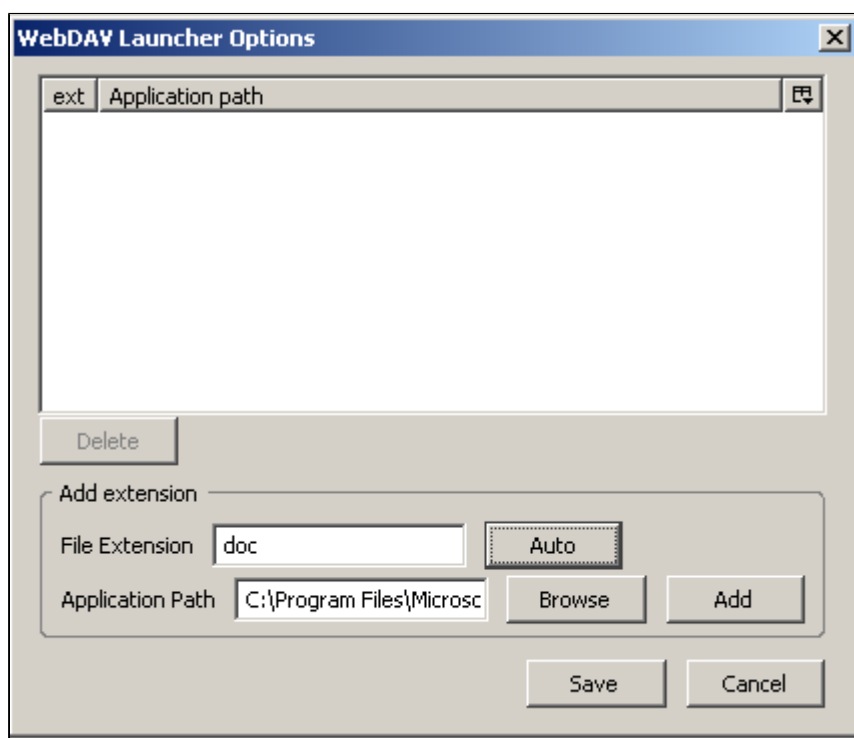
Screenshot: Configuring the WebDAV Launcher - adding the 'doc' file extension.



4. Enter the **Application Path** — Use one of the following methods to specify the associated application for editing the given file type:
 - Click the **'Auto'** button to load the associated application from the Windows registry.

- Alternatively, you can click the **'Browse'** button to find the application on your computer.
- Or you can manually type in the path to the application's executable file.

Screenshot: Configuring the WebDAV Launcher - adding the 'Application Path' for the 'doc' file extension.

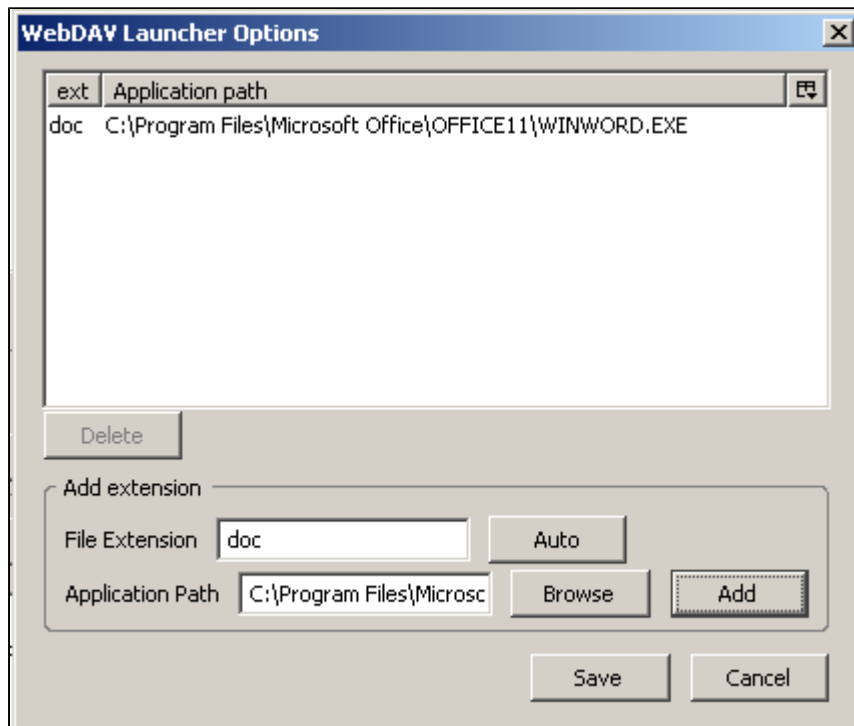


ⓘ If you use or have recently upgraded to Office 2007

Follow the instructions in this step to add the path to the relevant Office 2007 application for the Office 2007 file extension you configured [above](#). For example, if you had a typical default installation of Office 2007, you would add the application path 'C:\Program Files\Microsoft Office\Office12\WINWORD.EXE' to the 'docx' extension.

5. Click the **'Add'** button. The file extension association will be added to the list. For example, in the picture below you can see that the 'doc' extension has been associated with 'C:\Program Files\Microsoft Office\OFFICE11\WINWORD.EXE'. This is the path to the Microsoft Word 2003 executable on a specific Windows machine.

Screenshot: Configuring the WebDAV Launcher - configuration of the 'doc' file extension complete.



Configuring the Add-On in Mac OS X

The only supported Office editor for Mac OS X is [NeoOffice](#). (See [Office Connector Prerequisites](#).)

The add-on will try to configure itself automatically by looking under `/Applications/NeoOffice`, which is the default installation location for NeoOffice.

If the automatic configuration does not work, you will need to associate your NeoOffice executable with each file type.

The configuration procedure is similar to Windows, as shown above. Note that there is no 'Auto' button in Mac OS X.

Configuring the Add-On in Linux

The only known supported Office editor for Linux is [OpenOffice](#). (See [Office Connector Prerequisites](#).)

There is no automatic configuration on Linux. You will need to associate each file type with your Office editor in Firefox. Note that there is no 'Auto' button in Linux.

The configuration procedure is similar to Windows, as shown above.

For both Ubuntu and OpenSUSE, the configuration will look something like this:

File Extension	Application Path
doc and docx	/usr/bin/owriter
ppt and pptx	/usr/bin/ooimpress
xls and xlsx	/usr/bin/oocalc

Security Risks



Please be aware that there are security risks in installing this add-on to Firefox. Internet Explorer is exposed to the same risks, because it can directly open Office documents. By installing the add-in into Firefox, you are exposing Firefox to the same risks.

Summary of the risks:

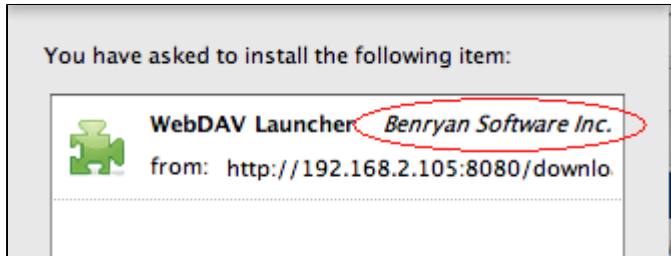
- Office documents can contain macro viruses. Before opening an Office document, make sure that you trust the source of the

document.

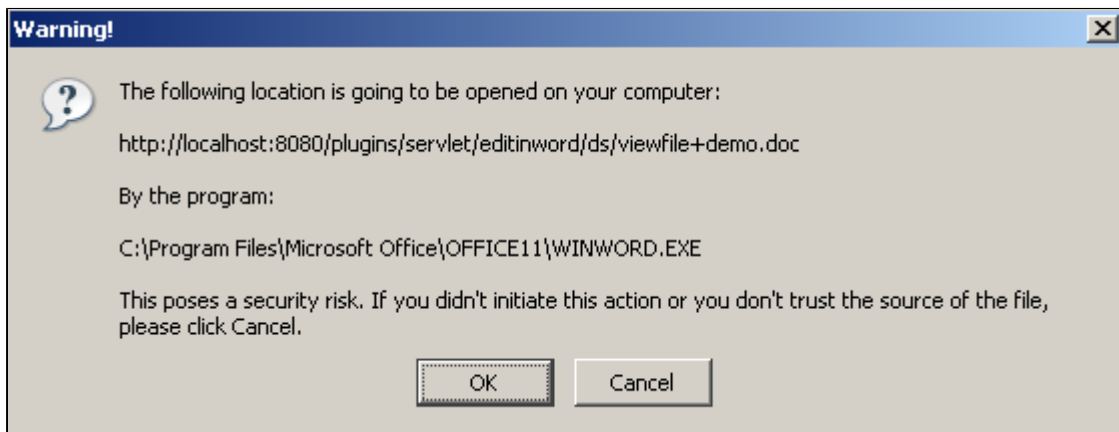
- There are known flaws in the Office file formats and Microsoft Office that an attacker can exploit to gain control of your machine. Microsoft has fixed the known exploits in the latest Service Packs for all Microsoft Office versions. But new exploitations may arise at any time. Again, be sure that you trust the source of a document before opening it.

The add-on tries to reduce the risk by supporting the following:

- **Same origin policy** — The add-on can only open documents from the same host that initiated the action.
- **Digital signature** — The add-on is digitally signed. When you install the add-on please verify that it is signed by *Benryan Software Inc.*




- **Prompt the user for confirmation** — You will always be warned before a file is opened. **Please read these warnings carefully before opening a file.** The warning tells you the complete URL of the file as well as the complete application path of the application opening the file.



Information about this Firefox Add-On

Add-on name:	WebDAV Launcher
Description:	Adds the ability to launch a WebDAV URL directly in a WebDAV-aware client.
Latest version:	1.0.4
Compatible with:	All versions of Firefox, up to and including 3.6.6
Author:	Atlassian Pty Ltd

 We plan to host the add-on at Mozilla. When the add-on has its own page at Mozilla, we will add a link from this page to the Mozilla page. Please watch [CONF-20394](#) for progress.

Related Topics

Working with the Office Connector

- [Office Connector Prerequisites](#)
- [Displaying Office Files in Confluence](#)
- [Importing an Office Document into Confluence](#)
- [Editing an Office Document from Confluence](#)
- [Editing an Office Spreadsheet from Confluence](#)
- [Editing an Office Presentation from Confluence](#)
- [Installing the Firefox Add-On for the Office Connector](#)

[Configuring the Office Connector in the Confluence Administration Guide](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Importing Content Into Confluence

Confluence 4.0, and later versions, stores all page content as XHTML.

On this page:

- [Importing Content from Other Confluence Sites](#)
- [Importing Content from Other Wikis](#)
- [Importing Content from an Office Document](#)
- [Importing Web Content](#)
- [Importing Other Non-Wiki Content](#)
- [Other Useful Plugins](#)
- [Note about Plugin Support](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Importing Content from Other Confluence Sites

For content originating from other instances of Confluence:

- If the Confluence major versions are the same, [export the space](#) from the originating Confluence site and [import](#) it into the destination Confluence site.
- If the Confluence major versions are different, you can use an intermediate server to [migrate versions](#).

Page history, attachments, and page content will be preserved and you will be able to do multiple pages at once. The drawbacks are that it may be inconvenient if the Confluence versions differ, and you cannot have a duplicate space key on the destination instance. (You cannot import a space with the same space key as a space that already exists.)

Importing Content from Other Wikis

Check whether the [Universal Wiki Converter](#) can import the content. See [Importing Content from another Wiki](#).

Importing Content from an Office Document

The Office Connector in Confluence allows you to import an Office document into Confluence, so that the document's content is copied onto one or more Confluence pages. See [Importing an Office Document into Confluence](#).

Importing Web Content

Here are some options for importing or displaying web content on a Confluence page:

- Use the [Widget Connector Macro](#) to display videos, slide shows, twitter chats, documents and more, sourced from other web sites and displayed on your Confluence page.
- Convert a HTML file to a Confluence page using the [HTML To Confluence Converter plugin](#).
- Embed an external web page into Confluence with the [HTML Include macro](#).
- Use HTML code in a page with the [HTML macro](#).

Importing Other Non-Wiki Content

Importing non-wiki markup into Confluence requires a conversion process:

- Text with basic formatting can be pasted directly into the editor. This includes simple Word documents or web pages.
- Files such as Microsoft Excel documents can be imported using a [content converter plugin](#).
- Confluence pages saved to disk can be [imported from disk](#).
- Files can be uploaded in bulk using the [Confluence WebDav Plugin](#).
- Full featured customisation is available using the [Confluence XML-RPC and SOAP APIs](#).

Other Useful Plugins

- [Content Import Plugin](#)

Note about Plugin Support

Before installing a plugin into your Confluence site, please check the plugin's information page to see whether it is supported by Atlassian, by another vendor, or not at all. See our guidelines on [plugin support](#).

Related Topics

[Working with the Office Connector](#)
[Importing Content from another Wiki](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Importing Pages from Disk

Confluence allows you to import text files from a disk or a directory on the Confluence server, and convert them into Confluence pages. Each file will be imported as a Confluence page that has the same name as the file.



- The text file **needs** to contain Confluence wiki markup to be converted accurately into a Confluence page.
- You need to be a [System Administrator](#) to import text files.
- You can import pages from disk into global spaces, but not into personal spaces. Please see [Working with Spaces](#) for information about differences between *global spaces* and *personal spaces*.

To import text files:

1. Choose **Browse > Space Admin**.
Space Admin is displayed only if you are a space administrator for that space or you are a Confluence system administrator.
2. Click **Import pages from disk** in the left panel under 'Import'.
3. Type the directory's path into the **Import directory** box.
4. Select **Trim file extensions** to remove file extensions from the page titles when converting the files to Confluence pages. Note that the Confluence pages will take their titles from the files' names (including their extensions). So to avoid having page titles with a suffix like '.txt', make sure you check this box.
5. Select **Overwrite existing pages** if you want to replace existing Confluence pages with the same page title.
6. Click **Import**.

Screenshot : Importing text files

Import directory:	<input type="text"/>
Trim file extensions:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Overwrite existing pages:	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="button" value="Import"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

Related Topics

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Sharing Content

Confluence provides a number of ways for you to notify other users about content that may be of interest to them:

- You can [share a page link](#) with them.
- You can [mention](#) the user when you write a page, blog post or comment. Mentioning a user automatically emails a notification to them about that content.
- You can [broadcast a message](#) that appears in Confluence activity streams.

Other users can also find out about changes to content in Confluence by [watching](#) pages and spaces.

You may also be interested in [exporting Confluence content](#) to other formats such as XML, HTML, MS Word and PDF.

Related Topics

[Creating Content](#)
[Watching Changes](#)
[Organising Content](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Network Overview

The 'network' feature provides notifications on the activity of users that you choose to follow. This compares with Confluence's other [content tracking](#) features, which provide notifications on specified types of content updates, made by any user.

The types of activities tracked by the network feature include:


- Additions or edits to [pages](#) or [blog posts](#)
- [Comments](#) added to a page or blog post or edits to existing comments
- Updates to a user's [User Status Updates](#)
- Updates to a user's [User Profile](#)

On this page:

- [Accessing Your Network View](#)
- [Following Another User](#)
- [Stop Following a User](#)
- [Notes](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

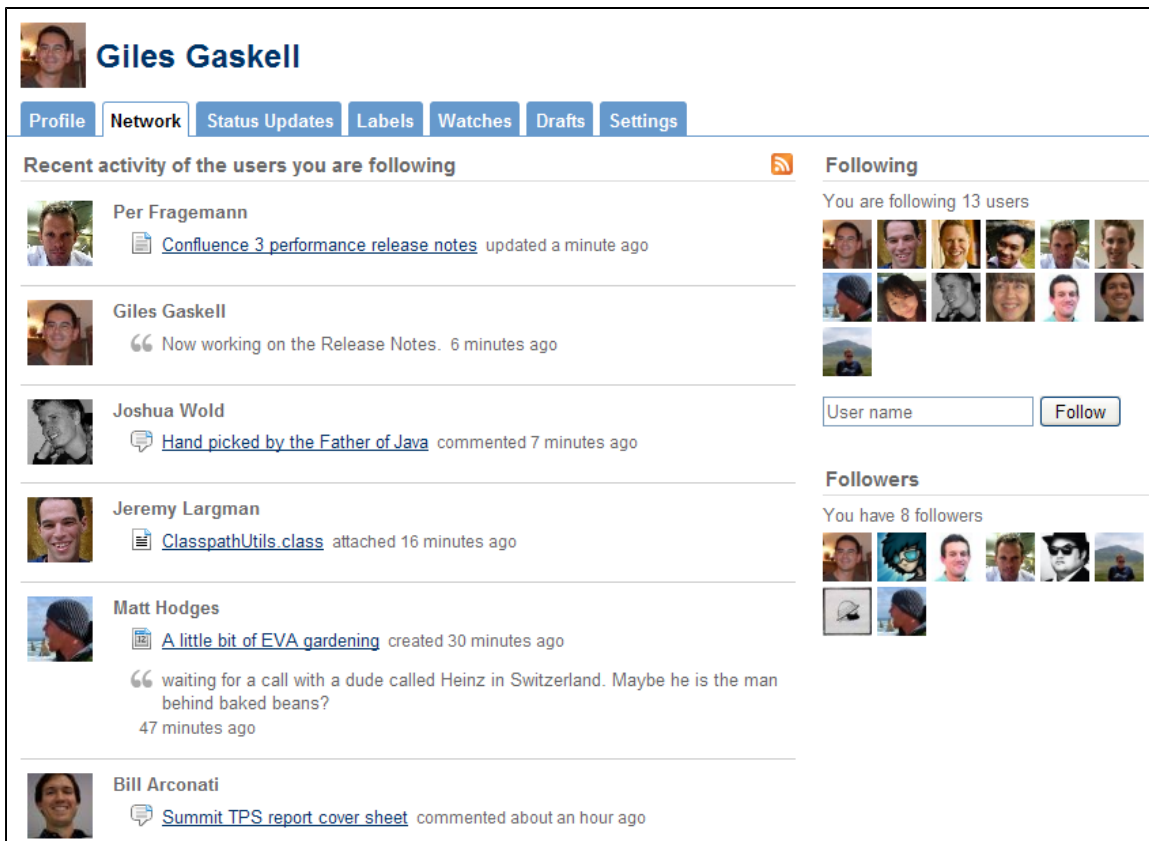
Accessing Your Network View

To see your network view:

- Go to the 'Network' view for your user profile. To do this:
 - Go to **your name** (the 'User' menu) at the top of the page and choose **Network**.
 You can also access your 'Network' view by clicking **More** in the 'Network' section of your Profile Sidebar.

You can access another user's Network view using the [Hover Profile](#) or from their Profile Sidebar.

Screenshot: Example of the Network view



The screenshot shows the 'Network' view for user Giles Gaskell. At the top, there's a header with the user's name and a navigation bar with tabs: Profile, Network (selected), Status Updates, Labels, Watches, Drafts, and Settings. Below the header, the main content is divided into two columns. The left column, titled 'Recent activity of the users you are following', lists recent updates from users being followed, including Per Fragemann, Giles Gaskell, Joshua Wold, Jeremy Largman, Matt Hodges, and Bill Arconati. The right column, titled 'Following', shows a grid of 13 user avatars and a search bar with a 'Follow' button. Below this, the 'Followers' section shows a grid of 8 user avatars.

Following Another User

You can follow another user by using either the Hover Profile or your Network view.

To follow a user with the Hover Profile:

1. Open the user's Hover Profile popup. To do this:
 - a. Log in to Confluence, if you have not already done so.
 - b. Move your mouse pointer over a user's linked name or profile picture. Wait until the hover profile popup appears.
2. Click **Follow** in the popup.

To follow a user from your Network view:

1. Go to the 'Network' view for your user profile. To do this:
 - Go to **your name** (the 'User' menu) at the top of the page and choose **Network**.
 - You can also access your 'Network' view by clicking **More** in the 'Network' section of your Profile Sidebar.
2. In the 'Following' section, at the right of the page, type the first few characters of the name (or username) of the user you wish to follow.
3. Choose the user from the list of suggestions.
4. Click **Follow** in the popup.

If you now refresh or revisit your Network view, the profile picture(s) of the user(s) you just followed will appear within the 'Following' list on the right. Additionally, their tracked activities will start appearing in the 'Recent Activity' list on this page.

Stop Following a User**To stop following a user by using the Hover Profile:**

1. Open the user's Hover Profile popup. To do this:
 - a. Log in to Confluence, if you have not already done so.
 - b. Move your mouse pointer over a user's linked name or profile picture. Wait until the hover profile popup appears.
2. Click **Stop Following** in the popup.

You can also stop following a user by going to their Profile view.

If you now refresh or revisit your Network view, the profile picture(s) of the user(s) you just stopped following are removed from the 'Following' list on the right. Additionally, their tracked activities will stop appearing in the 'Recent Activity' list on this page.

Notes

Once you are following a user, you can see their activity in a number of ways:

- Your Network view: your Network view shows all the tracked activities that you have permission to view for all the users that you are following. In the same way, people who follow you will be able to see all your Confluence-based activities on their network views, provided they have permission to view the content. See below for instructions on accessing your network view.
- RSS feeds: you can subscribe to any Confluence user's network RSS feed and receive summaries on the activities of other users they are following in their network. See [Subscribing to a Network RSS Feed](#).
- Email notifications: you can request email notifications of any activity in your network. See [Subscribing to Email Notifications of Updates to Confluence Content](#).

Note that it is not possible to stop another user from following you. If you are interested in the ability to block followers, please watch [CONF-16285](#) for updates on the feature request.

Related Topics

[Network Macro](#)

[Subscribing to a Network RSS Feed](#)

[Subscribing to Email Notifications of Updates to Confluence Content](#)


Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).


Subscribing to a Network RSS Feed

You can create an [RSS Feed](#) from any user's [network](#) view, allowing you to receive summaries on the activities of users they are following in their network. The types of activities tracked in these RSS feed summaries include:

- Additions or edits to [pages](#) or [blog posts](#)
- [Comments](#) added to a page or blog post or edits to existing comments
- Updates to a user's [User Status](#)
- Updates to a user's [User Profile](#)

To subscribe to a user's network RSS feed,

1. Locate the following icon , which is available from the top-right of:
 - The 'Recent activity of the users you are following' section of your network page, or
 - The 'Activity of followed users' section of another user's network page.
2. Copy and paste the icon's link into your RSS newsreader.
3. To have your newsreader log into Confluence, you can [add your username and password to the feed URL](#).

 Please note that if you do this, someone with access to your RSS newsreader configuration can read these Confluence authentication details.

Customising your Network RSS Feed


Currently, Confluence does not provide a user interface mechanism for customising your network RSS feed. However, you can modify the maximum number of results and type of content displayed in these feeds by directly editing the RSS feed link in your RSS newsreader.

To modify the maximum number of results displayed in your RSS feed,

1. Edit the RSS feed link in your RSS newsreader.
2. Change the value of the `max` parameter from its default value of 40 to a value of your choice. The following example shows this parameter-value combination highlighted in red:
`http://confluence.atlassian.com/feeds/network.action?username=ggaskell&max=60&publicFeed=false&os_authType=basic&rssType=atom`
3. Save the modified link in your RSS newsreader.

To modify the type of content displayed in your RSS feed,

1. Edit the RSS feed link in your RSS newsreader.
2. Append the parameter `contentType` to the end of the link, followed by an equals sign (=) and then add the appropriate content type value of your choice:
 - `USER_STATUS` — restricts the RSS feed to user status updates.
 - `PAGE` — restricts the RSS feed to page additions or updates.
 - `BLOG` — restricts the RSS feed to blog post additions or updates.
 - `ATTACHMENT` — restricts the RSS feed to attachment additions or updates.
 - `COMMENT` — restricts the RSS feed to comment additions or updates.

 Content type values are case-sensitive and when editing the network RSS feed link, ensure that each parameter is separated from the other by an ampersand (&).
 The following example shows the content type parameter-value combination highlighted in red:
`http://confluence.atlassian.com/feeds/network.action?username=ggaskell&max=40&publicFeed=false&contentType=USER_STATUS`
3. Save the modified link in your RSS newsreader.



Filtering for more than one type of content (by adding multiple values to the `contentType` parameter) is not supported.

RELATED TOPICS

[Network Overview](#)
[Subscribing to RSS Feeds within Confluence](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Using Mentions

You can use autocomplete to automatically notify another Confluence user that you have mentioned them in a page, blog post, comment or status update.

Type '@' to see a list of suggested users to mention. When you save the page, an email is automatically sent to the user to notify them that they have been mentioned on that page (if they have permission to view the page or blog post). This works for new and updated pages, blog posts, comment and status updates.

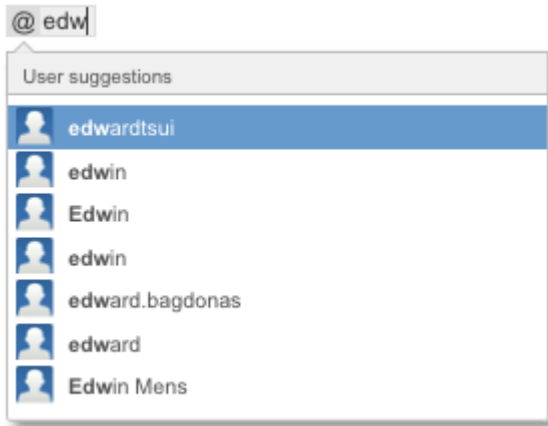


You need to know the user's real name – autocomplete for mentions suggests users' full names only, not their usernames.

To autocomplete a mention using '@':

1. Edit the page.
2. Click where you want to insert a mention and type '@' and then the first few characters of the user's real name.
3. Choose the user's name from the list of suggestions.

Screenshot: Autocomplete for mentions



Related Topics

[Using Autocomplete](#)

[Keyboard Shortcuts](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

E-mailing a Page

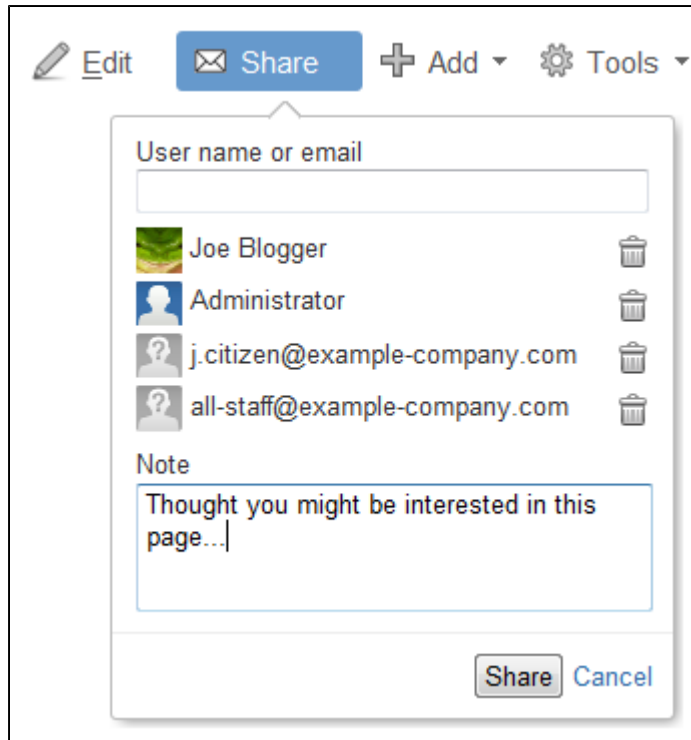
In Confluence, you can easily share a Confluence page or blog post by e-mailing it to recipients of your choice.

E-mailing a link to a Confluence page or blog post

The 'Share' button provides a quick mechanism for e-mailing a link to a page or blog post to Confluence users or any e-mail addresses.

To e-mail a link to a Confluence page or blog post using the Share button:

1. Go to the page or blog post you wish to share.
2. Click **Share** at the top-right of the page. A popup for entering recipients and a note will appear.
 ⓘ The **Share** button will not be visible if your Confluence administrator has not configured an outgoing mail server for your Confluence site.
 If you want to enable this feature, please ask your Confluence administrator. Instructions for enabling this feature can be found here: [Configuring a Server for Outgoing Mail](#).
3. Enter the name or username of a Confluence user or any e-mail address to whom you wish to share the Confluence page. When you begin entering a name or username, or you have typed a valid e-mail address, an autocomplete dropdown will appear.
4. Select the appropriate user or e-mail address from this dropdown. You can add multiple recipients to the list.



- To remove a recipient from the list, click the 'bin' icon to the right of the recipient.
- 5. Enter an optional message into the **Note** box.
- 6. Click **Share** to send a link to the page with your note to the recipients listed on the popup.

Related Topics

[Working with Pages](#)
[Working with Blog Posts](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Exporting Confluence Pages and Spaces to Other Formats

You can convert a part of, or the entire contents of a space to various formats, including Microsoft Word, HTML, PDF and XML. This is called 'exporting' the space.

What would you like to do?

- [Exporting Confluence Pages and Spaces to HTML](#)
- [Exporting Confluence Pages and Spaces to PDF](#)
- [Exporting to a Word document](#)
- [Exporting Confluence Pages and Spaces to XML](#)

Related Topics

[Browsing a space](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Exporting Confluence Pages and Spaces to HTML

Confluence allows you to export part of, or the entire contents of, a space into a zipped archive of HTML files. This is useful if you want convert your space into a static website.

To use the space export functionality, you need 'Export Space' permission. See the guide to [space permissions](#) or contact a [space administrator](#) for more information.

To export pages to HTML:

1. Go to a page in the space and choose **Browse > Advanced**.
2. Click **HTML Export** in the left-hand panel.
 This option will only be visible if you have 'Export Space' permission.
3. Select the **Include Comments** check box if you want to include comments for the pages you are exporting.
4. Select the pages you want to export by selecting the check boxes in the tree view of pages displayed. By default, all pages are

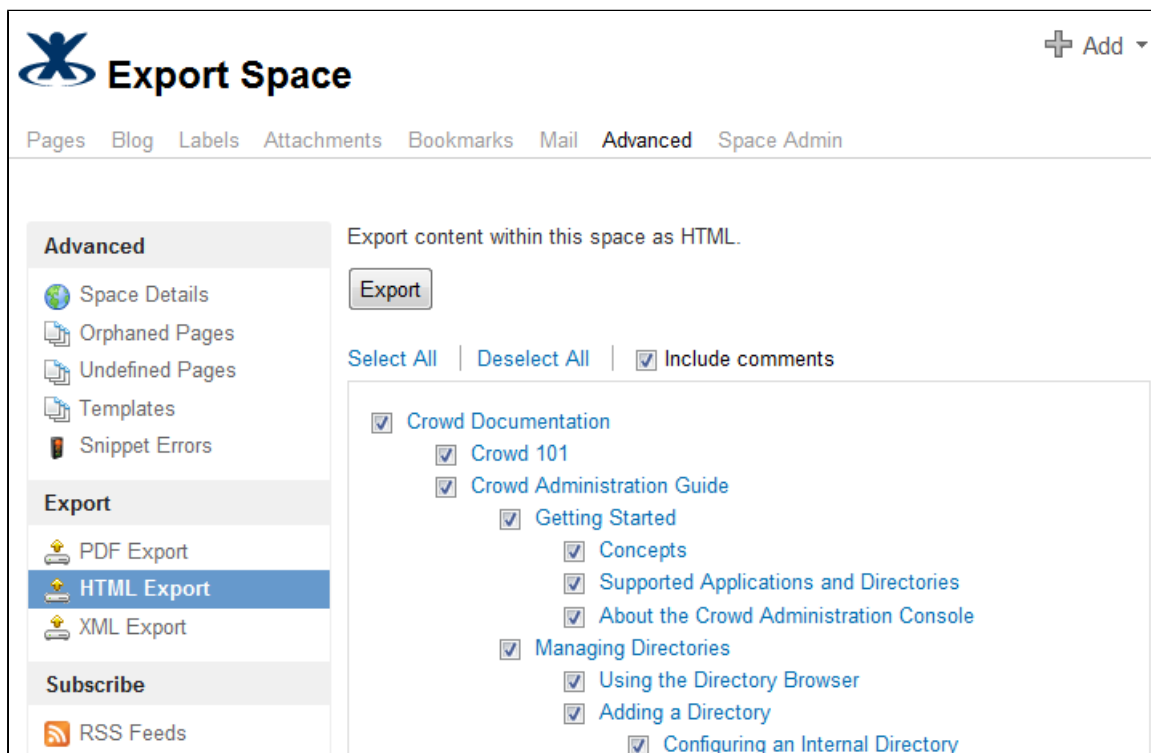
selected. You have the option to **Select All** or **Deselect All** pages.

If you select the check box of a page that contains one or more child or descendant pages, all of these child and descendant pages will also be selected. Similarly, if you clear the check box of such a page, all of its child and descendant pages will also be cleared. This provides a convenient method of exporting subtrees, for example, chapters or sections within a document.

5. Click **Export**. This will create a zipped archive of HTML files.

6. When the export process has finished, download the zipped archive as prompted and extract the files into a folder.

Screenshot: Selecting pages to export



Notes

- Page attachments are placed in individual folders with names in the following format:
`... \download\attachments\xxxxxx`
 where 'xxxxxx' is the page ID of the page containing the attachments.
- By default, the 'Space Details' page is exported as `index.html` and displays the space's details as well as a list of all available pages within it.
- Blog posts are not included in the HTML export. See the feature request: [CONF-14684](#).

Related Topics

[Exporting Confluence Pages and Spaces to PDF](#)

[Exporting Confluence Pages and Spaces to XML](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Exporting Confluence Pages and Spaces to PDF

This page explains how you can export individual Confluence pages, entire spaces or selections of pages into a single PDF file.

On this page:

- [Exporting Single Pages](#)
- [Exporting Multiple Pages or the Entire Space](#)
- [Customising the Appearance of PDF Exports](#)
- [Notes](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Exporting Single Pages

You can export a Confluence page to PDF. This option exports a single page and is available to all users who have permission to view the page:

- Go to a page in the space and choose **Tools > Export to PDF**. Follow the prompts to export the page.

Note that the export of a single page to PDF applies any PDF stylesheet customisations, but does not apply any PDF layout customisations. To make your PDF layout customisations apply to a single page exported to PDF, use the 'multiple page' method described below to export that single page only. See [Customising Exports to PDF](#).

Comments on the page are not exported to the PDF file.

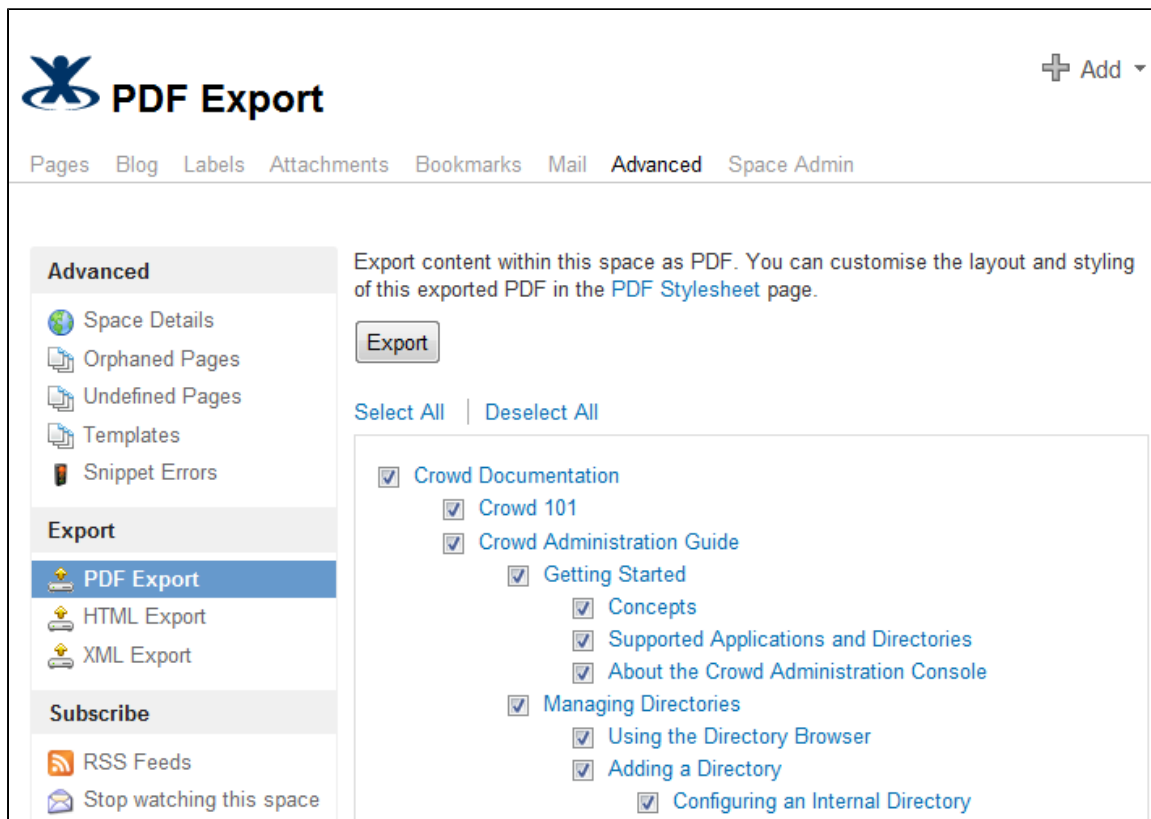
Exporting Multiple Pages or the Entire Space

Using Confluence's space export functionality, you can convert multiple pages or an entire space to PDF.

To use the space export functionality, you need 'Export Space' permission. See the guide to [space permissions](#) or contact a [space administrator](#) for more information.

To export a space or selected pages to PDF:

1. Go to a page in the space and choose **Browse > Advanced**.
2. Click **PDF Export** in the left-hand panel.
This option will only be visible if you have the 'Export Space' permission.
3. Select the pages you want to export.
 - You have the option to **Select All** or **Deselect All** pages.
 - When you select a page, all its child pages will also be selected. Similarly, when you deselect a page all its child pages will also be deselected.
4. Click **Export**.
5. When the export process has finished, download and save the PDF file as prompted.



Screenshot above: Selecting pages to export

Customising the Appearance of PDF Exports

You can add a title page, a table of contents and customised headers and footers to the PDF output. For more advanced customisations, you can apply Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) modifications. These customisations are specific to each space. You need the 'Space Administrator' permission to be able to apply these customisations. For more information, see [Customising Exports to PDF](#).

Notes

- Only image attachments that have been inserted into a page are included when exporting to PDF.
- To export a PDF containing international text, you need to [install a Unicode font in Confluence](#).
- Blog posts are not included within the PDF export. If you like, you can vote for this feature request: [CONF-5599](#).
- If you have 'Space Administrator' permissions, the link to customise the PDF Stylesheet is provided at the top of the page tree, as shown in the screenshot above.
- Confluence's PDF Export feature is designed to handle a wide variety of content. However, on rare occasions the PDF Export process may fail due to an unrecognised customisation. If that happens the PDF export screen will indicate the title of the page in

which the problem occurred, to help you diagnose the cause of the failure.

Related Topics

[Customising Exports to PDF](#)
[Advanced PDF Stylesheet Customisations](#)
[Creating PDF in Another Language](#)
[Exporting Confluence Pages and Spaces to HTML](#)
[Exporting Confluence Pages and Spaces to XML](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Customising Exports to PDF

Confluence administrators and space administrators can customise the PDF exports for individual spaces.

Please take note of the following points:

- PDF customisations are unique to each space.
- Confluence's PDF customisations use a combination of HTML and CSS (Cascading Style Sheets).
- To achieve a particular requirement in the exported PDF file, you make changes in one or both of the following:
 - The **PDF Layout**, where HTML is used to define the structure of the exported content, including features such as the title page, headers and footers.
 - The **PDF Stylesheet**, where CSS is used to define the style of elements in the exported content, such as page size and margins, font, colour, and list numbering.

On this page:

- [Customising the PDF Layout](#)
 - [Setting a global PDF layout](#)
 - [Setting the PDF layout at space level](#)
- [Customising the PDF Stylesheet](#)
 - [Setting a global PDF Stylesheet](#)
 - [Setting a space-level PDF stylesheet](#)
- [Example Customisations](#)
 - [Page Size](#)
 - [Page Orientation: Landscape or Portrait](#)
 - [Page Margins](#)
 - [Page Breaks](#)
 - [Title Page](#)
 - [Table of Contents](#)
 - [Headers and Footers](#)
 - [Page Numbering](#)
 - [Wrapping Long Words](#)
 - [General Formatting](#)
- [Notes](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Customising the PDF Layout


You can add your own HTML to customise the title page, page headers and page footers in the PDF output.

To customise the PDF Layout:

Setting a global PDF layout

1. Open the Confluence Admin screen.
2. Select **Look and Feel > PDF Layout**. The following screens allows you to enter HTML and CSS that will be rendered on the PDF title page, as well as page headers and footers.

Setting the PDF layout at space level

1. Choose **Browse > Space Admin**.
 -  **Space Admin** is displayed only if you are a space administrator for that space or you are a Confluence system administrator.
2. Click **PDF Layout** in the 'Look and Feel' section of the left-hand panel.
3. Click **Edit**, and customise the HTML that generates the following areas in the exported PDF document:
 - **PDF Space Export Title Page** – title page.
 - **PDF Space Export Header** – page headers.
 - **PDF Space Export Footer** – page footers.
4. Enter your customisations into each text box as required. The PDF layout section accepts HTML code. You can include inline CSS in the HTML too. Save your work.

Customising the PDF Stylesheet

You can adjust the appearance of the PDF pages by making CSS customisations in the PDF Stylesheet screen as required.


- To get started, you can download the default CSS rules of the PDF stylesheet: [confluencedefaultpdf.css](#). Any rule defined in this file can be customised and added to the 'PDF Export Stylesheet' section.
- Your customisations override any default CSS rule.
- If no PDF customisations are defined in the PDF Stylesheet screen, the default CSS rules will be applied to your PDF exports. By default, the export does not include a title page, headers or footers.

To customise the PDF Stylesheet:

Setting a global PDF Stylesheet

1. Open the Confluence Admin screen.
2. Click **Look and Feel > PDF Stylesheet**. The following screen allows you to enter and save CSS code that will render content on each page.

Setting a space-level PDF stylesheet

1. Choose **Browse > Space Admin**.
 **Space Admin** is displayed only if you are a space administrator for that space or you are a Confluence system administrator.
2. Click **PDF Stylesheet** in the left-hand panel. The 'PDF Export Stylesheet' section appears, showing the current contents of your PDF stylesheet. It contains all CSS rule customisations applied to the pages in the space.
3. Click **Edit** and enter your customisations into the text box as required. The PDF stylesheet section accepts Cascading Style Sheets (CSS) rules. Save your work.

Example Customisations

This section provides examples of typical customisations that you can add. See also [Advanced PDF Customisations](#).

Page Size

The default page size is based on the locale of your Confluence server. For example, if this server is located in the US then the default paper size of your PDF export will be US Letter (8.5 inches wide by 11 inches long). If the server is located in Australia, the default paper size will be A4 (210 mm wide by 297 mm long). More information about paper sizes can be found on [Wikipedia](#).

To modify the page size to A4, edit the PDF Stylesheet to add a `size` property to the `CSS@page` rule, like this:

CSS - PDF Stylesheet

```
@page
{
/*The A4 paper size is 210 mm wide by 297 mm long*/
size: 210mm 297mm;
}
```

Page Orientation: Landscape or Portrait

To change the page orientation of your PDF document, simply reverse the order of the values declared in the `@page` rule's `size` property. The first and second values of this property represent the width and height of the page, respectively.

For example, to generate PDF space exports in A4-sized landscape orientation, your `@page` rule might look like this:

CSS - PDF Stylesheet

```
@page
{
/*A4-sized pages in landscape orientation are 297 mm wide by 210 mm long*/
size: 297mm 210mm;
}
```

Page Margins

To set all margins to 15 mm, with a paper size of A4, edit the CSS `@page` rule in the PDF Stylesheet, like this:

CSS - PDF Stylesheet

```
@page
{
  size: 210mm 297mm;
  margin: 15mm;
}
```

To set the margins independently, edit the `@page` rule as follows:

CSS - PDF Stylesheet

```
@page
{
  margin-top: 2.54cm;
  margin-bottom: 2.54cm;
  margin-left: 1.27cm;
  margin-right: 1.27cm;
}
```

To set margins to provide a gutter for binding a printed document, use the `:left` and `:right` pseudo-classes, as follows:

CSS - PDF Stylesheet

```
@page :left
{
  margin-left: 4cm;
  margin-right: 3cm;
}
@page :right
{
  margin-left: 3cm;
  margin-right: 4cm;
}
@page :first
{
  margin-top: 10cm /* Top margin on first page 10cm */
}
```

Note the use of the `:first` pseudo-class in the example above to define distinct margins for a cover or title page.

Page Breaks

By default, Confluence pages are exported without page breaks, so that shorter pages will appear on the same PDF page.

To make each Confluence page appear on a separate page in the PDF file, add the following rule in the PDF Stylesheet:

CSS - PDF Stylesheet

```
.pagetitle
{
  page-break-before: always;
}
```

Title Page

You can add a title page to your PDF document by adding HTML to the Title Page section of the PDF Layout screen. The following example creates the title page and adds a title:

HTML - PDF Layout: Title Page Section

```
<div class="fsTitlePage">
  
  <div class="fsTitle">Planning for Confluence 4.0</div>
</div>
```

Use CSS rules in the PDF Stylesheet to control the appearance of the title page and the title text:

CSS - PDF Stylesheet

```
.fsTitlePage
{
  margin-left: auto;
  margin-top: 50mm;
  margin-right: auto;
  page-break-after: always;
}

.fsTitle
{
  font-size: 42px;
  font-weight: bold;
  margin: 72px 0 4px 0;
  text-align: center;
}
```

Adding an Image to the Title Page

In the example above, the title page includes an image called 'titlepage.png', centred in the middle of the page. The "590719" in the `src` attribute is the ID number of the page to which the image is attached.

Follow these instructions to include an image on your title page:

1. Attach the image to a Confluence page.
2. View the list of attachments on that page, then right-click the image and copy its location.
3. Paste the link into the appropriate `src=""` attribute in your PDF Stylesheet, as shown above.
4. Edit the image URL so that it is relative, by removing the first part of the URL before `/download/...`

Table of Contents

By default, a table of contents will be generated after the title page, or at the beginning of the PDF document if no title page is defined in the PDF Layout. To see the default CSS rules applied to the table of contents, download the default CSS rules ([confluencedefaultpdf.css](#)) and examine the specific rules with `toc` in their name.

To make changes to the appearance of the table of contents, define CSS rules in the PDF Stylesheet.

Disabling the Table of Contents

To prevent the table of contents from being generated in your PDF document, add the `div.toc` rule to the PDF Stylesheet and set its `display` property to `none`:

CSS - PDF Stylesheet

```
div.toc
{
  display: none;
}
```

Changing the Leader Character in the Table of Contents

The leader character is used to link a heading in the table of contents with its page number. By default, the leader character is the '.' (dot) character. Leader values of `dotted`, `solid` and `space` are allowed. You can also use a string, for example `leader(" . . . ")`.

To change the leader character to a solid line, modify the `leader()` value on the `content` property of the CSS rule as follows:

CSS - PDF Stylesheet

```
span.toclead:before
{
  content: leader(solid);
}
```

Headers and Footers

You can add headers and footers to your PDF pages using the 'Header' and 'Footer' sections of the PDF Layout screen. By default, headers and footers only apply to a space export and not to exports of single pages (however, see [Advanced PDF Export Customisations](#)). The following example adds a simple copyright notice.

HTML - PDF Layout: Footer Section

Copyright © 2011, Atlassian Pty Ltd.

Page Numbering

To add page numbering, you need to combine customised HTML in the PDF Layout with customised CSS in the PDF Stylesheet.

1. PDF Layout HTML: In the Footer section (or the Header section), use an empty span element with a unique ID, for example `pageNum`, to act as a place holder for the page number.

HTML - PDF Layout: Footer Section

```
<span id="pageNum" />
```

2. PDF Stylesheet CSS: Create the following CSS selector rule for the empty span:

CSS - PDF Stylesheet

```
#pageNum:before
{
  content: counter(page);
}
```

Analysing the above CSS selector rule in more detail:

- The `#pageNum` rule selects the HTML element with the specified ID of "pageNum", which is the `span` element we created for the header or footer.
- The `:before` part of the selector is a pseudo class that allows the insertion of content before the `span` element is processed.
- The `counter(page)` is a function that returns the current page number as its content.
- The `content` property tells the CSS processor that dynamic content (that is, an incrementing page number) is to be inserted at the `span` tag.

Wrapping Long Words

In order to break long words or words that are not separated by whitespace, add a selector to the PDF stylesheet containing the `word-wrap` property with a value of `break-word`:

CSS - PDF Stylesheet

```
div
{
  word-wrap: break-word;
}
```

General Formatting

You can use the stylesheet to customise the output of just about anything else that will influence the look and feel of the final document. This includes fonts, tables, line spacing, macros, etc. The export engine works directly from the HTML output produced by Confluence. Therefore, the first step in customising something is to find a selector for the HTML element produced by Confluence or the Confluence macro. Then add a CSS rule to the PDF stylesheet. Your customisation will appear in the PDF export.

Notes


- **Demotion of heading elements: h1, h2, and so on.** Due to the hierarchical manner in which a space is exported, Confluence will modify the heading elements to generate a uniform appearance for the entire space export. This means that headings will be demoted. This will affect the application of custom PDF Stylesheets. It is possible to calculate the amount by which a heading will be demoted in order to have the correct CSS styling applied. A heading will be demoted by the value of its depth in the export tree. A page at the first level will be demoted by 1 (all `<h1>` elements will become `<h2>` elements, and so on). A page at the second level will be demoted by 2, and so on.
- **Atlassian support for PDF customisation is limited.** We support the mechanism for customising the PDF layout with HTML and CSS, and we will help if the mechanism is broken or does not work as we say it should in our published examples. But, since custom HTML and CSS offer potentially limitless possibilities, Atlassian will not support issues that are caused by or related to PDF customisations.

Related Topics

[Advanced PDF Export Customisations](#)

Advanced PDF Export Customisations

This page provides information about 'advanced' PDF export customisations. These expand upon the regular customisations described in [Customising Exports to PDF](#).

 The information below is for advanced users. Customisations are not supported by Atlassian. Be aware that the advanced customisations described below require knowledge of certain parts of Confluence, and of CSS and HTML. This documentation is intended for advanced users. Some of the suggestions below are moderately complex, or irregular in nature. If you are having trouble understanding then we strongly suggest you ask an expert. We do not support any of the customisations described below. This means that the Atlassian support engineers will not be able to help you with these modifications.

On this page:

- [Header and Footer](#)
 - [Adding Headers and Footers to Single Page Exports](#)
 - [Adding Images to Headers and Footers](#)
- [Incorporating Other Fonts](#)
- [Adding a Dynamic Title to the Title Page](#)
- [Hiding Text from the PDF Output](#)
- [Indexing](#)
- [Notes](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Header and Footer

Adding Headers and Footers to Single Page Exports

By default, custom headers and footers set up in the PDF Layout screen (see [Customising Exports to PDF](#)), only apply to space exports and not to exports of single pages. However, it is possible to add CSS rules to your PDF Stylesheet that produce headers and footers in single page exports as well as space exports.

For custom headers, define `@top-left`, `@top-center` and `@top-right` rules within your `@page` rule. These rules apply respectively to content that appears on the left-hand side, centre and right-hand side of your page's header area.

For custom footers, define `@bottom-left`, `@bottom-center` and `@bottom-right` rules within your `@page` rule.

For example, the following rules add a document title at the centre of the header and a page number at the centre of the footer:

CSS - PDF Stylesheet

```
@page
{
  @top-center
  {
    content: "Document Title Goes Here";
    font-family: ConfluenceInstalledFont, Helvetica, Arial, sans-serif;
    font-size: 8pt;
  }
  @bottom-center
  {
    content: "Page " counter(page);
    font-family: ConfluenceInstalledFont, Helvetica, Arial, sans-serif;
    font-size: 8pt;
  }
  /* Any other page-specific rules */
}
```

Notes:

- The `font-family` and `font-size` properties ensure that the header and footer text is rendered in the same default font style used for the body text, based on the default CSS rules.
- It is not possible to use this method to insert images (stored as attachments within your Confluence instance) into the headers and footers of single page exports.

Adding Images to Headers and Footers

To insert an image into the header or footer, add HTML to the Header or Footer section of the PDF Layout screen.

The following example uses and use an HTML `img` element with `src` attribute to add an image to the left of the header. The `src` attribute refers to an image attached to a Confluence page. The image element is usually placed within a `div` element container.

HTML - PDF Layout: Header Section

```
<div style="margin-top:10mm">
  
</div>
```

In the example above, the header includes an image called 'header-image.png'. The "12346" in the `src` attribute is the ID number of the page to which the image is attached.

Follow these instructions to include an image on your page:

1. Attach the image to a Confluence page.
2. View the list of attachments on that page, then right-click the image and copy its location.
3. Paste the link into the appropriate `src=""` attribute in your PDF Stylesheet, as shown above.
4. Edit the image URL so that it is relative, by removing the first part of the URL before `/download/...`

Notes:

- This example uses an inline CSS property `margin-top` in the `style` attribute to force the image away from the top of the page by 10mm. This comes in handy when your header image is large enough to touch or spill over the top of the page.
- Likewise, for footers, you can use the `margin-bottom:XXmm` property to force an image away from the bottom of the page by 'XX' mm.
- Very large images can spill over into the body of a page or alter the position of text or other elements used within a header or footer. In such situations, it is recommended that you reduce the size of the image and then attach it to your Confluence page again. If you prefer to keep the image size and want to move the content lower instead, you can do so by configuring the `margin-top` properties in the `@page` CSS rule.
- By default, a header or footer image is aligned to the left-hand side of the page. However, you can align this image to the centre or right-hand side of a page by adding either the `text-align:center` or `text-align:right` properties to your `style` attribute. For example, to align the header image to the right-hand side of the page, your `style` attribute would look similar to this:
`style="margin-top:10mm; text-align:right".`

Incorporating Other Fonts

By default, Confluence provides Times New Roman, Helvetica or Courier fonts for use in PDF exports. You can use your own fonts for PDF exports by declaring them in a `@font-face` CSS rule in your PDF Stylesheet.

The following CSS rule example shows how to declare the Consolas font and apply it to some elements for your PDF export:

CSS - PDF Stylesheet

```
@font-face
{
  src: url(file:///usr/share/fonts/Consolas.ttf);
  -fs-pdf-font-embed: embed;
}

.code pre, .preformatted pre, tt, kbd, code, samp
{
  font-family: Consolas, monospace;
  font-size: 9pt;
}
```

The font path specified in the CSS must be the path to the font on the Confluence server.

Adding a Dynamic Title to the Title Page

When you export an arbitrary set of pages from Confluence, you may like to have a corresponding title added to the cover (or title) page automatically. This can be done (in a somewhat irregular way) by using the top level item from the default table of contents as the title. This method relies on the having the exported pages structured as sub-pages of the top-level page. In other words, the pages to be exported should consist of a page (at the top-level) and all of its child pages. The result is that the title that appears on the cover page changes depending on the top-level page that is used for the export.

The CSS below moves, and styles, the top-level TOC item for use as the title on the cover page, and turns off the leader and page number normally associated with this item in the TOC.

CSS - PDF Stylesheet

```
.fsTitlePage
{
  position:relative;
  left:0px;
}

/* Turn off the default section numbering for this TOC item */
.toclvl0:before
{
  content: " ";
  counter-reset: chapter 0;
}

/* Hide the default page numbering for this TOC item */
.toclvl0 .tocnum
{
  display: none;
}

/* Move and style this TOC item */
.toclvl0
{
  position:absolute;
  top:250px;
  font-size: 42px;
  font-weight: bold;
  margin: 72px 0 4px 0;
  text-align:center;
}
```

Hiding Text from the PDF Output

This section describes a way to hide text from your PDF export. In other words, you can have text on the Confluence page that will not appear in the PDF export.

There are three steps:

1. Follow the instructions to [define the NoPrint user macro](#).
2. Use the NoPrint macro to mark some text on a Confluence page.

3. Add the following CSS to your PDF stylesheet to make the PDF export recognise the NoPrint macro:

CSS - PDF Stylesheet

```
.noprint
{
display: none ;
}
```

Indexing

To obtain an index at the end of the exported PDF file, consider using the [Scroll Wiki PDF Exporter plugin](#) that is produced by K15t Software GmbH.

Notes

If styling is not working as expected, it is useful to look at the HTML source to which the CSS is applied. Whenever you create an [HTML export](#) that contains **multiple pages**, the intermediary HTML is stored in the `temp` directory in Confluence's home directory. For example:

```
<confluence-home>/temp/htmlexport-20110308-154047-1/export-intermediate-154047-2.html
```

Related Topics

[Customising Exports to PDF](#)

Creating PDF in Another Language

To export a Confluence page written in a language other than English, you need to install the necessary font for that language. This means that you need to upload the font file to Confluence, as described below.

Uploading a Font File to Confluence

1. Find the appropriate font file:
 - **Windows users:** All font files in Windows are stored in a directory called:

```
C:\WINDOWS\Fonts
```

- **Unix users:** All font files in Unix are stored in:

```
/usr/share/fonts
```

- Microsoft True Type core fonts such as Verdana can be downloaded from this page: <http://corefonts.sourceforge.net/>
2. Copy the font file into a temporary folder, for example a folder on your desktop.
 3. Go to the 'PDF Export Language Support' screen in the Confluence Administration Console and upload the file you copied in step 2.
 4. Click **Install**.

Notes

- The only font files supported are *true type fonts* and *true type collections*. The accepted file extensions are *.ttf and *.ttc.
- We recommend that you use Unicode font Verdana for correct character encoding and exporting to PDF.

Related Topics

[Exporting Confluence Pages and Spaces to PDF](#)

Exporting to a Word document

Confluence allows you to export a single page into a Word document. This is extremely useful for emailing around content to non-Confluence users, printing a document or just creating a backup in Word.

You will require 'Export Pages' permission to export a page to a Word document.

To export to a Word document:

1. Go to the 'Export to Word' option for the page. To do this:
 - Go to a page in the space and choose **Tools > Export to Word**. You will be prompted by a series of dialog boxes.
2. By default, this will create a Word document with the same name as the Confluence page.

Exporting Confluence Pages and Spaces to XML

Confluence allows you to export a part of, or the entire contents of, a space into a zipped archive of XML files.

This is useful if you want to make a backup of the space, export the space to another Confluence instance, or use the data from the space in another application. Please note that there are a few restrictions when [Restoring a Space](#), and that huge spaces exported for backup-purposes may benefit from other means of backup. See [Production Backup Strategy](#).

To export to XML, you will need 'Export Space' permission which is assigned by a [space administrator](#). See [Space Permissions](#) or contact a space administrator for more information.

[Site administrators](#) can import a [space](#) from a zipped XML archive.

To export to XML:

1. Go to a page in the space and choose **Browse > Advanced**.
2. Click **XML Export** in the left-hand panel.
This option will only be visible if you have 'Export Space' permission.
3. Select **Include Comments** if you want to include comments made on the pages you are exporting.
4. Select **Backup Attachments** if you want include the images and other files attached to the pages.
5. Select the pages you want to export. Select the relevant check boxes in the tree view of pages displayed. By default, all the pages are selected. If you select a page that has one or more child or descendant pages, all of these child and descendant pages will also be selected. Similarly, if you clear the check box of such a page, all of its child and descendant pages will also be cleared. This provides a convenient method of exporting subtrees, for example, chapters or sections within a document.
6. Click **Export**. This will create a zipped archive of XML files.

Screenshot: Exporting a space with administrator permissions

Export content within this space as XML.

Pages to export: ☐ All (includes pages not visible to you)
☒ Visible to you

☒ Select All | ☐ Deselect All | ☒ Include comments | ☒ Include attachments

- ☒ _Inclusions Library
 - ☒ _OAuth Consumer Definition
 - ☒ _OAuth Definition
 - ☒ _OAuth Provider Definition
- ☒ .bookmarks
 - ☒ Google Provisioning API Developer's Guide Protocol - Google Apps APIs - Google Code
- ☒ Home
 - ☒ Documentation guidelines
 - ☒ How to update documentation
 - ☒ Disclaimer Wording for Beta documentation
 - ☒ Exporting and uploading PDF, HTML and XML versions of the docs
 - ☒ Bookmarklet to toggle checkboxes on Confluence space export

Notes

- If you are running Confluence behind Apache HTTP Server and are facing timeout errors, please consider creating the export directly from Tomcat, instead of going through Apache. This will speed up the process and prevent timeouts.
- If you have **Space Administrator** or **Confluence Administrator** permissions, you can export either **All** pages or those pages **Visible to you**. **All** exports all content in the space, including pages that are protected by page-level restrictions which will prevent you from viewing the pages themselves. This option is available only to space administrators and Confluence administrators. It allows you to make a complete and comprehensive export of a space for backup purposes. **Visible to you** exports only content you can see. This is the default option.

Related Topics

[Browsing a space](#)
[Restoring a Space](#)
[Exporting Confluence Pages and Spaces to PDF](#)
[Exporting Confluence Pages and Spaces to XML](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Watching Changes

Confluence provides several ways by which you can watch for changes to single [pages](#), entire [spaces](#), and all spaces on the site. When you watch a page or space, Confluence sends you an email whenever that content changes.

You can also track a particular [user's activity](#) on the Confluence site.

 You can only track updates to content that you have permission to see.

Manually Watching Content

You can 'watch' a page or a space that you have permission to view. Confluence will then send you a notification by email whenever anyone adds or updates content on, or adds a comment to, that page or space.

- There is no daily digest for these notifications. You will receive an email notification every time someone makes a change.
- You can choose the pages and/or spaces that you want to watch. You can 'unwatch' a page or a space at any time.

To set up a watch on a specific page or space, see:

- [Watching a Page or Blog Post](#)
- [Watching a Space](#)

Configuring Watches

All email notification settings can be changed from one location. See [Editing User Settings](#).

Manage Watchers

Space administrators are able to [manage watchers of pages and spaces](#).



Using labels and RSS feeds as an alternative to watches

You can use the RSS feed builder to track updates to labelled pages and comments on those pages. Here is an idea for customising your RSS feed by using your own personal label(s). This is useful if you want to track updates to specific pages or blog posts, and you do not want to deal with emails. You can use this method as an alternative to watching pages.

- Build an RSS feed that returns pages, blog posts and comments labelled with a personal label, such as '**my:feed**'.
- Each time you want to 'watch' a page, just label it with 'my:feed'.
- All updates and comments will automatically come through your RSS feed.

Confluence RSS Feeds

You can watch for content changes in Confluence using RSS feeds.

- Create a customised RSS feed using the [RSS Feed Builder](#).
- Subscribe to one of the [pre-specified feeds](#) generated by Confluence.

Related Plugins

- The [Contributors plugin](#) allows you to list the users, watchers, labels and etc in a page.
- The [Autowatch Plugin](#) allows you to automatically watch a page or blog post that you have created or edited. For example, if you comment on a page, you will be set to watch that page for further updates.

Plugins should be used with care. Please refer to the note on [supported plugins](#).

Related Topics

[Page History and Page Comparison Views](#)
[Viewing Space Activity](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Watching a Page or Blog Post

You can 'watch' a Confluence page, blog post or space. Confluence will then send you a notification by email whenever anyone updates the

watched content.

You will receive email notifications for:

- Edits (unless the user clears the **Notify watchers** check box).
- Deletions.
- Attachments, including new versions or deletions of an existing attachment.
- Comments, including new comments, edits of existing comments or deletions of existing comments.

By default, Confluence will assign you as a watcher of any page or blog post that you create or edit. This behaviour is called 'autowatch'. You can [control autowatch](#).

There is no daily digest for email notifications. You will receive an email notification every time someone makes a change.

You will **not** receive email notifications for content changes due to the output of a macro, because the page content itself has not been edited.



You need 'View' permission for the page, blog post or space to receive notifications.

On this page:

- [Watching a Page or Blog Post](#)
- [Setting Autowatch and Other Notification Options](#)
- [Watching an Entire Space](#)
- [Watching for New Blog Posts](#)
- [Managing Watches from your User Profile](#)
- [Managing Watches from the Email Message](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Watching a Page or Blog Post

To start watching a page or blog post:

1. Go to the page or blog post.
2. Choose **Tools** > **Watch**.

To stop watching a page or blog post:

1. Go to the page or blog post.
2. Choose **Tools** > **Stop watching**.

Setting Autowatch and Other Notification Options

By default, Confluence will assign you as a watcher of any page or blog post that you create or edit. This behaviour is called 'autowatch'. You can turn autowatch on or off, and set other notification options, in the email settings section of your user profile. See [Setting User Settings](#).

Watching an Entire Space

You can choose to watch all the pages and blog posts in a given space. See [Watching a Space](#).

Watching for New Blog Posts

You can choose to watch for:

- New blog posts in a given space. See [Watching a Space](#).
- All new blog posts in the Confluence site. See [Subscribing to Email Notifications of Updates to Confluence Content](#).

Managing Watches from your User Profile

The '**Watches**' page in your user **profile** displays a list of all pages and spaces you are currently watching.

To manage your watches:

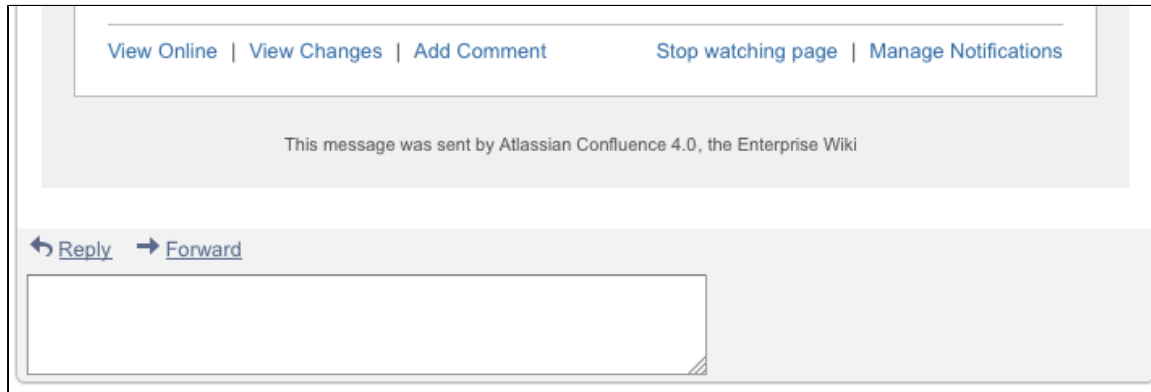
1. Go to the 'Watches' view for your user profile, as follows:
 - Go to **your name** (the 'user' menu) at the top of the page and choose **Watches**.
2. Click the envelope icon next any unwanted watches to turn them off.

Managing Watches from the Email Message

The email notifications that you receive from Confluence have some useful links at the bottom of the email message. The links in each message vary, depending on the context. In general, the links allow you to view the page online, reply to a comment, and so on. In particular with respect to setting your notification preferences, you will see one or more of the following links:

- **Stop watching page** – Click this link to stop watching the page that triggered the email notification.
- **Stop watching space** – Click this link to stop watching the space that triggered the email notification.
- **Stop following this user** – Click this link to stop following the user whose update triggered the email notification.
- **Manage Notifications** – Click this link to go to the email settings page in your user profile.

Screenshot: Email notification footer showing links



Related Topics

[Watching a Space](#)
[Subscribing to Email Notifications of Updates to Confluence Content](#)
[Watching Changes](#)
[Updating Email Address](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Watching a Space

You can 'watch' a Confluence page, blog post or space. Confluence will then send you a notification by email whenever anyone updates the watched content.


You will receive email notifications for:

- Edits (unless the user clears the **Notify watchers** check box).
- Deletions.
- Attachments, including new versions or deletions of an existing attachment.
- Comments, including new comments, edits of existing comments or deletions of existing comments.

By default, Confluence will assign you as a watcher of any page or blog post that you create or edit. This behaviour is called 'autowatch'. You can [control autowatch](#).

There is no daily digest for email notifications. You will receive an email notification every time someone makes a change.

You will **not** receive email notifications for content changes due to the output of a macro, because the page content itself has not been edited.

 You need 'View' permission for the page, blog post or space to receive notifications.

On this page:

- [Watching an Entire Space](#)
- [Watching for New Blog Posts in a Space](#)
- [Watching all Spaces on the Site](#)
- [Managing Watches from your User Profile](#)
- [Managing Watches from the Email Message](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Watching an Entire Space

Watch a space if you want to receive notifications of updates to any content in the space.

To start watching a space:

1. Go to a page in the space and choose **Browse > Advanced**.
2. In the left-hand panel, click **Start watching this space** (or **Start watching all content**).

To stop watching a space:

1. Go to a page in the space and choose **Browse > Advanced**.
2. In the left-hand panel, click **Stop watching this space**.

Watching for New Blog Posts in a Space

You can choose to receive a notification whenever someone adds a blog post in the space. You will not receive notification of updates to or deletions of blog posts, nor of comments on the blog posts.

Hint: By default, the option is labelled **Start watching space blogs**. If you are already watching the entire space, the wording will change to **Only watch space blogs**. If you choose that option, you will no longer be watching the entire space.

To start watching for new blog posts in a space:

1. Go to a page in the space and choose **Browse > Advanced**.
2. In the left-hand panel, click **Start watching space blogs** (or **Only watch space blogs**).

To stop watching for new blog posts in a space:

1. Go to a page in the space and choose **Browse > Advanced**.
2. In the left-hand panel, click **Stop watching space blogs**.

Watching all Spaces on the Site

You can receive notifications about changes to the content of pages, blog posts and comments from across all spaces on a Confluence site.

To start watching for content changes across the whole site:

1. Go to **your name** (the 'User' menu) at the top of the page and choose **Settings**.
2. Click **Email** in the left-hand panel.
3. Click **Edit** and select **Subscribe to daily updates**.
4. Click **Submit**.

Managing Watches from your User Profile

The **'Watches'** page in your user **profile** displays a list of all pages and spaces you are currently watching.

To manage your watches:

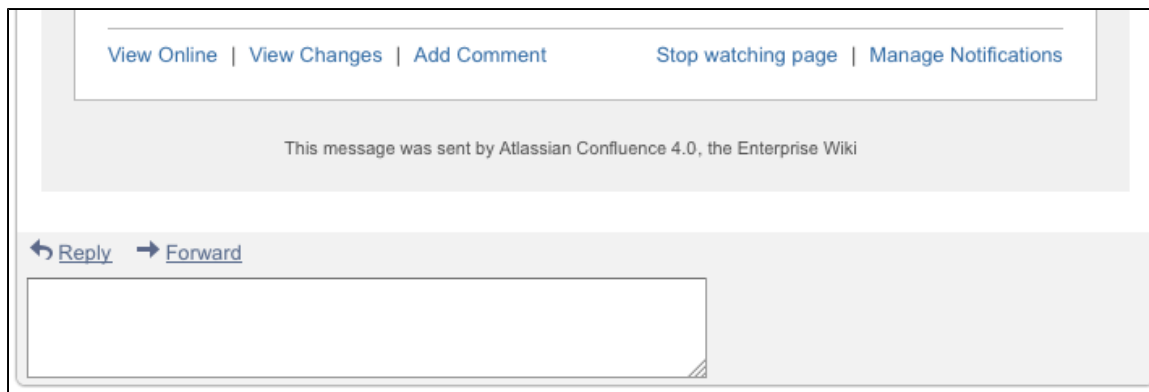
1. Go to the 'Watches' view for your user profile, as follows:
 - Go to **your name** (the 'user' menu) at the top of the page and choose **Watches**.
2. Click the envelope icon next any unwanted watches to turn them off.

Managing Watches from the Email Message

The email notifications that you receive from Confluence have some useful links at the bottom of the email message. The links in each message vary, depending on the context. In general, the links allow you to view the page online, reply to a comment, and so on. In particular with respect to setting your notification preferences, you will see one or more of the following links:

- **Stop watching page** – Click this link to stop watching the page that triggered the email notification.
- **Stop watching space** – Click this link to stop watching the space that triggered the email notification.
- **Stop following this user** – Click this link to stop following the user whose update triggered the email notification.
- **Manage Notifications** – Click this link to go to the email settings page in your user profile.

Screenshot: Email notification footer showing links



Related Topics

[Watching a Page or Blog Post](#)
[Subscribing to Email Notifications of Updates to Confluence Content](#)
[Watching Changes](#)
[Updating Email Address](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Managing Watchers

If you are a [space administrator](#) for a space, you can manage the watchers for all pages and blog posts in that space. This means that you can:

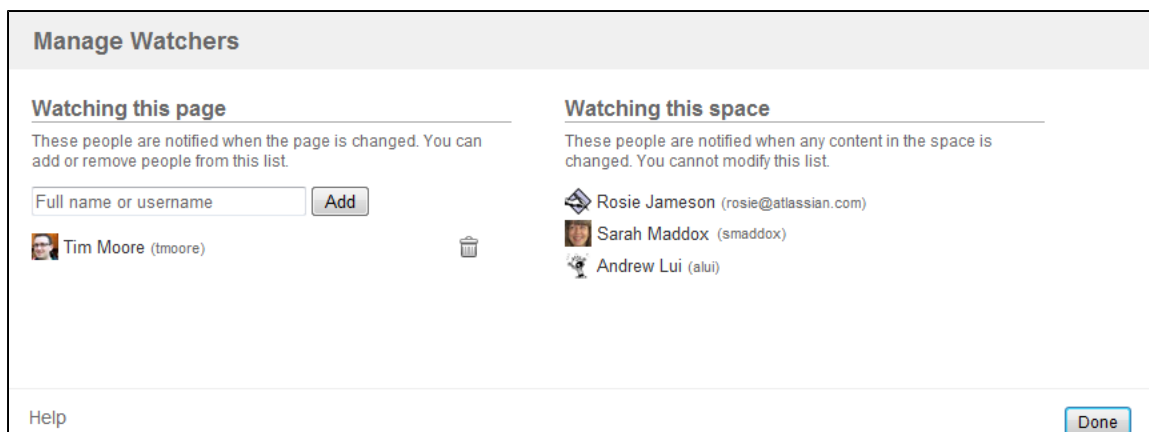
- View a list of the watchers of a page/blog post.
- View a list of the watchers of the space for that page/blog post.
- Add users as watchers of the page/blog post.
- Remove existing watchers of the page/blog post.

 *It is not possible to remove watchers of the space.*

To manage your watchers for a page/blog post:

1. Navigate to the page or blog post for which you want to manage the watchers. Note, you must be a space administrator for the space that the page is in.
2. Choose **Tools > Manage Watchers**. The 'Manage Watchers' screen will be displayed (see screenshot below). The left-hand column of the 'Manage Watchers' screen will contain the users watching the page/blog post, the right-hand column will contain the users watching the space.
 - To remove an existing page watcher, click the icon (trash can) next to the user's name.
 - To add a user as a watcher of the page, type in the box and choose the user's name from the list.
3. Click **Done** to save your changes.

Screenshot: *Managing Watchers*



Related Topics

[Watching a Space](#)
[Watching a Page or Blog Post](#)
[Subscribing to Email Notifications of Updates to Confluence Content](#)
[Watching Changes](#)
[User Profile Overview](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Subscribing to Email Notifications of Updates to Confluence Content

You can 'watch' a page or a space. Confluence will then send you a notification by email whenever anyone adds or updates content on that page or space. You can also subscribe to daily email reports and other notifications of various updates, as described below.

Email notifications can be set to show the changes made to the page content. The changes are displayed as rendered page diffs. See [Page History and Page Comparison Views](#).

On this page:

- [Subscribe to email notifications](#)
- [Subscribe to RSS feeds](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Subscribe to email notifications

You can [subscribe to email notifications](#) about:

- Updates to a particular space or a page.
- Changes in all spaces that you have permission to see.
- Updates made by the people you are following.
- All pages that you create, edit or comment on.

Subscribe to RSS feeds

You can [subscribe to Confluence RSS feeds](#) to stay informed about:

- New and updated pages
- New comments
- New news items
- New attachments
- Updates to and comments on pages that have a given label

Related Topics

[Watching Changes](#)
[User Profile Overview](#)
[Configuring a Server for Outgoing Mail](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Subscribing to RSS Feeds within Confluence

[RSS feeds](#) allow you to track updates to content within Confluence. You will need an RSS newsreader to subscribe to them.


On this page:

- [Confluence RSS Feeds](#)
- [RSS Newsreaders](#)
- [Removing an RSS Feed](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Confluence RSS Feeds

You can create a customised RSS feed using the RSS Feed Builder or subscribe to one of the pre-specified feeds generated by Confluence.

What would you like to do?

- [Create and subscribe to customised RSS feeds using the RSS Feed Builder](#) — create a customised RSS feed (e.g. filter your feed using a label; specify the number of items and days to include in your feed; etc.)
- [Subscribe to pre-specified RSS feeds](#)  — generate an RSS feed automatically in a minimal number of steps.
- [Subscribe to a feed of any Confluence user's network](#) to track the activities of users they are following in their network.

RSS Newsreaders

The following are some popular RSS newsreader programs for various operating systems. You can find a more comprehensive list on [Google's open directory](#).

Windows

- [SharpReader](#)
- [NewsGator](#)
- [Syndirella](#)
- [FeedDemon](#)
- [NewzCrawler](#)

Mac OS X

- [Safari](#)
- [NetNewsWire](#)
- [NewsFire](#)
- [Shrook](#)

Multi-Platform

- [NewsMonster](#) (Runs in the Mozilla web browser)
- [Radio Userland](#) (Windows and MacOS)
- [AmphetaDesk](#) (Windows, Unix, Mac OS X)

Removing an RSS Feed

There is no need to try to delete or remove an RSS feed built by the Confluence [RSS feed builder](#).

Explanation: The feeds generated by the RSS Feed Builder are dynamically generated via the parameters included in the feed URL (address). For example, take a look at the following feed URL:




The above feed URL will generate a list of pages ('types=page'), sorted by the modification date and showing the page content. The feed is generated at the time when the URL is fetched and there is no RSS feed information stored on the database. For that reason, there is no need to remove anything.

Related Topics

[Watching Changes](#)
[Working with RSS Feeds](#)
[RSS Feed Macro](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).


Using pre-specified RSS feeds

 If you want to customise your Confluence RSS feed (e.g. use a label to filter your feed), use the [RSS Feed builder](#) instead.

To subscribe to RSS feeds generated by Confluence, for a particular space:

1. Choose **Browse > Advanced** from the dropdown list. The 'Advanced' screen will appear.
2. Click on **RSS Feeds** in the left-hand column.
3. Copy and paste the link for one of the following feeds into your RSS newsreader:
 - Pages
 - News
 - Mail
 - Comments
 - Attachments
 - All content

To subscribe to RSS feeds generated by Confluence, for a particular page (where available):

1. Locate the following icon, which is available in the top-right corner of certain pages: 
2. Copy and paste the icon's link into your RSS newsreader.

Related Topics

[Using the RSS Feed Builder](#)
[Watching Changes](#)
[Working with RSS Feeds](#)
[RSS Feed Macro](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Using the RSS Feed Builder

Using the RSS feed builder, you can create customised RSS feeds to subscribe to changes within Confluence.

Wondering what an RSS feed is? See [more information about RSS Feeds](#).

On this page:

- [Building an RSS Feed](#)
- [Hint: Using Labels to Customise your Feed](#)
- [Notes](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Building an RSS Feed


Follow the steps below to build your feed, choosing the type of content and the time period you want to monitor.

To create a customised RSS feed:

1. Choose **Browse > Feed Builder**.
2. Select the content types you want in your feed. Check **Mail** if you want to know when the email archive is updated. (See the [overview of mail archives in Confluence](#).)
3. Select one or more spaces from the list.
4. Click **Advanced Options** to set the following:

Option	Description
Feed Name	The default name is based on the name of your Confluence installation, e.g. 'Extranet RSS Feed'
With these labels	Enter one or more labels separated by spaces or commas. Confluence returns all content (of the selected types) that matches one or more of the labels. See the hint below about using labels to customise your feeds.
Exclude these spaces	Exclude specific spaces from those already selected.
Sorted by	Sort content by either the date of creation or the date they were last updated.
Limit to	Specify the number of items returned in your feed.
Within the last	Specify how old items returned can be.
Include content for pages	Specify whether the entire page is displayed in the feed.

5. Click **Create RSS Feed** to create your feed.
6. Drag or copy the link into your RSS reader.

 **Tip:** Try building separate feeds, one for pages only and one that includes comments as well. This allows you to monitor only pages if you are short of time, and to read the comments when you have more time.

Hint: Using Labels to Customise your Feed

You can use the RSS feed builder to track updates to labelled pages and comments on those pages. Here is an idea for customising your RSS feed by using your own personal label(s). This is useful if you want to track updates to specific pages or blog posts, and you do not want to deal with emails. You can use this method as an alternative to watching pages.

- Build an RSS feed that returns pages, blog posts and comments labelled with a personal label, such as '**my:feed**'.
- Each time you want to 'watch' a page, just label it with 'my:feed'.
- All updates and comments will automatically come through your RSS feed.

Notes

- **Removing an RSS feed:** You need only delete the RSS feed link built by the Confluence RSS feed builder to remove an RSS feed from your page. This is because the feed is dynamically generated using the parameters in the feed URL.
- **Feed authentication options:** Confluence can offer you the option of an anonymous feed or a feed that requires authentication.
 - An **anonymous** feed will show only the content that is visible to anonymous users. The feed URL does not contain the `&os_authType` parameter mentioned below. This feed is useful only if your Confluence site allows anonymous access. If a

feed is anonymous, you only get anonymously-viewable content in the feed regardless of whether you are a Confluence user or not.

- An **authenticated** feed requires you to log in to Confluence before you can retrieve the content. The feed URL contains the following parameter: `&os_authType=basic`.
- The option to choose between an anonymous and an authenticated feed is currently not available on the feed builder screen. The feed builder offers only **authenticated** feeds. See [CONF-21601](#) for details and a workaround.

Related Topics

[RSS Feeds FAQ](#)
[Watching Changes](#)
[Working with RSS Feeds](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Working with RSS Feeds

An RSS feed is a format for delivering summaries of regularly changing web content. Subscribing to an RSS feed allows you to stay informed of the latest content from sites that you are interested in.

RSS isn't designed to be read in a regular web browser. Specialised RSS newsreader programs can check RSS files every so often, and tell you what's new on a site. Your reader may be on a website, an addon to your browser, part of your email program, or a stand-alone program.

Confluence works with RSS in two ways:

- Confluence [generates its own RSS feeds](#) for tracking updates to content within Confluence. You will need an RSS reader which can grab the RSS feeds from Confluence and display them for you.
- Confluence's [RSS macro](#) allows you to display the contents of RSS feeds on a Confluence page. The feeds may come from a Confluence feed generator or from external sites. In this way, Confluence can act as an RSS reader.

For a technical description of RSS, read [Mark Pilgrim's "What is RSS?" article](#) on XML.com.

Related Topics

[Subscribing to RSS Feeds within Confluence](#)
[Displaying content from RSS feeds on a Confluence page](#)
[Watching Changes](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

RSS Readers Compatibility

Due to some users having problems with Confluence RSS Feeds, some research was done with several RSS Feed Readers. RSS Feeds have been created through the feed builder and tested on a Windows machine. For each feed reader they have been tested with both authentication and public access, checking for the visibility of content, icons and images. The results are in the tables below:

Feeds with authentication

RSS Feed Reader	Content	Icons	Images	Notes
RssReader 1.0.880	✓	✓	✓	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Shows the entire page (including the header panel & view,edit tabs)
JetBrains Omea Reader 2.1.6	✓	✓	✓	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Shows the changes between revisions in the nice red/green colours of Confluence
IE 7.0	✗	✓	✓	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Content is all there however not all html is rendered correctly (for example <code>.tag {font-style:italic;}</code> is shown in the content as raw text) • Shows the changes between revisions, but without the red/green colours
Thunderbird 1.5.0.7	✓	✓	✓	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Shows the entire page
Bloglines	✓	✓	✓	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Simple online feed reader • Shows the changes between revisions, but with arrows

Google Reader	✓	✓	✓	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Simple online feed reader • Shows the entire page
Yahoo	✗	✗	✗	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Error message: Invalid URL format

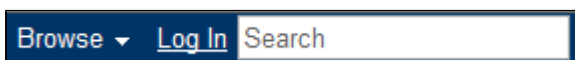
Feeds with public access

RSS Feed Reader	Content	Icons	Images
RssReader 1.0.880	✓	✓	✓
JetBrains Omea Reader 2.1.6	✓	✓	✓
IE 7.0	✗	✓	✓
Thunderbird 1.5.0.7	✓	✓	✓
Bloglines	✓	✓	✓

Searching Confluence

There are three key methods searching in Confluence:

1. The search box at the top right of your Confluence screen allows you to search Confluence wherever you happen to be in the site. It offers you a quick navigation aid as well as a full site search.



2. You can search Confluence directly from your browser's search box.
3. You can find and replace on text content in a page while editing.



Quick guide to searching in Confluence

- You can search Confluence using your browser's search box (Firefox or Internet Explorer 7 or later). Just add your Confluence site as a search provider using the dropdown menu in your browser's search box.
- The Confluence search box (top-right corner) suggests search terms as you type. If your desired search term is suggested, you can open the page simply by clicking on it.
- Performing a full search provides you with more detailed search results, including the ability to preview images and Office documents.
- The full search also suggests alternative spellings ('Did you mean') as part of your search results.

On this page:

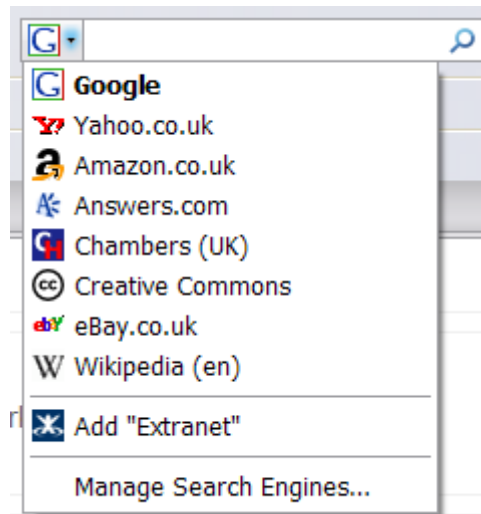
- [Searching Confluence from your Browser's Search Box](#)
- [Using the Quick Navigation Aid](#)
- [Find and Replace Within a Page](#)
- [Search Options When Using the Documentation Theme](#)
- [Performing a Full Search](#)
- [Viewing Attached Office Documents](#)
- [Accepting 'Did you mean' Suggestions from Confluence](#)
- [Filtering your Search Results](#)
- [Advanced Search Syntax](#)
- [Browsing Related Labels](#)
- [Searching the Content of Attachments](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Searching Confluence from your Browser's Search Box

If you are using Firefox or Internet Explorer 7 or later, you can add your Confluence site as a search provider, using the dropdown menu next to the browser's search box.

The example below shows the 'Extranet' Confluence site offered for inclusion as a search engine in the browser's search box.

Screenshot: Adding your Confluence site to your browser's search box



Information about OpenSearch:

- Confluence supports the autodiscovery part of the [OpenSearch](#) standard, by supplying an [OpenSearch description document](#). This is an XML file that describes the web interface provided by Confluence's search function.
- Any [client applications](#) that support OpenSearch will be able to add Confluence to their list of search engines.
- Your [Confluence Administrator](#) can enable or disable the Open Search feature using the Confluence Administration Console.

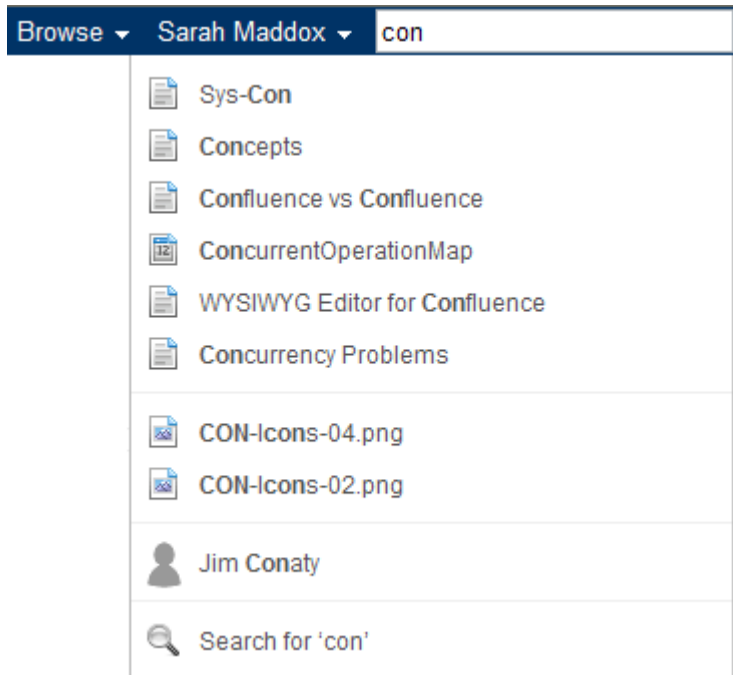
Using the Quick Navigation Aid

The quick navigation aid automatically offers a dropdown list of pages and other items, matched by title to your search query. You can select one of the offered items or ignore them altogether.

To use the quick navigation aid:

1. Start typing your query into the search box located at the top right-hand corner of every screen. Confluence matches titles as you type, showing a quickly-adjusting dropdown list of pages, blog posts, personal profiles, attachments and so on.
2. Press the Enter key if you want to bypass the quick navigation aid and perform a full search, as described [below](#).
3. To see the space to which an item belongs, let your mouse pointer hover over the item in the dropdown list.
4. Use the up- and down-arrows on your keyboard to move up and down the list of matching titles and select an item.
5. Press the Enter key to open the selected item.
6. If you do not find what you are looking for, click **Search for** at the bottom of the list to do a full search. This has the same effect as pressing Enter immediately after typing your search query. The full search is described [below](#).


Screenshot: The quick navigation aid showing titles matching the query 'con'



Here is more information about how the quick navigation feature works:

- Confluence will truncate any titles that are too long to be displayed.
- If a title is too long to fit the box, hover your cursor over the title to see the full text.
- The matching items are grouped by content type so that you can quickly find the type you want. Confluence shows a maximum of 6 pages and/or blog posts, 2 attachments, 3 people and 2 spaces. If no matches are found in a particular category, then that category does not appear in the list.
- Items are ordered with the most recent updates first.
- When the matching item is a person's name, their profile picture appears next to their name in the list.
- The part of the title that is matched by the search query is highlighted in bold text.
- Your [Confluence Administrator](#) can enable or disable the quick navigation feature using the Confluence Administration Console.

Find and Replace Within a Page

When editing a page, you can find and replace text content. Click the binoculars icon  on the toolbar to begin, or use the keyboard shortcut **Ctrl-F** (Windows) or **Cmd-F** (Mac OS).

Search matches are highlighted in yellow. You can step through the results one by one, replace one by one or replace all results.

Search Options When Using the Documentation Theme

When using the Documentation theme, the Confluence search offers a few options as described below.

Using the search box at the top right of the page:

- By default, the main Confluence search is configured to search the entire Confluence site.
 - You will see the words **'Search Confluence'** in the search box at top right of the page.
 - The Confluence search will look for matches in the entire Confluence site. This is the default behaviour for other themes too.
- A space administrator can configure the Documentation theme to restrict the search to the current space.
 - You will see the words **'Search this space'** in the search box at top right of the page.
 - The search will return results from the current space only.
 - You can override the search restriction. Enter **'all:'** and your search term to search the entire site. For example, enter the following into the search box at top right of the page to search the entire site for 'technical writing':

```
all: technical writing
```

Using the search box in the left-hand panel:

- By default, the Documentation theme's left-hand panel includes a search box. Enter your search term there, to restrict the search to the current space. Specifically, this will search only the pages that are children of the space's home page.
- If your administrator has restricted the main search to the current space, there will not be a search box in the left-hand panel.

For screenshots and a full description, see [Using the Documentation Theme](#).

Performing a Full Search

When you perform a full search, Confluence will search all content in all spaces (global and personal), mail, personal profiles, attachments and the space description. The results will appear on a new screen.



For the developers

The rendering of search results in Confluence is pluggable. If you are a developer, you may wish to write your own search result renderer to change how the search results are displayed. For more information, please refer to the following developer document: [Writing a search result renderer](#).

To use the full search:

1. Type your query into the search box located at the top right-hand corner of every screen (or type it into the text box at the top of the Search screen).
2. Press the Enter key. (This means that you will ignore the dropdown list of titles offered by Confluence's quick navigation aid, described [above](#).)
3. The Search screen appears, as shown below. If any Confluence pages or items match your search query, the Search screen shows a list of the matching items.
4. Click an item's title to open the Confluence page or other item.

Screenshot: Results of searching for 'permissions'

The screenshot shows the Confluence search results page for the query 'permissions'. The search bar at the top contains the text 'permissions' and a 'Search' button. Below the search bar, it says 'Showing 11-20 of 437 for permissions'. The results are listed in a table-like format with icons, titles, and snippets. The first result is 'Navigating to the Space Permissions View' with a snippet explaining the 'Space Permissions' view. The second result is 'Changes to the Page Permission API in Confluence 2.4' with a snippet about API changes. The third result is 'new-permissions.png' with a file icon, size (26 kB), and a download link. The fourth result is 'pagepermission.jpg' with a file icon, size (12 kB), and a download link. The fifth result is 'Are all users in LDAP visible in Confluence administration and can they can be assigned permissions or to groups?' with a snippet about LDAP users. On the right side, there are filters for 'Where' (Confluence Docs 3.1), 'What' (All Content), 'When' (Any date), and 'Who' (Content the user has created or edited). There are also 'Filter' and 'Clear Filter' buttons. At the bottom right, there is a 'Browse Labels' section with links to 'permissions', 'bamboo', 'access', 'security', 'space', and 'confluence'.

On the left of the screen you will see a text block for each item that matched the search criteria, with the following information for each item:

- An icon representing the content type (user profile, space, page, blog post, etc). See [Confluence Icons](#).
- The title or name of the content item.
- For attachments: The size and type of file, with a link to download or view the attachment where relevant. See information on [viewing Office attachments](#) below.
- For image files: A thumbnail of the image will display to the right of the file name.
- The most relevant few lines of content from within the item. Any words that match your search query are highlighted within the content.
- For personal profile items: The email address.
- The space to which the item belongs, displayed on the last line of the item's text block.
- The date when the content item was last modified.

You will see only search results which you have permission to view.

On the right of the screen are further options which allow you to tailor or filter your search results. See [below](#).

Viewing Attached Office Documents

When the search results include an attached Office document, you will see a **View** link as shown in the screen snippet below.

Screenshot: Search results include an attached Office document with 'View' link

The screenshot shows a search results page in Confluence. At the top, there is a search bar with the text 'spreadsheet.xls task' and a 'Search' button. Below the search bar, it says 'Showing 1-4 of 4 for spreadsheet.xls task'. The first result is a file named 'spreadsheet.xls' (20 kB, Excel Spreadsheet) with 'View' and 'Download' links. Below the file name is a table with columns for days of the week and a 'Total' column, containing numerical data. Below the table is a breadcrumb trail: 'Documentation Testing > Displaying a Word Document > Attachments' and the date 'Nov 11, 2008'. The second result is identical but with a different 'Total' value. On the right side of the search results, there are filters for 'Where' (All Spaces), 'What' (All Content), 'When' (Any date), and 'Who' (empty). There are 'Filter' and 'Clear Filter' buttons at the bottom right of the filter section.

Click the **View** link to view the content of the Office document within Confluence. If you have an Office application installed, you will also be able to launch your Office editor from within Confluence. See [Displaying Office Files in Confluence](#) and [Working with the Office Connector](#).

Accepting 'Did you mean' Suggestions from Confluence

When you perform a full Confluence search, as described [above](#), Confluence may offer you an alternative spelling of your search query. The alternative spelling will appear next to the words '**Did you mean**', as shown in the example below.

To accept an alternative spelling suggestion:

1. Type your query into the search box.
2. Press the Enter key.
3. Confluence will analyse the wiki content, to determine whether an alternative spelling of your search query occurs more often in the wiki content. If this is the case, the words 'Did you mean' will appear on the screen, along with an alternative spelling for your search query.
4. If you want to try the alternative spelling, click the word showing the suggested spelling. In the example below, you would click **confluence**.

Screenshot: The Search screen with 'Did you mean' offering a corrected spelling

The screenshot shows a search results page in Confluence. At the top, there is a search bar with the text 'cnofluence' and a 'Search' button. Below the search bar, it says 'Did you mean: [confluence](#)'. Below this, it says 'No results found for cnofluence. Please try one of the following suggestions:'. There are two bullet points: 'Use more general search terms' and 'If you are filtering by space, content, last modification date or contributor, try removing or adjusting the filter'. On the right side of the search results, there are filters for 'Where' (All Spaces), 'What' (All Content), 'When' (Any date), and 'Who' (empty). There are 'Filter' and 'Clear Filter' buttons at the bottom right of the filter section.

Here is more information about how the 'Did you mean' feature works:

- Confluence uses both a dictionary (bundled with Confluence) and words mined from the content on your system to work out the best alternative spellings of your search terms. Practically, this means that Confluence can provide spelling corrections for specialised jargon that may not appear in a standard dictionary. In general, when deciding between alternative spellings, Confluence will favour words that appear more often in your content.
- In some cases, the 'Did you mean' suggestion may appear even when there are Confluence pages, etc, which match your search

query. In other cases, there will be no items which match your search criteria. In both cases, Confluence will offer a 'Did you mean' suggestion if there is a word which will help you find more relevant content.

- The 'Did you mean' feature may offer more than one suggestion.
- The 'Did you mean' suggestion may even offer an incorrect spelling. This would happen if the incorrect spelling occurs many times within your Confluence site. This is intentional, because the aim of the 'Did you mean' feature is to help you find content, not to correct your spelling.
- Your [Confluence Administrator](#) can enable or disable the 'Did you mean' feature using the Confluence Administration Console.

Filtering your Search Results

The Search screen, [pictured above](#), appears when you do your first search. By default, Confluence will search all content across your Confluence site, including all spaces, mail archives, attachments and all other content types.

On the right of the screen are options which allow you to tailor or filter the search results.

Enter your filter criteria as described below, then click **Filter**.

- **Where** — Restrict your search results to a particular space, or to your favourite spaces, global spaces or personal spaces.
- **What** — Restrict your search results to a particular content type (pages, blog posts, mail, etc).
- **When** — Restrict your search results to content modified within a particular period of time (today, yesterday, within the last week or within the last month).
- **Who** — Restrict your search results to content last modified by a particular user. You can start typing the person's username or part of their name into the text box as follows:
 - Type the username (e.g. 'jsmith').
 - Or start typing the person's first name (e.g. 'john')
 - Or their last name (e.g. 'smith').
 - Or another part of their name, such as a middle name.
 Confluence will offer you a list of possible matches. Use your mouse to select the person you want, then press the Enter key to filter the search results.

Screenshot: Filtering your search results by user

More information about the user-matching filter:

- The user-matching filter is *not* case sensitive. You can enter upper or lower case letters and will receive the same results.
- When looking for users to match the name you entered, Confluence divides a person's name into logical units corresponding to first name, middle name (one or more) and last name. It matches the letters of each unit in the name you entered against the letters of each unit in the user directory. For example, you can enter 'jo sm' to look for John Smith. The search is triggered after you have entered at least two letters.
- For each part of the name, you need to enter at least two letters. For example, if you enter just 'john s', the filter will look for users

called 'john' and will ignore the 's'. Similarly, if you enter 'j smith' you will see everyone with the name 'smith' even if their first name does not start with a 'j'.

- You are not forced to use the auto-complete list. You can just type 'jsmith' or 'jo sm' and filter on that without choosing a match from the dropdown list. Confluence will warn you if there is more than one user corresponding to the name you have entered.

Click **Clear Filter** if you want to remove all your filters and perform the same search again but without the filter.

Advanced Search Syntax

See [Confluence Search Syntax](#) for more ways to refine the text you enter into the search box.

Additionally, see [Confluence Search Fields](#) for special parameters you can use in the search box to search on various metadata.

Browsing Related Labels

Also on the right of the Search screen, Confluence will offer a list of labels which are related to your search query. See the screenshot [above](#).

You can click a label to see all pages and blog posts tagged with that label. See [Navigating Pages by Label](#).

Searching the Content of Attachments

When you search Confluence, by default the search will include the content of the following types of attachments:

- Word
- Text
- PowerPoint
- Excel
- PDF
- HTML

To search the content of other attachment types, you will need to use an attachment content extractor plugin. For more information, take a look at the following:

- [Existing extractor plugins](#) which you can install on your Confluence site.
- Guidelines on developing your own [attachment content extractor plugin](#).

Related Topics

[Confluence Search Syntax](#)
[Confluence Search Fields](#)
[Ranking of Search Results](#)
[Text Tokenisation and Filtering](#)
[Search Results Macro](#)
[Livesthatch Macro](#)
[Page Tree Macro](#) (includes an optional search box)
[Viewing Labelled Pages](#)
[Searching the People Directory](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Text Tokenisation and Filtering

When searching for content based on search terms entered by the user, Confluence splits the text of the content into tokens, and then filters and modifies those tokens according to the following rules.

Tokenisation

Confluence uses Lucene's [Standard Tokenizer](#). This splits the text into tokens as follows:

- Splits words at punctuation characters, removing punctuation. However, a dot that's not followed by white space is considered part of a token.
- Splits words at hyphens, unless there's a number in the token, in which case the whole token is interpreted as a product number and is not split.
- Recognises email addresses and internet host names as one token.

 An example: The string 'foo-bar5' won't be split into 'foo' and 'bar5', so a search for 'bar5' or 'bar*' will not find any results.

Filtering

Confluence then:

- Removes "s" from the ends of words.

- Removes the dots from acronyms, e.g. I.B.M. becomes IBM.
- Converts everything to lower case.
- Removes common words like 'the' and 'or' are removed.
- Converts words to their stems. For example, 'fishing' and 'fishes' both become 'fish'.

Related Topics

[Searching Confluence](#)


Searching the People Directory

The people directory displays a list of people who use your Confluence site.

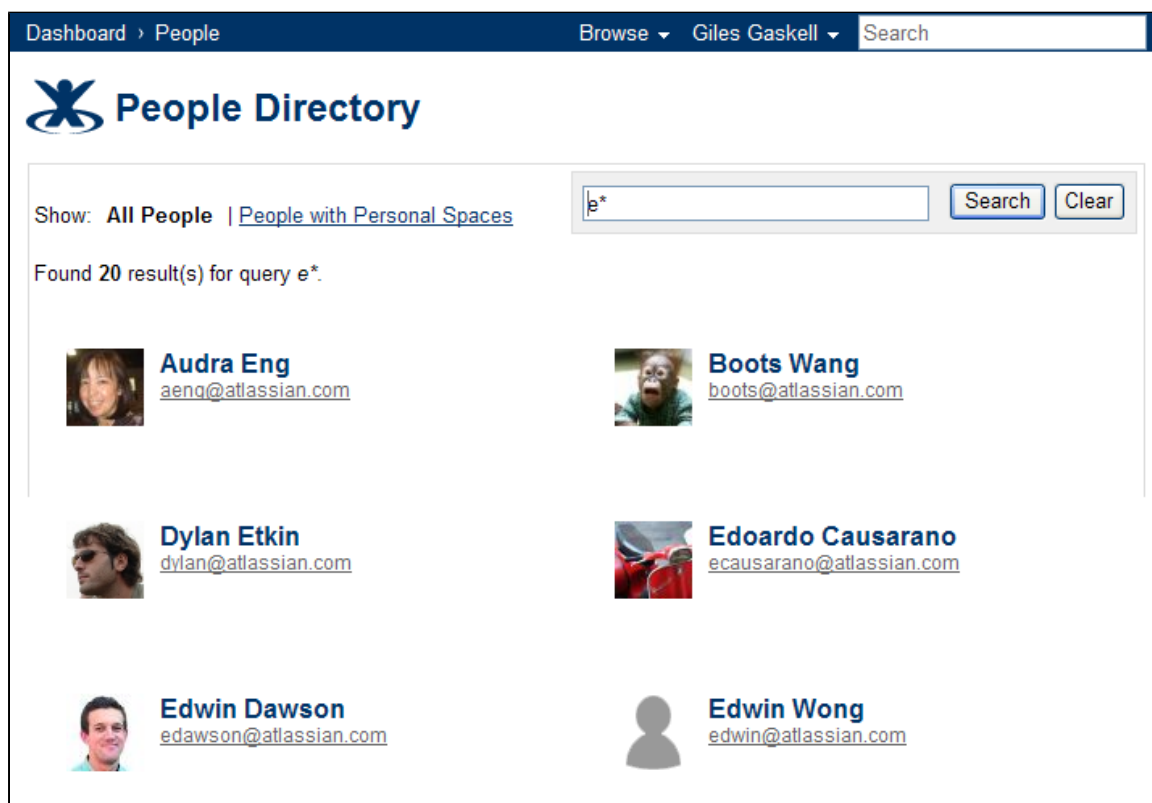
The people directory includes anybody who has logged into Confluence or who has had a user account created for them in Confluence. The people directory does not include users who can log into Confluence using [external user management](#) if they have never yet logged in.

Viewing the People Directory

Choose **Browse** > **People Directory**.

 The Confluence administrator can [hide the people directory](#). If it is hidden, you will not see the **People Directory** link in the **Browse** menu.

Screenshot: The People Directory



Searching for People

To search for a particular person, type their first name and/or last name into the search box and click **Search**.

- To search everyone who uses your Confluence site, click **All People**.
- To search just those people who have set up a [personal space](#), click **People with Personal Spaces**.

Following People's Activities

Confluence's network features allow you to 'follow' (that is, keep track of) other people's activities throughout a Confluence site. For more information, please refer to [Network Overview](#). Using the [hover profile](#) feature, the people directory is a convenient area from which you can start following other people throughout your Confluence site.

- To start following another person's activities, move your mouse over a user's name or profile picture and in their hover profile popup, click **Follow**.
- To stop following another person's activities, move your mouse over a user's name or profile picture and in their hover profile popup, click **Stop Following**.

Once you start following another person, their activities will start appearing in your [network view](#).



People Directory provides hCard microformat

The [people directory](#) uses the hCard microformat for simple integration with a variety of microformat-enabled tools. hCard is an open data format for representing people, companies, organisations, and places. Read more about [microformats](#) and [hCard](#).

Related Topics

[Setting up your Personal Space](#)

[Editing your User Profile](#)

[Choosing a Profile Picture](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Confluence Search Syntax

Here's how you can refine your search. Confluence will ignore common words like "the" unless you place your query within quotes.

Exact phrase search

To search for content that contains the exact phrase "chalk and cheese"

```
"chalk and cheese"
```



Confluence will ignore common words ([stop words](#)) like "and" above. [This](#) is the default list of stop words used by lucene. Please cast your vote towards [this](#) improvement request.

For eg:

1. Searching for "The One" returns all pages containing "One" because "The" is a stop word.
2. Searching for "Cheese One" would only return pages in which "One" appears as the first word (other than stop words) after "Cheese". So it would return "Cheese for One" or "Cheese to One" or "Cheese One". It would not match "One Cheese" or "Cheese Flamingo One"

Or Search

To search for content that contains one of the terms, "chalk" OR "cheese"

```
chalk OR cheese
```

And Search

To search for content that contains both the terms "chalk" AND "cheese"

```
chalk AND cheese
```

Not search

To search for content that contains "chalk" but NOT "cheese"

```
chalk NOT cheese
```

Excluded Term search

Similar to the NOT search, to search for content that contains "chalk" and "butter" but NOT "cheese"

```
chalk butter -cheese
```

Grouping Search

To search for content that **MUST** contain "chalk" but **CAN** contain either "cheese" or "butter" use the search:

```
(cheese OR butter) AND chalk
```

Title Search

To search for content with "chalk" in its title, where *title* is the field keyword.

```
title:chalk
```

Wild card searches


Single character

To search for "butter" or "batter" you can use the search:

```
b?tter
```

To search for "chicken" or "chickpea" you can use the search:

```
chick*
```

 Wildcards can be used anywhere within a word, except at the very beginning.
For example:

```
*chick
```

is an invalid search term.

Multiple characters

To search for "chick" or "chickpea":

```
c*c*
```

You can also combine search characters to get the exact word. For example the search term below will return "chick" yet not "chickpea":

```
c*c?
```




Case Sensitivity in wildcard searches

Since the fix for [CONF-13846](#) Confluence is case sensitive for wildcard searches.

You should note that all the example searches given previously search across the default set of fields which are stored as lower case and therefore all searches of that style should be given lower case search terms (as shown in the examples).

However, if you were to search one of the case sensitive fields, such as 'content-name-untokenized' the case of your search term would need to match the document you are searching for.

Proximity searches

 This search ensure that the two words specified must be within a certain number of words of each other to be included.

```
"octagon post"~1
```

will return "Octagon blog post".

```
"octagon post"~0
```

is an invalid search term.


Range search

 Searches for names that fall alphabetically within the specifed range.

```
[adam to ben]
```

Note: You can't use the **AND** keyword inside this statement.

Fuzzy search

 This search looks for words spelled similarly.

To search for octagon, if unsure about spelling:

```
octogan~
```

will correctly return "octagon"

Combined search

You can also combine various search terms together:

```
o?tag* AND past~ AND ( "blog" AND "post" )
```

Related Topics

[Searching Confluence](#)
[Confluence Search Fields](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Confluence Search Fields



Purpose of this document

This page is intended for **developers and advanced users** of Confluence. It gives an overview of the [Apache Lucene](#) search fields used in Confluence.

On this page:

- [Searching for Content in Specific Fields](#)
- [Confluence Search Fields](#)
 - [Personal Information](#)
 - [Pages](#)
 - [Blog](#)
 - [Attachments](#)
 - [Mail Items](#)

- [Related Topics](#)

Searching for Content in Specific Fields

Confluence data is stored in fields which can be specified in the search. To search a specific field, type the name of the field followed by a colon ':' and then the term you are looking for.

Examples:

```
title:"Some Title"
```

```
labelText:chalk
```

The field specification applies only to the term directly preceding the colon. For example, the query below will look for "Some" in the title field and will search for "Heading" in the default fields.

```
title:Some Heading
```

Confluence Search Fields

Below are the fields which can be searched, listed by content type.

Personal Information

Name	Indexed	Stored	Tokenised	Notes
handle	true	true	false	
type	true	true	false	
urlPath	true	true	false	
fullName	true	true	true	
username	true	true	true	
title	true	true	false	
labelText	true	true	true	
modified	true	true	false	
created	true	true	false	
userpermission	true	true	false	
contentBody	true	true	true	

Pages

Name	Indexed	Stored	Tokenised	Notes
handle	true	true	false	

type	true	true	false	
urlPath	true	true	false	
title	true	true	true	
spacekey	true	true	false	
labelText	true	true	true	
modified	true	true	false	
created	true	true	false	
userpermission	true	true	false	
contentBody	true	true	true	
lastModifiers	true	true	false	Username of the user who last updated the page.
creatorName	true	true	false	Username of the user who added the page.
macroName	true	true	false	The name of a macro used on the page

Blog

Name	Indexed	Stored	Tokenised	Notes
handle	true	true	false	
type	true	true	false	
urlPath	true	true	false	
title	true	true	true	
spacekey	true	true	false	
labelText	true	true	true	
modified	true	true	false	
created	true	true	false	
userpermission	true	true	false	
contentBody	true	true	true	
lastModifiers	true	true	false	Username of the user who last updated the blog post.
creatorName	true	true	false	Username of the user who created the blog post.
macroName	true	true	false	The name of a macro used in the blog

Attachments

Name	Indexed	Stored	Tokenised	Notes
handle	true	true	false	
type	true	true	false	
urlPath	true	true	false	
filename	true	true	true	
title	true	true	false	
comment	true	true	true	
spacekey	true	true	false	
modified	true	true	false	
created	true	true	false	
userpermission	true	true	false	
contentBody	true	true	true	

Mail Items

Name	Indexed	Stored	Tokenised	Notes
handle	true	true	false	
type	true	true	false	
urlPath	true	true	false	
title	true	true	true	
spacekey	true	true	false	
messageid	true	true	false	
inreplyto	true	true	false	
recipients	true	true	true	
labelText	true	true	true	
modified	true	true	false	
created	true	true	false	
userpermission	true	true	false	

contentBody	true	true	true	
lastModifiers	true	true	false	The username of the user who did the mail import, not the person who sent the email message.
creatorName	true	true	false	The username of the user who did the mail import, not the person who sent the email message.

Related Topics

- [Searching Confluence](#)
- [Text Tokenisation and Filtering](#)
- [Searching the People Directory](#)
- [Confluence Search Syntax](#)
- [Confluence Search Fields](#)
- [Ranking of Search Results](#)

Ranking of Search Results

When you perform a [search](#) in Confluence, it is likely that there will be many pages or other content items that match your search terms. Confluence will rank the matching items by evaluating their relevance. This should mean that the items most relevant to you will appear at the top of the search results list, so that you can quickly select the item you need.

Below is an overview of the method Confluence uses to determine the relevance of the items returned by the search, i.e. to rank the search results.

On this page:

- [Philosophy behind the Ranking](#)
- [Summary of the Ranking Method](#)
- [Weighting of Content Types](#)
- [Weighting of Fields](#)
- [Weighting Based on Age](#)
- [Simplified Example](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Philosophy behind the Ranking

Confluence gives highest priority to personal information i.e. documents which take you to a user's profile when you click on them. Collaboration is a primary function of a wiki, so Confluence makes it easy to find people.

For example, if you search for 'John Smith', the first results you see will be for John Smith's user profile and personal space. There may also be other content (wiki pages, email messages, etc) which contain the words 'John Smith'. These other content types may even have 'John Smith' as the page title and repeated multiple times in the content, but they will still appear lower down in the list of search results.

Matching terms found in the title of a page, or in the title of any content type, are considered a strong match. So are matches found in labels, because when someone applies a label it means that they think the content is particularly relevant to the labelled term.

Matches found in the content body are of average importance. If the matched term appears more than once, the document will be given a proportionately higher ranking.

We also assume that information created recently is slightly more relevant than older information.

Summary of the Ranking Method

When displaying the results of a search, Confluence applies a weighting to each of the content items returned.

To determine the weighting:

1. For each content item, Confluence first applies three weightings based on the following:
 - a. The content type of the item returned — user profile, page, blog post, attachment, etc. (More details [below](#).)
 - b. The type of field in which the search term was found — title, name, label, or content body. (More details [below](#).)
 - c. The age of the item returned. (More details [below](#).)
2. Confluence then combines the three weightings to arrive at a single weighting for the content item.

The item with the heaviest weighting will appear at the top of the list of search results, and the other items will appear below in descending order of weighting.

Weighting of Content Types

Content Type	Weighting
User Profile	9
Page	8
Blog	7
Attachment	6
Comment	5
Mail	0.5
Space Description	0.4



Simple example

If the search returns 7 matching items, and each item is one of the above types, then the items will be presented in the above order on the results screen. (This example assumes that the search term is found in the same field in each item — see more about fields [below](#).)

Weighting of Fields

Field Name	Weighting
Title	9
Full name	8
Label text	7
Content	5

Note that 'content' above could be the content of a page, or the content of a comment, or the body of any other content type. See more about content types [above](#).



Simple example

A match for a search term in the title of a document is 1.8 times (9/5) more important than a match in the content.

Weighting Based on Age

This weighting is based on the age of the item returned in the search results. The age of the item is calculated from the creation date of the item. The age intervals are quite coarse-grained, as shown in the table below.

When the Item was Created	Weighting
Today	1.5
Yesterday	1.3
Up to 1 week ago	1.25

Up to 1 month ago	1.2
Up to 3 months ago	1.15
Up to 6 months ago	1.10
Up to 1 year ago	1.05
Beyond a year	1

The weighting is fairly small, so will not have a large effect. When an item is more than a year old, the age weighting is just '1' i.e. it has no effect.



Simple example

- If two documents match in all other ways then the newer one will be presented first.
- If the two documents being compared are both older than a year then their relative age does not matter.

Simplified Example

Let's assume you search for a single term.


Confluence finds a match in the title of an email message created today:

Weighting for the content type (email)	0.5
Weighting for field (title)	9
Weighting for age (today)	1.5
Total weighting	6.75

Confluence also finds a match in the content of a comment created three weeks ago:

Weighting for the content type (comment)	5
Weighting for field (content)	5
Weighting for age (up to 1 month ago)	1.2
Total weighting	30

Result: The comment (weighting 30) will appear higher in the search results than the e-mail (6.75).

 Confluence uses the [Apache Lucene](#) search engine library. Lucene's score calculation has a number of additional terms, not mentioned in the above example. We have simplified above, for purposes of illustration. If you are interested, you can see more information in the [Lucene documentation](#).

Related Topics

[Searching Confluence](#)
[Confluence Search Syntax](#)
[Confluence Search Fields](#)
[Text Tokenisation and Filtering](#)
[Search Results Macro](#)
[Livesearch Macro](#)
[Page Tree Macro](#) (includes an optional search box)

Take me back to [Confluence Documentation Home](#)

Organising Content

Confluence provides a number of ways for organising and structuring content in the wiki:

- [Spaces](#) allow you to group content according to major categories.
- [Pages](#) are used for discrete topics, and can be structured into [page trees](#) to show the relation between them.
- [Favourites](#) are particular pages or spaces that have been bookmarked by a user, to make them easy to find again.
- [Labels](#) are user-defined tags that are added to related pages in order to categorise them in some way.
- [Attachments](#) to a page can include images, multimedia, Office and PDF files, and provide a way to include other forms of content in the wiki.
- [Email](#) can be collected and archived within each space individually, to manage all mail related to a project.

Related Topics

[Creating Content](#)

[Searching Confluence](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Working with Pages

Pages are the primary means of storing and sharing information in Confluence. Pages are contained within [spaces](#).

- Use **spaces** to organise your wiki content into your primary logical groups. For example, you could have a space per team, per product or per department.
- Use **pages** to organise your content into lower-level groups. For example, you could have a page for a particular team activity, or for a feature in a product, or for a chapter in a book. Add more child pages to contain lower-level details if necessary.

Things you can do with pages in Confluence:

- [Create a new page](#) from anywhere within the site.
- Write content [using the editor](#).
- [Rename](#) a page.
- [Copy an existing page](#).
- Organise pages hierarchically via [parent-child relationships](#).
- Move pages [while editing a page](#) or [while viewing the space's Tree view](#).
- Navigate within and between spaces through flexible [linking](#).
- Collaborate via [comments](#) on a page.
- Control access through [page security restrictions](#).
- Monitor page updates and other activity through [page notifications](#).
- View [page history](#) and [link to older versions](#).
- [Search](#) page content, including attachments.
- Export pages to [PDF](#), [WORD](#), [HTML](#) or [XML](#).
- [Email](#) page content.

Related Topics

[Creating a Page](#)

[Working with Page Families](#)

[Working with Drafts](#)

[Working with the Office Connector](#)

[Recently Viewed Content](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Moving a Page

This page describes how to move a page. You can move a page:

- to a different space, with a new parent
- to have a different parent page, within the same space
- to reorder sibling pages that are children of a common parent.

When you move a page, all of the page content such as attachments and comments will be moved with the page. Additionally, all child and descendent pages and their page content will also be moved.

You can also [copy a page](#), and [move an attachment](#).

On this page:

- [Moving a Page to a Different Space](#)
- [Moving a Page within a Space](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

**Permissions**

To move a page, you need the following permissions:

- 'Edit' permission on the page you are moving, and
- 'View' permission on the page's parent page. So if you are moving the page to a different parent, you need 'View' permission on the new parent.

To move a page into a different space, you will also need:

- 'Remove' permission on the space you are moving from, and
- 'Create' permission on the space you are moving to.

Moving a Page to a Different Space

You can move a page, along with its child pages, to a different space. Any links to a moved page from the current space will automatically be renamed to point to the page in the new space.

To move a page to another space in your Confluence site:

1. Go to the page and choose **Tools > Move**.
2. Use the tabs on the left to help you find the new space and parent page for your page, that is, the location where you want to move your page. The 'Current location' and 'New location' breadcrumb trails at the bottom of the dialog indicate the current parent page and new parent page.
3. If you want to move a page to a different position amongst the child pages, check **Reorder** to see a list of sibling pages when you click **Move**.
4. Click **Move**.
5. If you are reordering the child pages, click in the list to set the new position for the page and click **Reorder**.

Moving a Page within a Space

You can move a page to a different position in the page tree. This allows you to:

- Move a single page, or a family of pages, to have a different parent within the space.
- Reorder sibling pages that are children of a common parent.

Any links to the page are maintained. When a page that is itself a parent (that is, it has one or more child pages) is moved, the entire hierarchy of child pages of the moved page (including comments and attachments) is maintained.

To move a page using the space's 'Tree' view:

1. From any page, choose **Browse > Pages**.
2. Click **Tree**.
3. Find the page you want to move.
4. Drag the page up or down the tree.
5. While dragging the page, you see one of the following:
 - A thin line between existing pages — this indicates the potential new position for the page. Release the mouse button when the page is where you want it.
 - A wide highlight over one or more existing pages — this indicates that you can drop the page into a page family. Release the mouse button to add the page to the family. The page will appear either in alphabetical sequence or as the last page in the family, depending on the family's sequential order.



The new position of the page is saved as soon as you release the mouse button.



To cancel the move while still holding down the mouse button, press the 'Esc' key.

Related Topics

[Moving an Attachment](#)
[Copying a Page](#)
[Deleting a Page](#)
[Sequential Order of Pages](#)
[Overview of Pages](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Working with Page Families

A 'page family' is simply the [parent](#) and [child](#) pages in a part of the page hierarchy.

Things you can do with page families in Confluence:

- [View a page's family](#).
- [View the hierarchy of all pages within a space](#).
- [Move and re-order pages](#).
- [Order the pages in a page family alphabetically](#).

Related Topics

[Managing Orphaned Pages](#)

[Working with Pages](#)

[Working with Spaces](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Viewing a Page's Family

To view a page's family, go to the page and choose **Tools > Info**.

The page's parent and children, if any, are listed under 'Hierarchy'.

Screenshot : Viewing a page's family

Hierarchy

Parent Page

[Home](#)

Children (5)

[Choose a Page](#)

[Move an attachment from one space to another](#)

[Move a family of pages from one space to another](#)

[Move a page from one space to another](#)

[Page Families](#)

Notes

- If there are more than 10 children, only the first 10 will be shown by default. To view all the children, click **Show all....**
- If no parent is displayed for the page, either the page sits in the root directory of the space or its parent has been deleted.

Related Topics

[Working with Page Families](#)

[View Hierarchy of all Pages within a Space](#)

[Managing Orphaned Pages](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Setting a Page Family to Alphabetical Order

You can choose to display your Confluence pages in alphabetical or manual order. This page tells you how to set the pages within a family to alphabetical order. See [Sequential Order of Pages](#).

On this page:

- [About the Sequential Order of Pages](#)
- [Alphabetical versus Manual Order](#)
- [Changing the Page Order](#)
- [Setting Page Order to Alphabetical](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

About the Sequential Order of Pages

Confluence allows you to present your pages in any order (sequence) you choose. The position of a page is reflected in the following places:

- The [Tree](#) tab on the space's 'Pages' view
- Exporting pages to [PDF](#), [HTML](#) and [XML](#)
- The [Pagetree](#) macro
- The [Children](#) macro

Alphabetical versus Manual Order

By default, Confluence will present your pages in alphabetical order. When you move a page to a different position, the order becomes manual for the affected page family.

i When ordering pages alphabetically, Confluence actually applies a more sophisticated 'natural' order rather than a straight alphabetical order. The natural order handles numeric values correctly when doing string comparisons.

Now let's consider what happens when you add a page to a page family, by creating a new page or by moving or copying a page into the family:

- If the page family's order is alphabetical, the new page will appear in alphabetical order too.
- If the page family's order is manual, the new page will appear at the bottom of the list of pages in the family.

Changing the Page Order

You can change the order of the pages by moving pages within the page tree — see [Moving a Page](#).

You can also change the order of a page-family from manual to alphabetical (see the 'Setting Page Order to Alphabetical' section on [Setting a Page Family to Alphabetical Order](#)).

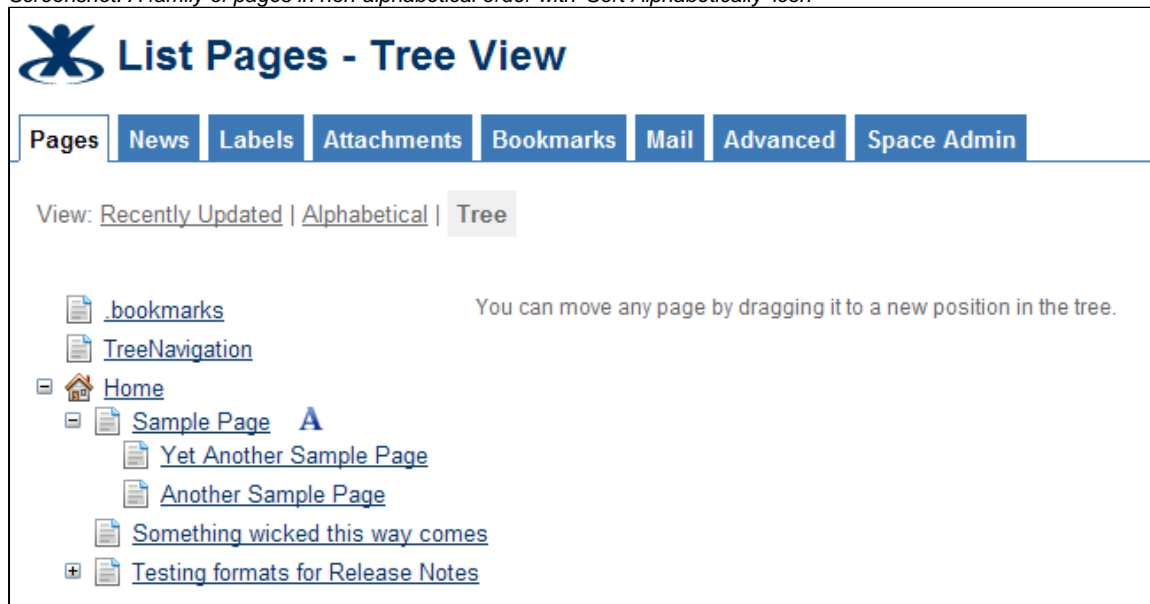
Setting Page Order to Alphabetical

If the pages in a page family have been ordered manually, you can reset the page order to alphabetical as described below.


A page family is a set of pages under a single parent page. In this section, when we say 'page family' we mean the immediate children of the parent page, not including the grand-children.

The screenshot below shows a family of pages in non-alphabetical order under the parent 'Sample Page'. Notice the **A** icon next to the parent 'Sample Page', giving you the option to order the pages alphabetically.

Screenshot: A family of pages in non-alphabetical order with 'Sort Alphabetically' icon



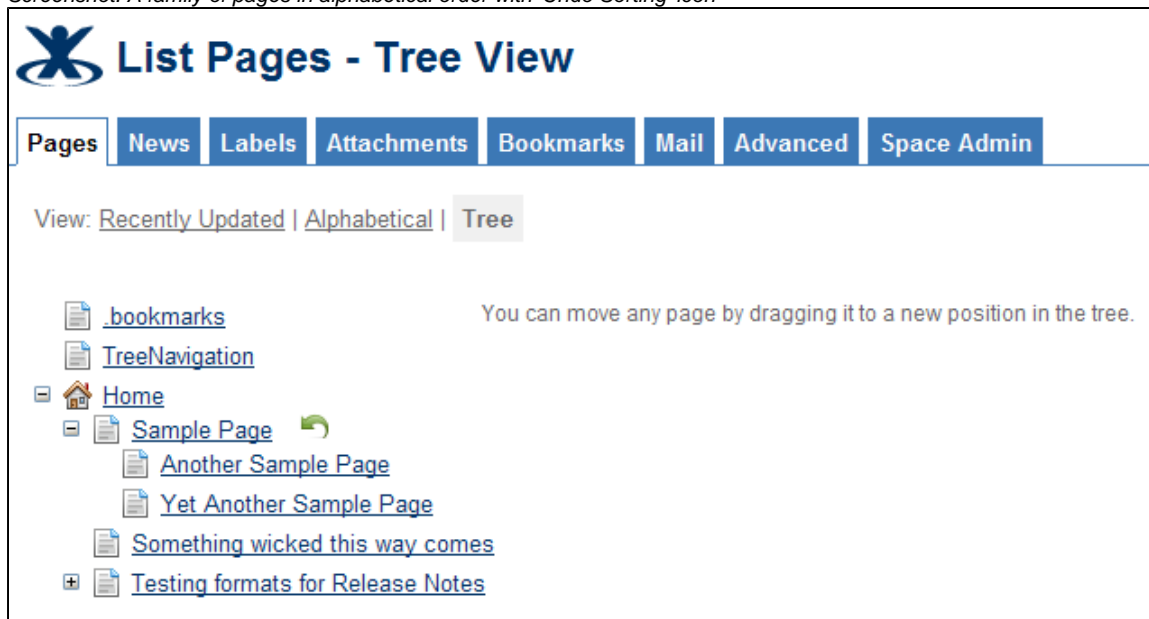
To set a page family to alphabetical order:


1. Go to a page in the space and choose **Browse > Pages**.
2. Go to the **Tree** tab.
3. Expand the branches of the tree to find the page family you want.
4. If the page family is in non-alphabetical (manual) order, the 'Sort Alphabetically' icon **A** will appear next to the parent page as shown in the screenshot above. Click the icon.
5. The child pages will shuffle into alphabetical order and the icon will change to the 'Undo Sorting' icon  as shown in the screenshot below.

i Only the immediate children of the parent page will be affected. The grand-children will not be re-ordered. (If you want to

re-order the grand-children, you need to click the 'Sort Alphabetically' icon next to the parent of those pages i.e. re-ordering happens for one node at a time.)

Screenshot: A family of pages in alphabetical order with 'Undo Sorting' icon



If you change your mind, you can click the 'Undo Sorting' icon  to undo the alphabetical sort. This option is only available while you remain on the **Tree** tab and provided that you have not performed any other action on the page family. Once you move away from this screen or do something else with the page family, such as moving children in or out of the family, the undo option is no longer available.

Related Topics

[Moving a Page](#)
[Overview of Pages](#)
[Overview of Page Families](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)


Using the Documentation Theme

The Documentation theme is one of the themes bundled with Confluence. It provides an inbuilt table of contents for your wiki space, a configurable header and footer, and text styles suited to documentation. You can also configure it to restrict the search results to the current space, rather than searching the entire Confluence site.

This page tells you how to view pages in your Confluence space when your space uses the Documentation theme. For the full list of features and instructions on applying the theme to a space, see the [guide to configuring the Documentation theme](#).



Quick guide to using the Documentation theme

- The left-hand panel contains a page tree. This is a table of contents that shows the pages in the space.
- Click the plus signs in the page tree to see the child pages.
- Drag the thick vertical bar to change the width of the panels.
- Show/hide the left-hand panel: Click the sidebar icon  at top right, next to the search box, to remove the left-hand panel altogether. Click the icon again to restore the panel.
- Alternatively, press 'I' on your keyboard to show/hide the left-hand panel.
- Overriding a space-restricted search: If your theme is configured to restrict the search to the current space, you can enter 'all:' and your search term to search the entire site.

The rest of this page gives more details of the above guidelines.

On this page:

- [Using the Documentation Theme](#)
- [Searching the Space or the Site](#)
- [Hints and Tips](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Using the Documentation Theme

By default, the left-hand panel contains a search box and a table of contents (page tree) showing all the pages in your space. Specifically, it shows the pages that are children of the space's home page.

diagram temporarily disabled {giffy:name=Documentation Theme Default|align=left|size=L}

Screenshot above: The Documentation theme with default settings



A [space administrator](#) can customise the Documentation theme as follows:

- Change the content in the left-hand panel and add a header and footer to the page. This means that your own pages may look different from the screenshot above.
- Restrict the search so that it will show results from the current space only, not from the entire Confluence site.

diagram temporarily disabled {giffy:name=Documentation Theme|align=left|size=L}

Screenshot above: The Documentation theme with space-restricted search

Here is a summary of the things you can do on a page that uses the Documentation theme:

- Click the plus signs to open and close the branches of the page tree (table of contents) in the left-hand panel.
- Drag the thick bar between the left-hand panel and the content, to increase or decrease the width of the panel.
- Click the sidebar icon  at top right, next to the search box, to remove the left-hand panel. This will remove the panel for you only. Other people will still see it.
- Click the sidebar icon  again to restore the left-hand panel.
- Alternatively, press '[' on your keyboard to show/hide the left-hand panel.
- Use the scroll bars to scroll the left-hand and right-hand panels independently of each other.
- Search the content of the space or the site. See below.

Searching the Space or the Site

When using the Documentation theme, the Confluence search offers a few options as described below.

Using the search box at the top right of the page:

- By default, the main Confluence search is configured to search the entire Confluence site.
 - You will see the words **'Search Confluence'** in the search box at top right of the page.
 - The Confluence search will look for matches in the entire Confluence site. This is the default behaviour for other themes too.
- A space administrator can configure the Documentation theme to restrict the search to the current space.
 - You will see the words **'Search this space'** in the search box at top right of the page.
 - The search will return results from the current space only.
 - You can override the search restriction. Enter **'all:'** and your search term to search the entire site. For example, enter the following into the search box at top right of the page to search the entire site for 'technical writing':

```
all: technical writing
```

Using the search box in the left-hand panel:

- By default, the Documentation theme's left-hand panel includes a search box. Enter your search term there, to restrict the search to the current space. Specifically, this will search only the pages that are children of the space's home page.
- If your administrator has restricted the main search to the current space, there will not be a search box in the left-hand panel.

Hints and Tips

Below are some hints that you may find useful when using the Documentation theme.

Where can I see a working example of the Documentation theme?

The Confluence documentation uses the Documentation theme. If you are reading this documentation online on [the Atlassian documentation wiki](#), you are seeing a working version of the Documentation theme.

Which pages will appear in the Documentation theme's table of contents?

The theme constructs the page tree in the left-hand panel from all pages that are child pages of the space's home page. Each space has a single page designated as the 'Home' page. You can specify the home page in the [space administration section](#).

Help, my pages do not appear in the Documentation theme table of contents


Cause 1: Your pages are not under the space's home page. The most probable reason why your pages do not appear in the page tree in the left-hand panel is this: The theme constructs that table of contents from all pages that are child pages of the space's home page. If your pages are above the home page in the page tree, they will not appear in the left-hand panel.

There are two ways to fix the problem:

- You can change the designated space home page in the [space administration section](#).
- Or you can drag and drop all your pages to make them children of the current home page. You can drag and drop pages in the 'Pages' section of the space 'Browse' screen. See [Moving a Page](#).

Cause 2: Problem with upgrade from Confluence 3.1, with Documentation theme as plugin, to Confluence 3.2 or later with Documentation theme bundled. If your existing Confluence installation already has the Documentation theme plugin installed, you may find that after upgrading to Confluence 3.2 the left-hand navigation bar is empty in the spaces that use the theme. The fix is to enable all modules of the Documentation theme plugin. See the [knowledge base article](#).

Help, my left-hand panel has disappeared

If your entire left-hand panel has disappeared when using the Documentation theme, this is probably because you have clicked the sidebar icon  at top right, next to the search box. Click the icon again to restore the panel.

Related Topics

[Configuring the Documentation Theme](#)
[Space Jump Macro](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#)


Sequential Order of Pages

Confluence allows you to present your pages in any order (sequence) you choose. The position of a page is reflected in the following places:

- The [Tree tab](#) on the space's 'Pages' view
- Exporting pages to [PDF](#), [HTML](#) and [XML](#)
- The [Pagetree macro](#)
- The [Children macro](#)

Alphabetical versus Manual Order

By default, Confluence will present your pages in alphabetical order. When you move a page to a different position, the order becomes manual for the affected page family.

 When ordering pages alphabetically, Confluence actually applies a more sophisticated 'natural' order rather than a straight alphabetical order. The natural order handles numeric values correctly when doing string comparisons.

Now let's consider what happens when you add a page to a page family, by creating a new page or by moving or copying a page into the family:

- If the page family's order is alphabetical, the new page will appear in alphabetical order too.
- If the page family's order is manual, the new page will appear at the bottom of the list of pages in the family.

Changing the Page Order

You can change the order of the pages by moving pages within the page tree — see [Moving a Page](#).

You can also change the order of a page-family from manual to alphabetical (see the 'Setting Page Order to Alphabetical' section on [Setting a Page Family to Alphabetical Order](#)).

Related Topics

[Overview of Pages](#)
[Overview of Page Families](#)
[Moving a Page](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Viewing Page Information

The 'Information View' for a page shows you various bits of useful information about the page.

To see the Information View for a page:

1. View the page.
2. Choose **Tools** > **Info** to go to the 'Information' view for the page.

The 'Information View' displays the following information:

1. **Page Details:** Title, author, date of creation, date of last modification and the [tiny link](#) of the page.
2. **Page Hierarchy:** Parent-child relationships of the page.
3. **Page Permissions:** Displays page-level security restrictions that apply to the page (if present).
4. **Recent Changes:** Links to the five most recent versions of the page along with the name of the editor and the date of modification.
5. **View page history:** A link to the page history, which displays all the versions of the page in reverse chronological order and allows you to compare versions or to restore a previous version.
6. **Hot Referrers:** The external website pages which send the most viewers to the page.

Screenshot: A page's Information View

The screenshot shows the 'Home' page in Confluence's Information View. At the top, there's a navigation bar with 'Home', 'View', 'Add', and 'Tools' menus. The main content area is divided into several sections:

- Page Details:** A table with fields for Title (Home), Author (Administrator), Last Changed by (Administrator), Tiny Link (http://coopers:8080/x/AwAG), Export As (PDF | Word), and Operations (Copy).
- Recent Changes:** A table showing the last change by Administrator on Apr 30, 2008 at 13:44, with a link to View page history.
- Hierarchy:** Shows the page has one child, 'Blue is the new black'.
- Labels:** States there are no labels assigned to this page.
- Hot Referrers:** Lists a referrer from extranet.atlassian.com.

Related Topics

[Working with Pages](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Copying a Page

You can copy a page, to create a duplicate of the page content. You will need to rename the page, because a page name must be unique within a space.

You need 'Create Pages' permission, which is assigned by a [space administrator](#) from the Space Administration screens. See [space permissions](#) or contact a space administrator for more information.

To copy a page:

1. Go to a page in the space and choose **Tools** > **Copy**.
Confluence will open a copy of the page in edit mode. By default, Confluence will name the page 'Copy of <<original page name>>'.
 2. Rename the page and make any other changes required in the body of the page.
 3. If you need to move the new page to a different space or a different parent, you can edit the **Location**. Refer to the [instructions on moving a page](#).
 4. Click **Save**.

Notes

- Copying a page will duplicate all of the original page's attachments and labels, but will not copy comments from the original page.
- This method of copying a page does not copy the child pages. Please add your vote to issue [CONF-2814](#) if you'd like to see this improvement.
- You can copy an entire space, including all pages in the space (parents and children) — refer to [these instructions on copying a](#)

space.

- Consider using the [WebDav plugin](#) to move or copy a page hierarchy from one space to another, provided that none of the page names already exist in the target space.

Screenshot: Copying a page

Copy of Sample Page

Select a page template to start from.

Save Cancel

Rich Text Wiki Markup Preview

B I U ABC -- Format --

Start of sample page content

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Aliquam fermentum vestibulum est. Cras rhoncus. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Sed quis tortor. Donec non ipsum. Mauris condimentum, odio nec porta tristique, ante neque malesuada massa, in dignissim eros velit at tellus. Donec et risus in ligula eleifend consectetur. Donec volutpat eleifend augue. Integer gravida sodales leo. Nunc vehicula neque ac erat. Vivamus non nisl. Fusce ac magna. Suspendisse euismod libero eget mauris.

End of sample page content

Location: Confluence 2.7 > Linking to Comments **EDIT**

Restrictions: **EDIT**

Labels: **DONE**

Tip: Looking for a label? Just start typing.

Save Cancel

Related Topics

[Working with Pages](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Working with Comments

A comment is a remark, question, or any other additional information you wish to add to a page. Comments are a means by which a community of users can interact with each other on the site.

You can add a comment to any page or blog post in Confluence.

Comments are displayed at the bottom of the page, below the page content. Comments in Confluence are displayed in one of two views, configured globally by a [site administrator](#):

- Threaded** - this view shows the comments in a hierarchy of responses. Each subsequent reply to a comment is indented to indicate the relationships between the comments.
- Flat** - this view displays all the comments in one single list and does not indicate the relationships between comments.

What would you like to do?

[Add a comment](#)
[Link to a comment](#)
[Delete a comment](#)
[Edit a comment](#)
[Enabling Threaded Comments](#)

Related Topics

[Working with Pages](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Adding a Comment

You can either add a new comment, or respond to a previous comment, on both pages and blog posts in Confluence.

To add a comment, you require 'Create Comments' permission which is assigned by a [space administrator](#) from the Space Administration screens. See [Space permissions](#) or contact a space administrator for more information.

To add a new comment:

1. Choose **Add > Comment** from the top of the page, or simply click beside your [profile picture](#) below the last comment.
2. Type in your comment.
3. Use **Preview** to see how your comment will appear.
4. Click **Save**. By default the current page is added to those that you receive [notifications](#) about.

To respond to a comment:

1. Click **Reply** located below the text of a comment.
2. Type in your response.
3. Click **Save**.

Notes

- You can only respond to a comment when comments are in 'threaded' view.
- You can choose **Tools > Watch** to receive an email notification whenever anyone edits the page or adds a comment to the page.
- Your [profile picture](#) will appear next to each comment that you have added. (This is true if your space uses the Confluence Default theme.)

Related Topics

[Linking to Comments](#)

[Deleting Comments](#)

[Subscribing to Email Notifications of Updates to Confluence Content](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Deleting Comments

To delete a comment from a page, you require 'Remove Comments' permission which is assigned by a [space administrator](#) from the Space Administration screens. See [Space permissions](#) or contact a space administrator for more information.

Currently, it is not possible to delete all comments for a page simultaneously.

To delete a comment:

1. Go to the page that contains the comment.
2. Click **Remove** at the bottom of the comments box. This is only displayed if you have permission to remove comments for this page.



Warning

Deleted comments cannot be restored.


Related Topics

[Adding a Comment](#)

[Linking to Comments](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Editing a Comment

 Comments are editable if you are using Confluence version 2.4 or later.

You can edit any comments that you have created. [Space administrators](#) can edit all comments within their space. The date on a comment always indicates the time the comment was last edited.

To edit a comment:

1. Go to the comment and click **Edit**.

2. Make changes to the comment just as if you were [adding a comment](#).
3. Click **Save** when you are finished.

Related Topics

[Working with Comments](#)
[Linking to Comments](#)
[Deleting Comments](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)


Linking to Comments

You can add a link to a comment by making use of the PermaLink associated with each comment.


On this page:


- [To link to a comment from within Confluence](#)
- [To link to a comment from outside Confluence](#)
- [Related Topics](#)


To link to a comment from within Confluence

1. Right-click on the Permalink icon  located at the lower right of the comments box.
2. Select **Copy Link Location** from the pop-up menu.
3. Edit the page from which you want to link to the comment.
4. Click **Link** in the toolbar, and select the **Web Link** tab.
5. Paste the PermaLink into the address field.
6. Provide link text if required.

To link to a comment from outside Confluence

1. Right-click on the Permalink icon  located at the lower right of the comments box.
2. Select **Copy Link Location** from the pop-up menu.
3. Use this URL to link to the comment from your web page.

Alternately, click on the Permalink icon  and copy the URL displayed in the address bar of your browser.

 The older method of linking to comments (used in Confluence 3.5.x and older) using just the commentid has been removed. If you would like to see it reinstated, please [visit this JIRA issue](#).

Related Topics

[Working with Comments](#)
[Adding a Comment](#)
[Working with Links](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Sample Page

Start of sample page content

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Aliquam fermentum vestibulum est. Cras rhoncus. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Sed quis tortor. Donec non ipsum. Mauris condimentum, odio nec porta tristique, ante neque malesuada massa, in dignissim eros velit at tellus. Donec et risus in ligula eleifend consectetur. Donec volutpat eleifend augue. Integer gravida sodales leo. Nunc vehicula neque ac erat. Vivamus non nisl. Fusce ac magna. Suspendisse euismod libero eget mauris.

End of sample page content

child page

Recently Viewed Content

Confluence keeps track of pages you have recently visited throughout all your accessible spaces within a Confluence installation. This history is available from the **Recently Viewed** content view, which you can use to go back to Confluence pages you have recently visited.

To view the list of recently visited pages and go back to one of them:

1. Go to the 'Recently Viewed' content view. To do this:
 - Go to **your name** (the 'User' menu) at the top of the page and choose **Recently Viewed**.
2. Click the title of the page you wish to revisit.

Screenshot: Recently Viewed content view

Recently Viewed


[Navigating to the Your Recent History View - copy for Confluence 3.0](#)
by [Giles Gaskell \[Atlassian Technical Writer\]](#) (4 minutes ago)


[Navigating to the Your Recent History View](#)
by [David Soul \[Atlassian\]](#) (28 Jan)


[Your Recent History - copy for Confluence 3.0](#)
by [Giles Gaskell \[Atlassian Technical Writer\]](#) (11 minutes ago)


[Your Recent History](#)
by [Giles Gaskell \[Atlassian Technical Writer\]](#) (13 Jan)


[Viewing Space Activity - copy for Confluence 3.0](#)
by [Giles Gaskell \[Atlassian Technical Writer\]](#) (26 minutes ago)


[Viewing Space Activity](#)
by [David Chui](#) (12 Oct)


[Confluence Usage Tracking Plugin](#)
by [Philip Cher](#) (30 Nov)


[How Do I Get More Statistics From Confluence?](#)
by [Matt Hodges \[Atlassian\]](#) (06 Apr)


[Plugin Repository Macros](#)
by [Giles Gaskell \[Atlassian Technical Writer\]](#) (07 Apr)


[Popular Plugins Macro](#)
by [Giles Gaskell \[Atlassian Technical Writer\]](#) (07 Apr)

Note

This list records up to the last 20 pages visited. However, be aware that it is cleared when you log out of Confluence or your Confluence session terminates.

Related Topics

[Working with Pages](#)
[Browsing a space](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Renaming a Page

To rename an existing page, you require 'Edit Pages' permission which is assigned by a [space administrator](#) from the Space Administration screens. See [Space permissions](#) or contact a space administrator for more information.

To rename a page:

1. Go to a page in the space, and click **Edit** at the top to view the page in 'Edit' mode.
2. Change the page title as required.
3. Click **Save**.

Notes

- Confluence will automatically update all [internal links](#) to point to your new page title. This only works for page links that use the relative link syntax, for example [\[Renaming a Page\]](#).
- In [macros](#), page links will not be updated. You need to update these manually.
- Links from external sites will be broken, unless they use the page's [permanent URL](#).

Related Topics


[Linking Pages](#)
[Working with Pages](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Deleting a Page

To delete a page, you require the 'Remove Pages' permission which is assigned by a [space administrator](#) from the Space Administration screens. See [Space Permissions](#) or contact a space administrator for more information.

To delete a page:

1. Go to the page.
 2. Go to the 'Remove Page' option. To do this:
 - Go to a page in the space and choose **Tools > Remove**. You will be prompted to confirm the action.
-  The 'Remove' menu option will only appear if you have permission to remove this page.

Notes

- Pages deleted in this way are stored in the trash and can be recovered by a space administrator. [Purge](#) the trash to remove the page permanently.
- If the page you are deleting has any [child pages](#) they will be moved to the root of the space.
- Attachments attached to a deleted page will remain in the database (allowing potential retrieval) until the trash is [purged](#). When the trash is purged, all attachments on that page are permanently removed.

Related Topics

[Restoring a Deleted Page](#)
[Purging Deleted Pages](#)

[Creating a Page](#)
[Editing or Deleting a Page That Won't Render](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)


Purging Deleted Pages


When a user deletes a page from a Confluence space, the page is not permanently removed. Instead, Confluence places the deleted page into the 'Trash'. The page will remain in 'Trash' until a space administrator purges the page.

Purging deleted pages permanently clears them from 'Trash'.

You need to be a [space administrator](#) to purge deleted pages for a space.

To purge deleted pages:

1. Choose **Browse > Space Admin**.
 -  **Space Admin** is displayed only if you are a space administrator for that space or you are a Confluence system administrator.
2. Click **Trash** in the left-hand navigation panel. A list of deleted pages and blog posts for the space is displayed.
3. Click the **Purge** link beside a page or else click **Purge All** to permanently clear all deleted pages and news items.

 When the trash is purged, all attachments on purged pages are permanently removed as well.

Related Topics

[Deleting a Page](#)
[Restoring a Deleted Page](#)


Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Restoring a Deleted Page

When you restore a page, you are retrieving it from 'Trash' to the root of the space where it existed before it was deleted.

You need to be a [space administrator](#) to restore deleted pages.

To restore a deleted page:

1. Choose **Browse > Space Admin**.
 -  **Space Admin** is displayed only if you are a space administrator for that space or you are a Confluence system administrator.
2. Click **Trash** from the left panel. A list of deleted pages and emails for the space is displayed.
3. Click **Restore** beside the page you want to restore.

Note

If a new page has already been created in that space with the same name as the deleted page, you will be given an option to rename the page before it is restored.

Related Topics

[Deleting a Page](#)
[Purging Deleted Pages](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Page History and Page Comparison Views

Confluence tracks histories of changes to pages by maintaining a version of the page each time it is modified. It is easy to view changes between different versions and to restore a previous version if required.

On this page:

- [Accessing the Page History View](#)
- [Viewing Changes in a Page History](#)
- [Page Comparison View](#)
- [Other Page History View Features](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Accessing the Page History View

To view the history of a page:

- Go to the page and choose **Tools > Page History**.

You can click a version number to view that version. To get back to the page history view, click **View Page History**.

Screenshot: Page History View

Version	Date	Changed By	Operations
<input type="checkbox"/> CURRENT (v. 41)	Jul 07, 2009 11:33	Giles Gaskell [Atlassian Technical Writer]	
<input type="checkbox"/> v. 40	Jun 18, 2007 11:08	Rosie Jameson [Atlassian Technical Writer]	Restore this version
<input type="checkbox"/> v. 39	Jun 18, 2007 10:19	Rosie Jameson [Atlassian Technical Writer]	Restore this version

When you are viewing a specific version of the page, the following functions are available:

Function	Description
current version	View the latest version of the page.
Compare with Current	Compare the differences between the version of the page you are viewing and the current version.
Restore this Version	Restore the page version you are viewing to be the current version.
View Page History	Return to the list of page versions.
<< Previous or Next >>	View the previous or next page version, respectively.

Viewing Changes in a Page History

The page history view and [page information view](#) allow you to view recent changes made to a page or to compare the differences between any two versions of a page.

Viewing Recent Changes

To view recent changes made to a page:

1. Click **view change** at the top of the page below the page title. The page comparison view is displayed, showing the differences between the current version and the previous version.
Or:
2. Choose **Tools > Info** to go to the 'Information' view for the page.
3. In the section titled 'Recent Changes' you will see the most recent versions of the page, along with the date of their modification and

the name of the modifying author.

- Click **view changes** beside the desired version. The page comparison view is displayed, showing the differences between the selected and previous versions.

Comparing Two Different Versions of a Page

To compare two different versions of a page:

- Go to the page and choose **Tools > Page History**.
- Select the versions you want to compare by selecting the check boxes beside them.
- Click **Compare selected versions**. The page comparison view is displayed, showing the text differences between the selected versions.

Page Comparison View

The page comparison view shows the differences between selected page versions.

Key

On the page comparison view, the following key indicates the differences between the selected page versions:

Highlight	Meaning
Green	Added content
Red	Deleted content
Blue	Changed formatting

Screenshot: Comparing Changes

Versions Compared

111
Edwin Dawson
Aug 16, 2011

122
Paul Watson
Aug 19, 2011

[View Page History](#)

Key

- This line was added.
- This line was removed.
- Formatting was changed.

Interactive views

When a page comparison view is first displayed, all large sections of unchanged text are hidden and reduced to an ellipsis . . .

You can view page changes between versions which are adjacent to your current page comparison view. Click the link containing:

- << to view the page comparison with the earlier adjacent version
- >> to view the page comparison with the more recent adjacent version.

For example, if your page comparison view is between v. 30 and v. 34 of a page, you can view changes between:

- v. 29 and v. 30 by clicking << **Changes from 29 to 30**
- v. 34 and v. 35 by clicking **Changes from 34 to 35** >>

Other Page History View Features

You can also use the page history view to:

- [View an older version of a page](#)
- [Restore an older version of a page](#)
- [View change comments](#)

Related Topics

[Viewing Page Information](#)
[Working with Pages](#)
[Tracking Updates](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Restoring an Older Version of a Page

To restore an older version of a page:

1. Go to the page and choose **Tools > Page History**.
2. Click **Restore this version** beside the version to restore.
3. Change the default comment if desired and click **OK**.

Notes

- All page history is retained. Restoring an older version creates a copy of that version. For example, in the screenshot below, if you selected v.39 and clicked **Restore this version**, a copy of v.39 would be created. This copy would be v.42 and would become the current version.
- You can click a version number's link to view the contents of that page version.
- Select the check boxes of two different versions and click **Compare selected versions** to view the changes made between them.
- If you are viewing a specific page version, you can restore that version of the page by clicking **Restore this Version** on that page.
- To get back to the page history view, click **View Page History**.

Screenshot: Restoring an Older Version of a Page

Compare selected versions

Version	Date	Changed By	Operations
<input type="checkbox"/> CURRENT (v. 41)	Jul 07, 2009 11:33	Giles Gaskell [Atlassian Technical Writer]	
<input type="checkbox"/> v. 40	Jun 18, 2007 11:08	Rosie Jameson [Atlassian Technical Writer]	Restore this version
<input type="checkbox"/> v. 39	Jun 18, 2007 10:19	Rosie Jameson [Atlassian Technical Writer]	Restore this version

Related Topics

[Page History and Page Comparison Views](#)
[Working with Pages](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Viewing an Older Version of a Page

Confluence keeps a [history of all page changes](#). You can see what any of the previous versions of the page looked like, as well as link to them.

There are two ways that you can view an older version of a page.

- [Using the 'View Change' link](#) — this allows you to quickly check the most recent change to a page and the most recent version of the page, prior to the current version.
- [Using the Page History](#) — this allows you to look for a specific version of the page.

On this page:

- [Viewing an Older Version of a Page using the 'View Change' Link](#)
- [Viewing an Older Version of a Page using the Page History](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Viewing an Older Version of a Page using the 'View Change' Link

To view an older version of a page using the 'View Change' link:

1. Go to the page and click **view change** (displayed under the page title).
2. Click the **Version ##** link in the top left-hand box to show the page content of the previous version.

Notes

- If you want to view an earlier version of the page, click the **<** link at the top left.
- If you want to send this page version to someone, simply copy and paste the URL from your browser. The link will look something like this: <http://confluence.atlassian.com/pages/viewpage.action?pageId=12345>.

Viewing an Older Version of a Page using the Page History

To view an older version of a page using the page history:

1. Go to the page and choose **Tools > Page History**. The 'Page History' view will open. Read more about viewing the page history on [Page History and Page Comparison Views](#).
2. Click a version number's link to view the contents of that page version. The following header will display across the top of the old version of the page:

⚠ You are viewing an old version of this page. View the [current version](#).

[Compare with Current](#) | [Restore this Version](#) | [View Page History](#)

<< Previous Version 11 Next >>

When you are viewing a specific version of the page, the following functions are available:

Function	Description
current version	View the latest version of the page.
Compare with Current	Compare the differences between the version of the page you are viewing and the current version.
Restore this Version	Restore the page version you are viewing to be the current version.
View Page History	Return to the list of page versions.
<< Previous or Next >>	View the previous or next page version, respectively.

If you want to send this page version to someone, simply copy and paste the URL from your browser. The link will look something like this:
<http://confluence.atlassian.com/pages/viewpage.action?pageId=12345>.

Related Topics

[Page History and Page Comparison Views](#)
[Restoring an Older Version of a Page](#)
[Recording Change Comments](#)

Using a WebDAV Client to Work with Pages

You can access Confluence content via a WebDAV client, such as 'My Network Places' in Microsoft Windows. Provided that you have permission, you will be able to read and write to spaces, pages and attachments in Confluence. You will be asked to log in and the standard Confluence content access permissions will apply to the equivalent content available through the WebDAV client.

Please refer to the page on [configuring and setting up a WebDAV client](#).

Working with Blog Posts

You can publish a blog post from any space in Confluence, provided you have permission. Blog posts may be announcements, journal entries, status reports or any other timely information.

You can view the blog posts for a space by choosing **Browse > Blog**. Confluence catalogues the blog posts chronologically and allows you to browse blog posts for the space by navigating a calendar.

[Creating](#) and [editing](#) a blog post is just as easy as creating and editing any other page in Confluence.

What would you like to do?

[View blog posts](#)
[Add blog posts](#)
[Edit blog posts](#)
[Link to blog posts](#)
[Delete blog posts](#)

Related Topics


[Subscribing to RSS Feeds within Confluence](#)
[Watching Changes](#)
[Blog Posts Macro](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Deleting Blog Posts

To delete blog posts, you require 'Remove Blog' permission which is assigned by a [space administrator](#). See [Space Permissions](#) or contact a space administrator for more information.

To delete a blog post:

- Go to the blog post and choose **Tools > Remove**.
 The **Remove** option is only displayed if you have permission to remove this blog post.



Handy Hint

Deleted blog posts are stored in the trash and can be recovered by a space administrator.

Related Topics

[Viewing Blog Posts](#)
[Adding Blog Posts](#)
[Editing Blog Posts](#)
[Linking to Blog Posts](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Editing Blog Posts

To edit a blog post, you require the 'Create Blog' permission which is assigned by a [space administrator](#). See [Space Permissions](#) or contact a space administrator for more information.

To edit a blog post:

1. Navigate to the space that has the blog post and choose **Browse > Blog**. A list of the most recent blog posts within the space is presented. A calendar allows you to browse earlier blog posts.
2. Locate the blog post and click **Edit**.
3. Make changes to the blog post.
4. *(optional)* Add a comment, in the text box below the editing pane, to describe your changes.
5. **Preview** your changes if desired, and click **Save**.

Editing a blog post is similar to [editing](#) any other page in Confluence. However, there are a few things to keep in mind:

- You cannot change the date of an existing blog post. You can only backdate when [adding a blog post](#).
- You cannot move a blog post to another space.
- A blog post has no parent.

Related Topics

[Working with Blog Posts](#)
[Adding Blog Posts](#)
[Deleting Blog Posts](#)
[Blog Posts Macro](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Viewing Blog Posts

To view the blog posts within a space:


- Navigate to the desired space, and select **Browse > Blog**.

A list of the most recent blog posts within the space will be displayed, along with the date of each post and the name of its author. The blog posts for the month will be shown in a panel, next to the list of the most recent blog posts. The panel will also contain links to the previous and next month (e.g. 'April 2010'), which you can use to browse blog posts from different months.

Dashboard > Chocolate > Browse Space > Blog from June, 2010
Browse ▾ Andrew Lui ▾ Search


Chocolate Blog from June, 2010
+ Add ▾

Pages | **Blog** | Labels | Attachments | Bookmarks | Mail | Advanced | Space Admin


Andrew Lui posted on Jun 30, 2010

Chocolate Tuesday



"All you need is love. But a little chocolate now and then doesn't hurt." Charles M. Schulz


Every Tuesday is Chocolate Tuesday! This week Sarah is going to unleash her decadent "Death by Chocolate" tart upon us. Ensure that you've booked a gym session later this week to work off the guilt.

Next week, Charles has kindly volunteered to whip up some mysterious [bogus choc-chip cookies](#) for us. I'm intrigued and scared at the same time.

If you are interested in joining us for a future Chocolate Tuesday, add a comment to this blog post.

Search

Blog Posts: June 2010

-  [Chocolate Tuesday](#)
-  [Chocolate Art](#)
-  [Health Benefits of Chocolate](#)
-  [Chocolate Cafes in the City](#)

<< May 2010

Related Topics

[Blog Posts Macro](#)
[Adding Blog Posts](#)
[Linking to Blog Posts](#)
[Browsing a space](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Working with Spaces

In Confluence, content is organised into spaces. There are two types of space:

- Global* spaces are areas on your site into which you can group content items (pages, attachments, news, etc) based on any subject or topic of your choice. For example, you may want separate areas on your site for each team or project within your organisation.
- Personal* spaces belong to specific users. They can be kept private, or opened up so the whole world can view and edit them, just like global spaces. These spaces are listed in the [People Directory](#). They are not listed on the 'All' tab on the dashboard.

On this page:

- [What is a Space?](#)
- [Viewing the Spaces in a Confluence Site](#)
- [Guidelines for Dividing Content into Spaces and Pages](#)
- [Example – Favourite Spaces as Shown on the Dashboard](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

What is a Space?

A space is an area within Confluence, containing your wiki pages. You can think of each space as a sub-site, or mini-site, each with its own home page.

Each space:

- Has its own [pages](#), [blog posts](#), [comments](#), [RSS feeds](#) and [mail](#) (*mail applies to global spaces only*).
- Has its own [access control settings](#). You can set different levels of access for different spaces.
- Can be separately exported to [PDF](#), [HTML](#) or [XML](#).

There is no limit to the number of global spaces you can create in Confluence.

Viewing the Spaces in a Confluence Site

Confluence displays a list of spaces in the following locations:

- The **dashboard** displays a list of all the spaces in the Confluence site that you have permission to see. You can make a space a [favourite](#), or [categorise the space](#), to get easy access to the content that is most relevant to you. See [Customising your Personal Dashboard](#).

- The **space directory** displays a list of all the global and personal spaces in the Confluence site that you have permission to see. You can choose to see all spaces, the spaces you have marked as favourite, or the spaces in a given space category. You can further restrict the number of spaces displayed, by entering a word or words in the **Filter** box. Confluence will display only the spaces that have the matching words in the space name or description. See [Viewing All Confluence Spaces](#).
- The **people directory** displays a list of all Confluence users, including those who have personal spaces. See [Searching the People Directory](#).

Guidelines for Dividing Content into Spaces and Pages

To ensure maintainable and logical spaces, consider the following points when allocating your content to pages and spaces:

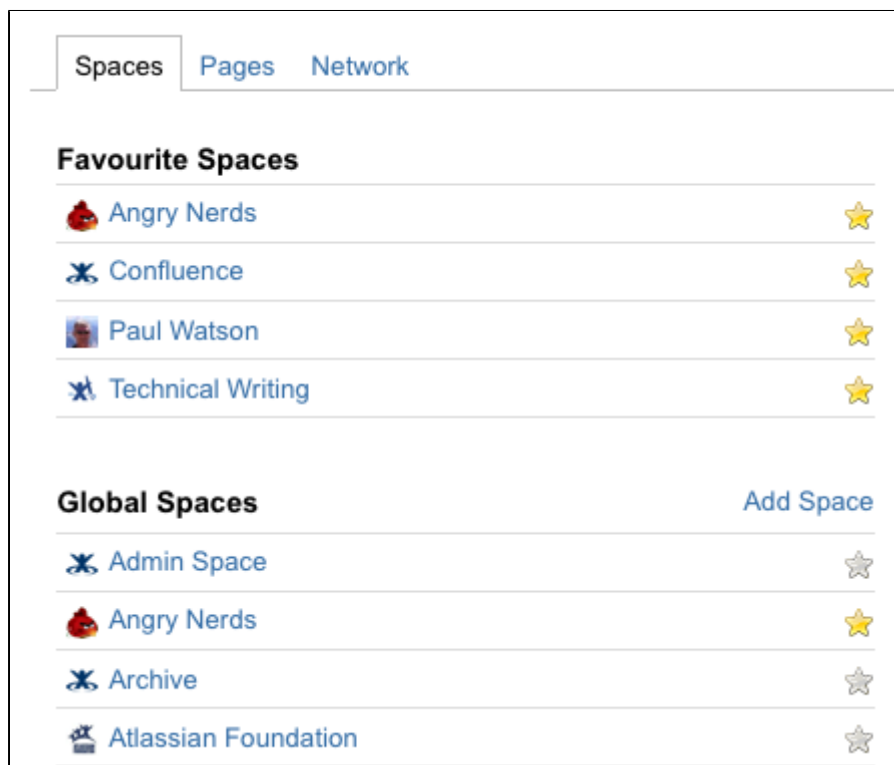
- Group the content by topic, subject, project or team.
- Evaluate permissions across the wiki content. If members require conflicting access, for example John must access content on topics A and B, while Jane must access content for topics B and C, then the topics should be separated into three spaces.

Useful notes about spaces and pages:

- Spaces cannot be nested. You cannot have parent and child spaces, but you can have parent and child pages within a space.
- Page permissions can prevent users from accessing a specific page, even though they have permission to access the space.
- Page permissions alone cannot keep the existence of a page secret. The page should be in a restricted space instead.
- Pages can be moved between spaces.
- You can group related spaces, using [space categories](#).

Example – Favourite Spaces as Shown on the Dashboard

The screenshot below shows the area of the Confluence dashboard that displays the spaces that you have marked as favourite:



Related Topics

[Setting up a New Global Space](#)
[Setting up your Personal Space](#)
[Viewing All Confluence Spaces](#)
[Browsing a space](#)
[Moving a Page](#)
[Deleting a Space](#)
[Viewing Space Activity](#)
[Using Labels to Categorise Spaces](#)
[Administering Spaces](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Viewing Space Activity

Note that the space activity information is **disabled by default**. See notes [below](#).

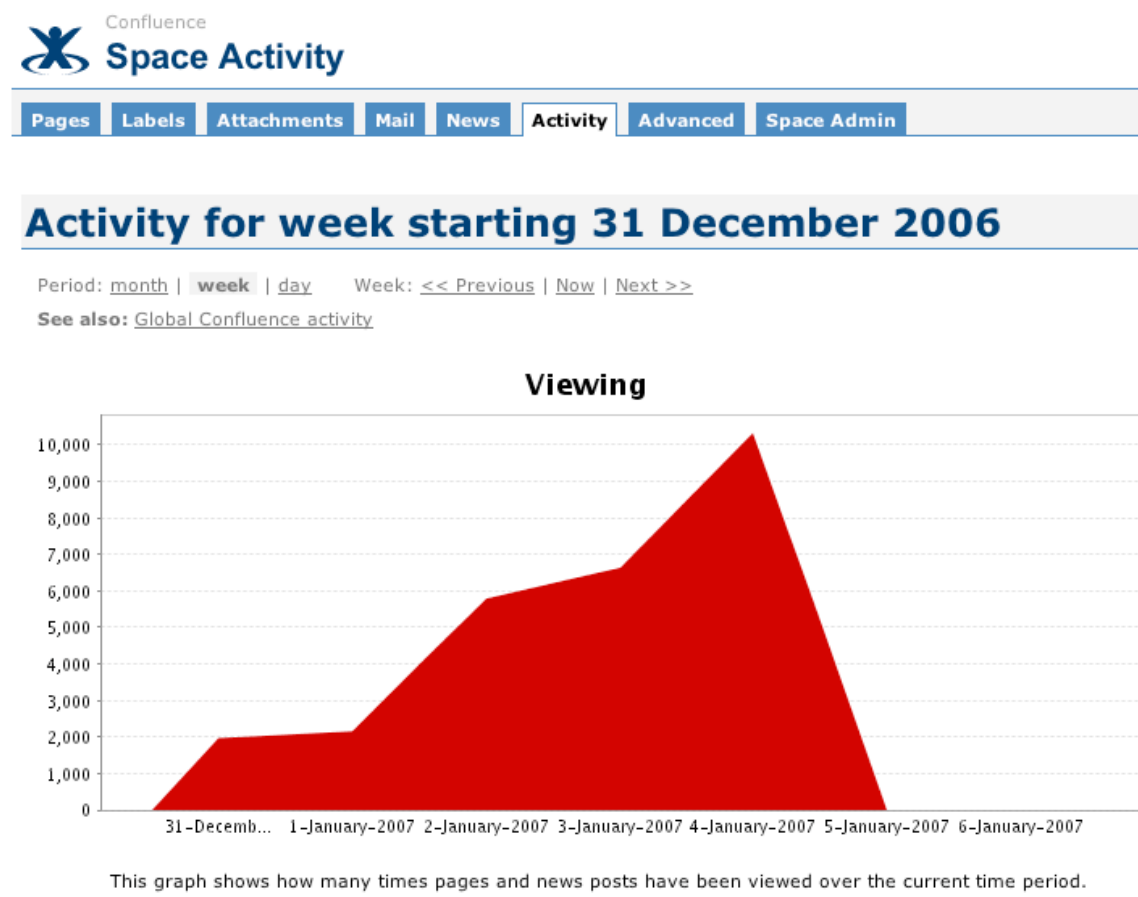
If enabled, the space activity screen displays statistics on the activity in each space. These include:

- How many pages and blog posts have been viewed, added or updated over a given period.
- Which content is the most popular (most frequently viewed).
- Which content is the most active (most frequently edited).
- Which people are the most active contributors/editors of content.

To view the activity in a space:

1. Go to a page in the space and choose **Browse > Space Admin**.
2. Go to the **Activity** tab.

Confluence will show a graphic display of the number of pages and blog posts that have been viewed, added and edited, showing trends over a period of time. For example:



Screenshot 1: Number of viewed pages and blog posts in a week

The top ten most popular and most active pages and/or blog posts will be listed, with a link to each.



Screenshot 2: Popular content

Notes

- The [Confluence Usage Stats plugin](#), which provides the 'Space Activity' screen, is known to cause performance problems on large installations. This plugin is **disabled by default**. A status report on the progress of the performance issues with this plugin is available in this issue: [USGTRK-15](#).
- Your Confluence system administrator can enable the plugin, but please be aware of the possible impact upon your site's performance.
- The plugin is sometimes called 'Confluence Usage Tracking'.
- If your Confluence site is [clustered](#), the space activity information will not be available.

Related Topics

[Browsing a space](#)
[Viewing Space Details](#)
[Page History and Page Comparison Views](#)
[Watching Changes](#)
[Finding Unused Spaces](#)
[How Do I Get More Statistics From Confluence?](#)
[Installing and Configuring Plugins](#)
[Viewing Site Statistics](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Viewing All Confluence Spaces

A space is an area within Confluence, containing your wiki pages. You can think of each space as a sub-site, or mini-site, each with its own home page.



Quick guide to viewing Confluence spaces

- The **dashboard** displays a list of all the spaces in the Confluence site that you have permission to see. You can make a space a [favourite](#), or [categorise the space](#), to get easy access to the content that is most relevant to you. See [Customising your Personal Dashboard](#).
- The **space directory** displays a list of all the global and personal spaces in the Confluence site that you have permission to see. You can choose to see all spaces, the spaces you have marked as favourite, or the spaces in a given space category. You can further restrict the number of spaces displayed, by entering a word or words in the **Filter** box. Confluence will display only the spaces that have the matching words in the space name or description. See [Viewing All Confluence Spaces](#).
- The **people directory** displays a list of all Confluence users, including those who have personal spaces. See [Searching the People Directory](#).

On this page:

- [Viewing Spaces on the Dashboard](#)
- [Viewing Spaces in the Space Directory](#)
- [Viewing Personal Spaces in the People Directory](#)
- [Notes](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Viewing Spaces on the Dashboard

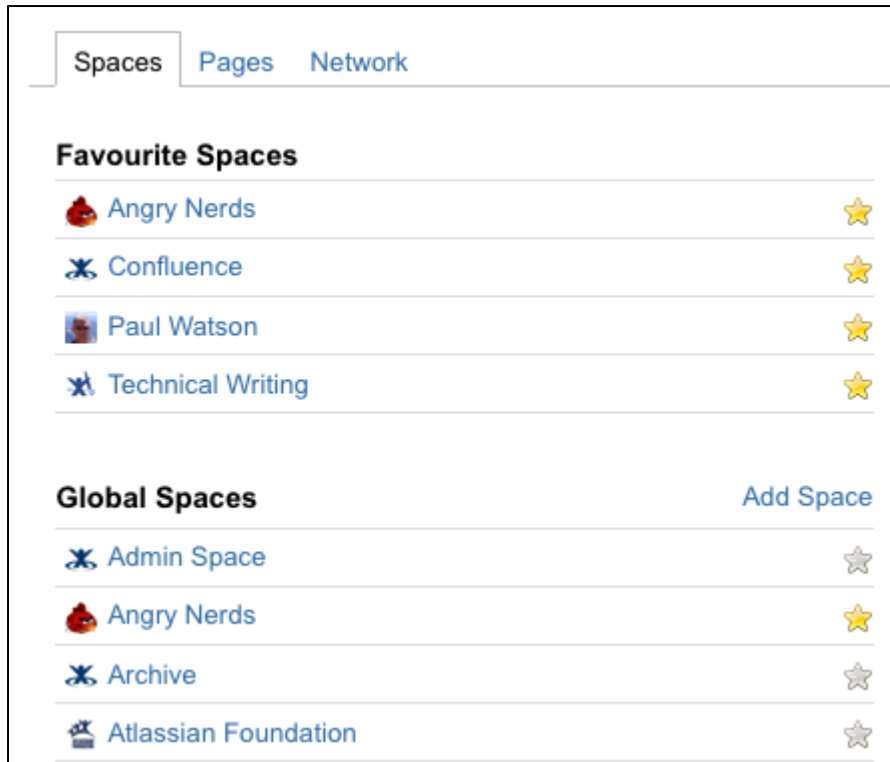
The Confluence dashboard displays a list of spaces that you have permission to view. Remember to log in, so that you can see the complete list of spaces based on your username's permissions.

The **Spaces** tab displays all the global spaces on the site, and the spaces you have marked as your [favourites](#), that you have permission to view.

To see the spaces on the dashboard:

1. Click **Dashboard** at the top left of your Confluence screen.
2. Scroll down and click on the **Spaces** tab.

Screenshot: Viewing spaces on the dashboard



Viewing Spaces in the Space Directory

The space directory displays a list of global and personal spaces that you have permission to view. Remember to log in, so that you can see the complete list of spaces based on your username's permissions. The order of spaces is random.

Categorising the spaces: The spaces are displayed on a number of tabs, each showing a different sets of spaces, as follows:

- **All Spaces** — all the global and personal spaces on the site that you have permission to view.
- **Favourite Spaces** — the spaces that you have marked as your [favourites](#).
- **Categories** — tabs showing spaces categorised by label. Note that you can add any space category you like. See [Using Labels to Categorise Spaces](#).

Filtering the list of spaces: To restrict the number of spaces displayed, enter a word or words in the **Filter** box. Confluence will display only the spaces that have the matching words in the space name or description.

To see the spaces in the space directory:

1. Choose **Browse > Space Directory**.
2. Click one of the tabs to see the spaces you want.
3. If you want to restrict the number of spaces shown, entering a word or words in the **Filter** box.

Screenshot: Viewing favourite spaces in the space directory

Space Directory Add Space

Favourite Spaces Filter

Space	Description	Categories
Angry Nerds		★
Confluence	Space for public announcements about Confluence	★
Paul Watson		★
Technical Writing	The dudes who develop the docs that rock and drink the doc hot chocs	x-team ★

Hint: Your space administrator can organise spaces into categories. [Learn more.](#)

Viewing Personal Spaces in the People Directory

The people directory displays a list of Confluence users, including those who have personal spaces. See [Searching the People Directory](#).

To see the personal spaces in the people directory:

1. Choose **Browse > People Directory**.
2. Click **People with Personal Spaces**.

Screenshot: The people directory

People Directory

Dashboard > People Browse Giles Gaskell Search

Show: **All People** | [People with Personal Spaces](#)

Found 20 result(s) for query e*.

Audra Eng aeng@atlassian.com	Boots Wang boots@atlassian.com
Dylan Etkin dylan@atlassian.com	Edoardo Causarano ecausarano@atlassian.com
Edwin Dawson edawson@atlassian.com	Edwin Wong edwin@atlassian.com

Notes

- If you do not log in, you will be treated as an 'anonymous user'. Confluence will display only those spaces that an anonymous user has permission to access.
- Permission to access a space is granted by a [space administrator](#). See the overview of [space permissions](#).
- You can use the [Spaces List macro](#) to display a list of spaces on a Confluence page.

Related Topics

[Working with Spaces](#)
[Browsing a space](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Administering Spaces


This page gives an overview of the administration functions available in global and personal spaces. Note that you need to be a [space administrator](#) to perform space administration functions.

On this page:

- [Administering a Global Space](#)
- [Administering a Personal Space](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Administering a Global Space

To view the space administration menu:


1. Choose **Browse > Space Admin**.
 **Space Admin** is displayed only if you are a space administrator for that space or you are a Confluence system administrator.
2. All the options related to the management of a space are listed in the left-hand panel. Click a link to take you to the corresponding screen.

For global spaces, the options available are divided the following categories:

- **Space Operations**
 - Space Details – See [Editing Space Details](#).
 - Space Labels – See [Using Labels to Categorise Spaces](#).
 - Remove Space – See [Deleting a Space](#).
 - Trash – See [Purging Deleted Pages](#) and [Restoring a Deleted Page](#).
- **Security**
 - Permissions – See [Viewing Space Permissions](#) and [Assigning Space Permissions](#).
 - Restricted Pages – See [Viewing Restricted Pages](#).
- **Mail**
 - Mail Accounts – See [Archiving Mail Overview](#).
 - Mailbox Import – See [Importing Mail](#).
- **Look and Feel**
 - Themes – See [Applying a Theme to a Space](#).
 - Colour Scheme – See [Editing a Space's Colour Scheme](#).
 - Layout – See [Customising Layouts for a Space](#).
 - Stylesheet – See [Styling Confluence with CSS](#).
 - PDF Layout – See [Customising Exports to PDF](#).
 - PDF Stylesheet – See [Customising Exports to PDF](#).
 - Change Space Logo – See [Changing a Space's Logo](#).
- **Import**
 - Import Pages from Disk – See [Importing Pages from Disk](#).

Administering a Personal Space

To view the space administration menu:

1. Choose **Browse > Space Admin**.
 **Space Admin** is displayed only if you are a space administrator for that space or you are a Confluence system administrator.
2. All the options related to the management of a space are listed in the left-hand panel. Click a link to take you to the corresponding screen.

For personal spaces, the options are divided into the following categories:

- **Space Operations**
 - Space Details – See [Editing Space Details](#).
 - Space Labels – See [Using Labels to Categorise Spaces](#).
 - Remove Space – See [Deleting a Space](#).
 - Trash – See [Purging Deleted Pages](#) and [Restoring a Deleted Page](#).
- **Security**
 - [View](#) or [set](#) space permissions
 - [View](#) restricted pages
- **Look and Feel**
 - Themes – See [Applying a Theme to a Space](#).
 - Colour Scheme – See [Editing a Space's Colour Scheme](#).
 - Layout – See [Customising Layouts for a Space](#).
 - Stylesheet – See [Styling Confluence with CSS](#).

- PDF Layout – See [Customising Exports to PDF](#).
- PDF Stylesheet – See [Customising Exports to PDF](#).

Related Topics

[Browsing a space](#)
[Working with Spaces](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Deleting a Space

Deleting a space permanently removes the space and all of its contents.




Warning

Use caution while deleting a space, and always create an XML Space Backup before proceeding. Once deleted, there is no way to restore a space unless you have made an XML Space Backup.

You need to be a [space administrator](#) to delete a space.

To delete a space:

1. Choose **Browse > Space Admin**.
 **Space Admin** is displayed only if you are a space administrator for that space or you are a Confluence system administrator.
2. Click **Remove Space** in the left panel under the heading 'Space Operations'.
3. Click **OK** to confirm.

Related Links

[Working with spaces](#)
[Setting up a New Global Space](#)
[Viewing All Confluence Spaces](#)
[Browsing a space](#)
[Moving a Page](#)
[Copying or Renaming a Space](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Setting up a New Global Space

To set up a new [global space](#), you require the 'Create Space' permission. 'Create Space' is one of the [global permissions](#) that can be assigned by a [Confluence administrator](#). See [Security](#) or contact a Confluence administrator for more information.

To create a new global space:


1. Click **Add Space** located above the list of global spaces on the [Dashboard](#). The 'Create Space' screen appears, as shown below.
2. Enter the following information about your new space:

Setting	Description
Space Name	A name for the space. Space names do not have to be unique.
Space Key	A simple key to identify your space (A-Z, a-z, 0-9). This key is a shorthand name for the space, used when linking content between spaces, for web URLs and for reports. For example, a 'Development Space' might have a space key of 'DEV'. The space key must be unique within the entire Confluence site.
Permissions	Choose who can view or contribute content to this space. A space administrator can change the permissions at any time after creating the space.
Theme	The look and feel for your space. A space administrator can change the theme later.

3. Click **OK**. The 'Home' page for your new space is displayed. Note that the home page will automatically contain any [default space content](#) as defined by your Confluence administrator.
4. Click **OK**.

Next, you can start [adding pages](#) to your space.

Screenshot: Creating a space



Create Space

Content in Confluence is organised into **spaces**.

A space is where your pages live, where your blog is posted, and where your mail is archived. Permissions determine who can view or contribute to the content of a space.

There is no limit to how many spaces you can create.

Enter a space name

Enter a space key

A space's **key** is a short version of its name, used to link to it quickly. It must be unique globally.

Example: A Development Space might have a key of *DEV*.


Who can use this space?

You can customize these permissions once the space is created.


Choose who can view and comment on content:	Choose who can contribute (create and edit) content:
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Me	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Me
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Registered users - anyone logged into Confluence	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Registered users - anyone logged into Confluence

Choose Theme


To change the theme of this space, select one below.



☒ **Global Look and Feel**
The globally configured look and feel. You can customise colour-schemes and layouts manually.



☐ **Documentation Theme**
This theme is well suited for structured content, such as documentation. It features a table of contents (page tree) on the left, making it easier to see the structure of a space and move from page to page. You can customise the left-hand panel, page header and page footer.



☐ **Easy Reader Theme**
This is a fixed-width variation of the default Confluence theme. Its larger fonts, smooth gradient background and comfortable line length make it ideal for displaying and reading longer documents.

Related Topics

[Working with Spaces](#)
[Setting up your Personal Space](#)
[Viewing Space Details](#)
[Editing Space Details](#)
[Browsing a space](#)
[Deleting a Space](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Setting up your Personal Space

Your personal [space](#) is a place where you can publish your own pages and blog posts. Once you have set up your personal space, Confluence users can reach it by clicking your name in the [People Directory](#).

On this page:

- [Creating your personal space](#)
- [Adding and changing content in your space](#)
- [Changing the colour scheme of Your Space](#)
- [Granting access to your space](#)
- [Notes](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Creating your personal space

To set up your personal space, you require the 'Personal Space' permission which is assigned by a [Confluence administrator](#) from the [Administration Console](#). Refer to the [Permissions Overview](#) and [Global Permissions Overview](#) topics or contact a Confluence administrator for more information.

To create your personal space:

1. Go to **your name** at the top of the page. (This is the 'user' menu.)
2. Select **Create Personal Space** from the dropdown list. The 'Create Personal Space' view will open.
3. Enter a few details about your space:
 - Choose who can **view** content.
 - Choose who can **contribute** (create and edit) content.
 - Choose the **Theme** (look and feel) for your personal space.

Create Personal Space

Your **personal space** is your own private workspace within Confluence.

You can optionally let other people **view** or **contribute** to it.

Who can contribute to your personal space?

You can customize these permissions once the space is created.

Choose who can **view and comment on** content:

- ☒ **Me**
☒ **Registered users - anyone logged into Confluence**

Choose who can **contribute** (create and edit) content:

- ☒ **Me**
☐ **Registered users - anyone logged into Confluence**

Choose Theme

To change the theme of this space, select one below.



☒ Default Theme

Use the globally configured look and feel. You can customise colour schemes and layouts manually.



☐ Clickr Theme

A simple, clean Confluence theme inspired by Flickr - www.flickr.com.



☐ Modern Confluence Theme

The Confluence default theme with a more modern feel. This theme requires Firefox 3, Internet Explorer 7+ and Safari 4



☐ Left Navigation Theme

Provides a navigation bar on the left hand side of the screen.

Where is my personal space?

Once created, your personal space will be accessible (to anyone who can **view** it) at:

\$bootstrapManager.domainName/display/~fredfer

Create

Cancel

4. Click **Create**.

5. The 'Home' page for your new space is displayed.

Note: Your home page will automatically contain any [default space content](#) as defined by your Confluence administrator.

Adding and changing content in your space

Now you can start [adding pages](#) to your personal space. You may also want to [upload your photo](#).

Changing the colour scheme of Your Space

If you like, you can [modify the colour scheme](#) for your personal space.

Granting access to your space

When you created the space (see [above](#)), you made some preliminary decisions about who can view and contribute content to your space. You can change the [permissions on your space](#) at any time.

Notes

- Once you have set up your personal space, you can return to it any time by clicking on **your name** (at the top of the page) and choosing **Personal Space**.

Related Topics

[Working with Spaces](#)
[User Profile Overview](#)
[Linking to Personal Spaces and User Profiles](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Browsing a space

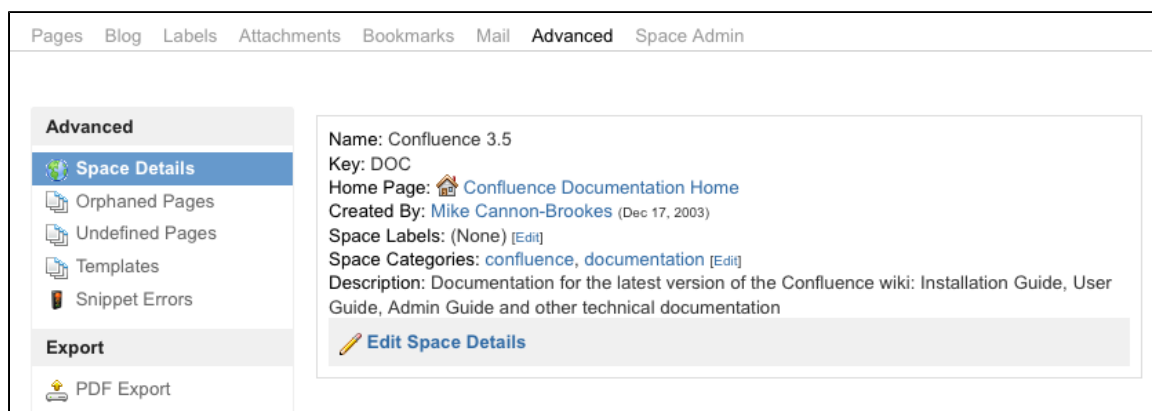
The Browse Space view gives you access to:

- Space-wide views of the content of the space — pages, news, labels, attachments, bookmarks and mail.
- Summary information about the space.
- Advanced space management tools.
- Tools to administer the space (for space administrators only).

The components of the Browse Space view are organised into a number of blue tabs.

Go to a page in the space and choose **Browse > Space Admin**.

Screenshot: Browsing a space — 'Advanced' tab



The tabs that are displayed will depend on your Confluence site configuration, the [type of space](#) you are viewing and the space permissions granted to you for the space.

Pages

- [View pages alphabetically](#)
 - [View recently updated content](#)
- More about [Working with pages](#)

Labels

- [View labels](#)

Attachments

- [Find an attachment](#)
 - [View details of an attachment](#)
- More about [Working with attachments](#)

Mail

- [View mail for this space](#)
 - [Fetch new mail](#)
 - [Delete mail](#)
- More about [Working with mail](#)

Blog Posts

- [View blog posts for this space](#)
- More about [Working with blog posts](#)

Activity

- [View space activity](#)

Advanced

- [View space details](#)
- [Edit space details](#)
- [Manage orphaned pages](#)
- [Manage undefined pages](#)
- [Adding a Template](#)
- [Manage page templates](#)
- [Export pages to PDF, HTML and XML](#)
- [Subscribe to RSS feeds within Confluence](#)
- [Watch a space](#)
- [Add a space to your favourites](#)

Space Administration

- [Space Administration](#)

Related Topics

[Working with Spaces](#)
[Setting up a New Global Space](#)
[Viewing All Confluence Spaces](#)
[Moving a Page](#)
[Deleting a Space](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Editing Space Details

You need to be a [space administrator](#) to edit the details of a space.

To edit the details of a space:

1. Choose **Browse > Space Admin**.
2. In the 'Edit Space Details' screen which appears you can:
 - Enter a different name for the space.
 - Enter or modify the space description.
 - Select a new home page for the space from the drop-down menu. This is the default page to which users are directed when they click the link to the space from the Dashboard.
3. Click **Save**.



If you set this field to blank (no selection) then the default home page will be the 'Pages' tab of the 'Browse Space' page.

Notes

- You cannot edit the key or the creator's name.
- The **Edit Space Details** fields do not accept wiki markup. Any wiki markup entered in these fields will be displayed as plain text.

Related Topics

[Viewing Space Details](#)
[Browsing a space](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Managing Orphaned Pages

An orphaned page is a page without any incoming links. What this means is that unless you know that this page exists, you are not likely to come across it in the space during the natural course of navigation.

When you are working in a large space with a number of pages, it is difficult to keep track of all of them. An orphaned page may be redundant or need to be referred to from another page. Confluence allows you to view all the orphaned pages in a space so you can "tidy up" the space by either deleting pages or by reorganising them.

To view the orphaned pages in a space:

1. Choose **Browse Space > Advanced**.
2. Click on **Orphaned Pages** in the left panel.

You can:

- delete an orphaned page by clicking on the 'trash' icon beside it.
- give an orphaned page a parent — see [Moving a Page](#).

Screenshot: Managing Orphaned Pages

The screenshot shows the 'Orphaned Pages - Atlassian News' interface. The top navigation bar includes 'Pages', 'Attachments', 'Mail', 'News', 'Templates', 'Advanced', and 'Space Admin'. The left sidebar has sections for 'Advanced' (with links to Space Details, Orphaned Pages, and Undefined Pages), 'Export' (with Export Space), and 'Subscribe' (with RSS Feeds and Start watching this space). The main content area is titled 'Orphaned Pages Report' and contains a table of orphaned pages.

Title (Space)	Creator	Created	Last Updated By	Updated	Operations
1.2.1 HKiiii (Atlassian News)	Anonymous	Sep 21, 2004	Anonymous	Nov 04, 2004	

Related Topics

[Managing Undefined Pages](#)
[Browsing a space](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Managing Undefined Pages

In Confluence, you can create links to pages that you intend to create later. This is useful as it allows you to create links first and enter content for those pages later.

For example, [Link to new page](#) is a link to a non-existent page. The link is shown in dark red. (A broken link is shown in grey.)

The Undefined Pages view gives a consolidated report of all undefined pages so that you can manage your space better. The undefined page links are badged with this icon to remind you that those pages need to be created.

To view a list of the undefined links in a space:

1. Click on the **Browse** menu for the space, and choose **Advanced**.
2. Click on **Undefined Pages** in the left panel. This will display a list of all the undefined pages in the space.

You can click on the link for an undefined page to create the page and add content to it.

Related Topics

[Managing Orphaned Pages](#)
[Browsing a space](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Viewing Hierarchy of Pages within a Space

The 'Tree' view of the 'List Pages' page displays the hierarchy of the pages within the space. It is a useful way of viewing all the parent-child relationships between pages in the space at once.

To see the tree view of pages within a space:

1. Choose **Browse > Pages**.
2. Click **Tree**.

Screenshot: Tree View

The screenshot shows a tree view of pages. The root node is 'Documentation Home'. It has several child nodes: 'Confluence Security Advisory 2005-02-09', 'RSS', 'Confluence Plugin Guide', 'Importing From JSPWiki', 'Confluence Release Cycle', and 'Setup a mail session in standalone version'. Each node is represented by a link with a small icon to its left.

Related Topics

[Moving a Page](#)
[Working with Pages](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Viewing Pages Alphabetically

Use this view when you are looking for a specific page in a space and you know its title.

To view the pages in your space alphabetically:

1. Choose **Browse > Pages**.
2. Click on **Alphabetical View**.
3. Click on a letter to display all the pages beginning with that letter. Clicking on a page link will take you to that page.

Notes

- If you know the title of a page, you might find it faster using the [Quick Search](#).

Related Topics

[View Recently Updated pages](#)
[Browsing a space](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Viewing Recently Updated Content

The 'Recently Updated' view is a useful way of keeping track of the changes being made in a space. It displays links to the most recently added or modified content within the space including pages, blog posts, mail messages and comments.

To view the recently updated content in a space:

1. Choose **Browse > Pages**.
2. Click **Recently Updated**. A list of the most recently added or modified content in the space is displayed. Clicking on a link will open up the corresponding document.

Related Topics

[Recently Updated Macro](#)
[View Pages Alphabetically](#)
[Browsing a space](#)
[Viewing Space Activity](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Viewing Space Details

To view a space's details:

1. Choose **Browse > Advanced**.
2. Click **Space details** and then **Edit Space Details**. This will open the Edit Space screen.
3. Edit the Space details as required. Note that the Edit Space Details fields do not accept wiki markup. On save, any wiki markup entered in these fields will display as plain text.

The following details are displayed:

- The **Name** of the space.
- The **Key** used to refer to the space. This key is a shorthand name for the space that is used for web urls, reports, and when linking content between spaces. Note that [personal space](#) keys always contain a '~', whereas [global space](#) keys never do.
- Any **Labels** defined for this space. Optional.
- The **Homepage** of the space. Optional. This is the default page to which users are directed when they click on the link to the space from the dashboard. If this field is empty (not displayed) then the default home page is the **Pages** tab of the 'Browse Space' page.
- The **Creator** of the space.
- **Space Description**: Optional. This is a short description of the space used to provide users with an idea of the space's contents.

Here is an example:

Screenshot: Space Details

Name: Atlassian News
Key: NEWS
Home Page: [The Atlassian Newsletter](#)
Created By: [Charles Miller](#) (Aug 24, 2004)
Description:

News and Announcements from Atlassian

 [Edit Space Details](#)

Related Topics

[Editing Space Details](#)
[Browsing a space](#)
[Viewing Space Activity](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Space Backup and Restore

Confluence can backup all the content, comments and attachments for a space. The process involves converting the data in the space into XML format. The end product is a zip file that contains XML file(s) and optionally, all the attachments in the space. To transfer this data to another Confluence site, you simply restore this zip file.

Creating a Space Backup

Instructions on how to create a backup for a space can be found [here](#).

Restoring/Importing a Space Backup

Instructions on how to restore or import the backup of a space can be found [here](#).

Archiving Mail Overview

Mail Archiving Features are Now Optional

Confluence Mail Archiving is an optional feature from Confluence 4.1 onwards. This means that the **Mail** elements in the Confluence interface as mentioned on this page will not appear in the user interface by default.

Mail archiving features are now contained in a bundled plugin. To activate mail archiving features in Confluence, activate the plugin from **Confluence Admin > Configuration > Plugins > Show System Plugins > Confluence Mail Archiving Plugin**.

The user interface and functionality of the feature have not changed.

Confluence allows you to collect and archive mail within each space individually. This is a useful facility that allows you to archive all emails pertaining to a particular project on Confluence alongside it in the same space.

You can download mail from one or more pop-accounts. You can also import mail from mbox files either on your local system or on the Confluence server.

 *The information on this page **does not apply to Confluence OnDemand.***

Choose **Browse > Mail** to see archived mail.

(If you are not a [space administrator](#) for the target space, contact your Confluence administrator to request Space Admin permission.)

From here, you can navigate mail easily and also use the **Quick Search** to search mail and the attachments it contains.

What would you like to do?

[Add a Mail Account](#)
[Manage Mail accounts](#)
[Import Mail](#)

View Mail
Fetch Mail
Delete Mail
Restore Mail



The ability to archive mail applies only to global spaces, not personal spaces. Please see [Working with Spaces](#) for information about the differences between *global spaces* and *personal spaces*.

Related Topics

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Adding a Mail Account



Mail Archiving Features are Now Optional

Confluence Mail Archiving is an optional feature from Confluence 4.1 onwards. This means that the **Mail** elements in the Confluence interface as mentioned on this page will not appear in the user interface by default.

Mail archiving features are now contained in a bundled plugin. To activate mail archiving features in Confluence, activate the plugin from **Confluence Admin > Configuration > Plugins > Show System Plugins > Confluence Mail Archiving Plugin**.

The user interface and functionality of the feature have not changed.

When you add a mail account, you are configuring Confluence to download mail from that account and archive the mail within the space. Since Confluence removes emails from an email account as it is added to the Mail Archive, Confluence must be set up to poll a clone email account rather than the actual account. For example, to archive the actual account `sales@company.com` to your Confluence Sales space, you must first create a clone account such as `conf-sales@company.com` that contains the same email content.



The information on this page *does not apply* to **Confluence OnDemand**.

Stage 1 - Creating A Clone Email Account

1. Add a new email account on the mail server with the clone email address.
2. Copy all existing emails from the actual account to the clone account.
3. Set up the actual account to bcc sent emails to the clone account.
4. Set up the actual account to forward received emails to the clone account.

Stage 2 - Archive Clone Account To Mail Archive

1. If you are not a [space administrator](#) for the target space, contact your Confluence administrator to request Space Admin permission. You need to be a [space administrator](#) before you can add a mail account to the space.
2. Go to **Browse > Mail**.
3. Click on **Mail Accounts** under the heading 'Mail' in the left panel to show the list of existing mail accounts.
4. Click **Add mail account** located at the top of the page.
5. Enter configuration details for the account. The protocol may be POP/S or IMAP/S. Click **Create** when finished.
 - **Account Name:** Enter a name for this account by which it will be known in Confluence.
 - **Description:** Provide a description for this account (Optional).
 - **Protocol:** Choose from POP, IMAP, POPS or IMAPS
 - **Hostname:** Enter the account mail server host name.
 - **Port:** The mail server's port number will be displayed by default. Do not edit this field.
 - **Username:** Enter a username for this account.
 - **Password:** The account's password.



Configured accounts will have their mail downloaded and removed from the server, so make sure you are downloading from a clone account.

Note: The ability to import mail applies only to global spaces, so the 'Import' section does not appear in the 'Space Admin' tab for personal spaces. Please see [Working with Spaces](#) for information about the differences between *global spaces* and *personal spaces*.

Related Topics

[Archiving Mail Overview](#)
[Managing Mail Accounts](#)
[Importing Mail](#)
[Viewing Mail](#)
[Fetching Mail](#)
[Deleting Mail](#)
[How do I check which spaces have email accounts](#)
[How do I Disable Automatic Mail Polling?](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Deleting Mail**Mail Archiving Features are Now Optional**

Confluence Mail Archiving is an optional feature from Confluence 4.1 onwards. This means that the **Mail** elements in the Confluence interface as mentioned on this page will not appear in the user interface by default.

Mail archiving features are now contained in a bundled plugin. To activate mail archiving features in Confluence, activate the plugin from **Confluence Admin > Configuration > Plugins > Show System Plugins > Confluence Mail Archiving Plugin**.


The user interface and functionality of the feature have not changed.

To delete mail for a space, you require 'Remove Mail' permission which is assigned by a [space administrator](#) from the Space Administration screens. [See Space Permissions](#) or contact a space administrator for more information. Only a space administrator can delete all email messages for the space simultaneously.



*The information on this page **does not apply** to **Confluence OnDemand**.*

To delete mail for a space:

1. Go to **Browse > Mail**.
2. Go to the **Mail** tab. A list of messages in the space is displayed in reverse chronological order.
3. Delete an individual email by clicking the trash  icon beside it. Deleted mail is stored under **Trash** and can be restored by a space administrator from the '**Space Admin**' tab.
If you are a space administrator, you can delete all email messages within a space at once by clicking on the **Delete All** link at the top of the mail view.

**Warning**

Email messages deleted using the **Delete All** option cannot be restored.

Related Topics

[Restoring Mail](#)
[Archiving Mail Overview](#)
[Browsing a space](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Fetching Mail

**Mail Archiving Features are Now Optional**

Confluence Mail Archiving is an optional feature from Confluence 4.1 onwards. This means that the **Mail** elements in the Confluence interface as mentioned on this page will not appear in the user interface by default.

Mail archiving features are now contained in a bundled plugin. To activate mail archiving features in Confluence, activate the plugin from **Confluence Admin > Configuration > Plugins > Show System Plugins > Confluence Mail Archiving Plugin**.

The user interface and functionality of the feature have not changed.

Confluence fetches mail from the server once every 30 minutes.

You need to be a [space administrator](#) to manually retrieve new mail from mail accounts.



*The information on this page **does not apply to** **Confluence OnDemand**.*

To manually retrieve mail:

1. Go to **Browse > Mail**.
2. Go to the **Mail** tab. A list of messages for the space is displayed in reverse chronological order.
3. Click on the **Fetch new mail** link located above the list of messages. Any new messages will be displayed in order of most recent first.

**Note**

Once mail is fetched, it will be removed from the server.

Related Topics

[Viewing Mail](#)
[Archiving Mail Overview](#)
[Deleting Mail](#)
[How do I Disable Automatic Mail Polling?](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Importing Mail**Mail Archiving Features are Now Optional**

Confluence Mail Archiving is an optional feature from Confluence 4.1 onwards. This means that the **Mail** elements in the Confluence interface as mentioned on this page will not appear in the user interface by default.

Mail archiving features are now contained in a bundled plugin. To activate mail archiving features in Confluence, activate the plugin from **Confluence Admin > Configuration > Plugins > Show System Plugins > Confluence Mail Archiving Plugin**.

The user interface and functionality of the feature have not changed.

Confluence allows you to import mail from mbox files located either on your local system or on the Confluence server and archive it within the space.

You need to be a [space administrator](#) to import mail for a space.



*The information on this page **does not apply to** **Confluence OnDemand**.*

To import mail from mbox files:

1. Go to **Browse > Mail**.
2. Click on **Mail Import** under the heading 'Mail' in the left panel.

- To import from a *Local* system, click **Browse** to select the mbox file. Then click **Import**.
- To import from the *Server*, enter the location of the mbox file on the server in the **Server** text field and click **Import**.



The ability to import mail applies only to global spaces, so the 'Import' section in the above screenshot does not appear in the 'Space Admin' tab for personal spaces. Please see [Working with Spaces](#) for information about the differences between *global spaces* and *personal spaces*.

Related Topics

[Archiving Mail Overview](#)
[Adding a Mail Account](#)
[Importing Mail](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Managing Mail Accounts



Mail Archiving Features are Now Optional

Confluence Mail Archiving is an optional feature from Confluence 4.1 onwards. This means that the **Mail** elements in the Confluence interface as mentioned on this page will not appear in the user interface by default.

Mail archiving features are now contained in a bundled plugin. To activate mail archiving features in Confluence, activate the plugin from **Confluence Admin > Configuration > Plugins > Show System Plugins > Confluence Mail Archiving Plugin**.

The user interface and functionality of the feature have not changed.

You need to be a [space administrator](#) to manage mail accounts for a space.



The information on this page *does not apply* to **Confluence OnDemand**.

To manage mail accounts:

1. Go to **Browse > Mail**.
2. Click on **Mail Accounts** under the heading 'Mail' in the left panel. For each of the mail accounts listed, you can:
 - **Edit** : change the configuration settings for the mail account.
 - **Remove**: remove the account permanently.
 - **Disable**: temporarily disable the account.

Screenshot : Managing mail accounts

[Add Pop Account](#)

Name	Description	Host	Status	Operations
conf-user archive	Archive of conf-user	mail.atlassian.com	OK	Edit | Remove | Disable
ou	ui	ui	DISABLED	Edit | Remove | Enable

Related Topics

[Archiving Mail Overview](#)
[Adding a Mail Account](#)
[Importing Mail](#)
[Viewing Mail](#)
[Fetching Mail](#)
[Deleting Mail](#)
[Restoring Mail](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Restoring Mail

Mail Archiving Features are Now Optional

Confluence Mail Archiving is an optional feature from Confluence 4.1 onwards. This means that the **Mail** elements in the Confluence interface as mentioned on this page will not appear in the user interface by default.

Mail archiving features are now contained in a bundled plugin. To activate mail archiving features in Confluence, activate the plugin from **Confluence Admin > Configuration > Plugins > Show System Plugins > Confluence Mail Archiving Plugin**.

The user interface and functionality of the feature have not changed.

Deleted email messages are stored under '**Trash**' and can be restored by a [space administrator](#) from the Space Administration screens.

 You can only restore an email from trash if it was deleted individually and not using the '**Remove All**' operation.

To restore mail,

1. Go to the '**Space Admin**' tab in the '**Browse Space**' view.
Go to a page in the space and choose **Browse > Space Admin**.
2. Click on '**Trash**' in the left panel. A list of pages and emails deleted from the space is displayed.
3. Click on '**Restore**' beside the email you want to restore.

To view this email, you will have to go to the '**Mail**' tab in the '**Browse Space**' view.

RELATED TOPICS

[Viewing Mail](#)
[Fetching Mail](#)
[Deleting Mail](#)
[Browsing a space](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Viewing Mail

Mail Archiving Features are Now Optional

Confluence Mail Archiving is an optional feature from Confluence 4.1 onwards. This means that the **Mail** elements in the Confluence interface as mentioned on this page will not appear in the user interface by default.

Mail archiving features are now contained in a bundled plugin. To activate mail archiving features in Confluence, activate the plugin from **Confluence Admin > Configuration > Plugins > Show System Plugins > Confluence Mail Archiving Plugin**.

The user interface and functionality of the feature have not changed.

In Confluence, each global space can be set up to archive mail.

To view mail messages archived within a particular space:

1. Go to a page in the space and choose **Browse > Space Admin**.
2. Click on the **Mail** tab. The mail is displayed in reverse chronological order with a default of 30 mails per page. You can move between pages by clicking the [<< Previous](#) and [Next >>](#) links or by selecting a particular page number.
3. Click on a mail message to view its contents.

 The information on this page does not apply to **Confluence OnDemand**.

 If you are a [space administrator](#), or have been given permission to delete mail messages, you can also [delete emails](#) from here.

Navigating Mail:

Find More These links at the top of an email message let you search for other emails from the same author or on the same subject.

Attachments This link located below the email body allows you to view mail attachments. The link is only displayed if any attachments exist.

Entire Thread This link allows you to view the mail's thread, if one exists.

The 'Mail Operations' panel is located to the right of the mail view and displays links to:

- **Entire Thread:** View the thread that this mail belongs to. This option is only available when the mail belongs to a thread.
- **Next By Date:** Navigate to the next message.
- **Previous By Date:** Navigate to the previous message.
- **Remove Mail:** Remove the current mail from the space.
- **Mail Archive:** Go to the mail archive view for this space.

Screenshot : Navigating mail

**Handy Hint**

Use the **Quick Search** facility to quickly locate a mail

Related Topics

[Archiving Mail Overview](#)

[Viewing Mail](#)

[Fetching Mail](#)

[Deleting Mail](#)

[How do I Disable Automatic Mail Polling?](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Working with Labels

Labels are key words or tags that you can add to pages and spaces. You can define your own labels and use them to categorise, identify or bookmark content in Confluence.

For example, you could assign the label 'accounting' to all accounts-related pages on the site. You can then browse all pages with that label in a single space or across the site, or display a list of pages with that label. You can search based on the label, and even use it to filter items when you [subscribe to a Confluence RSS feed](#).

Because labels are user-defined, you can add any word (or even make up your own) that helps you identify the content in the site.

You can add or remove labels without affecting the page content.

On this page:

- [Page Labels](#)
- [Space Labels and Space Categories](#)
- [Advantages of Labels](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Page Labels

There are two different types of labels that you can apply to a page:

- **Global labels.** See [Adding a Global Label](#). A global label is available to all users across the site. Once a global label is added, any user with permission to view a page can also view its labels. Any user with permission to edit a page can add a global label to a page. See the global labels at the bottom of this page for examples.
- **Personal labels.** See [Adding a Personal Label](#). A personal label is only available to the user that created it. Any user with 'view'

permission can add a personal label to a page. The personal labels start with 'my:'.

Space Labels and Space Categories

You can also apply labels to spaces and use them to categorise your spaces. See [Using Labels to Categorise Spaces](#).

Advantages of Labels

Here are some of the advantages of using labels:

- Labels are user-defined which means that you decide what information is relevant to you and how you are going to label it.
- You can group pages and spaces without having to restructure the site.
- Labels are easy to add and edit, and do not affect the actual content of the page.
- You can use labels to filter information during a search.
- You can add as many labels as you like to a page or space.
- The [RSS feed builder](#) allows you to create a news feed based on labels.

Related Topics

Page: [Using Labels to Categorise Spaces](#)

Page: [Related Labels Macro](#)

Page: [Content by Label Macro](#)

Page: [Using Label Macros to Categorise Wiki Content](#)

Page: [Navigating Pages by Label](#)

Page: [Adding a Global Label](#)

Page: [Adding a Personal Label](#)

Page: [Viewing Global Labels](#)

Page: [Viewing Personal Labels](#)

Page: [Viewing Labelled Pages](#)

Page: [Viewing Popular Labels](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Adding a Global Label

This page describes global labels. You may be interested in [personal labels](#).

Any user with 'edit' permission for a page can add a global label to it.

To add a global label:

1. View the page. If the page already has labels, these will be listed at the bottom of the page, below the page content.
2. Click the icon beside the list of labels, or press 'L'.
3. Type in a new label. Existing labels are suggested as you type.
4. Click **Add**.

Screenshot: *Adding a label*

Labels Help

Enter labels to add to this page:

Add

installation x label x example x my:fix x

Shortcut tip: In page view, pressing L also opens this dialog box Close

Related Topics

[Adding a Personal Label](#)

[Removing a Label from a Page](#)

[Using Label Macros to Categorise Wiki Content](#)

[Using Labels to Categorise Spaces](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Adding a Personal Label

This page describes **personal labels**. You can also read about [global labels](#).

You can use personal labels to mark content that you personally are interested in. Any user with 'view' permission can add a personal label. Personal labels are visible only to the user who created them. To differentiate them from global labels, personal labels include the prefix 'my:' in the label name.

You can [view your personal labels](#) from your [user profile](#).

To add a personal label:

1. View the page. If the page already has labels, these will be listed at the bottom of the page, below the page content.
2. Click the icon beside the list of labels, or press 'L'.
3. Type in a new label, using the format 'my:label'. Existing labels are suggested as you type.
4. Click **Add**.

Screenshot: Adding a label

Related Topics

[Viewing Personal Labels](#)

[Adding a Global Label](#)

[Using Labels to Categorise Spaces](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Using Labels to Categorise Spaces

Confluence provides the following types of space label:

- **Space labels.** A space label can be used to group related spaces for display by the [Content by Label macro](#), and for [ranking search results](#). You use space labels in a similar way to [global labels](#).
- **Space categories.** A 'space category' is a special type of space label that Confluence uses to group spaces in the [space directory](#), and in the recent activity area of the [dashboard](#). The rest of this page describes space categories.

Note that you can only set up space categories if you are a space administrator for that space, or you are a Confluence system administrator

Using Space Categories

Here is an example of using space categories. Let's assume that you have one or more spaces that your Sales team may be interested in. You can use the category 'sales' to group those spaces together.

1. First add the 'sales' category to the relevant spaces, as described below.
2. Then, in the space directory, you can click the relevant tab to see only the spaces with the chosen label. See [Viewing All Confluence](#)

[Spaces](#).

- And, you can see updated content in those spaces by choosing the 'sales' category under the **Space Categories** tab in the recent activity area of the dashboard. See [Customising your Personal Dashboard](#).

On this page:


- [Using Space Categories](#)
- [Categorising a Space](#)
- [Removing a Space from a Category](#)
- [Removing an Entire Space Category](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Categorising a Space

When you categorise a space, you add a 'space category' to the space. A category cannot exist if there are no spaces labelled with that category.

To categorise a space:

- Choose **Browse > Space Admin**.

 **Space Admin** is displayed only if you are a space administrator for that space or you are a Confluence system administrator.

- Click **Space Labels** in the left-hand panel.
- Under 'Space Categories', enter your category name and click **Add**.
Alternatively, click a category in the list of 'Suggested Space Categories' displayed on the screen.

Removing a Space from a Category

Removing a space from a category is the same thing as removing the category from the space.

To remove a space from category:

- Choose **Browse > Space Admin**.

 **Space Admin** is displayed only if you are a space administrator for that space or you are a Confluence system administrator.

- Click **Space Labels** in the left-hand panel.
- Click the **x** next to the space category.

Removing an Entire Space Category

To remove a whole space category from Confluence, just remove that category from all spaces, as described above. A category cannot exist if there are no spaces labelled with that category. The space category will disappear from the dashboard and space directory.

To remove an entire space category from Confluence:

- Choose **Browse > Space Directory**.
- Click the tab corresponding to the space category that you want to remove.
- You will see a list of all spaces in that category. Click the spaces one by one, and remove the category from each space, as described [above](#).

Screenshot: Space labels and space categories

Space Labels + Add ▾

Pages Blog Labels Attachments Bookmarks Mail Advanced Space Admin

Space Operations

- Space Details
- Space Labels**
- Remove Space
- Trash

Security

- Permissions
- Restricted Pages

Mail

- Mail Accounts
- Mailbox Import

Look and Feel

- Themes
- Colour Scheme
- Layout
- Stylesheet
- PDF Layout

Space Categories

Space Categories will appear inside the categories tab on your dashboard and as tabs in the space directory. They can be used to group together related spaces.

sales ✕

Add

Suggested Space Categories:
chocolate

Space Labels

You can group this space with other content you've labelled in Confluence using the box below.

No Space Labels added to this space.

Add

Suggested Space Labels:
dev , spec , specification , josh , hr , administrators , navigation , quicknav , advanced , sales , demonstration

Related Topics

[Working with Labels](#)
[Viewing All Confluence Spaces](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Navigating Pages by Label

This page describes how to navigate Confluence pages by label. To start, you should open the 'View Labels' page.

Browsing Labels on the View Labels Page

Click a label on a Confluence page to see a list of all pages in the space with that label. Click **See content from all spaces** to include content from all spaces of the Confluence site..

Adding a Label to the Results

If you click a label from the Related Labels list (at the top *left*), a new page loads, showing pages that contain both of the labels. You can continue to add labels to the results in this way.

Subtracting a Label From the Results

Once two labels are in use, links to subtract a label from the search appear at the end of the labels list. These are easily identified because these links have a preceding minus sign, like so:

- fedex

Typing URLs To Find Labelled Pages

Here is an alternative method for quickly searching for labelled pages:

To search labelled pages by typing a URL:

1. Open a new web browser window.
2. In the address bar of your web browser, type an URL such as:

```
http://CONFLUENCE_HOSTNAME/label/foo+bar
```

3. Press Enter.

4. The 'View Labels' page will load, showing search results for pages with the labels 'foo' and 'bar'.

Screenshot: The View Labels page

The screenshot shows the Confluence 'View Labels' page for the label 'fedex'. The breadcrumb trail is 'Dashboard > Labels > fedex'. The user 'Edwin Dawson' is logged in. The page title is 'Label: fedex'. Below the title, there are links to 'View: Popular Labels' and 'All Labels'. The main content area shows 'All content with label fedex.' followed by a list of 'Related Labels: lucene, clover, comments, shipping, specification, project, howto, shipment, html, gadget, javascript, bittorrent, zen, realtime, fedex5, label, feed, constraints, ideas, more »'. A pagination bar shows '1 2 3 4 5 6 7 ... 9 Next >>'. Below this, there are two blog entries: '20% Time Ideas (David Taylor)' and 'Add To Google plugin (Dushan Hanuska)'. On the right side, there are two sidebars: 'Recent Labels' with links like 'seraph', 'atlassian-seraph', 'release', 'module', 'common', and 'more »'; and 'Popular Labels' with links like 'confluence', 'timesheet', 'jira', 'support', 'customerstory', and 'more »'.

Screenshot: Label Links on the View Labels Page

The screenshot shows the Confluence 'View Labels' page for the label 'fedex+ideas'. The breadcrumb trail is 'Dashboard > Labels > fedex+ideas'. The user 'Edwin Dawson' is logged in. The page title is 'Label: fedex+ideas'. Below the title, there are links to 'View: Popular Labels' and 'All Labels'. The main content area shows 'All content with label fedex+ideas.' followed by a list of 'Related Labels: lucene, clover, comments, shipping, specification, project, howto, shipment, html, dao, gadget, javascript, bittorrent, things-that-suck, zen, realtime, fedex5, label, feed, more » (- fedex, - ideas)'. The page is otherwise empty.

Related Topics

- Adding a Global Label
- Adding a Personal Label
- Using Labels to Categorise Spaces
- Navigating Pages by Label

- [Removing a Label from a Page](#)
- [Using Label Macros to Categorise Wiki Content](#)
- [Viewing Global Labels](#)
- [Viewing Labelled Pages](#)
- [Viewing Personal Labels](#)
- [Viewing Popular Labels](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Removing a Label from a Page

Labels are key words or tags that you can add to pages and spaces. You can define your own labels and use them to categorise, identify or bookmark content in Confluence.

You can see the existing labels, and the pages which contain the labels, by [Viewing Global Labels](#).

To remove a label from a page:

1. Go to the page that contains the label. All labels are displayed at the bottom of the page below the page content.
2. Click the icon beside the list of labels, or press 'L'.
3. In the Labels dialog, click on the **X** for a label to remove it.
4. Click **Close**.

Related Topics

[Working with Labels](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Using Label Macros to Categorise Wiki Content

Using labels, you can categorise pages and refer to content across multiple categories, pages and even spaces.

Example

For the purpose of this example, imagine we have a space with pages of content on various type of vehicles. Pages are shown in **bold** text, while the labels are in [blue](#).

- **Cars** [vehicle-type](#)
 - **Toyota Prius** [vehicle car](#)
 - **Honda Civic** [vehicle car](#)
 - **Porsche Carrera** [vehicle car](#)
- **Motorbikes** [vehicle-type](#)
 - **Harley Davidson Sportster** [vehicle motorbike](#)
 - **Suzuki GSX-R** [vehicle motorbike](#)

This page hierarchy can then be categorised using labels, with pages referenced using the [Content by Label Macro](#).

If you want to list...	You would use this label:	These would be the pages that you would get:
Vehicle types	<code>vehicle-type</code>	Cars, Motorbikes
All vehicles	<code>vehicle</code>	Toyota Prius, Honda Civic, Porsche Carrera, Harley Davidson Sportster, Suzuki GSX-R
All cars	<code>car</code>	Toyota Prius, Honda Civic, Porsche Carrera

Label Macros

Navmap Macro

The [Navigation Map Macro](#) renders the list of pages associated with a specified label as a navigation map.

Related Labels Macro

The [Related Labels Macro](#) lists labels commonly associated with the current page's labels.

Content by Label Macro

The [Content by Label Macro](#) displays a list of content marked with specified labels.

Labels List Macro

The [Labels List Macro](#) lists all labels of a space, grouped alphabetically.

Recently Used Labels Macro

The [Recently Used Labels Macro](#) lists labels most recently used in a specified scope (global, space, or personal).

Popular Labels Macro

The [Popular Labels Macro](#) displays popular labels in a list or in a heatmap (also called a cloud).

Related Topics

[Working with Labels](#)
[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Viewing Global Labels

Any page that has labels will have them listed together in a block at the bottom of the page, with the heading 'Labels'.

Global labels are visible to all users with 'view' permission and personal labels are only visible to the user that created them.

To view global labels:

1. If you are in a page that has labels, clicking on a label will take you to the 'Label' tab of the 'Browse Space' view where all pages in the space with that label will be listed.

Click **See content from all spaces** to view all pages with the same label across the site.

2. Go to a page in the space and choose **Browse > Space Admin**.
3. Click on the **Labels** tab. You have the option to view labels in one of two ways:
 - Click **All labels** to view all labels in the space. From this view, you can click on a link to view an alphabetical listing of all labels across the site. Clicking on a label will list all content in the space with that label. It will also display any related labels if they exist. Related labels are labels that frequently appear on pages together. For Example, if pages labelled with 'sales' also tend to have the label 'marketing', these will be displayed as related labels.
 - Click [Popular Labels](#) to view a list of the most frequently used labels in that space. From here, you can also view the most popular global labels across the site.


Confluence defaults to one of these views when you go to the 'Labels' tab based on your preference on your last visit to the site.

Each of these views also displays a list of up to fifteen most 'Recent Labels' or 'Popular Labels' in the space.

Screenshot: Labels as they are displayed on a page



Screenshot: Viewing all labels


Labels
All Labels

View: [Popular Labels](#) | **All Labels**

Below are the **186** most recently used labels, listed alphabetically. Click on a label to see its associated content.

A
[about](#), [are](#), [ante](#), [a](#),
[api](#), [and](#), [admin](#),
[appserver](#),
[asdfasdfasdf](#), [agile](#)

B
[blabla](#),
[baz](#), [bar](#),
[blah](#),
[beeren](#), [bee](#),
[baby](#), [blog](#), [bora](#),
[bug](#), [bible](#), [build](#)

Related Topics

[Viewing Labelled Pages](#)
[Viewing Personal Labels](#)
[Viewing Popular Labels](#)
[Navigating Pages by Label](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)


Viewing Labelled Pages


The easiest way to find labelled content is to do a quick search for it. If there is a label matching your query, it will be listed above the search results. Clicking on the link will display all content in the site with that label. (Clicking additional labels on the following page will conduct another search, adding that label to your existing search. See also [Navigating Pages by Label](#).)

- You can view all labelled content for a space by going to the 'Label' tab in the 'Browse Space' view of a space.
- You can view content labelled with personal labels by going to your [Profile](#) and clicking on the **Label** tab.

Screenshot: *Viewing labelled content*

Searched for **database** in **all spaces** excluding **Mail**.
There are **201 matches** in **Mail**. [Include these matches](#).
Matching labels: [database](#)
Related labels: [oracle](#), [appserver](#)

 Results **1 - 10** of **225** for **database**.

 [Migrate to another database](#) (Confluence)
... document will outline the steps to move your existing Confluence data from one **database** to another. This is relevant to all users who previously used the embedded **database** for their evaluation (or longer) and would like to move to a more robust external **database** (such as Oracle, Postgres ...
Jul 20, 2005

Advanced label searching**Using the Search Box to find labelled pages**

In the [search box](#), you can use the 'labelText:' prefix to search specifically for page labels.

Searching for ...	Returns content that ...
confluence labelText:plugin	contains the word <i>confluence</i> or has the label <i>plugin</i>
confluence AND labelText:plugin	contains the word <i>confluence</i> and has the label <i>plugin</i>
labelText:import labelText:plugin	has the label <i>import</i> or has the label <i>plugin</i>
labelText:import AND labelText:plugin	has the label <i>import</i> and has the label <i>plugin</i>

Typing URLs to find labelled pages

In the URL bar of your web browser, you can type URLs like the following to search for multiple labels in pages:

```
http://CONFLUENCE_HOSTNAME/label/foo+bar
```

On pressing enter, the 'View Labels' page will load, showing search results on pages with the labels *foo* and *bar*.

Also see [Navigating Pages by Label](#)

Related Topics

[Viewing Global Labels](#)
[Viewing Personal Labels](#)
[Viewing Popular Labels](#)
[Searching Confluence](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Viewing Personal Labels

Any page that has labels (global or personal) will have them listed at the bottom of the page. Personal labels are only visible to the user that created them.

To view your personal labels:

- Go to **your name** (the 'user' menu) at the top of the page, and choose **Labels**.

The 'Labels' view displays all content with personal labels. You will also see a list of your personal labels along with the number of pages that contain the label. Click a link to see all content with that label.

Screenshot: *Viewing personal labels*






[Profile](#)
[Network](#)
[Status Updates](#)
[Labels](#)
[Watches](#)
[Drafts](#)
[Settings](#)

See the personal labels you have created, and the other labels which you have used recently. [RSS](#) 2.0

Your Labels

- [draft](#) 2
- [favourite](#) 3

All labelled content

- 
[Drafts for Confluence 2.10.3 forum announcements](#)
by [Giles Gaskell](#) (15 Apr)
- 
[Supplementary 3.0 Security Advisory forum announcements](#)
by [Giles Gaskell](#) (09 Jun)
- 
[Testing page](#)
by [Giles Gaskell](#) (02 Jun)
- 
[Giles Gaskell](#)
by [Giles Gaskell](#) (30 Nov)
- 
[Staff Induction - Sysadmin](#)
by [Dave Cheney](#) (02 Apr)

**Another way to get to your personal labels**

If you are on a page that has personal labels, click on a label to go to the 'Labels' tab of your profile, described above.

Related Topics

[Adding a Personal Label](#)
[Viewing Labelled Pages](#)
[Viewing Global Labels](#)
[Viewing Popular Labels](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Viewing Popular Labels

Popular labels are those labels that are more frequently used. Confluence allows you to view the popular labels both within a space and across the site.

To view popular labels:

1. Choose **Browse > Labels**.
2. Click **Popular Labels**, if necessary. This will list the most popular labels in the space and also display a link to view all **global popular labels** (across the site).
 - Clicking on a label will display all the content in the site with that label.
 - Click **global popular labels** to view the most popular global labels in the site.

In both these views, you have the option to sort the listing of labels to display them **alphabetically** or in order of their **popularity**.

The bigger the font size, the more popular the label.

Screenshot: Viewing popular labels

View: **Popular Labels** | [All Labels](#)

Below are the **6** most popular labels used in **Documentation Staging 2**. The bigger the text, the more popular the label. Click on a label to see its associated content.

See also: [global popular labels](#).

Order: alphabetically | [by popularity](#)

documentation

e

example

installation

label

test

Recent Labels

[test](#)
[documentation](#)
[e](#)
[example](#)
[installation](#)
[more »](#)

Popular Labels

[installation](#)
[test](#)
[label](#)
[example](#)
[e](#)
[more »](#)

Related Topics

[Viewing Labelled Pages](#)
[Viewing Global Labels](#)
[Viewing Personal Labels](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Working with Favourites

The **Favourites** feature provides a convenient way to quickly access specific pages or spaces that interest you, as soon as you log in to

Confluence. Pages and spaces that you have added to your list of favourites are easily accessible from your [Dashboard](#) and from within your user profile area.

What do you want to do?

[Adding Favourites](#)
[Viewing Favourites](#)
[Removing Favourites](#)

Related Topics


[Dashboard](#)
[User Profile Overview](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).


Adding Favourites


To add a page as a favourite:

1. Go to the page.
2. Choose **Tools** > **Favourite**.


This will change to  **Favourite** (when you next open the Tools menu) to indicate that you have added this page as a favourite.


To add a global space as a favourite:


1. Go to the [Dashboard](#).
2. Click the **Spaces** tab.
3. Click the star icon '' located beside the space name in the list of global spaces.

This will change to '

To add a personal space as a favourite:

 If a person has not yet created a personal space, then you will not be able to perform this procedure. Furthermore, these options will not be available to you.

1. Choose **Browse** > **People Directory**.
2. Click on a person's name or profile picture to view their personal space.
3. Go to a page in the space and choose **Browse** > **Advanced**.
4. Click on  **Add Space to Favourites** in the left-hand panel.

This will change to  **Remove Space from Favourites** to indicate that you have added that person's personal space as a favourite.

Once you have added a personal space to your list of favourites, that personal space will be added to your list of favourite spaces, which can be accessed from the [dashboard](#) or [your profile](#).

For more information about global spaces and personal spaces, see [Working with Spaces](#).

Related Topics


[Viewing Favourites](#)
[Searching the People Directory](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).


Removing Favourites


To remove a page as a favourite:

1. Go to the page.
2. Choose **Tools** >  **Favourite**.

This will change to  **Favourite** to indicate that you have removed this page from your favourites.

To remove a global space as a favourite:

1. Go to the [dashboard](#).
2. Click on the star icon  located beside the space in the list of spaces displayed.


This will change to  to indicate that you have removed this global space as a favourite.

To remove a personal space as a favourite:

1. Go to the [People Directory](#).

- Click on a person's name or profile picture to view their personal space.
- Go to a page in the space and choose **Browse > Advanced**.

- Click on  **Remove Space from Favourites** in the left-hand panel.

This will change to  **Add Space to Favourites** to indicate that you have removed that person's personal space as a favourite.

Related Topics

[Viewing Favourites](#)

[Spaces Cannot be Unmarked as Favourites](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Viewing Favourites

Once you add a spaces or pages as favourites, you can see them on your dashboard or in your profile.

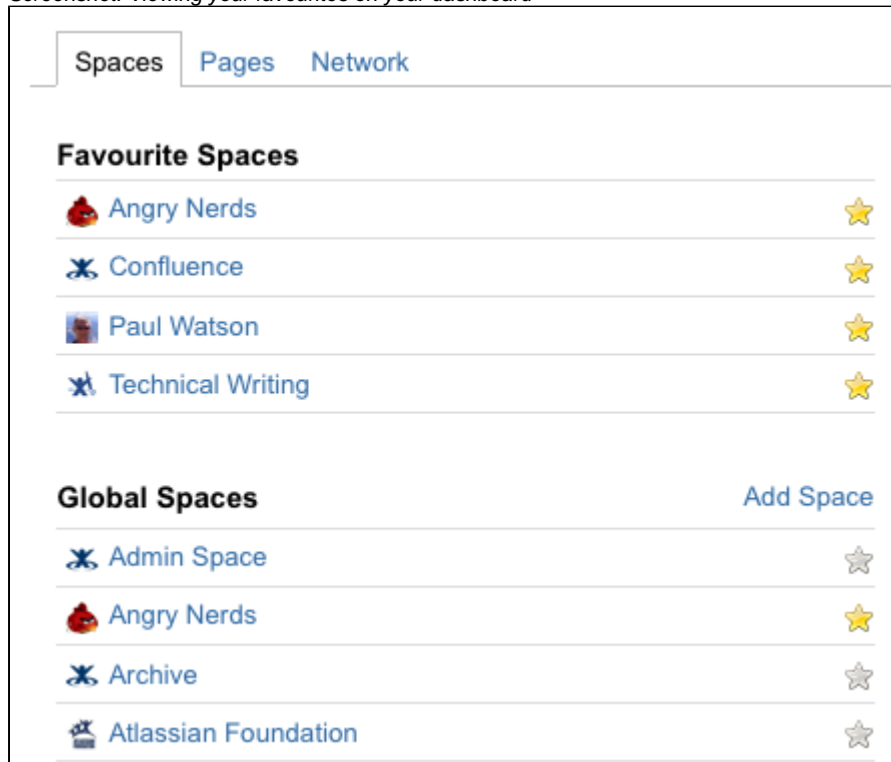
The Dashboard

On the left-hand side of the [Dashboard](#), you can see:

- your favourite spaces in the **Spaces** tab.
- your most recently added favourite pages in the **Pages** tab.

Recently updated content in your favourite spaces will be listed on the **Favourite Spaces** tab at the top right of the dashboard.

Screenshot: Viewing your favourites on your dashboard



Your Profile

To view your favourites in your profile:

- Log in to Confluence, if you have not already done so.
- Go to **your name** (the 'User' menu) at the top of the page and choose **Labels**.
- Click on **favourite** (under 'Your Labels') to see the list of your favourite spaces and pages.

Screenshot: Viewing your favourites in your profile

Profile
Network
Status Updates
Labels
Watches
Drafts
Settings
Extensions

See the personal labels you have created and the number of pages that contain them. Click a label to see all content containing that label. RSS 2.0

Your Labels

- favourite 11

Content labelled with "favourite"

Angry Nerds	by Ryan Anderson (20 Apr)
Tech writer brilliance kickoff	by Sarah Maddox ♥ (6 hours ago)
Atlassian Partner Milestones!	by Todd Revolt (29 Apr)
Egg-citing New Frontlines Reports	by Christina Bang (25 Apr)
Sales Q3 Release Notes	by Joshua Wold (20 Apr)
World Saved, Services Will Now Resume As Usual	by Edwin Dawson (02 May)
Rise of the Machines Part 5 - Development in the World of Tomorrow	by Tim Moore (02 May)
Technical Writing	by Sarah Maddox ♥ (30 Sep)
Confluence	by Matt Ryall (24 Mar)
Home	by Andrew Lui (16 Jan)

1
2
Next >>

Related Topics

[Adding Favourites](#)
[Removing Favourites](#)
[Working with Favourites](#)

[Working with Labels](#)

Working with Attachments

An attachment is any file that is included with your page. Examples of attachments are images, screenshots, photographs, Word documents, presentations, and PDF, multimedia and sound files.



Quick guide to attachments

- Go to **Tools > Attachments** to view and attach files to a Confluence page. See [Attaching Files to a Page](#).
- If you attach a file with the same name as an existing attachment, Confluence will create a **new version** of the existing attachment.
- Once you have attached a file, you can then **create a link to it** on a Confluence page. When a user clicks the link, the attachment will open, provided that the user has the software application needed to open the attachment.
- You can **display attached images and multimedia content** on the page.
- If the attachment is an Office document, use the **View File macro** to display the content of the document on the Confluence page. If you have an Office application installed, you will also be able to launch your Office editor from within Confluence. See [Displaying Office Files in Confluence](#) and [Working with the Office Connector](#).

Attachments are useful when you want to share information that exists in another file format. If you want an attachment to be displayed on more than one page, you may wish to consider creating a special page to hold such attachments. This special page could be part of an '[inclusions library](#)'.

In Confluence you can attach files to any page or blog post, provided you have permission to do so.

When a page you are viewing contains attachments, a small paperclip icon appears next to the page byline. Clicking the paperclip will take you to the 'Attachments' view, where the full list of attachments is displayed.

Working with attachments:

- [Using Drag-and-Drop in Confluence](#)
- [Attaching Files to a Page](#)
- [Attachment Versions](#)
- [Deleting an Attachment](#)
- [Displaying a List of Attachments in a Page](#)
- [Downloading Attachments](#)
- [Editing Attachment Properties](#)
- [Embedding Multimedia Content](#)
- [Embedding PowerPoint Presentations in a Page](#)
- [Finding an Attachment](#)
- [Moving an Attachment](#)
- [Viewing Attachment Details](#)

Related Topics

[Displaying Images](#)
[Configuring Attachment Size](#)
[Configuring your Attachment Storage](#)
[Working with the Office Connector](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Using Drag-and-Drop in Confluence

This page describes Confluence's drag-and-drop feature and provides details of its requirements.

On this page:

- [Overview of the Drag-and-Drop Feature](#)
- [Requirements for the Confluence Drag-and-Drop Feature](#)
- [Disabling Drag-and-Drop](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Overview of the Drag-and-Drop Feature

Confluence's drag-and-drop feature allows you to drag files from your computer or file system onto your browser and attach them to your Confluence pages or blog posts. You can drag-and-drop:

- multiple files at once.
- [image](#), [multimedia](#) and PDF files, and [Office documents](#).

When you drag-and-drop files onto the different Confluence views, you get the following results:

Confluence View	Result
Attachments	Files are attached
Page	Files are attached
Edit	Files are attached, and embedded at the cursor position

Requirements for the Confluence Drag-and-Drop Feature

- Confluence's drag-and-drop feature relies on your browser's support for the drag-and-drop functionality of [HTML5](#).
- Some browsers, such as Internet Explorer 9, Firefox 3.5 and Safari 4 do not support the drag-and-drop functionality of HTML5. For these browsers, Confluence will attempt to use the drag-and-drop functionality provided by Google Gears.
 - The first time you try to drag and drop a file into one of these browsers, Confluence will prompt you to install [Google Gears](#) into your browser. Refer to the prompt [below](#) for more information. For more details on the installation requirements for Google Gears, refer to Google's own [How to install](#) instructions.
 - Please check the [Google Gears](#) website for the most up-to-date browser support details.
- ✓ To check if Google Gears is already installed on your computer, refer to Google's own [How to check if Gears is installed](#) instructions.



Supported Web Browsers

Please ensure that you are using one of the web browsers supported by Confluence. If you are using an unsupported browser or browser version, some features may not work correctly. You can find the list of supported web browsers and browser versions on this page: [Supported Platforms](#).

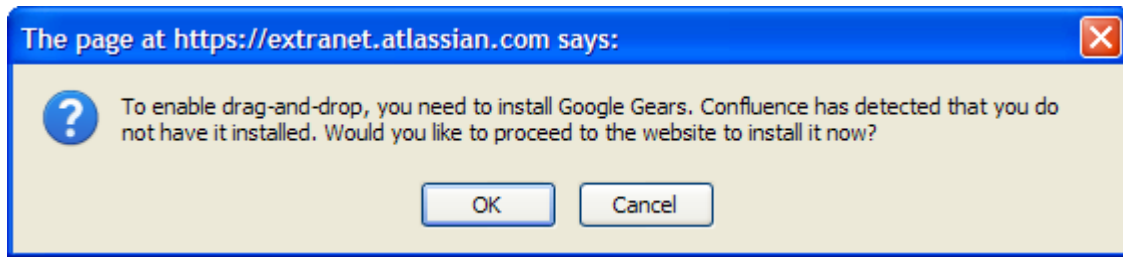
- Some older Confluence themes do not support Confluence's drag-and-drop feature.
 - **Supported themes:** Confluence Default theme, [Documentation theme](#), [Easy Reader theme](#).
 - **Themes that are not supported:** Left Navigation theme, Clickr theme. You cannot drag and drop attachments into spaces that use these themes.

Prompt to Install Google Gears

If you are using a browser that [does not support](#) the drag-and-drop feature, and Google Gears has not yet been installed:

- When you attempt to drag and drop a file into Confluence (but not the editor), you will be prompted with the following message:

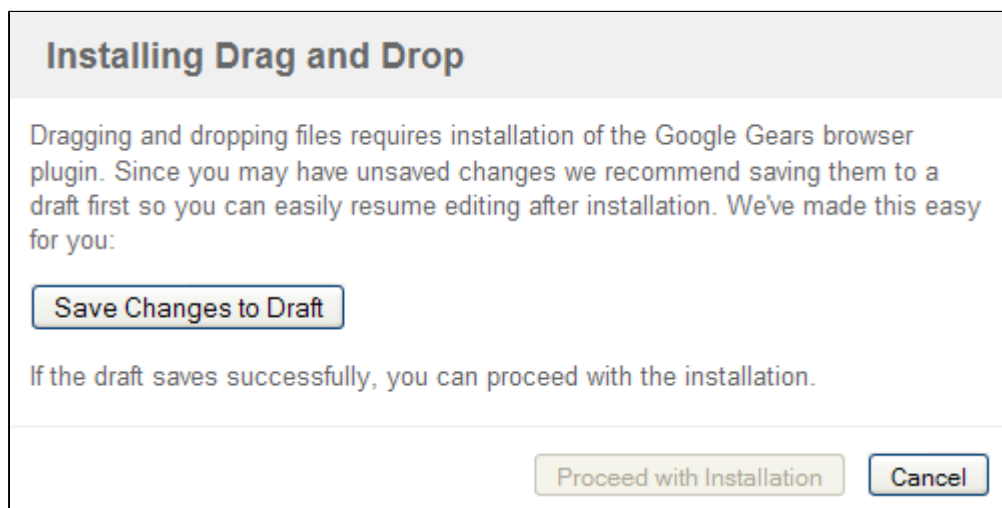
Screenshot: Generic Confluence Prompt to Install Google Gears



Click **OK** to proceed with the Google Gears installation.

- When you attempt to drag and drop a file into the editor, you will be prompted with the following message:

Screenshot: Confluence Prompt to Install Google Gears



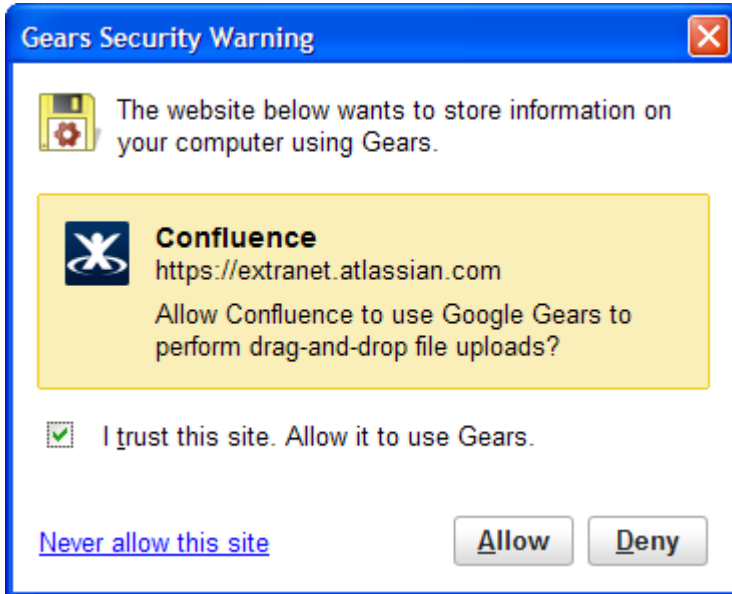
Save any drafted content before continuing with the installation of Google Gears. The installation process will replace your current Confluence page and you will need to restart your browser after the Google Gears installation has completed.


Click **Proceed with Installation** to install Google Gears.

Initial Use with Google Gears

When adding an attachment to a page or blog post in your Confluence site for the first time (after [Google Gears has been installed](#)), you will be prompted to allow Google Gears to trust your Confluence site as shown in the following screenshot. If this warning message appears, select the **I trust this site. Allow it to use Gears** check box and click **Allow**.

Screenshot: Google Gears Security Prompt



 Google Gears is not supported on Safari. See [CONF-20032](#) for updates.

Disabling Drag-and-Drop

If you are a Confluence administrator and wish to disable Confluence's drag-and-drop feature for any reason, please refer to [Disabling Drag-and-Drop](#) for details.

Related Topics

[Attaching Files to a Page](#)
[Add many files to a page at once](#)
[Using the Editor](#)
[Displaying Images](#)
[Working with Links](#)
[Disabling Drag-and-Drop](#)

Attaching Files to a Page

An attachment is any file that is included with your page. Images, word documents, presentations and PDF, multimedia and sound files are some examples of attachments. Attachments are useful when you want to share information that exists in another file format. Read more in [Working with Attachments](#).

When you attach a file to a page, Confluence makes a copy of the file and stores it on the server. Page attachments in Confluence are managed using the 'Attachments' view of the page.

To attach a file, you need the 'Create Attachments' permission which is assigned by a [space administrator](#) from the Space Administration screens. See [Space Permissions](#) or contact a space administrator for more information.

You can drag-and-drop more than one file at a time onto a page. You cannot attach a folder of files to a page.

On this page:

- [Attaching files](#)
- [Attachment Versions](#)
- [Attachment Information Icon](#)
- [Related Topics](#)


Attaching files

There are several ways to attach files to a Confluence page:

- Drag-and-dropping files on to a Confluence page.
- By browsing to, and [uploading](#) files from, your computer or network.

To attach a file to a page using drag-and-drop:

1. View the page to which you want to attach files.
2. Drag one or more files from your computer onto the page. The 'Attach File(s)' message box appears, indicating the upload status of the files being attached to your page.

 You cannot drag-and-drop a folder of files onto a page.

▼ Expand this section to see other ways to drag-and-drop a file on to a page...

You can also drag-and-drop files:

- directly on to the 'Attachments' view for the page
- directly on to the editor view of the page
- on to any tab of the [Edit Link](#) or Insert Image dialogs, which are available from the **Insert** menu while editing.

To attach a file to a page from the computer's (or network's) file system:

1. Choose **Tools > Attachments** to go to the 'Attachments' view for the page.
2. Click **Browse...** and navigate to the file.
3. Select the file and click **Open**.
4. Add a descriptive comment for the file (optional).
5. Click **Attach more files** if required.
6. Click **Attach**.


▼ Expand this section to see other ways to upload a file to a page...

You can also browse for, and upload, a file from:


- the **Attachments** tab of the Edit Link dialog (while editing the page, click on **Link** in the toolbar)
- the **Attached Images** tab of the Insert Image dialog (while editing the page, go to **Insert > Image**)

Attachment Versions

If you upload a file with the same name as an existing attachment, Confluence will rename the old file and maintain a version of it on the server. Read more about [Attachment Versions](#) and [Viewing Attachment Details](#).

 Please note that changes you make to the source file don't affect the copy that was uploaded to Confluence. To update the Confluence copy, you need to upload the new version of the file.

Attachment Information Icon

When a page you are viewing contains attachments, a small paperclip icon  appears next to the page byline. Clicking the paperclip will take you to the 'Attachments' view, where the full list of attachments is displayed.

Related Topics

[Working with Attachments](#)
[Displaying Images](#)
[Attachment Versions](#)
[Deleting an Attachment](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Attachment Versions

When [viewing a list of attachments](#), a **new version of an existing attachment** can be added simply by uploading an attachment with the same filename on the attachment view. Click the blue arrow next to an attachment to display previous versions of the attachment.

Existing files will be kept with the name '**Version x**', where the value of 'x' increments with each upload of an attachment with the same filename.

Screenshot: Attachment versions

Attached Files						
Name	Size	Creator	Creation Date	Last Mod. Date ▾	Comment	
 Example PDF Document.pdf	105 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 13:45	Nov 11, 2009 13:59	PDF Sample	Properties | Remove | View
▾  Example Word 2007 Document.docx	10 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 13:46	Nov 11, 2009 13:59	Word Doc Sample	Properties | Remove | Edit | View
Version 2	10 kB	Administrator	Nov 11, 2009 13:32	Nov 11, 2009 13:32		
Version 1	10 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 11:52	Nov 11, 2009 11:52		
▾  Example Excel 2007 Document.xlsx	8 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 13:47	Nov 11, 2009 13:59	Excel Sample	Properties | Remove | Edit | View
Version 1	8 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 11:52	Nov 11, 2009 11:52		
 Example PowerPoint 2007 Document.pp...	35 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 11:52	Nov 11, 2009 11:52		Properties | Remove | Edit | View

Some additional notes:

- You cannot remove specific versions of an attachment — if you remove an attachment, all versions will be removed as well. (See feature request [CONF-3079](#).)
- You cannot revert to a previous version of an attachment. (See feature request [CONF-1943](#).)
- By default, attachments and their versions are stored in the <confluence_home>/attachments directory. (See [Attachment Storage Configuration](#) in the *Administrator's Guide*.) There is no limit to the number of attachments/versions, provided that there is enough disk space.

Related Topics

[Attaching Files to a Page](#)
[Moving an Attachment](#)
[Viewing Attachment Details](#)
[Working with Attachments](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Deleting an Attachment

To delete an attachment, you require 'Remove Attachments' permission which is assigned by a [space administrator](#) from the Space Administration screens. See [Space permissions](#) or contact a space administrator for more information.

To delete an attachment:

1. Go to the page that contains the attachment.
2. Choose **Tools** > **Attachments** to go to the 'Attachments' view for the page.

This will display a list of the attachments in the page. Click **Remove** beside the attachment you want to delete.

3. Click **OK** to confirm your action.

Related Topics

[Working with Attachments](#)
[Finding an Attachment](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Displaying a List of Attachments in a Page

Use Confluence's Attachments macro to show a list of attachments on the current page. Use the Space-Attachments macro to show a list of attachments in the current space. These both generate a table of attachments which is clickable.

On this page:

- [Using the Attachments Macros](#)
- [Attachments Macro Parameters](#)
- [Viewing and Editing Files from the Attachments Macro](#)
- [Attachment Information Icon](#)
- [Space Attachments Macro Parameters](#)
- [Notes](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Using the Attachments Macros

To add the {attachments} or {space-attachments} macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert** > **Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Attachments Macro Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Filename Patterns	all	Filters the attachments to display, using a comma-separated list of regular expressions. So, to match a file suffix of 'jpg', use <code>. * jpg</code> , not <code>* . jpg</code> . Here's a detailed tutorial on regular expressions .
Include Old Attachment Versions	false	Include previous attachment versions in the list.
Sort By	date	Specifies the sort order for attachments. Note that people viewing the page can change the sort order by clicking the column headings. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> date – sorts by reverse chronological order (newest first) size – sorts largest to smallest name – sorts alphabetically
Allow Upload	false	Provides the ability to browse for, and attach, new files.

Viewing and Editing Files from the Attachments Macro

If an attachment is an Office or PDF file, you will see a **View** link as shown in the screen snippet below. Furthermore, if the attachment is an Office file, it will also have an **Edit** link.


Screenshot: Office and PDF file page attachments showing the 'View' and 'Edit' links

Name	Size	Creator	Creation Date	Last Mod. Date	Comment
Example PDF Document.pdf	105 kB	Administrator	Nov 11, 2009 15:11	Nov 11, 2009 15:11	Properties | Remove | View
Example PowerPoint 2007 Document.pp...	35 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 11:52	Nov 11, 2009 14:49	PowerPoint Sample Properties | Remove | Edit | View
Example Word 2007 Document.docx	10 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 13:46	Nov 11, 2009 14:20	Word Doc Sample Properties | Remove | Edit | View
Example Excel 2007 Document.xlsx	8 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 13:47	Nov 11, 2009 13:59	Excel Sample Properties | Remove | Edit | View

Click **View** to view the content of the Office file within Confluence.

Click **Edit** to edit the content of the Office file in your Office application. You must have a [compatible Office application](#) installed to do this. Refer to [Working with the Office Connector](#) for more information.

Attachment Information Icon

When a page you are viewing contains attachments, a small paperclip icon  appears next to the page byline. Clicking the paperclip will take you to the 'Attachments' view, where the full list of attachments is displayed.

Space Attachments Macro Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Space	blank	Selects the Confluence space to display all attachments for. If no space is specified, the current space will be used.
Show Filter Controls	true	Determines whether or not the filter panel is shown. The filter panel allows you to filter the list of attachments by file type (extension).

Notes

The macro can only list the attachments on the current page. It is not possible to display attachments from another page. If you are interested in this feature request, please watch or vote for [CONF-6351](#).

Related Topics

[Working with Attachments](#)

[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Downloading Attachments

To download a single attachment of a page:

1. Choose **Tools** > **Attachments** to go to the 'Attachments' view for the page.
2. Right-click the link on the attachment name, and select **Save Link As**, **Save Target As** or a similar option provided by your browser. This will open a 'Save' dialog.
3. Select the directory into which you want to download the file and click **Save**.

To download all the attachments of a page:

1. Choose **Tools** > **Attachments** to go to the 'Attachments' view for the page.
2. Click the **Download All** button at the end of the page to download a zipped file of all the page's attachments.

Related Topics

[Working with Attachments](#)
[Viewing Attachment Details](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

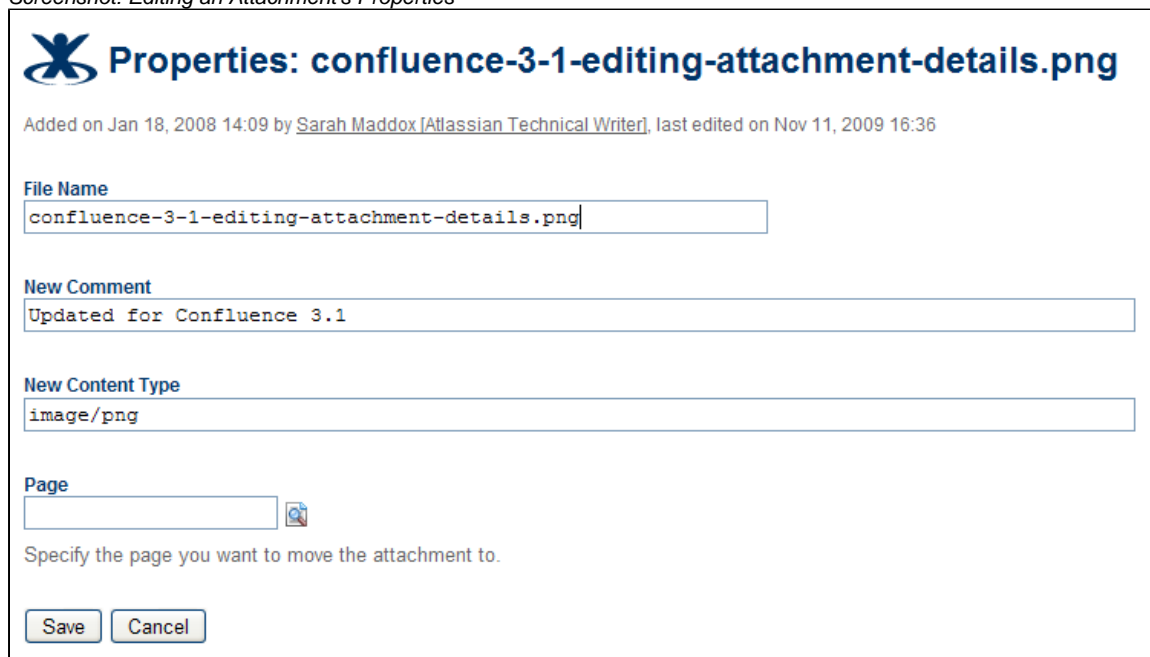
Editing Attachment Properties

To edit an attachment's properties, you need 'Create Attachments' permission which is assigned by a [space administrator](#) from the Space Administration screens. See [Space Permissions](#) or contact a space administrator for more information.

To edit the properties of an attachment:

1. Go to the page that contains the attachment.
2. Choose **Tools** > **Attachments** to go to the 'Attachments' view for the page.
3. Click the **Properties** link beside the attachment. This will display a new screen.
4. Make your changes:
 - **File Name** — Rename or modify the name of the attachment.
 - **New Comment** — Update the existing comment or enter a new comment.
 - **New Content Type** — Change the content type of the attachment by entering a valid [MIME type](#).
 - **Page** — [Move the attachment](#) to another page.
5. Click **OK**.

Screenshot: *Editing an Attachment's Properties*




Properties: confluence-3-1-editing-attachment-details.png

Added on Jan 18, 2008 14:09 by [Sarah Maddox \[Atlassian Technical Writer\]](#), last edited on Nov 11, 2009 16:36

File Name

New Comment

New Content Type

Page
 

Specify the page you want to move the attachment to.

Related Topics

[Moving an Attachment](#)
[Viewing Attachment Details](#)

Working with Attachments

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Embedding Multimedia Content

Using multimedia files you can display movies, animations and videos, and embed audio files on your Confluence page. There are several methods for [attaching files to a page](#). Once you have attached the multimedia file to a Confluence page, you then edit the page to set where the multimedia content should appear.

In the example below, we display a Flash file that is attached to this page.

Confluence supports the following multimedia formats:

- Adobe Flash (.swf)
- Apple QuickTime (.mov)
- Windows Media (.wma, .wmv)
- Real Media (.rm, .ram)
- MP3 and MP4 files (.mp3, .mp4)
- MPEG files (.mpeg, .mpg)
- AVI files (.avi) *You may need to enable an avi decoder within your browser.*

On this page:

- [Displaying a multimedia file attached to the page](#)
- [Multimedia macro parameters](#)
- [Notes](#)
- [Related Topics](#)



Quick guide to displaying multimedia content on a page

Choose one of these methods:

- **Add the macro yourself:** Attach the multimedia file to the page in the usual way. Add the Multimedia macro using the macro browser.
- **Autocomplete:** Attach the multimedia file to the page in the usual way. Type '!' in the editor and choose the multimedia file from the list that appears.
- **Drag and drop:** Drop the video or other file into the editor. Confluence will attach the file and insert the Multimedia macro for you.
- **Adjust parameters if necessary:** Click on the Multimedia macro placeholder to set options for the macro, such as adjusting the width or height of the display, or setting autoplay on.

Displaying a multimedia file attached to the page

Once you have attached a multimedia file to a page, there are different methods for choosing where on the page the multimedia content should appear:

Inserting the Multimedia macro yourself

You can add the Multimedia macro to the page yourself using the Macro Browser. This allows you to display a multimedia file that is attached to either the current page or to another page in the Confluence site.

To insert the Multimedia macro on the page at the current cursor position:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Using autocomplete

Once a multimedia file is attached to the page, you can use [autocomplete](#), while editing the page, to choose where the multimedia content should appear.

To position an attached multimedia file on the page using autocomplete:

1. While editing the page, position the cursor where you want to place the multimedia content.
2. Trigger the autocomplete function by typing '!'.
 3. Choose the multimedia file from the list that appears.
 4. If necessary, click on the Multimedia macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to set various [options](#) such as the width, height or autoplay.

Using drag-and-drop

Depending on the browser you are using, you can attach and position a multimedia file in one step using drag-and-drop.

To attach and position multimedia content using drag-and-drop:

1. While you are editing a page, simply [drag-and-drop](#) the multimedia file on to the page. Confluence will attach the file to the page and insert the Multimedia macro at the current cursor position for you.
2. If necessary, click on the Multimedia macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to set various [options](#) such as the width, height or autoplay.

Multimedia macro parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Page Name	Current page	Name of the page to which the multimedia file is attached. If you are using the Macro Browser, just start typing the name of the page and then select it from the dropdown list that appears. The page can be in the same space or another space.
Attachment	None	File name of the multimedia file.
Width	If not specified, the browser will determine the width based on the file type.	Width of the movie window to be displayed on the page. By default, this value is specified in pixels. You can also choose to specify a percentage of the window's width, or any other value accepted by HTML.
Height	If not specified, the browser will determine the height based on the file type.	Height of the movie window to be displayed on the page. By default, this value is specified in pixels. You can also choose to specify a percentage of the window's height, or any other value accepted by HTML.
Autoplay	False	If this option is checked (that is, if the parameter is set to 'true') then the video or audio file will start playing as soon as the page is loaded. If this option is not checked (set to 'false') then the file will not play until the user clicks the icon or image on the page. See the note about autoplay below .

Notes

- **The multimedia file must be attached to a Confluence page.** For security reasons, files located on remote servers are not permitted. See the [Widget Connector](#) for displaying live content from external sites.
- **You will need the relevant multimedia plugin for your browser.** Your browser (Firefox, Internet Explorer, Safari and others) needs a plugin to play the video or audio file on a Confluence page. For example, to play a Flash movie you need the Flash plugin. Many plugins are shipped with the major browsers by default. If a user does not have the required plugin installed and enabled in their browser, they will not be able to view the multimedia files on the page.
- **Autoplay may not always work as expected.** You can set autoplay on, so that your video or audio file should start playing as soon as the page is loaded into the browser. (See [parameters](#).) However, this setting may not always work as expected. Confluence will send an instruction to the browser plugin that plays the multimedia file. Different browsers and different media plugins behave in different ways, and not all of them respect such instructions.
- **Use the Office Connector to display Office documents.** Take a look at the [Office Connector](#) for embedding Word documents, presentations and other Office documents onto your Confluence page.
- If you get the error, 'Unable to embed content of type application/octet-stream', this means the [MIME type](#) is not recognised.
- **Advanced users can try styling via CSS.** By default, each embedded object is wrapped in a `div` tag. If you wish to style the `div` and its contents, override the `embeddedObject` CSS class. Specifying an ID as a property also allows you to style different embedded objects differently. CSS class names in the format `embeddedObject-ID` are used.

Related Topics

[Working with Macros](#)
[Widget Connector Macro](#)
[Working with the Office Connector](#)
[Working with Attachments](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Embedding PowerPoint Presentations in a Page

Below are some ideas on how your wiki page can include information from a Microsoft PowerPoint presentation.

On this page:

- [Option 1 — Office Connector for Confluence](#)
- [Option 2 — Gallery or Slide Show of JPEG or PNG Images](#)
- [Option 3 — Convert PowerPoint to HTML](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Option 1 — Office Connector for Confluence

The Office Connector provides the most straightforward way to display PowerPoint slides.

To attach and display a PowerPoint presentation in Confluence:

1. Attach the presentation to a Confluence page:
 - View the Confluence page where you want to display your presentation.
 - Open the 'Tools' menu and select 'Attachments'.
 - Browse for your PowerPoint presentation and upload it to the Confluence page.
You will find detailed instructions in [Attaching Files to a Page](#).
2. Now you can display the document embedded into the Confluence page, using the View File macro.
Refer to the detailed instructions for the [View File macro](#).



The Office Connector is shipped with Confluence 2.10 and later. The Office Connector plugin is supported for Confluence versions 2.8.0 and later.

Option 2 — Gallery or Slide Show of JPEG or PNG Images

1. Convert your PowerPoint pages into JPEG or PNG images, using 'save as' from PowerPoint (slide1.jpg, slide2.jpg...).
2. Upload the image files as attachments to your Confluence page. To upload in bulk, use the [WebDAV plugin](#).
3. Use the [Gallery macro](#) or the [Slideshow plugin](#) to render the images as a slide show in Confluence.

☒ Optionally, you could create a page template or a user macro that uses the Slideshow plugin, so that you do not have to code this into the wiki page each time you create a new show.



The Slideshow plugin is not supported by Atlassian. Please weigh up your options carefully before deciding which way to go.

Option 3 — Convert PowerPoint to HTML

You can convert the PowerPoint file to web page format and embed the page inside your Confluence document.



If you accept page edits or comments from untrustworthy users, you should not attempt this process, due to a risk of malicious user attacks via the `html-include` macro.

1. Review the risks associated with enabling the `html-include` macro [here](#).
2. If you decide to proceed, follow [the instructions](#) to enable embedded HTML pages using the macro.
3. Select an PowerPoint converter. There are at least two applications that can convert PPT to HTML:
 - [Producer for PowerPoint](#).
 - If you do not have the PowerPoint application on your machine, you can use the [Internet Assistant for Powerpoint](#) instead.
4. Download and install your chosen converter.
5. Follow the converter documentation to perform the HTML conversion. An Internet Assistant conversion guide can be found [here](#). The conversion process will create a small collection of HTML pages. Each slide will have its own page, plus an index page with buttons to let you switch between slide pages.
6. If you wish, you can test the HTML presentation now by loading the index page in your browser.
7. Place the HTML files into their own directory, named uniquely by the title of your presentation.
8. Find a suitable location to host these files within your web server. Confluence hosts all files within the `<my-install-directory>/confluence/` directory, so a good example location for Confluence distribution users is to go to `<my-install-directory>/confluence/pages/` and create a subdirectory called `powerpoint`.
9. Move the HTML directory into the PowerPoint folder, e.g.
`<my-install-directory>/confluence/pages/powerpoint/<my-presentation-name>` containing `index.html`,

slide01.html... or similar.

10. Edit or create the page where you wish to embed the PowerPoint presentation. Add the HTML Include macro pointing to the index page of your slides. Remember that URLs are case sensitive.
11. Save the page. The index page to your slides should now appear.

Related Topics

[Working with the Office Connector](#)
[Working with Attachments](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Finding an Attachment

To find an attachment, you can search the list of attachments in a space or the attachments on a specific page.

To find an attachment associated with a space:

1. Go to a page in the space and choose **Browse > Attachments**.
2. This will display a list of all attachments in the space.
3. Browse through the list to locate the attachment.
4. You can choose to view only files of a particular type:
 - Type the last part of the file name in the **Filter By File Extension** box. For example, enter 'gif' to see only image files of the GIF format.
 - Click **Filter**.
5. You can view the attachment itself or the page to which it is attached by clicking on the corresponding link.

Screenshot : Space Attachments

Name	Size	Creator	Creation Date	Last Mod. Date	Attached To
Example Word 2007 Document.docx	10 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 13:46	Nov 11, 2009 13:46	Sample Page
Example PDF Document.pdf	105 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 13:45	Nov 11, 2009 13:45	Sample Page
Example PowerPoint 2007 Document.pptx	35 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 11:52	Nov 11, 2009 11:52	Sample Page
Example Excel 2007 Document.xlsx	8 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 13:47	Nov 11, 2009 13:47	Sample Page

To find attachments associated with a page:

1. Choose **Tools > Attachments** to go to the 'Attachments' view for the page.
2. This will display a list of all files attached to the page.
3. Click the attachment's linked name to view its contents in your computer's associated application.
 - This is different from clicking an Office or PDF file's **View** link, which opens the file for viewing in Confluence itself.

Screenshot : Page Attachments

Attached Files						
Name	Size	Creator	Creation Date	Last Mod. Date	Comment	
Example PDF Document.pdf	105 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 13:45	Nov 11, 2009 13:59	PDF Sample	Properties | Remove | View
▼ Example Word 2007 Document.docx	10 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 13:46	Nov 11, 2009 13:59	Word Doc Sample	Properties | Remove | Edit | View
Version 2	10 kB	Administrator	Nov 11, 2009 13:32	Nov 11, 2009 13:32		
Version 1	10 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 11:52	Nov 11, 2009 11:52		
▼ Example Excel 2007 Document.xlsx	8 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 13:47	Nov 11, 2009 13:59	Excel Sample	Properties | Remove | Edit | View
Version 1	8 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 11:52	Nov 11, 2009 11:52		
Example PowerPoint 2007 Document.pp...	35 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 11:52	Nov 11, 2009 11:52		Properties | Remove | Edit | View



Handy Hint

If you know the title of an attachment, you might find it faster by doing a [Quick Search](#).

Related Topics

Working with attachments
 Attaching Files to a Page
 Viewing Attachment Details
 Deleting an Attachment
 Browsing a space

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Moving an Attachment

You can move an attachment from its current location to any page within the site.

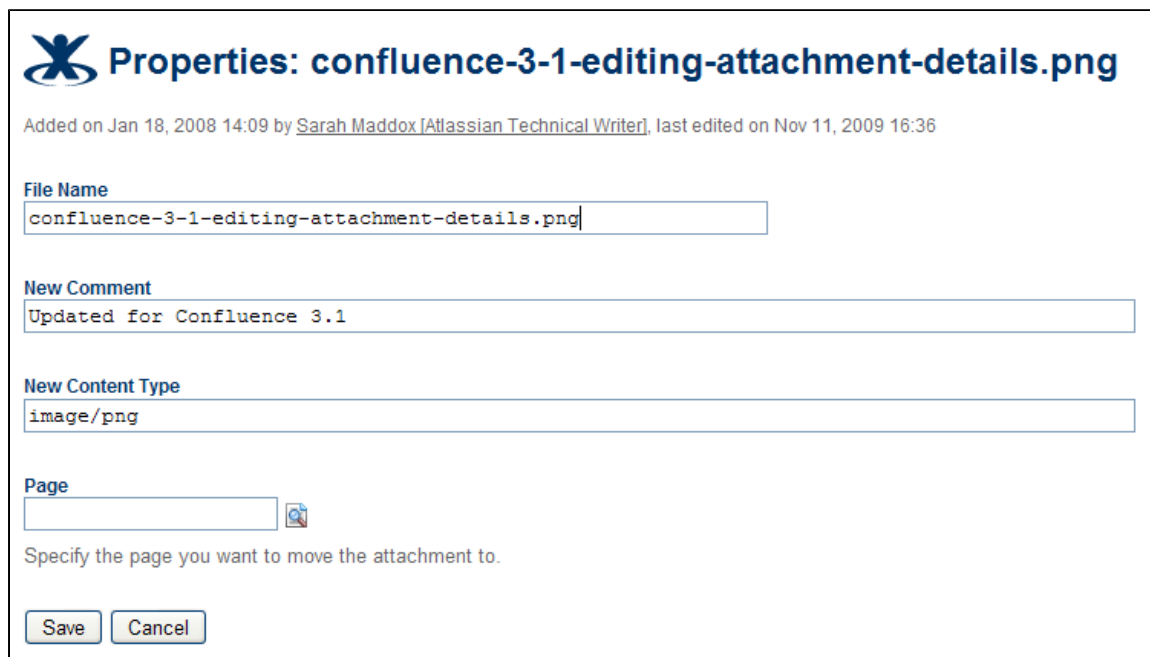
To move an attachment, you need the following permissions:

- Edit page permission on the page where the attachment currently exists.
- Create attachment permission on the space into which you are moving the attachment.
 Space permissions are assigned by a [space administrator](#) from the Space Administration screens. [See Space permissions](#) or contact a space administrator for more information.

To move an attachment:

1. Go to the page that contains the attachment.
2. Choose **Tools > Attachments**.
3. Click the **Properties** link beside the attachment. This will display a new screen, where you can [edit the properties of an attachment](#).
4. Select the page where you want to move the attachment by either:
 - Entering the page's title into the **Page** field
 - Clicking the [Choose a Page](#) icon and using the 'Choose a Page' pop-up window to choose a page within the site.
5. Click **OK**.

Screenshot : Moving an attachment




Properties: confluence-3-1-editing-attachment-details.png

Added on Jan 18, 2008 14:09 by [Sarah Maddox \[Atlassian Technical Writer\]](#), last edited on Nov 11, 2009 16:36

File Name

New Comment

New Content Type

Page
 

Specify the page you want to move the attachment to.

Related Topics


[Moving a Page](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Choose a Page

The 'Choose a Page' window allows you to locate a page in your Confluence site. The window appears when you are moving an attachment.

To choose a page:

1. Click the page picker icon  to display the 'Choose a Page' window. You will see the following tabs:
 - **Search:** Allows you to search for your page in all Confluence spaces.
 - **History:** Displays a list of pages recently visited by you.
 - **Recently Modified:** Displays pages most recently modified by you.
 - **Referring Pages:** Displays a list of all pages that refer to the current page.

2. Select the required page from the list of pages in one of the tabs.

Related Topics

[Moving an Attachment](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Viewing Attachment Details

There are two places in Confluence where you can view attachment details:

- View the list of attachments in a space — this will show all files/images attached to all pages in the space.
- View the list of attachments for a specific page.

On this page:

- [Viewing Attachments in a Space](#)
- [Viewing Attachments on a Page](#)
- [Attachment Details](#)
- [Viewing and Editing Attached Files](#)
- [Attachment Information Icon](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Viewing Attachments in a Space









To view the attachments associated with a space:

1. Go to a page in the space and choose **Browse > Attachments**.

This displays a list of all the attachments in the space, along with their details and the pages they are attached to.

2. You can choose to view only files of a particular type:
 - Type the last part of the file name in the **Filter By File Extension** box. For example, enter 'gif' to see only image files of the GIF format.
 - Click **Go**.

Screenshot: Space Attachment Details

List Attachments					
Pages Blog Labels Attachments Bookmarks Mail Advanced Space Admin					
Filter By File Extension: <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Filter"/>					
<div>1 2 3 4 5 6 Next >></div>					
Name	Size	Creator	Creation Date	Last Mod. Date	Attached To
 Example Word 2007 Document.docx	10 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 13:46	Nov 11, 2009 13:46	 Sample Page
 Example PDF Document.pdf	105 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 13:45	Nov 11, 2009 13:45	 Sample Page
 Example PowerPoint 2007 Document.pptx	35 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 11:52	Nov 11, 2009 11:52	 Sample Page
 Example Excel 2007 Document.xlsx	8 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 13:47	Nov 11, 2009 13:47	 Sample Page


Viewing Attachments on a Page

To view the attachments associated with a page:

1. Go to the page.
2. Choose **Tools > Attachments** to go to the 'Attachments' view for the page.

This will display a list of all the attachments in the page along with their details. For each attachment, links are also provided to [edit the attachment's details](#) and to delete the attachment.

Screenshot: Page Attachment Details

Attached Files						
Name	Size	Creator	Creation Date	Last Mod. Date ▼	Comment	
 Example PDF Document.pdf	105 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 13:45	Nov 11, 2009 13:59	PDF Sample	Properties | Remove | View
▼  Example Word 2007 Document.docx	10 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 13:46	Nov 11, 2009 13:59	Word Doc Sample	Properties | Remove | Edit | View
Version 2	10 kB	Administrator	Nov 11, 2009 13:32	Nov 11, 2009 13:32		
Version 1	10 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 11:52	Nov 11, 2009 11:52		
▼  Example Excel 2007 Document.xlsx	8 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 13:47	Nov 11, 2009 13:59	Excel Sample	Properties | Remove | Edit | View
Version 1	8 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 11:52	Nov 11, 2009 11:52		
 Example PowerPoint 2007 Document.pp...	35 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 11:52	Nov 11, 2009 11:52		Properties | Remove | Edit | View

In the screenshot above, *Fred Ferdinando* created the first version of `Example Word 2007 Doc.docx`, *Administrator* uploaded the second version and *Fred Ferdinando* added the third (current) version.

Attachment Details

The attachment views show the following fields. (The page view shows a different subset of fields from the space view.)

- **Name** is the name of the attached file.
- **Size** tells you how much space the attachment takes up. You can sort by size by clicking the column title.
- **Creator** is the user who attached this file. The person who uploaded each new version of a file will be acknowledged as the creator of that version. Clicking on the link takes you to their profile.
- **Creation Date** is the date the file was attached. You can sort by date by clicking the column title.
- **Last Mod. Date** is the date the file was last modified. Please refer to definition of *Last Modifier* for a list of actions that qualify as a modification.
- **Attached To** (in the space view) tells you which page contains the attachment.
- **Comment** (in the page view) is a short description of the attachment.
- The **Properties** link (in the page view) lets you edit the attachment details.
- The **Remove** link (in the page view) lets you delete the attachment.
- The **Edit** link (in the page view) only appears next to Office files and lets you edit that attachment directly from the list of attachments. See [Viewing and Editing Attached Files](#).
- The **View** link (in the page view) only appears next to Office and PDF files and lets you view that attached attachment directly from the list of attachments. See [Viewing and Editing Attached Files](#).

Viewing and Editing Attached Files

If an attachment is an Office or PDF file, you will see a **View** link as shown in the screen snippet below. Furthermore, if the attachment is an Office file, it will also have an **Edit** link.


Screenshot: Office and PDF file page attachments showing the 'View' and 'Edit' links

Name	Size	Creator	Creation Date	Last Mod. Date ▼	Comment	
 Example PDF Document.pdf	105 kB	Administrator	Nov 11, 2009 15:11	Nov 11, 2009 15:11		Properties | Remove | View
 Example PowerPoint 2007 Document.pp...	35 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 11:52	Nov 11, 2009 14:49	PowerPoint Sample	Properties | Remove | Edit | View
 Example Word 2007 Document.docx	10 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 13:46	Nov 11, 2009 14:20	Word Doc Sample	Properties | Remove | Edit | View
 Example Excel 2007 Document.xlsx	8 kB	Fred Ferdinando	Nov 11, 2009 13:47	Nov 11, 2009 13:59	Excel Sample	Properties | Remove | Edit | View

Click **View** to view the content of the Office file within Confluence.

Click **Edit** to edit the content of the Office file in your Office application. You must have a [compatible Office application](#) installed to do this. Refer to [Working with the Office Connector](#) for more information.

Attachment Information Icon

When a page you are viewing contains attachments, a small paperclip icon  appears next to the page byline. Clicking the paperclip will take you to the 'Attachments' view, where the full list of attachments is displayed.

Related Topics

[Working with Attachments](#)
[Displaying a List of Attachments in a Page](#)
[Finding an Attachment](#)
[Editing Attachment Properties](#)
[Deleting an Attachment](#)
[Browsing a space](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Customising Confluence

You can customise or configure many aspects of Confluence:

- The [look and feel](#) of any Confluence space.

- [Personal aspects](#), including your personal profile and homepage.
- Setting up your [user profile](#).
- [User access](#), including permissions and page restrictions.
- Add-ons such as [gadgets](#) and [macros](#).
- Customisations for [specific uses](#) of Confluence.

Related Topics

[Configuring Confluence](#)

[Configuring Confluence Security](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Personal Customisations

There are several ways that you can customise the way that Confluence works for you, personally, including:

- Your [personal homepage](#)
- Your [personal dashboard](#)
- Your [personal profile](#)
- Your [email notifications](#)
- Your [RSS Feed settings](#)

Related Topics

[Customising Confluence](#)

User Profile Overview

Each Confluence user has a User Profile area, where numerous account management features can be accessed.

Finding your User Profile


Go to **your name** (the 'User' menu) at the top of the page and choose **Profile**.

The profile view is divided into tabs, each of which is described in a separate section below.

On this page:

- [Finding your User Profile](#)
- [Profile](#)
- [Network](#)
- [Status Updates](#)
- [Labels](#)
- [Watches](#)
- [Drafts](#)
- [Settings](#)

Screenshot: User profile



Giles Gaskell

[Profile](#)
[Network](#)
[Status Updates](#)
[Labels](#)
[Watches](#)
[Drafts](#)
[Settings](#)


Profile

- [Details](#)
- [Picture](#)
- [Password](#)

“ Touching up Community-based features. ”
yesterday at 1:53 PM | [Clear](#)

About Me [Edit](#)

I'm a Technical Writer at Atlassian. I started working at Atlassian back in December 2008 and focus mainly on documenting new features for Confluence. In my spare time, I enjoy participating in traditional Indonesian 'gamelan' orchestra groups. This is one of my favourite instruments - the 'reong':







Personal [Edit](#)

Full Name: Giles Gaskell
Email: ggaskell@atlassian.com
Phone: +555 5555
IM: gg@chat.example.com
Website: <http://www.atlassian.com>
Company

Position: Technical Writer
Department: Development
Location: Sydney

Activity

-  [Giles Gaskell](#)
 profile updated less than a minute ago
-  [reong.png](#)
 attached 19 minutes ago
- “ Touching up Community-based features. ”
yesterday at 1:53 PM
-  [Drafts for Confluence 3.0 forum announcements - including Advanced Warnings](#)
 updated May 25
-  [AODC conference happened and was good](#)
 commented May 25



The '**Administer User**' link is visible to Confluence administrators only. The administrator can click this link to go directly to the user management screen in the Administration Console.

Profile

- View and [edit your personal details](#), such as your name and email address details and optionally, your photograph and other personal information. Note that as a security precaution, in order to change your email address, you will be required to re-enter your password.
- Upload a [profile picture](#) (optional).
- Change your [password](#).

Network

- View the recent activity of users that you are following via the [Network view](#).
- Follow other users from this view.

Status Updates

- View your history of [status updates](#).

Labels

- View your [personal labels](#).

Watches

- View a list of the pages and spaces you are currently [watching](#).

Drafts

- Retrieve any pages you were in the process of editing. See [Working with Drafts](#).

Settings

- Edit your [General Settings](#) (homepage, language and timezone).
- Subscribe to [email notifications](#).
- View and revoke your [OAuth access tokens](#).

Related Topics

[Watching Changes](#)
[Setting up your Personal Space](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Changing Password

To change your Confluence password:

1. Go to **your name** (the 'User' menu) at the top of the page and choose **Profile**.
2. On your **Profile** tab, click **Password** in the left-hand column.
3. Enter your current password and your new password in the form displayed.
4. Click **Submit**.

Related Topics

[Viewing User Profile](#)
[Editing Your User Profile](#)
[Choosing a Profile Picture](#)
[Setting up your Personal Space](#)
[Updating Email Address](#)
[Email Address Privacy](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Editing User Settings

You can set various Confluence preferences that affect your personal session:

- General preferences such as home page, language and time zone, as described [below](#).
- Editor settings, as described [below](#).
- Email settings for subscriptions to Email Reports.
- OAuth access tokens that you have granted from your Confluence user account. Please refer to [Viewing and Revoking OAuth Access Tokens](#).

On this page:

- [General User Preferences](#)
- [Language](#)
- [Editor Preferences](#)
- [Email Notification Settings](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

General User Preferences

To edit your general user settings:

1. Go to **your name** (the 'User' menu) at the top of the page and choose **Settings**.
2. Click **Edit** and make general settings:

Setting	Description
Site Homepage	Select the page that you would like to see whenever you log into Confluence.
Language	Select your language. See below .
Time zone	Select your time zone.
Use Keyboard Shortcuts	Enable keyboard shortcuts , other than for the editor.

3. Click **Submit**.

Screenshot: Editing your user profile settings

Language

Setting your language preference in your user profile is described in the section [above](#). This section gives more information about that setting and other settings that affect the language Confluence will use.

Individual users can choose the language that Confluence will use to display screen text and messages. Note that the list of supported languages depends on the language packs installed on your Confluence site.

The language used for your session will depend on the settings below, in the following order of priority from highest to lowest:

- The language preference defined in your user profile. Note that you need to be logged in for this setting to take effect.
- The language that you choose by clicking an option at the bottom of the Confluence login screen. Confluence stores this value in a cookie. When the cookie expires, the setting will expire too.
- The language set in your browser.
 - Note that your Confluence administrator can disable this option by setting a system property.
 - The browser sends a header with a prioritised list of languages. Confluence will use the first supported language in that list.
- The default language for your site, as defined by your Confluence site administrator.

Editor Preferences

You can set some options that determine the way the Confluence editor works. Note that these settings affect only you. Other people using Confluence can enable or disable the settings on their user profiles independently.

To change your editor preferences:

1. Go to **your name** (the 'User' menu) at the top of the page and choose **Settings**.
2. Click **Editor** under 'Your Settings' in the left-hand panel.
3. Click **Edit**.

Setting	Description
Disable Autocomplete	Select to disable autocomplete when you press one of the trigger characters.
Disable Autoformatting	Select to disable autoformatting when you type wiki markup in the editor. Click ? on the editor toolbar to learn more.

4. Click **Submit**.

Screenshot: User settings for the editor

Profile
Network
Status Updates
Labels
Watches
Drafts
Settings
Extensions

Gadgets
View OAuth Access Tokens

Your Settings
General
Email
Editor

Editor Settings

☐ Disable Autocomplete
Disable Autocomplete in the Editor, where it allows links to be inserted with the trigger `[`, images with the trigger `!` and user mentions with the trigger `@`.

☐ Disable Autoformatting
Disable Autoformatting in the Editor, where it allows wiki-formatted text to be converted to its Rich Text equivalent (e.g. `"h1. title"` for a heading).

Edit

Email Notification Settings

You can 'watch' a page, a blog post or a space. Confluence will then send you a notification by email whenever anyone adds or updates content on that page, blog post or space. You can also subscribe to daily email reports and other notifications of various updates, as described below. See [Watching Changes](#).

You will only receive notifications for content that you have permission to view. Users who have been [disabled](#) by an administrator will not receive email notifications.

For instructions on configuring an email server so that Confluence can send email notifications, see the administrator's guide to [Configuring a Server for Outgoing Mail](#).

To edit your email notification settings:

1. Go to **your name** (the 'User' menu) at the top of the page and choose **Settings**.
2. Click **Email** in the left-hand panel.
3. Click **Edit**.

Each email setting is explained below:

Setting	Description	Content	Frequency
Autowatch	Automatically watch content for future changes.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pages and blog posts that you create, edit or comment on. 	Immediately
Subscribe to daily updates	Receive email reports showing changes to content in all spaces that you have permission to view. <i>Note: Daily email reports do not include information about attachments on a page or blog post that are added, edited or deleted.</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pages and blog posts that are added, edited or deleted. Comments on a page or blog post that are added, edited or deleted. Updates by users who have changed their personal profile. 	Daily
Subscribe to all blog posts	Receive email notifications for changes to blogs in your Confluence installation that you have permission to view.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blog posts added, edited or deleted. 	Immediately
Subscribe to network	Receive email notifications for changes to content by all users that you are following , which you have permission to view.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pages being added, edited or deleted. Blog posts being added, edited or deleted. Comments being added, edited or deleted. Status updates by the user. 	Immediately

Subscribe to new follower notifications	Receive an email when anyone chooses to follow you.		Immediately
Notify on my actions	Receive email notifications for your own changes. <i>Note: If you have not subscribed to any email notifications and are not watching any pages/spaces, then selecting 'Notify on my actions' will not do anything.</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • All pages and spaces that you are watching. • This affects all subscriptions set. 	Immediately
Show changed content	Notifications will include details of the changes made to the content. See Page History and Page Comparison Views	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Edits to pages and blog posts. 	Immediately

Related Topics

[Editing Your User Profile](#)
[Choosing a Profile Picture](#)
[Setting up your Personal Space](#)
[Email Address Privacy](#)
[Using Autocomplete](#)



Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Editing Your User Profile

Your user profile contains basic information about you. If you do not have a [personal space](#), your user profile will be displayed when anyone clicks your name in the [People Directory](#).

To edit your user profile:

1. Go to **your name** (the 'User' menu) at the top of the page and choose **Profile**.
2. On your **Profile** view, click **Edit** in the **Personal** details section.
3. Enter details about yourself in the form displayed.
4. Click **Save**.

Detail	Description
Full Name	Your name as you would like it to appear in your profile.
Email	Your email address which will be used to send you mail notifications.
Phone	Your phone number.
IM	Your Instant Messenger (IM) details.  To suit a variety of IM applications, this option accepts any string value. For example, you can enter IM details in the form of an email address, such as ' ' or a user ID, like '123456789'.
Website	Your website's URL.
Position	The title of your position within your organisation.
Department	The name of your department within your organisation.
Location	Your location. This could be a town, city, region or country.
About me	Information about yourself that other users can view (such as your professional information, hobbies, and other interests). You can use Confluence wiki markup in this field.  Note that your Username cannot be changed.

Screenshot: *Edit profile*



Fred Ferdinando

Profile
Network
Labels
Watches
Drafts
Settings

Personal

Full Name:

Email:

Phone:

IM:

Website:

About Me:

Company

Position:

Department:

Location:

Save
Cancel



Handy Hint

Confluence administrators can configure Confluence to mask email addresses (e.g. 'example at atlassian dot com'), protecting your email address from search engine spiders and the like.

Related Topics

[Viewing User Profile](#)
[Choosing a Profile Picture](#)
[Setting up your Personal Space](#)
[Email Address Privacy](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Email Address Privacy

Confluence can mask the email addresses of users to protect them from mail spammers.

This is done by a Confluence administrator and is configured through the [Administration Console](#). The [Confluence administrator](#) has three options for email address privacy:

- **Public:** email addresses are displayed publicly.
- **Masked:** email addresses are still displayed publicly, but masked in such a way to make it harder for spam-bots to harvest them.
- **Private:** only Confluence administrators can see the email addresses.

For more information on setting these options, which are configured using the Administration Console, refer to [User Email Visibility](#).

Related Topics

[Editing Your User Profile](#)
[Viewing User Profile](#)
[User Email Visibility](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Updating Email Address

The email address you specify in your profile settings is used for your mail [notifications](#) and is also displayed in your profile description.

To update your email address:

1. Go to **your name** (the 'User' menu) at the top of the page and choose **Profile**.
2. Click **Edit** in the 'Personal' section.
3. In the **Email** field, specify your new email address which will be used when sending you mail notifications.
4. Click **Save**.

Related Topics

[Changing Password](#)
[Editing Your User Profile](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Choosing a Profile Picture


Your profile picture is used as the icon for your [personal space](#), to represent you in the [People Directory](#), and to illustrate your [comments](#). It also appears in various other places next to your name, such as in the list of recent updates on the dashboard.

You can upload your own profile picture or use one of the images provided by Confluence. If you upload your own profile picture, you will have an opportunity to crop (trim) the picture.

To choose a profile picture:

1. Go to **your name** (the 'User' menu) at the top of the page and choose **Profile**.
2. Click **Picture** on the left.
3. Choose one of the following two options:
 - Upload a new picture: Click **Browse** to locate your picture, then click **Upload** to upload it from your computer or file server.
 - Or select one of the default icons provided.
4. Click **Set Profile Picture**.

Screenshot: Choosing a profile picture



Sarah Maddox





Profile
Network
Status Updates
Labels
Watches
Drafts
Settings





Profile
Details
Picture
Password





Your profile picture is used as the icon for your personal space, and to represent you in Confluence. You can upload your own profile picture, or you can choose from one of our standard icons.





Upload a Profile Picture: Upload your own profile picture. Profile pictures will be resized to 48 x 48 pixels.





Choose a Profile Picture:

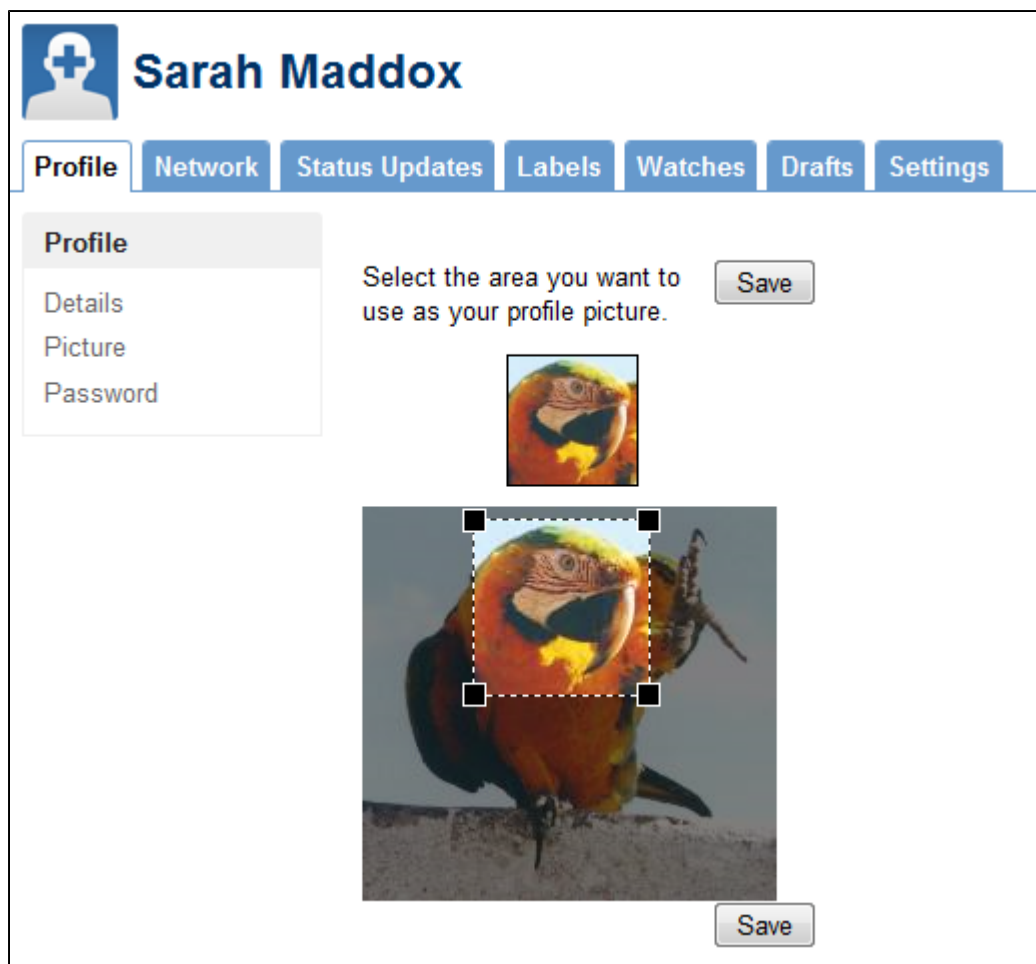





If you upload a profile picture that is larger than 48x48 pixels, the 'Edit My Profile Picture' screen will appear. You can select part of the picture or the entire picture, to be used as the final image for your profile. Note that the size of the final image will always be scaled down to 48x48 pixels.

To edit your profile picture:

1. Click and drag the centre of the superimposed square to select the centre of the new image.
2. Click the corners of the square to resize the area for your new image.
3. Click **Save**.
4. The image from your selected area will be cropped, resized to 48x48 pixels and saved.

Screenshot: Trimming a profile picture



Related Topics

[Deleting a Profile Picture](#)
[Editing Your User Profile](#)
[Setting up your Personal Space](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Deleting a Profile Picture

You can delete the profile picture images that you have uploaded to Confluence.

To delete a profile picture:

1. Go to **your name** (the 'User' menu) at the top of the page and choose **Profile**.
2. Click **Picture** on the left.
3. Locate and select the picture file you wish to delete, then click **Delete**.
 ⓘ Note that you can only delete images that you have uploaded to Confluence. The standard icons cannot be deleted.
4. Click **Delete** to confirm the action. The picture is permanently removed from the server.

Screenshot: Deleting a Profile Picture



Fred Ferdinando

[Profile](#)
[Network](#)
[Labels](#)
[Watches](#)
[Drafts](#)
[Settings](#)

Profile

- [Details](#)
- [Picture](#)
- [Password](#)

Your profile picture is used as the icon for your personal space, and to represent you in Confluence. You can upload your own profile picture, or you can choose from one of our standard icons.

Upload a Profile Picture: Upload your own profile picture. Profile pictures will be resized to 48 x 48 pixels.

Choose a Profile Picture:























Related Topics

[Choosing a Profile Picture](#)
[Editing Your User Profile](#)
[Setting up your Personal Space](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).


Viewing User Profile

A Confluence User's **Profile** view shows details about that person and lists their recent activity. If you are viewing your own Profile view, you can also update your [profile picture](#) and [login password](#). If you are viewing another user's Profile view, you can add them to your [Network](#) of users you are following and if they have set up a Personal Space, you can add this to your list of Favourites.

To access your User Profile view:

- Go to **your name** (the 'User' menu) at the top of the page and choose **Profile**.

Screenshot: User Profile View



Giles Gaskell

[Profile](#)
[Network](#)
[Status Updates](#)
[Labels](#)
[Watches](#)
[Drafts](#)
[Settings](#)


Profile

- [Details](#)
- [Picture](#)
- [Password](#)

“ Touching up Community-based features. ”
yesterday at 1:53 PM | [Clear](#)

About Me [Edit](#)

I'm a Technical Writer at Atlassian. I started working at Atlassian back in December 2008 and focus mainly on documenting new features for Confluence. In my spare time, I enjoy participating in traditional Indonesian 'gamelan' orchestra groups. This is one of my favourite instruments - the 'reong':







Personal [Edit](#)

Full Name: Giles Gaskell
Email: ggaskell@atlassian.com
Phone: +555 5555
IM: gg@chat.example.com
Website: <http://www.atlassian.com>
Company

Position: Technical Writer
Department: Development
Location: Sydney


Activity

-  [Giles Gaskell](#)
 profile updated less than a minute ago
-  [reong.png](#)
 attached 19 minutes ago
- “ Touching up Community-based features. ”
yesterday at 1:53 PM
-  [Drafts for Confluence 3.0 forum announcements - including Advanced Warnings](#)
 updated May 25
-  [AODC conference happened and was good](#)
 commented May 25

Updating your Profile

You can update the following aspects of your Profile from this view:

- **Information about yourself** - to modify these details, see [Editing Your User Profile](#).
- **Your Profile picture** - to change your Profile picture or upload a new one, see [Choosing a Profile Picture](#).
- **Your login password** - to change your login password, see [Changing Password](#).

 You can switch between your Profile, Profile picture update and login password update views by clicking the '**Details**', '**Picture**' and '**Password**' links in the left-hand column, respectively.

Related Topics

[Editing Your User Profile](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Viewing and Revoking OAuth Access Tokens

This page describes the purpose of OAuth access tokens which have been issued on behalf of your Confluence user account and provides instructions on how to revoke them.

On this page:

- [OAuth Access Tokens](#)
- [Viewing your OAuth Access Tokens](#)
 - [OAuth Access Token Details](#)
- [Revoking your OAuth Access Tokens](#)

OAuth Access Tokens

OAuth access tokens allow you to use a Confluence gadget on an external web application or website (also known as the 'consumer') and grant this gadget access to Confluence data which is restricted or privy to your Confluence user account.

OAuth access tokens will only appear in your user profile if the following conditions have been met:

1. Your Confluence Administrator has established an OAuth relationship between your Confluence site and the consumer. Confluence Administrators should refer to [Configuring OAuth](#) for more information about establishing these OAuth relationships.
2. You have accessed a Confluence gadget on the consumer and have conducted the following tasks:
 - a. Logged in to your Confluence user account via the gadget and then,
 - b. Clicked the 'Approve Access' button to allow the gadget access to data that is privy to your Confluence user account.

i Confluence will then send the consumer an OAuth 'access token', which is specific to this gadget. You can view the details of this access token from your Confluence site's user account.

An OAuth access token acts as a type of 'key'. As long as the consumer is in possession of this access token, the Confluence gadget on the consumer will be able to access Confluence data that is both publicly available and privy to your Confluence user account. As a Confluence user, you can revoke this access token at any time. Furthermore, all access tokens expire after seven days. Once the access token is revoked or has expired, the Confluence gadget will only have access to publicly available Confluence data.

Viewing your OAuth Access Tokens

To view all of your Confluence user account's OAuth access tokens:

1. Go to **your name** (the 'User' menu) at the top of the page and choose **Settings**.
 2. Click **View OAuth Access Tokens**. A view similar to [screenshot below](#) is displayed. Refer to [OAuth Access Token Details](#) below for information on interpreting this table.
- i** If no access tokens have been set, then 'None specified' is shown.

Screenshot: Viewing your OAuth Access Tokens

OAuth Access Tokens

Profile Network Status Updates Labels Watches Drafts Settings

Your Settings

General
Email

Gadgets

View OAuth Access Tokens

OAuth Access Tokens

You have allowed the following gadgets/applications to access Confluence data using your account:

Consumer	Consumer Description	Issued on	Expires on	Actions
Confluence QuickNav	Atlassian JIRA at http://blowfly:8080	Dec 02, 2009	Dec 09, 2009	Revoke OAuth Access Token
Activity Stream	Atlassian JIRA at http://blowfly:8080	Dec 02, 2009	Dec 09, 2009	Revoke OAuth Access Token

OAuth Access Token Details

Your list of OAuth access tokens is presented in a tabular format, with each access token presented in separate rows and each property of these tokens presented in a separate columns:

Column Name	Description
Consumer	The name of the Confluence gadget that was added on the consumer.
Consumer Description	A description of this consumer application. This information would have been obtained from the consumer's own OAuth settings when an OAuth relationship was established between Confluence and that consumer. i If the consumer is another Atlassian application, this information is obtained from the Consumer Info tab's 'Description' field of the OAuth Administration settings. The application's administrator can customise this Consumer Info detail.
Issued On	The date on which the OAuth access token was issued to the consumer by Confluence. This would have occurred immediately after you approved this gadget access to your Confluence data (privy to your Confluence user account).
Expires On	The date when the OAuth access token expires. This is seven days after the 'Issued On' date. When this date is reached, the access token will be automatically removed from this list.
Actions	The functionality for revoking the access token .

Revoking your OAuth Access Tokens

To revoke one of your OAuth access tokens:

1. View your Confluence user account's OAuth access tokens ([described above](#)).
2. Locate the Confluence gadget whose OAuth access token you wish to revoke and click **Revoke OAuth Access Token** next to it. The gadget's access token is revoked and the Confluence gadget on the consumer will only have access to publicly available Confluence data.

Choosing Your Homepage

By default, all users are directed to the Dashboard after logging in. However, you can choose to be redirected to the home page of any space on the Confluence site after logging in.

To set the home page:

1. Click on **your name** (the 'user' menu) at the top of the page and choose **Settings**.
2. Click **Edit**.
3. Use the **Site Homepage** list to select a space. Note that only the list of spaces to which you have 'view' access is displayed here. You will be directed to the home page of the selected space when you next log in.
4. Click **Submit**.

Screenshot: General Preferences Settings

Related Topics

[User Profile Overview](#)
[Space Homepage](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Customising your Personal Dashboard

You can customise the Confluence dashboard to provide access to the content on the site that is most relevant to you. The options described on this page will change your own personal dashboard, but will not affect the dashboard that other people see.

If you are a Confluence Administrator, you can change the global dashboard, as seen by all Confluence users. See [the administrator's guide to customising the dashboard](#).

On this page:

- [Displaying your Favourite Spaces](#)
- [Categorising your Spaces](#)
- [Displaying your Favourite Pages](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Displaying your Favourite Spaces

Mark some spaces as [favourites](#). You can now click the **Spaces** tab on the dashboard to see a list of your favourite spaces. You can also click the **Favourite Spaces** tab at the top right of the dashboard to see recently updated content from just your favourite spaces.

Categorising your Spaces

To help keep Confluence spaces organised, you can label spaces with different space categories. See [Using Labels to Categorise Spaces](#). Space categories are used to group related spaces.

For example, you might want to group spaces on your Confluence site by applying the following space categories to the relevant spaces:

- 'design' (for spaces relevant to a design team), and
- 'development' (for spaces relevant to a development team).

If a subset of these spaces is relevant to both teams, apply both the 'design' *and* 'development' categories to each of these spaces to make the spaces appear in both groups.

Once you have added space categories, you can click the **Space Categories** tab at the top right of the dashboard and select a category from the drop-down menu to display only spaces belonging to that category.

Displaying your Favourite Pages

Mark some pages as [favourites](#). You can now click the **Pages** tab on the dashboard to see a list of your favourite pages.

Screenshot: The dashboard, showing favourite pages and space categories

The screenshot shows the Confluence Dashboard interface. At the top left is the 'Dashboard' header with a Confluence logo. To the right are links for 'Add Page' and 'Add Blog Post'. Below the header, there's a 'Welcome to Confluence' message. On the right side, there are tabs for 'All Updates', 'Favourite Spaces', and 'Space Categories'. A dropdown menu is open under 'Space Categories' showing 'Confluence'. Below this, there are updates from users: Stefan Saasen (Launchd & launchctl), Jay Rogers (Summit 2011 Customer Interviews), Giles Gaskell (comment on 'Why I might start to look a bit funny...'), Rosie Jameson (comment on 'Why I might start to look a bit funny...'), and Stefan Saasen (Test 3). On the left side, there are tabs for 'Spaces', 'Pages', and 'Network'. Below 'Pages', there's a 'Favourite Pages' section listing several pages with star icons: 'Egg-citing New Frontlines Reports', 'World Saved, Services Will Now Resume As Usual', 'Home', 'Rise of the Machines Part 5 - Development in the World of Tomorrow', 'Sales Q3 Release Notes', 'Tech writer brilliance kickoff', and 'Atlassian Partner Milestones!'.

Related Topics

[Working with Labels](#)
[Working with Favourites](#)
[Configuring the Site Home Page](#)
[Customising the Dashboard](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Customising the Look and Feel

Confluence allows you to customise the 'look and feel' of an individual space on the Confluence instance through options available in the **Space Administration** menu. By default, the look and feel of a space is based on global settings configured from the [Administration Console](#).

You need to be a [space administrator](#) to edit the look and feel of a space.

- [Applying a Theme to a Space](#)
- [Changing a Space's Logo](#)
- [Changing the Confluence Browser Icon, aka favicon](#)
- [Customising Layouts for a Space](#)
- [Editing a Space's Colour Scheme](#)
- [Styling Confluence with CSS](#)

Related Topics

[Browsing a space](#)
[Administrator's Guide - Design and Layout](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Applying a Theme to a Space

Themes allow you to personalise the 'look and feel' of Confluence. You can apply a theme to your entire Confluence site and to individual spaces. Choose a specific theme if you want to add new functionality or significantly alter the appearance of Confluence.

Confluence comes with a selection of themes. In addition, a [site administrator](#) can install new themes as plugins via the [Confluence Administration Console](#). Provided that the theme is installed into your Confluence site, any [space administrator](#) can apply a theme to a space.

By default when you create a new space, the space will have the Confluence default theme.

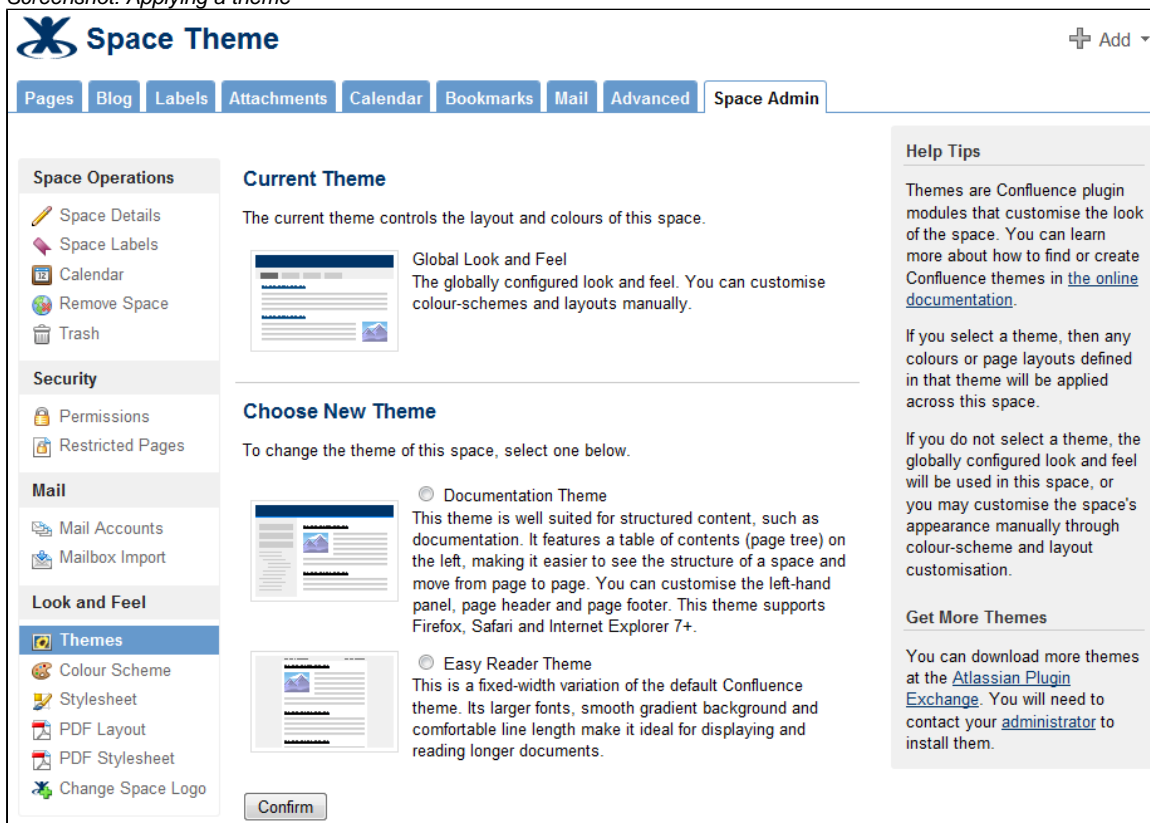
To apply a theme to a space:

1. Choose **Browse > Space Admin**.

 **Space Admin** is displayed only if you are a space administrator for that space or you are a Confluence system administrator.

2. Click **Themes** in the left-hand panel under 'Look and Feel'.
3. Select a theme option.
4. Click **Confirm**.

Screenshot: Applying a theme



Space Theme ✚ Add ▾

Pages | Blog | Labels | Attachments | Calendar | Bookmarks | Mail | Advanced | **Space Admin**

Space Operations

- Space Details
- Space Labels
- Calendar
- Remove Space
- Trash

Security

- Permissions
- Restricted Pages

Mail

- Mail Accounts
- Mailbox Import

Look and Feel

- Themes**
- Colour Scheme
- Stylesheet
- PDF Layout
- PDF Stylesheet
- Change Space Logo

Current Theme

The current theme controls the layout and colours of this space.

Global Look and Feel
The globally configured look and feel. You can customise colour-schemes and layouts manually.

Choose New Theme

To change the theme of this space, select one below.

- ☐ **Documentation Theme**
This theme is well suited for structured content, such as documentation. It features a table of contents (page tree) on the left, making it easier to see the structure of a space and move from page to page. You can customise the left-hand panel, page header and page footer. This theme supports Firefox, Safari and Internet Explorer 7+.
- ☐ **Easy Reader Theme**
This is a fixed-width variation of the default Confluence theme. Its larger fonts, smooth gradient background and comfortable line length make it ideal for displaying and reading longer documents.

Confirm

Help Tips

Themes are Confluence plugin modules that customise the look of the space. You can learn more about how to find or create Confluence themes in [the online documentation](#).

If you select a theme, then any colours or page layouts defined in that theme will be applied across this space.

If you do not select a theme, the globally configured look and feel will be used in this space, or you may customise the space's appearance manually through colour-scheme and layout customisation.

Get More Themes

You can download more themes at the [Atlassian Plugin Exchange](#). You will need to contact your [administrator](#) to install them.

Related Topics

[Applying a Theme to a Site](#)
[Editing a Space's Colour Scheme](#)
[Customising the Look and Feel](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Configuring the Documentation Theme

The Documentation theme is one of the themes bundled with Confluence. (See availability [below](#)). The theme is designed for spaces containing technical documentation, but you may find it useful for other types of content too. It provides an inbuilt table of contents for your wiki space, a configurable header and footer, and text styles suited to documentation. (See features [below](#).)

**Quick guide to applying and customising the Documentation theme**

- Go to **Space Admin** and click **Themes**.
- Select **Documentation Theme** and click **Confirm**.
- If you want to customise the theme, click **Configure theme**.
 - Select or deselect the default page tree.
 - Select or deselect the space-restricted search.
 - Enter the text and wiki markup for your custom left-hand panel header and footer.
 - Click **Save**.

The rest of this page gives more details of the above procedure.

On this page:

- [Applying the Documentation Theme to your Space](#)
- [Applying the Documentation Theme to your Site](#)
- [Customising the Documentation Theme](#)
- [Features of the Documentation Theme](#)
- [Availability of the Theme](#)
- [Hints and Tips](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Screenshot: A wiki page using the Documentation theme

The screenshot shows a Confluence page titled "Crowd Developer Documentation". The page layout includes a top navigation bar with "Dashboard", "Crowd Development", and "Crowd Developer Documentation". A search bar is present in the top right. The left sidebar contains a "Table of Contents" with links to various plugin modules and development resources. The main content area is titled "Getting Started" and includes introductory text about developing with Crowd. The right sidebar features sections for "Main Topics", "Resources", "Help", "Plugin Modules", and "Atlassian Developer Blog".

Applying the Documentation Theme to your Space

You need [space administrator](#) permissions to apply a theme to a space.

Follow the steps below to apply the 'Documentation Theme' to your space. All pages in the space will start using the theme immediately.

To apply a theme to a space:

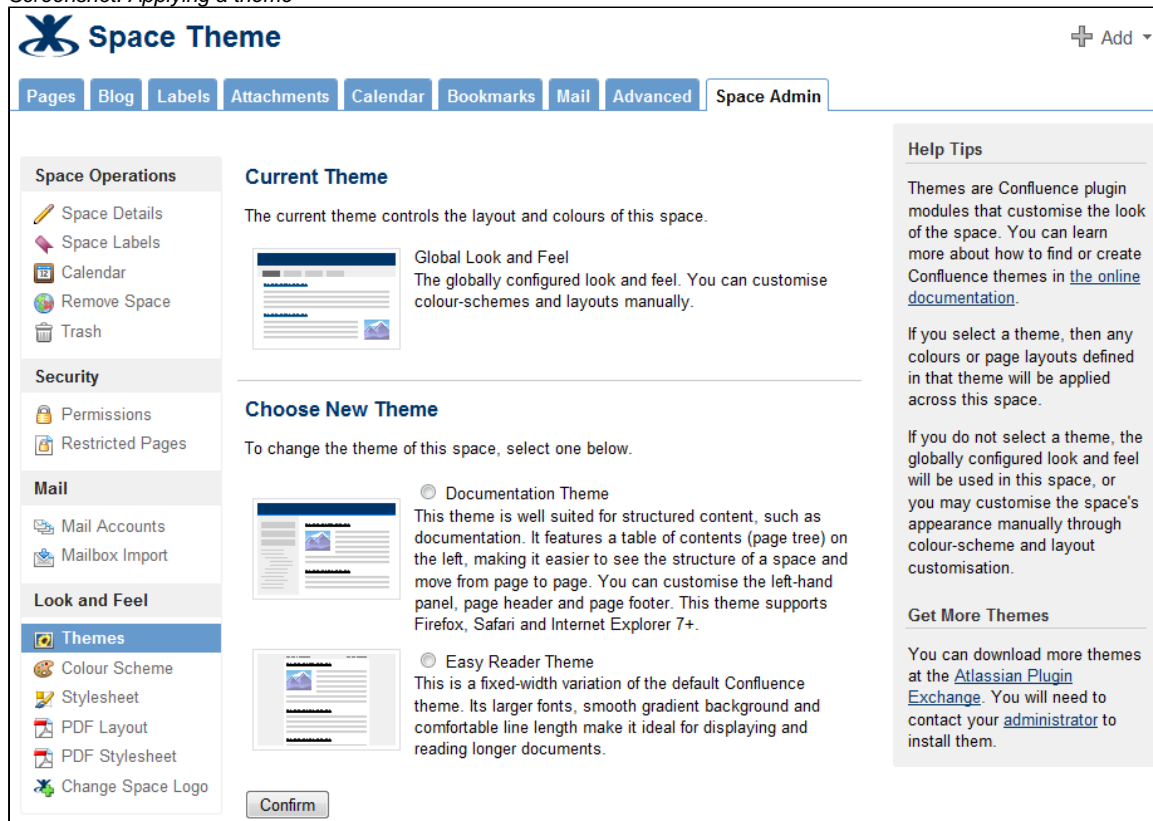
1. Choose **Browse > Space Admin**.



Space Admin is displayed only if you are a space administrator for that space or you are a Confluence system administrator.

- Click **Themes** in the left-hand panel under 'Look and Feel'.
- Select a theme option.
- Click **Confirm**.

Screenshot: Applying a theme



Applying the Documentation Theme to your Site

If you have [site administrator](#) permissions, you can apply the theme at site level. It will then be the default theme for all spaces in the site. See the administrator's guide to [applying a theme](#).

Customising the Documentation Theme

The theme works well without any customisation. If necessary, you can restrict the search to just one space, change the content of the left-hand navigation panel and add your own header and footer.

To customise the Documentation theme:

- Choose **Browse > Space Admin**.
 - Space Admin** is displayed only if you are a space administrator for that space or you are a Confluence system administrator.
- Click **Themes** in the left-hand panel under the heading 'Look and Feel'.
- If the space is not yet using the Documentation theme, apply the theme as described [above](#).
- Click **Configure theme** in the yellow area of the 'Current Theme' section at the top of the page. See screenshot [below](#). The 'Documentation Theme Configuration' screen appears. See screenshot [below](#).
- Select or deselect the **Page Tree** check box. This determines whether your space will display the default search box and table of contents (page tree) in the left-hand panel.
- Select or deselect the **Limit search results to the current space** check box.
 - If you select the check box:
 - The Confluence search will look for matches only in the current space by default. Users can override this restriction when entering their search term. See [Using the Documentation Theme](#).
 - The default page tree in the left-hand panel will not include a search box.
 - If you do not select the check box:
 - The Confluence search will look for matches in the entire Confluence site. This is the default behaviour for other themes too.
 - The default page tree in the left-hand panel will include a search box, which restricts search results to the current space.
- Enter text, images, macros and other wiki markup into any or all of the three text boxes.
 - You can use the **Include** or **Excerpt Include** to include re-usable content into your footer. See hint [below](#).
 - 'Navigation' – This text box contains content for the left-hand panel.
 - If the **Page Tree** check box is selected, the navigation panel contains the default search box and page tree. Any content you enter into the 'Navigation' text box will appear *above* the page tree and search box.
 - You can include your own content *underneath* the page tree as well as above. See hint [below](#). In summary:

Deselect the **Page Tree** check box. Insert your own page tree using the [Pagetree macro](#), then add your own content under the macro.


- 'Header' – This text box contains content for a page header that will appear above the page title on all pages in the space. See example screenshot [below](#).
- 'Footer' – This text box contains content for a page footer that will appear after the comments and above the site footer, on all pages in the space. See example screenshot [below](#).

8. Click **Save**.

Screenshot: The 'Configure theme' option

Current Theme

The current theme controls the layout and colours of this space.




Documentation Theme

Featuring a page tree or a custom navigation, the documentation theme makes it easy to navigate through your Confluence site. The theme is optimised for Firefox, Safari and Internet Explorer 7+.

[Configure theme](#) - further customise this theme's options

Screenshot: Customising the Documentation theme



Documentation Theme Configuration

[Pages](#)
[Blog](#)
[Labels](#)
[Attachments](#)
[Bookmarks](#)
[Mail](#)
[Advanced](#)
[Space Admin](#)

Space Operations

- Space Details
- Space Labels
- Remove Space
- Copy Space
- Trash

Security

- Permissions
- Restricted Pages

Mail

- Mail Accounts
- Mailbox Import

Look and Feel

- Themes**
- Colour Scheme
- PDF Layout
- PDF Stylesheet
- Change Space Logo

Knowledge Base Survey

- Configure Survey
- Survey Results

Navigation

☐ **Page Tree**
Show the page tree in the sidebar.

☐ **Limit search results to the current space**
Limit search results returned by the top right search field to the current space.

Navigation

```

h4. All Versions
(include:ALLDOC:_Latest Versions of Crowd Documentation|nopanel=true)
h4. Crowd 2.2 Documentation
(pagetree:root=Crowd Documentation|searchBox=true)
[Index|http://confluence.atlassian.com/labels/listlabels-alpha|view.action?key=CROWD]
[Downloads (PDF, HTML & XML formats)|ALLDOC:Crowd Documentation Directory#downloads]

```

Add your own links and content to the sidebar using wiki markup.

Messages

Header

```

(info:icon=false)*This documentation relates to {excerpt-include:_Major Release Number|nopanel=true}.*
If you are using an earlier version, please view the [previous versions of the Crowd documentation|ALLDOC:Crowd Documentation Directory] and select the relevant version.{info}

```

Display a banner or text at the top of every page in this space by entering wiki markup here.

Footer

```

{include:_Documentation Footer|nopanel=true}
{include:ALLDOC:_Copyright Notice|nopanel=true}

```

Display a banner or text at the bottom of every page in this space by entering wiki markup here.

Customising the Theme at Site Level

If you have [site administrator](#) permissions, you can apply and customise the theme at site level. The customisation options are the same as the space level options, as described above.

Features of the Documentation Theme


Screenshot: A customised header, footer and left-hand panel

The screenshot shows a Confluence page with the following annotations:

- The {spacejump} macro.** This is how we use it to link from one space to the same page in another space. (Points to a breadcrumb link 'Crowd 1.6' in the header)
- Customisable header.** This one is yellow because we used a {warning} macro. (Points to the yellow header bar)
- The sidebar icon.** Click it to hide/show the left-hand panel. (Points to the sidebar icon in the header)
- The search box.** You can restrict the search to the current space. (Points to the search box in the header)
- Customisable left-hand panel.** We have added extra information above and below the page tree. (Points to the left-hand panel content)
- Drag the bar left or right to resize the left-hand panel.** Left and right panels scroll independently. (Points to the bar between the left-hand panel and the main content)
- Customisable footer.** We have added the blue buttons and copyright statement in our footer. (Points to the footer content)

The above screenshot shows a wiki space with a customised left-hand panel, header and footer.

Here is a summary of the features that the Documentation theme provides:

- By default, the left-hand panel contains a search box and a table of contents (page tree) showing all the pages in your space. Specifically, it shows the pages that are children of the space's home page.
- The left-hand panel is fully customisable. You can choose to include or exclude the search box and page tree. You can enter your own text, images and wiki markup.
- People viewing the page can drag the thick bar between the left-hand panel and the content, to increase or decrease the width of the panel. They can also remove the panel altogether, by clicking the sidebar icon  at top right, next to the search box.
- The left-hand and right-hand panels scroll independently of each other.
- The page title is neatly above the page content, and not uncomfortably above the navigation panel as tends to happen when you insert the navigation panel yourself.
- Because the left-hand panel is part of the theme, it will be upgraded whenever Confluence is upgraded. There is no need to remove and then re-apply your customisations on each upgrade, as you would do if you added your own left-hand navigation bar.
- The theme also provides a customisable header and footer, which will appear at the top and bottom of every page.
- The text and heading styles are designed to enhance the content typically found in a documentation space.
- You can use the [Space Jump macro](#) to link from a page in one wiki space to a page with the same name in another space, without knowing the name of the page when you create the link.
- You can limit the Confluence search results to the current space. If you choose this option, the Confluence search will look for matches only in the current space by default. Users can override the restriction. See [Using the Documentation Theme](#).

Availability of the Theme

Confluence Versions

The Documentation theme is bundled with Confluence 3.2 and later. If you have Confluence 3.1, your Confluence Administrator can download the theme from the [Atlassian Plugin Exchange](#) and [install it as a plugin](#).

The theme is not available for versions of Confluence earlier than Confluence 3.1.

Hints and Tips

Below are some hints that you may find useful when using the Documentation theme. Where can I see a working example of the Documentation theme?

The Confluence documentation uses the Documentation theme. If you are reading this documentation online on the [Atlassian documentation wiki](#), you are seeing a working version of the Documentation theme.

Which pages will appear in the Documentation theme's table of contents?

The theme constructs the page tree in the left-hand panel from all pages that are child pages of the space's home page. Each space has a single page designated as the 'Home' page. You can specify the home page in the [space administration section](#).

Help, my pages do not appear in the Documentation theme table of contents


Cause 1: Your pages are not under the space's home page. The most probable reason why your pages do not appear in the page tree in the left-hand panel is this: The theme constructs that table of contents from all pages that are child pages of the space's home page. If your pages are above the home page in the page tree, they will not appear in the left-hand panel.

There are two ways to fix the problem:

- You can change the designated space home page in the [space administration section](#).
- Or you can drag and drop all your pages to make them children of the current home page. You can drag and drop pages in the 'Pages' section of the space 'Browse' screen. See [Moving a Page](#).

Cause 2: Problem with upgrade from Confluence 3.1, with Documentation theme as plugin, to Confluence 3.2 or later with Documentation theme bundled. If your existing Confluence installation already has the Documentation theme plugin installed, you may find that after upgrading to Confluence 3.2 the left-hand navigation bar is empty in the spaces that use the theme. The fix is to enable all modules of the Documentation theme plugin. See the [knowledge base article](#).

Help, my left-hand panel has disappeared

If your entire left-hand panel has disappeared when using the Documentation theme, this is probably because you have clicked the sidebar icon  at top right, next to the search box. Click the icon again to restore the panel.

Hiding Pages from the Left-Hand Table of Contents

You can 'hide' pages by putting them at the same level as or higher than the space home page.

Each space has a single page designated as the 'Home' page. You can specify the home page in the [space administration section](#).

The theme constructs the page tree in the left-hand panel from all pages that are child pages of the space's home page.

If your documentation pages are at the same level as the space home page, they will not appear in the left-hand navigation bar. So you can 'hide' pages by putting them at the same level as or higher than the space home page. The pages will show up in the search results and people can see the content if they open the page, but the pages will not appear in the left-hand panel.

More detail: The theme uses the [Pagetree macro](#) to produce the table of contents. When entering the Pagetree macro, you can choose the top page in the page tree. The Documentation theme chooses the space home page as the top page.

Using reusable Content in your Header, Footer or Left-Hand Panel

You can use any text or wiki markup in your theme header, footer or left-hand panel. One useful hint is to use the [Include](#) or [Excerpt Include](#) to include re-usable content into your footer.

The screenshot [above](#) shows the theme customisation options, with examples of the macros used to include content from other pages. And the example screenshot [also above](#) shows the resulting header, footer and left-hand panel.

Adding Content Below the Page Tree in your Left-Hand Panel

If you want to include your own content underneath the page tree, you can deselect the '**Page Tree**' check box, add your own page tree using the [Pagetree macro](#) in the 'Navigation' text box, and then add your own content under the macro.

The screenshot [above](#) shows the theme customisation options, with the default page tree deselected and a custom page tree inserted, along with additional content in the left-hand panel. The example screenshot [also above](#) shows the resulting left-hand panel.


Adding Underlines to your Links

By default, the Documentation theme does not underline hyperlinks. If you prefer to have your links underlined, you can edit the CSS stylesheet for your space and add the following CSS code:

```
.wiki-content a:link, .wiki-content a:visited, .wiki-content a:active {
    text-decoration: underline;
}
```

To edit a space's CSS style sheets:

1. Choose **Browse > Space Admin**.

 **Space Admin** is displayed only if you are a space administrator for that space or you are a Confluence system administrator.

2. Click **Stylesheet** in the left-hand panel under the heading 'Look and Feel'.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. Paste your custom CSS into the text field.
5. Click **Save**. The new CSS will be visible on all content pages in the space.

Jumping to the Same Page in Another Space

The {spacejump} macro is provided along with the Documentation theme. You can use space jumping to link from a page in one wiki space to a page with the same name in another space, without knowing the name of the page when you create the link. When a reader is viewing a page and clicks the link provided by the macro, they will go to a page with the same name, but in the space specified in the macro. See [more about the Space Jump macro](#).

Related Topics

[Using the Documentation Theme](#)
[Space Jump Macro](#)
[Applying a Theme to a Space](#)
[Applying a Theme to a Site](#)
[Editing a Space's Colour Scheme](#)
[Customising the Look and Feel](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Configuring the Easy Reader Theme

The Easy Reader theme is one of the themes bundled with Confluence. This is a fixed-width variation of the default Confluence theme. Its larger fonts, smooth gradient background and comfortable line length make it ideal for displaying and reading longer documents.



Quick guide to applying the Easy Reader theme

1. Choose **Space Admin > Themes**.
2. Select **Easy Reader Theme**.
3. Click **Confirm**.

The rest of this page gives more details of the above procedure.

On this page:

- [Applying the Easy Reader Theme to your Space](#)
- [Customising the Look and Feel of the Easy Reader Theme](#)
- [Hints and Tips](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Screenshot: A wiki page using the Easy Reader theme

Dashboard > Documentation Testing > Home > A long policy document
Browse ▾ Sarah Maddox ♥ ▾ Search

A long policy document

Added by Sarah Maddox ♥, last edited by Sarah Maddox ♥ on Mar 01, 2010

Edit
Add ▾
Tools ▾

Summary

- We encourage and display customer comments and votes openly in our issue tracking systems, <http://jira.atlassian.com> and <http://studio.atlassian.com>.
- We do not publish roadmaps.
- Product Managers review our most popular voted issues on a regular basis.
- We schedule features based on a variety of factors.
- Our Support:Atlassian Bug Fixing Policy is distinct from our Feature Request process.
- Atlassian provides consistent updates on the top 20 feature/improvement requests (in our issue tracker systems).

How to Track what Features are Being Implemented

When a new feature or improvement is scheduled, the 'fix-for' version will be indicated in the JIRA issue. This happens for the upcoming release only. We maintain roadmaps for more distant releases internally, but because these roadmaps are often pre-empted by changing customer demands, we do not publish them.

How Atlassian Chooses What to Implement

In every major release we *aim* to implement highly requested features, but it is not the only determining factor. Other factors include:

- **Direct feedback** from face to face meetings with customers, and through our support and sales channels.
- **Availability of staff** to implement features.
- **Impact** of the proposed changes on the application and its underlying architecture.
- How **well defined** the requested feature is (some issues gain in popularity rapidly, allowing little time to plan their implementation).
- Our long-term **strategic vision** for the product.

How to Contribute to Feature Development

Influencing Atlassian's release cycle

We encourage our customers to vote on feature requests in JIRA. The current tally of votes is available online in our issue tracking systems.


 You need [space administrator](#) permissions to apply a theme to a space.

Applying the Easy Reader Theme to your Space

Follow the steps below to apply the 'Easy Reader Theme' to your space. All pages in the space will start using the theme immediately.

To apply a theme to a space:

1. Choose **Browse > Space Admin**.

 **Space Admin** is displayed only if you are a space administrator for that space or you are a Confluence system administrator.

2. Click **Themes** in the left-hand panel under 'Look and Feel'.
3. Select a theme option.
4. Click **Confirm**.

Screenshot: Applying a theme

The screenshot shows the 'Space Theme' administration page. At the top, there's a navigation bar with tabs: Pages, Blog, Labels, Attachments, Calendar, Bookmarks, Mail, Advanced, and Space Admin (selected). Below this is a left sidebar with categories: Space Operations (Space Details, Space Labels, Calendar, Remove Space, Trash), Security (Permissions, Restricted Pages), Mail (Mail Accounts, Mailbox Import), and Look and Feel (Themes, Colour Scheme, Stylesheet, PDF Layout, PDF Stylesheet, Change Space Logo). The 'Themes' option is selected. The main content area is titled 'Current Theme' and 'Choose New Theme'. Under 'Current Theme', it says 'The current theme controls the layout and colours of this space.' and shows a preview of the 'Global Look and Feel' theme. Under 'Choose New Theme', it says 'To change the theme of this space, select one below.' and lists two options: 'Documentation Theme' (described as well-suited for structured content with a table of contents) and 'Easy Reader Theme' (described as a fixed-width variation with larger fonts and a smooth gradient background). A 'Confirm' button is at the bottom. On the right, there's a 'Help Tips' section explaining that themes are Confluence plugin modules that customise the look of the space, and a 'Get More Themes' section with a link to the Atlassian Plugin Exchange.

Applying the theme to your entire Confluence site

If you have [site administrator](#) permissions, you can apply the theme at site level. It will then be the default theme for all spaces in the site. See the administrator's guide to [applying a theme](#).

Customising the Look and Feel of the Easy Reader Theme

You can customise the space CSS style sheets to change the colours, background image and other styles in the theme. See the guide to [using CSS to customise the Easy Reader theme](#).

Hints and Tips

If a page has content that is very wide, it will either:

- cause a scroll bar to appear, or
- break out, i.e. the content will extend over the right-hand border of the page.

Related Topics

[Applying a Theme to a Space](#)
[Applying a Theme to a Site](#)
[Customising the Look and Feel](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Changing a Space's Logo

In Confluence, you can replace the default logo for a space with a logo of your own choice.

You need to be a [space administrator](#) to replace a space's logo.

The instructions below refer to global spaces. For your [personal space](#), your [profile picture](#) is used as the space icon.

To change a space's logo:

1. Choose **Browse > Space Admin**.
Space Admin is displayed only if you are a space administrator for that space or you are a Confluence system administrator.
2. Click **Change Space Logo** in the left panel under the heading 'Look and Feel'. See the screenshot below.

3. Use the browse option to locate the new logo and click **Upload**.


Screenshot: Changing a space's logo

Change the logo for this space.

■ **Image**

Upload Logo

■ **Current**
(default)



■ **Image Data**


H: 30
W: 42
GIF

Related Topics

[Customising the Look and Feel](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Changing the Confluence Browser Icon, aka favicon

The Confluence logo  is displayed in the user's browser to identify the Confluence browser tab. To use a custom image for your Confluence site:

1. Obtain or create an image in PNG file format. To maximise browser compatibility, it should be 32x32 pixels in size, 71x71 DPI (dots per inch) and have an 8 bit colour depth.
 2. In your Confluence installation, find the `... \confluence\images\icons` directory.
 3. Back up the file `favicon.png`.
 4. Replace the `favicon.png` file with your custom PNG image.
- i** You may also need to back up and replace the following images in your Confluence installation:
- `... \confluence\images\icons\favicon.ico`
 - `... \confluence\favicon.ico`
 - `... \confluence\images\logo\confluence_16.png` (Reduce this image to 16x16 pixels.)
5. Restart your application server.

 *The information on this page **does not apply** to **Confluence OnDemand**.*

Users may need to clear their browser cache before they will see the new image.



Converting an icon to a PNG

To create an ICO out of your PNG image, you can use the freeware tool [png2ico](http://png2ico.com/) or the the online tool at <http://converticon.com/>.

Related Topics

[Customising the Look and Feel](#)

Customising Layouts for a Space

Confluence's look and feel can be modified by editing the 'decorator' (layout) files. Modifying these files allows you to change the look and feel of:

- The Confluence site as a whole, which includes all spaces within the Confluence site.
- An individual space within the Confluence site.

This page tells you how to customise the layout files for a space. To perform these customisations, you will require space administrator permissions for that space.



For security reasons, you must also have Confluence [system administrator](#) permissions to modify any **space** layout throughout your Confluence site.

A feature request ([CONF-5808](#)) has been submitted to allow space administrators (who are not system administrators) to access and modify **space** layouts. Please feel free to vote on this issue if you would like to see this feature implemented.

Confluence system administrators can also customise the layout of their entire Confluence site as a whole. For more information, please refer to [Customising Layouts](#).



Be aware that site layout file customisations modify the default layout files of all spaces in the Confluence site. However, any space layout file customisations will override the equivalent site layout file customisations.



If you modify the look and feel of Confluence by following these instructions, you will need to update your customisations when upgrading Confluence. The more dramatic the customisations are, the harder it will be to reapply your changes when upgrading. Please take this into account before proceeding with any customisations. For more information on updating your customisations, please refer to [Upgrading Custom Layouts](#).

Confluence is built on top of the Open Source SiteMesh library, a web-page layout system that provides a consistent look and feel across a site. SiteMesh works through 'decorators' that define a page's layout and structure.

To edit the layout of Confluence, you will need to modify these decorator files. A decorator file is a vmd file and is written in a very simple programming language called **Velocity**. Learn [more about Velocity](#). Once you become familiar with Velocity, you can edit the decorator files to personalise the appearance of Confluence.

These decorator files are grouped into:

- **Site layouts** : These are used to define the controls that surround each page in the site. For example, if you want to make changes to the header and the footer, you will need to modify these layouts.
- **Content layouts** : These control the appearance of content such as pages and blog posts: they don't change the way the pages themselves are displayed, but they allow you to alter the way the surrounding comments or attachments are shown.
- **Export Layouts**: These control the appearance of spaces and pages when they are exported to HTML. If you are using Confluence to generate a static website, for example, you will need to modify these layouts.

Learn more about using [decorators](#).

To edit a decorator file:

1. Choose **Browse > Space Admin**.



Space Admin is displayed only if you are a space administrator for that space or you are a Confluence system administrator.

2. Click the **Layout** link in the left panel under the heading 'Look and Feel'. A list of the layouts for the space is listed.



Layout is only displayed if you are a Confluence system administrator.

- Click **View Default** to view the vmd file.
- Click **Create Custom** to edit the default vmd file. This will open up the vmd file in edit mode. Make changes and click **Update**.

Screenshot : Edit Layouts Example

Decorator	Operations
Space Export Layout When you export a space to HTML, this layout is used to create the index page.	< default > | Create custom | View Default
Page Export Layout When you perform an export, each page is converted to HTML using this layout.	< default > | Create custom | View Default

Click the thumbnail to see an example of a vmd file:



Related Topics

[Customising the Look and Feel](#)
[Applying a Theme to a Space](#)
[Administrator's Guide - Design and Layout](#)


Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Editing a Space's Colour Scheme

Confluence allows you to customise the colour scheme of a space. By default, a space's colour scheme is based on [global settings](#) configured from the [Administration Console](#).

You need to be a [space administrator](#) to edit a space's colour scheme.

To change the colour scheme for a space:

1. Choose **Browse > Space Admin**.
i **Space Admin** is displayed only if you are a space administrator for that space or you are a Confluence system administrator.
2. Click **Colour Scheme** in the left-hand panel under the heading **Look and Feel**.
3. Click **Select** next to a colour scheme under **Custom Colour Scheme** (if not already selected).
4. Click the **Edit** link. This will bring up a new screen. See screenshot below.
5. Enter standard HTML/CSS2 colour codes, or use the colour-picker  to choose a new colour from the palette provided. Any changes you make will immediately be reflected in this space.


The colour scheme applies to the following UI elements:

- **Top Bar** - the bar across the top of the page that contains the breadcrumbs
- **Tab Navigation Background** - the background colour of the tab navigation menus
- **Tab Navigation Text** - the text of the tab navigation menus
- **Breadcrumbs Text** - the breadcrumbs text in the top bar of the page
- **Space Name Text** - the text of the current space name located above the page title
- **Heading Text** - all heading tags throughout the space
- **Links** - all links throughout the space
- **Borders and Dividers** - table borders and dividing lines
- **Tab Navigation Background Highlight** - the background colour of the tab navigation menu when highlighted
- **Tab Navigation Text Highlight** - the text of the tab navigation menu when highlighted
- **Top Bar Menu Selected Background** - the background colour of the top bar drop down menu when selected
- **Top Bar Menu Item** - the text colour of the menu items in the top bar drop down menu
- **Page Menu Selected Background** - the background colour of the drop down page menu when selected
- **Page Menu Item Text** - the text of the menu items in the drop down page menu
- **Menu Item Selected Background** - the background colour of the menu item when selected (applies to both the top bar and page drop down menus)
- **Menu Item Selected Text** - the text colour of the menu item when selected (applies to both the top bar and page drop down menus)

Please note that some UI elements are specific to the default theme and may not take affect for other themes.

Screenshot : Editing a space's colour scheme

Custom Colour Scheme
A custom colour scheme which can be edited.

 **Selected**

[Edit](#)

The following colours can be customised for this colour scheme.

Top Bar		#003366	
Tab Navigation Background		#3c78b5	
Tab Navigation Text		#ffffff	
Breadcrumbs Text		#ffffff	
Space Name Text		#999999	
Heading Text		#003366	
Links		#003366	
Borders and Dividers		#3c78b5	
Tab Navigation Background Highlight		#003366	
Tab Navigation Text Highlight		#ffffff	
Top Bar Menu Selected Background		#336699	
Top Bar Menu Item Text		#003366	
Page Menu Selected Background		#6699cc	
Page Menu Item Text		#535353	
Menu Item Selected Background		#6699cc	
Menu Item Selected Text		#ffffff	

[Reset](#) [Save](#) [Cancel](#)

**Handy Hint**

If you mess things up, just click the **Reset** button and then try again.

Related Topics

[Customising the Look and Feel](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Styling Confluence with CSS

This page explains the facility for making visual changes to the look and feel of Confluence with CSS.

On this page:

- [Introduction](#)
- [Considerations for Using Custom CSS](#)
- [Getting Started](#)
- [CSS Resources](#)
- [Related Pages](#)

Introduction

Cascading Style Sheets (CSS) are an industry-standard way of styling a web page. The content of a page is rendered with HTML, and its look and feel is determined by CSS files.

With the release of Confluence 2.10, you can upload a CSS text file and apply it to a space or even a whole Confluence instance.



This function is turned off by default. To allow space administrators to edit stylesheets, go to the security configuration section of the Confluence Administration Console and turn on **'Enable Custom Stylesheets for Spaces'**.

Creating CSS styles that work seamlessly across different browsers is a delicate task for basic web sites, and reasonably challenging when customising web applications like Confluence. It is important to test each change that you make and ensure it works as expected in all areas of Confluence – for example, on the Confluence Dashboard as well as on regular pages.

In order to get you started, we have compiled this introduction, a [basic styling tutorial](#) and a more [advanced tutorial](#).

Considerations for Using Custom CSS

CSS Knowledge is Required

If you are not familiar with CSS, see the links in the [CSS Resources](#) section below. You should spend some time to become confident with Cascading Style Sheets before you start editing your Confluence style sheets.

Security

Custom CSS can be used to inject scripts into a page, opening the risk of cross-site scripting (XSS) attacks. With this feature enabled, space administrators could upload styles that steal other users' login credentials, trick their browsers into performing actions on the wiki without their knowledge, or even obtain global administration privileges. As such, this feature is disabled by default. Confluence administrators should only enable custom CSS if they are comfortable with the risks listed in this paragraph.

Scaling

Each page needs to scale. Depending on the resolution of the user's screen, the content should render intelligently. Your designs needs to degrade gracefully. Try resizing each page that exists in Confluence. There are quite a few pages in the browse-space-section, like drafts, labels, page hierarchy, and so on. Your style has to work everywhere, not just in the first page you happen to be looking at.

Features Cannot Be Disabled

It is easy to turn off certain links, headers, or even menu items by simply setting their style to 'hidden'. This can help you to roll out Confluence to users that may not be very Wiki-savvy yet. The simpler the UI, the easier it may be for them to use. However, please remember that removing the link to a part of the application does not mean that the functionality is not available. Every user can still change their style from within their browsers, or access the URL directly. Don't rely on CSS to disable parts of Confluence.

Features Should Not Be Disabled

Users familiar with Confluence will expect to find the same controls that they are accustomed to. Removing buttons or controls from the interface is not advised as it may frustrate your users and cause them to circumvent your design by using direct URL access, as mentioned above.

Confluence Version Compatibility

Be aware of any plans to upgrade your Confluence instance. Future versions of Confluence may not be compatible with your custom CSS — this may cause your CSS to break, requiring maintenance when Confluence is upgraded. Ask your Confluence administrator for more information.

Test on Different Web Browsers

As a rule you should test your modifications on different web browsers. Internet Explorer, Firefox, Opera and Safari (on Mac OS X) are some of the more popular browsers.



Supported Web Browsers

Please ensure that you are using one of the web browsers supported by Confluence. If you are using an unsupported browser or browser version, some features may not work correctly. You can find the list of supported web browsers and browser versions on this page: [Supported Platforms](#).

CSS Customisation is Not Supported


As creating custom CSS has potentially limitless possibilities, Atlassian will not support issues that are caused by or related to CSS customisation.

Getting Started

Editing the CSS

To edit a space's CSS style sheets:

1. Choose **Browse > Space Admin**.

 **Space Admin** is displayed only if you are a space administrator for that space or you are a Confluence system administrator.

2. Click **Stylesheet** in the left-hand panel under the heading 'Look and Feel'.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. Paste your custom CSS into the text field.
5. Click **Save**. The new CSS will be visible on all content pages in the space.

Follow the Tutorial

Follow the examples in the [Basic Styling Tutorial](#) or the more advanced [Styling Tabs in Confluence](#) to get started.

CSS Resources

- [W3C CSS Standards](#)
- [W3schools CSS Introduction](#)
- [Mozilla Developer Network](#)
- [W3resource.com](#)

Related Pages

[Basic Styling Tutorial](#)
[Styling Tabs in Confluence](#)
[Styling Fonts in Confluence](#)
[Including Cascading Stylesheets in Themes](#)

Basic Styling Tutorial

This page contains instructions on how to get started with custom CSS styling in Confluence.

On this page:

- [CSS Editing Quick-Start](#)
- [Tutorial: Changing the Header Background](#)
- [CSS Editing Tips](#)
 - [Begin With a Space Stylesheet](#)
 - [Use the Right Tools](#)
 - [Edit Simple Elements First](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

CSS Editing Quick-Start

To edit a space's CSS style sheets:

1. Choose **Browse > Space Admin**.

 **Space Admin** is displayed only if you are a space administrator for that space or you are a Confluence system administrator.

2. Click **Stylesheet** in the left-hand panel under the heading 'Look and Feel'.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. Paste your custom CSS into the text field.
5. Click **Save**. The new CSS will be visible on all content pages in the space.

Tutorial: Changing the Header Background

The header is the menu area at the top of a default Confluence page where the **Breadcrumb Links**, **Browse** menu, **User** menu and the **Quick Search** box reside. In this example, we are going to change the background of the header to include a custom graphic.

1. Create a custom graphic. For this example, we created a custom header graphic of 1046 x 61 pixels.
2. Upload the custom graphic to a page in the space that you are customising.
3. Note the page ID of the page where you uploaded the new graphic. (in this example, the page ID was '**658833839**').
4. Compose your custom CSS for the header. The example below loads the new graphic (called '**header.png**') from a specific page (denoted by page ID '**658833839**') in the same space.

```
#header {
    background-image:url('../download/attachments/658833839/header.png');
    background-repeat: no-repeat;
}
```

5. Log in as the Space Administrator.
6. Open the Space Admin page.
7. Click **Stylesheet**.
8. Click **Edit** to change the code in the text field.

9. Paste your custom CSS into the text field.
10. Click **Save** and then reload the page (you may have to shift-reload). The background of the header will change.
11. The custom header will be visible on all content pages in the space. To revert your change, simply delete the custom code from the 'Stylesheet' page and click **Save**.

CSS Editing Tips

Begin With a Space Stylesheet

A space stylesheet is a good starting point for CSS customisation, as it already includes all of the elements that can be changed. When you work on the space stylesheet it styles all content pages in the space. Build and test it at space-level, before considering applying the new stylesheet to your entire site. Once you are satisfied with your space design, test it thoroughly until you are confident that it has no problems. Then, you can look into advanced customisation of the Confluence CSS such as adjusting the Search page, the Dashboard and other integral pages.

Use the Right Tools

As the Confluence CSS is reasonably sophisticated, web development applications will help you to understand how the page styles have been created. In particular, you will need to view the existing source for the pages you're starting to work on. If you don't already have some, tools such as the following free applications will allow you to do this.

1. Firebug

Firebug, a plugin for the Firefox web browser, allows you to take a look at the style of each element on your page. This is very useful to see what styles are currently applied, for example styles applied to the header only.

2. Web Developer

The Web Developer plugin for Firefox allows you to edit CSS inline and create new page designs.

3. CSS Edit

CSS Edit is a stand-alone CSS editor for Macintosh that extracts all existing styles from a given page and allows you to overwrite these.

Edit Simple Elements First

Begin by editing simple elements and checking that they work. By making changes, then checking that each one worked, you can easily isolate any CSS code that is causing problems. Be aware that some page elements are more suited to customisation than others. For example, adding a gradient to the toolbar is less likely to 'break' the page than changing the page width. Editing reasonably static elements such as background graphics will render more predictably than designs which attempt to completely change the user interface or the Javascript-powered drop-down menus (which we don't recommend editing).

Related Topics

[Styling Confluence with CSS](#)

[Styling Tabs in Confluence](#)

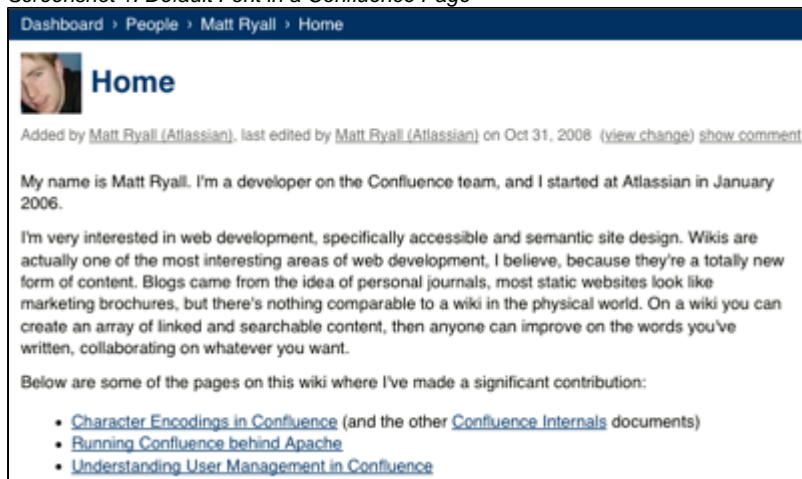
[Including Cascading Stylesheets in Themes](#)

Styling Fonts in Confluence

Confluence provides the ability to adjust its visual style via Cascading Style Sheets (CSS). With this feature, it is very easy to change the look and feel of Confluence.


This tutorial shows you to change the fonts of a normal Confluence page. We will show how to change the font and font sizes with a few lines of CSS.

Screenshot 1: Default Font in a Confluence Page



Screenshot 2: Custom Font in a Confluence Page

Dashboard › People › Matt Ryall › Home



Home

Added by [Matt Ryall \(Atlassian\)](#), last edited by [Matt Ryall \(Atlassian\)](#) on Oct 31, 2008 ([view change](#)) [show comment](#)

My name is Matt Ryall. I'm a developer on the Confluence team, and I started at Atlassian in January 2006.

I'm very interested in web development, specifically accessible and semantic site design. Wikis are actually one of the most interesting areas of web development, I believe, because they're a totally new form of content. Blogs came from the idea of personal journals, most static websites look like marketing brochures, but there's nothing comparable to a wiki in the physical world. On a wiki you can create an array of linked and searchable content, then anyone can improve on the words you've written, collaborating on whatever you want.

Below are some of the pages on this wiki where I've made a significant contribution:

- [Character Encodings in Confluence](#) (and the other [Confluence Internals](#) documents)
- [Running Confluence behind Apache](#)
- [Understanding User Management in Confluence](#)

At the bottom of this page you can find the code for the custom font. Simply copy and paste it into the Space Stylesheet form within the Space Administration section.

Changing the fonts

In order to customise the fonts in Confluence, you first need to set the body font to the font you want. Second, you may want to adjust the font size to account for the fact that different fonts have different relative sizes.

The relevant CSS is shown below, and can be configured in Space Admin > Stylesheets. These styles change Confluence's font from its default of Helvetica/Arial – *sans serif* fonts – to Times/Times New Roman – *serif* fonts. To adjust for the fact that Times is a bit smaller than Helvetica, we increase the font size to 14 pixels.

```
body {
    font-family: Times, "Times New Roman", serif;
    font-size: 14px;
}
.wiki-content,
.wiki-content p,
.wiki-content table,
.wiki-content tr,
.wiki-content td,
.wiki-content th,
.wiki-content ol,
.wiki-content ul,
.wiki-content li {
    font-size: 14px;
}
```

The many styles which include 'wiki-content' are necessary to change the font-size for all the tags in the wiki content.

Related Topics

[Basic Styling Tutorial](#)
[Styling Tabs in Confluence](#)
[Including Cascading Stylesheets in Themes](#)

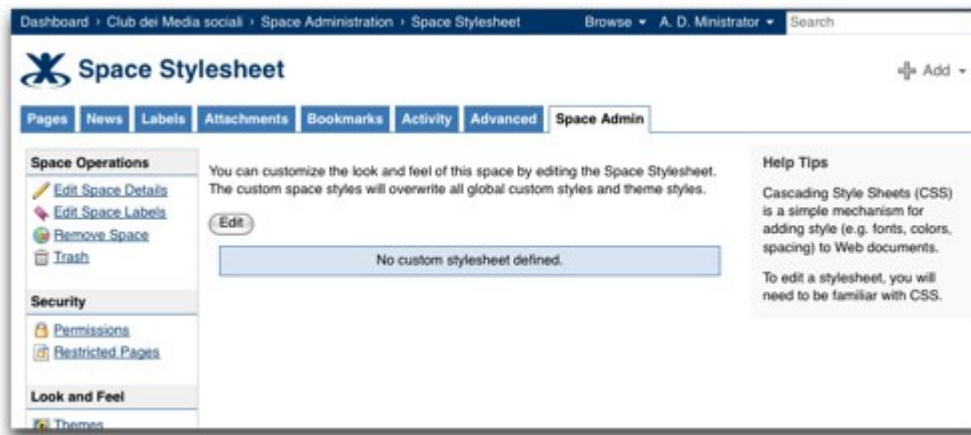
Styling Tabs in Confluence

Confluence provides the ability to adjust its visual style via Cascading Style Sheets (CSS). With this feature, it is very easy to change the look and feel of Confluence.

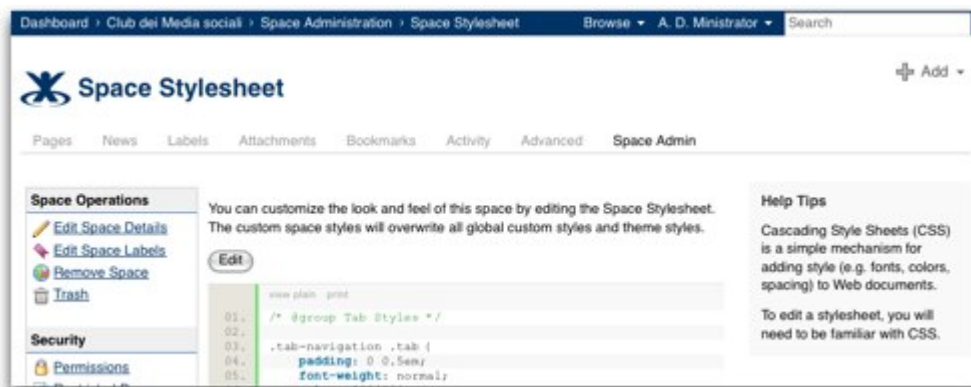
This tutorial shows you to change the look and feel of Confluence. We will address the Confluence tabs in this tutorial and how we can change their look completely with a few lines of CSS.

Let's take a look at what we are trying to achieve. Notice the dark blue tabs in *Screenshot 1*? Our goal is to blend them into the background and change the text style as in *Screenshot 2*.

Screenshot 1: Default Confluence Tabs in Admin Screen



Screenshot 2: Customised Confluence Tabs in Admin Screen



At the bottom of this page you can find the code for the custom tabs. Simply copy and paste it into the Space Stylesheet form within the Space Administration section. Let's discuss each selector in detail:

Container Style

```
#navigation, #tab-navigation{
  border-bottom: 1px solid #CCC;
  background-color: transparent;
  margin: 1em 0 2em -5px;
}
```

Lets start with the container around the tabs. We don't want a **background-color** for the tabs and the container, therefore we will set the color to be transparent. With the **border-bottom** attribute we will create a thin grey line at the bottom to separate the navigation from the rest of the page. Lastly we adjust the **margins** of the container to create some space around the tabs.

Tab Style

```
.tab-navigation .tab a {
  font-weight: normal;
  color: #999999;
  background-color: transparent;
  border: none;
}
```

Then we style each link within the tab. We set the **font-weight** to normal, to make the tabs less dominant and change the color to a dark grey. We also have to specify the **border** and **background-color** attributes explicitly to *overwrite* the default styles in Confluence. If we don't specify the background color for example, the blue color of the default style will be applied.

Hover Style


```
.tab-navigation .tab a:hover {
  font-weight: normal;
  color: #0088CC;
  background-color: transparent;
  border: none;
}
```

Now we want to specify the **hover** attributes of the links. Note that we have to overwrite the **background-color** and the **border** attributes again, otherwise the default styles will be applied. We also change the color of the text for the hover effect of the link.

Currently Selected Element Style

```
ul.tab-navigation .current a:hover, ul.tab-navigation .current a {
  color:#000000;
  background-color: transparent;
  border:none;
}
```

The last selector we will need to customise is the element with the class **current**. Note that we use a more specific selector this time. The reason we are doing this is because these specific selectors are used in the default CSS stylesheet. If we were to use more general selectors, like we did above (ignoring the `ul`), the default style would still be applied since more specific selectors are rendered with a higher priority. We want to keep the general style of the other links but simply change the **color** of the text to black.

Complete CSS Style

Simply copy and paste the code below to change the look of the tabs in Confluence.

```
/* @group Tab Styles */

.tab-navigation .tab a {
  font-weight: normal;
  color: #999999;
  background-color: transparent;
  border: none;
}

.tab-navigation .tab a:hover {
  font-weight: normal;
  color: #0088CC;
  background-color: transparent;
  border: none;
}

#navigation, #tab-navigation{
  border-bottom-color:#CCC;
  margin: 1em 0 2em -10px;
  background-color: transparent;
}

ul.tab-navigation .current a:hover, ul.tab-navigation .current a {
  background-color: transparent;
  border:none;
  color:#000000;
}

/* @end */
```

Related Topics

[Basic Styling Tutorial](#)
[Styling Tabs in Confluence](#)
[Including Cascading Stylesheets in Themes](#)

Using CSS to Customise the Easy Reader Theme

This page gives some hints on using the space CSS style sheets to customise the [Easy Reader theme](#).

You can customise the Easy Reader theme using CSS at space or site level. A common modification is to change or remove the background image.



CSS elements are specific to each theme

You will need to match your theme choice and custom CSS. If you want to use the CSS on this page, you will need to apply it to a space that is using the Easy Reader theme. If you apply the CSS at site level, then your entire site must use the Easy Reader theme.

Editing the CSS

To edit a space's CSS style sheets:

1. Choose **Browse > Space Admin**.



Space Admin is displayed only if you are a space administrator for that space or you are a Confluence system administrator.

2. Click **Stylesheet** in the left-hand panel under the heading 'Look and Feel'.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. Paste your custom CSS into the text field.
5. Click **Save**. The new CSS will be visible on all content pages in the space.

Simple CSS Customisations for Easy Reader Theme

To change the background image:

```
body { background: #ccc url("path/to/your/background.gif") 50% 0 repeat-y; }
```

Remember to set an appropriate background colour to extend past the left and right edges of the image. In the example we use colour code #ccc. This colour should match the last pixel on the left and right of your background image.



Upload your background image as a page attachment

You can upload your background as a page attachment. Make sure that you restrict editing (but not viewing) of that page to yourself or the space/site administrators.

To replace the theme's gradient image with your choice of background colour:

```
body { background: #ccc; }
```

To add a border to the left and right of the content area, using a specific colour (in the example we use colour code #ccc):

```
#full-height-container { border-left: 1px solid #ccc; border-right: 1px solid #ccc; }
```

Related Topics

[Configuring the Easy Reader Theme](#)
[Styling Confluence with CSS](#)

Permissions Overview

Confluence gives you the choice to make the site as open or as closed as you wish. Here are some points to consider:

- As a tool for communication and collaboration, Confluence is at its best when all your users can participate fully.
- So it's advisable not to restrict users unless you have a good reason for doing so.
- Confluence keeps a history of all changes to pages and other content. So it is easy to see who has changed what, and to reverse any edits if required.

On this page:

- [Levels of Permission](#)
 - [Global Permissions](#)
 - [Space Permissions](#)
 - [Page Restrictions](#)
- [More Information](#)
 - [How do space permissions and page restrictions work together?](#)
 - [How do space permissions and page restrictions affect links?](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Levels of Permission

There are three levels of permissions in Confluence.

Global Permissions

[Global permissions](#) are site-wide permissions, and are assigned by administrators. Confluence allows two levels of administrator permissions:

- [System Administrator](#) - Users with this permission can perform all the Confluence administrative functions.
- [Confluence Administrator](#) - Users with this permission can perform most of the Confluence administrative functions, but excluding those functions which could compromise the security of the Confluence system.

Users with 'System Administrator' or 'Confluence Administrator' permission can assign permissions to other users. For full details, please refer to the [overview of global permissions](#) in the *Administrator's Guide*.

Space Permissions

The permission to create a new space or to administer one is granted by a [Confluence Administrator](#) from the global [Administration Console](#).

Every space has its [own independent set of permissions](#). These permissions determine the access settings for different users of the space. In order to assign these permissions to other users, a user must be a [space administrator](#) i.e. must have the 'Admin' permission for that space.

See [Users and Groups](#) to learn how these permissions are assigned.

Page Restrictions

You can set [page-level restrictions](#), if you have the 'Restrict Pages' permission within the space concerned.

Page restrictions allow you to control who can view or edit individual pages. To set page restrictions, edit the page and use the page restriction options below the text-entry box.

More Information

How do space permissions and page restrictions work together?

Example: In the HR (Human Resources) space, everyone in the organisation has the 'View' **space permission**, but only the HR team has the 'Pages --> Create' **space permission** (i.e. the ability to create and edit pages in the space). A member of the HR team starts to create a new page called 'Annual Leave Policy'. Because the page is not yet finished, she sets the 'Viewing' **page restriction** so that only the HR team can view the page. When the page is finished, she will remove the 'Viewing' restriction so that everyone in the company can see the page.

How do space permissions and page restrictions affect links?

Space permissions and page restrictions affect how [links between pages](#) are displayed to a visitor:

- if the link points to a page in a space to which the visitor does not have 'View' space permission, the link will not be rendered at all.
- if the visitor has 'View' space permission, but page restrictions prohibit her from viewing the page, the link will be rendered but an 'Access Denied' message will be displayed when she clicks the link.
- if the visitor has 'View' space permission, and is not restricted from viewing the page, the link will display and behave as normal.

[Links to attachments](#) are also affected:

- if the visitor does not have permission to view the page to which the attachment is attached, the link will not be rendered.

**Warning**

If you misconfigure a space so that nobody has access to administer it any more, you will need to have someone in the '**confluence-administrators**' group fix the permissions for you.

Related Topics


[Users and Groups](#)
[Global Permissions Overview](#)
[Space Permissions Overview](#)
[Page Restrictions](#)
[Configuring Confluence Security](#)
[Confluence Security](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Page Restrictions

Page restrictions allow you to control who can view or edit individual pages. You set the page restrictions using the Page Restrictions dialog, either directly by choosing **Tools > Restrictions**, or when editing a page.

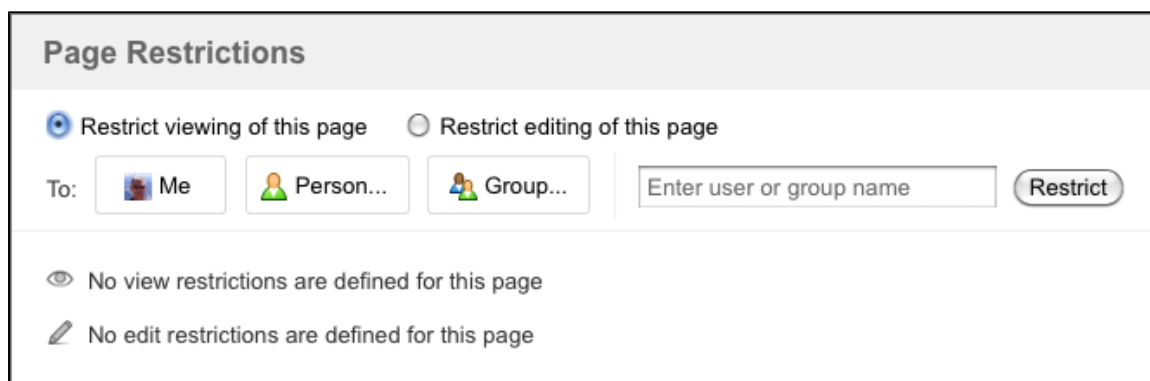
For instructions on using the Page Restrictions dialog, refer to [Setting a Page's Restrictions](#).

When a page you are viewing has restrictions applied, a small padlock icon  appears next to the page byline. Clicking the padlock will open the Page Restrictions dialog, where full details on the page restrictions are displayed.

On this page:

- [The Confluence Permissions and Page Restrictions Hierarchy](#)
- [Requirements for Setting Restrictions](#)
- [Page Security Rules](#)
- [Inherited Restrictions and Child Pages](#)
- [Example of Child Page Restrictions](#)
- [How to Open Part of a Space](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Screenshot: *The Confluence Page Restrictions dialog*

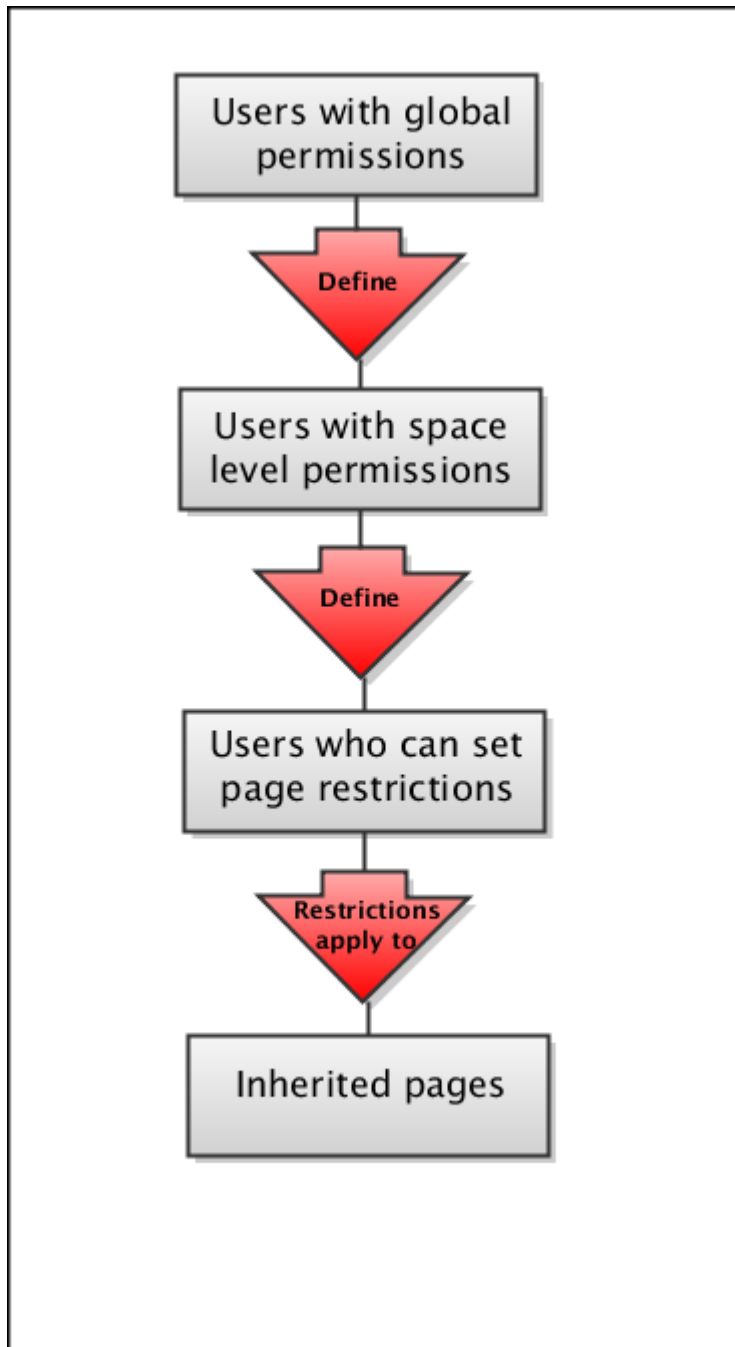


The Confluence Permissions and Page Restrictions Hierarchy

Permissions and page restrictions in Confluence work within a hierarchical manner. For example, users who can access and modify global permissions (for instance, Confluence Administrators) can define which users can access and modify space level permissions (that is, space administrators). Space administrators can then define which users have access to create and modify pages. These users in turn can then apply viewing and editing restrictions to a page. By inheritance, these restrictions will also be applied to any child or descendant pages which are then added to that page.

See the diagram below for an illustration.

Diagram: Confluence Restrictions Hierarchy



Requirements for Setting Restrictions

In order to set or modify page restrictions, you need to have both:

- 'Restrict Pages' permission in the space to which the page belongs (since page restrictions operate within the bounds of [space permissions](#)).
- Permission to edit the page itself. That is, if a user is prevented from editing a page through page restrictions, they are also prevented from changing the restrictions themselves.

Page Security Rules

Users can only view page or space content for which they (or a group they are in) have 'View' permission. Pages that a user does not have 'View' access to are referred to as 'inaccessible' pages. Visit [Inaccessible Page](#) to see how Confluence deals with pages a user cannot view:

- Anonymous users are directed to the login page.
- Logged-in users are shown a permissions error page.

It is not possible to conceal the existence of pages, though you can restrict 'View' access to page content.

i Users will still be able to find the page if they know its URL. But they will not be able to view the content if they don't have the correct

permissions.

Inherited Restrictions and Child Pages

If a page has its 'View' restriction set, that restriction will be inherited by all its children (and their children, and so on). If a 'View' restriction is added to a page that has already inherited page restrictions from its parent, users must satisfy both restrictions in order to see the page.

'Edit' restrictions are not inherited from the parent page, only from the space.

Example of Child Page Restrictions

Consider the page 'Documents', with a child page 'Executive', which itself has a child page 'Payroll'. To begin with, anyone who can view the space to which these pages belong can see all three pages.

For security reasons, 'View' restrictions are set on the 'Executive' page, restricting it to the 'mycompany-management group'. At this point, anyone can still see the 'Documents' page, but you must be in the 'mycompany-management group' in order to view either 'Executive' or 'Payroll'.

Since 'Payroll' information is considered particularly private, the 'Payroll' page then has its page restrictions set to only allow members of the 'mycompany-financial' group to view it. At this point, anyone can see the 'Documents' page, only members of 'mycompany-management' can see 'Executive', and only users who are members of both the 'mycompany-management' and 'mycompany-financial' groups can view 'Payroll'.

How to Open Part of a Space



If designing a large site implementation with this strategy, consult [Page Restrictions Performance Considerations](#).

Often there are cases for which a section of a space should be opened to a group or set of users (for this example, we'll call them group B), but the rest of the space should not be visible to your main users (for this example, we'll call them group A). In this case:

1. Add 'view' permission for both groups A and B in [space permissions](#).
2. [Move the page](#) to be opened to the root of the space. When browsing the pages in the space, your normal space home page and this page should both be at the root level.
3. Add a page restriction to allow Group A and B to see this page.
4. Add a page restriction to your main landing page for Group A, thereby excluding this set of pages from Group B.

You can repeat this with any page hierarchy.



Administrators

- Space administrators are responsible for the management of a space and its contents. They therefore have the ability to remove all restrictions from a page (as described in '[Viewing Restricted Pages](#)'). This means that space administrators can view and edit all content in the space.
- Users who are members of the 'confluence-administrators' group ('super-users') cannot immediately see pages from which [they are excluded](#) by page restrictions. Also, to be able to edit the page, you will need to remove the restriction from it first – go to **Space Administration > Restricted Pages**.



You cannot exclude yourself

As creator or editor of a page, you cannot use page restrictions to deny yourself access to the page. Confluence will automatically add your username into the list of users/groups allowed to view/edit the page. If you remove your username, Confluence will put it back again.

Related Topics

[View a Page's Restrictions](#)
[Set a Page's Restrictions](#)
[View All Restricted Pages](#)
[Page Restrictions Performance Considerations](#)

[Working with Pages](#)


Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Setting a Page's Restrictions

[Page restrictions](#) control who may view or edit a specific page, within the bounds of the [space permissions](#):


- View restrictions make the page invisible to everyone except the chosen users and groups.
- Edit restrictions prevent everyone except the chosen users and groups from editing the page.

You can restrict the page to as many users and groups as you like.

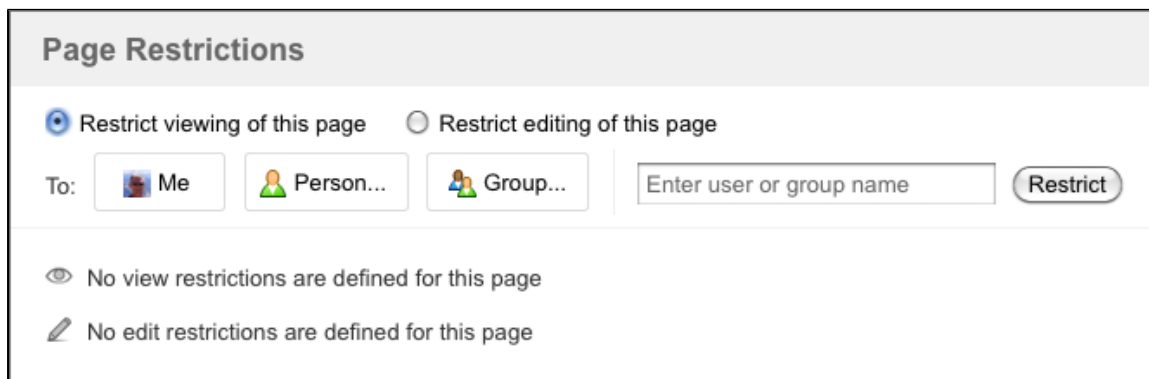
 In order to set or modify page restrictions, you need to have the 'Restrict Pages' permission in the space to which the page belongs, as well as permission to edit the page itself.

Setting Page Restrictions

To set restrictions on a page:


1. Choose **Tools > Restrictions**. The Page Restrictions dialog opens. You can also click the padlock icon  in the page's byline (if available), or click either **Unrestricted** or **Restricted** when editing the page.
2. Select the restriction option required.
3. Choose the users and groups who you want to be able to view or edit the page:
 - To choose just yourself, click **Me**.
 - To choose a particular user or group, type the user's username (or their full name), or the group name, into the **Enter ... name** box, and click **Restrict**. You can enter multiple user and group names, when separated by commas.
 - To search for a user or group (if you are unsure of the name), click **Person...** or **Group...** (You can read more about [searching for users](#).)
4. Click **Save**.


Screenshot: The Confluence Page Restrictions dialog




Removing Page Restrictions

To remove restrictions on a page:

1. Choose **Tools > Restrictions**. The Page Restrictions dialog opens. You can also click the padlock icon  in the page's byline (if available), or click either **Unrestricted** or **Restricted** when editing the page.
2. Click **Remove restriction** next to the appropriate users or groups.
3. Click **Save**.

 You can both set and remove restrictions for different users or groups when using the Page Restrictions dialog.

Notes

When a page you are viewing has restrictions applied, a small padlock icon  appears next to the page byline. Clicking the padlock will open the Page Restrictions dialog, where full details on the page restrictions are displayed.

View and edit restrictions apply to all users including space administrators. *However*, space administrators can remove *any* restriction on a page. See [Viewing Restricted Pages](#).


Related Topics

[Space Permissions Overview](#)
[Viewing a Page's Restrictions](#)
[Viewing Restricted Pages](#)
[Working with Pages](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Viewing a Page's Restrictions

Viewing page restrictions in View mode

When a page you are viewing has restrictions applied, a small padlock icon  appears next to the page byline. Clicking the padlock will open the Page Restrictions dialog, where full details on the page restrictions are displayed. See [Setting a Page's Restrictions](#) for instructions on how to change these.

Viewing page restrictions in Edit mode

You can view a page's restrictions when editing the page. You can only edit the page if you have permissions to do so.

To view the restrictions that apply to a page:

- When editing the page, click **Restrictions**. See [Setting a Page's Restrictions](#) for instructions on how to change these.

Related Topics

[Setting a Page's Restrictions](#)

[Viewing Restricted Pages](#)

[Working with Pages](#)


Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Viewing Restricted Pages


Restricted pages are pages that have 'View' or 'Edit' restrictions applied to them through [page-level restrictions](#).

You need to be a [space administrator](#) to view the list of restricted pages in a space.

To view restricted pages:

- Choose **Browse > Space Admin** for the space.
- Click **Restricted Pages** in the left panel under 'Security'. A list of all restricted pages in the space is displayed.
- Click on the 'lock'  icon to remove restrictions for the page.





Here's an example:





Restricted Pages

[Pages](#)
[Blog](#)
[Labels](#)
[Attachments](#)
[Bookmarks](#)
[Mail](#)
[Advanced](#)
[Space Admin](#)



Space Operations

-  Edit Space Details
-  Edit Space Labels
-  Remove Space
-  Trash

Security







-  Permissions
-  **Restricted Pages**

Mail

-  Mail Accounts
-  Mailbox Import

Look and Feel

This report shows all the pages where access is restricted to specific groups or users by page level permissions.

Title (Space)	Type	Permitted User/Group	Creator	Created	Operations
 Examples (A New Space)	View	jbloggs	Joseph Webb Bloggs	Dec 08, 2009	
 Tutorial (A New Space)	View	jbloggs	Joseph Webb Bloggs	Dec 08, 2009	
 Advanced topics (A New Space)	View	jbloggs	Joseph Webb Bloggs	Dec 08, 2009	

Related Topics

[Viewing a Page's Restrictions](#)

[Setting a Page's Restrictions](#)

Working with Pages

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Site Administrators and their Permissions

All site administrative functions are performed from the Administration Console. You need to have System Administrator or Confluence Administrator permissions to access the Administration Console.

The Confluence permission scheme allows the following levels of administrator permissions:

- **Super-User** – full administrative access to Confluence, plus visibility to all the content.
- **System Administrator** – full administrative access to Confluence.
- **Confluence Administrator** – access to most of the Confluence administrative functions.

Please refer to the [overview of global permissions](#) in the *Administrator's Guide* for full details.

Related Topics

Users and Groups

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Contacting Confluence Administrators

If you receive an error message from Confluence, the error page may offer you a link to click in order to contact the administrators of the Confluence site.

When you click the link to contact the Confluence administrators, you will see an administrator contact page with the title '**Contact Site Administrators**'. By default, the administrator contact page looks like the screenshot below.

Screenshot: The administrator contact screen

Contact Site Administrators

Please enter information about your request for the site administrators. If you are reporting an error please be sure you include information on what you were doing and the time the problem occurred.

To:

From:

Subject:

Request Details:

The screen may look different

In certain configurations of Confluence, you will not be able to use the form shown in the screenshot above. Instead, you will see a message telling you about one of the following conditions:

- If your Confluence administrator has not configured a mail server for Confluence, this means that Confluence will not be able to send an email message to the administrators.
- If none of the Confluence administrators has an email address, Confluence will not be able to send an email message to them.
- If there are no Confluence administrators defined to Confluence, Confluence will not be able to send an email message to them.
- The Confluence administrator can disable the form and specify a different message to be displayed on the above screen instead of the default message and form. See the [administrator's guide](#).

Related Topics


Configuring the Administrator Contact Page

Space Administrators and their Permissions

A space administrator is a user with the '**Space Admin**' permission for a space. This permission itself is assigned from the Space Administration screens by a space administrator.

Who is a space administrator?

The person who creates a space is automatically the administrator of that space. That person can then [assign other space administrators](#) as required.

 Confluence administrators are not necessarily space administrators.

- A user who has the 'Administer Confluence' permission is not automatically a space administrator for a particular space. In order for them to be a space administrator, they must belong to a group which has space administration rights on the space, or their username must be specifically granted space administration rights on the space.
- Users who are members of the 'confluence-administrators' group do automatically have space administration permissions for all spaces.

Refer to the [Administrator's Guide](#) for more details about Confluence administrator permissions.

What can a space administrator do?

A space administrator has permission to do anything in the space regardless of any other setting. Space administrators are responsible for the management of a space and its contents. Note that page permissions affect space administrators differently from other users.

Space administrators can:

- view all content in the space. If there are page permissions that restrict the viewing of a page to a single user, or to a group to which the space administrator doesn't belong, a space administrator can still view the page by removing the restriction.
- edit all content on any page in the space.
- remove restrictions from any page in the space (using the Space Administration interface).
- manage the watchers for any page in the space (but not watchers of the space).
- grant themselves any other space permissions (e.g. permission to set restrictions on a particular page).

All space administration functions, with the exception of managing watchers, are performed from the 'Space Admin' tab (choose **Browse > Space Admin**). You need to be a space administrator to access the Space Administration screens.

Related Topics

[Space Permissions Overview](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Space Permissions Overview

Every space has its own independent set of permissions.

Space permissions can only be granted by a [space administrator](#). A space administrator has permission to do anything in the space regardless of any other setting.

Permissions can be assigned to any [group](#), to any individual user in the **Confluence-User** group, and to users in the **Anonymous** group.

These are the different permissions that can be assigned at the space level:

- **View:** user can view this space's content, including the space's details, and its pages and news items (blog posts)
- **Pages:**
 - Create – user may create and edit pages in this space.
 - Export – user may export pages in this space.
 - Restrict – user may apply [page-level restrictions](#).
 - Remove – user may remove pages in this space.
- **Blog:**
 - Create – user may add and edit blog posts in this space.
 - Remove – user may remove blog posts in this space.
- **Comments:**
 - Create – user may make comments in this space.
 - Remove – user may remove comments from this space.
- **Attachments:**
 - Create – user may add attachments in this space.
 - Remove – user may remove attachments from this space.
- **Mail:**
 - Remove – user may delete individual mail items.
- **Space:**
 - Export – user may export content from this space.
 - Admin – user has administrative permissions over this space.

**Warning**

If you deny all administrative access to a space by mistake, so that nobody has access to administer the space any more, you will need to ask someone in the [confluence-administrators group](#) to fix the permissions for you.

Related Topics

[Space Administrators and their Permissions](#)
[Users and Groups](#)
[Viewing Space Permissions](#)
[Assigning Space Permissions](#)
[Revoking Space Permissions](#)
[Page Restrictions](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Assigning Space Permissions

Space permissions can be assigned to user groups or to individual users of Confluence. You need to be a [space administrator](#) to assign [space permissions](#).

These are the different permissions that can be assigned at the space level:

- **View:** user can view this space's content, including the space's details, and its pages and news items (blog posts)
- **Pages:**
 - Create – user may create and edit pages in this space.
 - Export – user may export pages in this space.
 - Restrict – user may apply [page-level restrictions](#).
 - Remove – user may remove pages in this space.
- **Blog:**
 - Create – user may add and edit blog posts in this space.
 - Remove – user may remove blog posts in this space.
- **Comments:**
 - Create – user may make comments in this space.
 - Remove – user may remove comments from this space.
- **Attachments:**
 - Create – user may add attachments in this space.
 - Remove – user may remove attachments from this space.
- **Mail:**
 - Remove – user may delete individual mail items.
- **Space:**
 - Export – user may export content from this space.
 - Admin – user has administrative permissions over this space.

**Warning**

If you deny all administrative access to a space by mistake, so that nobody has access to administer the space any more, you will need to ask someone in the [confluence-administrators group](#) to fix the permissions for you.


To access the space permissions:

- a. Go to the 'Space Permissions' view. To do this:
 - i. Go to a page in the space where you want to view or assign permissions.
 - ii. Choose **Browse > Space Admin**.
 **Space Admin** is displayed only if you are a space administrator.
 - iii. Click **Permissions** in the 'Security' section of the left-hand panel.
 - b. Click the '**Edit Permissions**' button.
- The '

Edit Space Permissions' screen appears, as shown below.


To assign space permissions to groups:

1. Access the '**Edit Space Permissions**' screen as described above.
 The **Groups** section shows a list of groups which already have permissions to access the site.
 - To assign permissions, check the box next to the relevant group, for each of the required permissions.
 - To deny a permission, uncheck the relevant box.
 - To add a new group to the list, type the group name into the text box labelled '**Grant permission to**' and click the '**Add**'

- button. The group will appear in the list of groups and you can then assign the permissions.
- To bulk assign or revoke group member permissions, from the **Actions** drop-down list, choose either **Select All** or **Deselect All**.
- To search for a group:
 - Click the  icon.
 - In the '**Group Search**' window, enter all or part of the group name. You can use an asterisk '*' as a wild card.
 - Check the boxes to select the required group(s).
 - Click the '**Select Groups**' button. The group name(s) will appear in the 'Grant permission to' text box.
 - Click the '**Add**' button.

Click 'Save All' to apply the permissions.

To assign space permissions to users:

- Access the '**Edit Space Permissions**' screen as described above.
The **Individual Users** section shows a list of users who already have permissions to access the site.
 - To assign permissions, check the box next to the relevant user, for each of the required permissions.
 - To deny a permission, uncheck the relevant box.
 - To add a new user to the list, type the username into the text box labelled '**Grant browse permission to**' and click the '**Add**' button. The user will appear in the list of users, with 'View' permission assigned, and you can then add more permissions if necessary.
 - To bulk assign or revoke individual user permissions, from the **Actions** drop-down list, choose either **Select All** or **Deselect All**.
 - To search for a user:
 - Click the  icon.
 - The '**User Search**' window will appear. You can read more about [searching for users](#).
 - Check the boxes to select the required user(s).
 - Click the '**Select User(s)**' button. The username(s) will appear in the 'Grant browse permission to' text box.
 - Click the '**Add**' button.

Click 'Save All' to apply the permissions.

To assign space permissions to anonymous users:

- Access the '**Edit Space Permissions**' screen as described above. The **Anonymous Access** section shows the space permissions granted to all anonymous users of the site.
 - To assign permissions, check the box for the required permission.
 - To deny a permission, uncheck the relevant box.
 - To bulk assign or revoke anonymous user permissions, from the **Actions** drop-down list, choose either **Select All** or **Deselect All**.
- Click '**Save All**' to apply the permissions.

 You cannot grant space administration rights or page restriction rights to anonymous users.




Screenshot : Editing space permissions

You can edit the current space permissions here. Permissions can be granted to specific users or groups. You can also grant permissions to anonymous users. Anonymous users refers to all users that are not logged in. For information about the individual permissions that can be assigned, please see the [permissions guide](#).

Save All Cancel








Groups

These groups have access to this space in Confluence - that means they can view the pages, comments and news items within it.

	View	Pages				Blog		Comments		Attachments		Mail	Space		Actions
		Add	Export	Restrict	Remove	Add	Remove	Add	Remove	Add	Remove	Remove	Export	Admin	
 confluence-users	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="text"/>  <input type="button" value="Add"/>															

Individual Users



These individual users have access to this space in Confluence - that means they can each view the pages, comments and news items within it.

	View	Pages				Blog		Comments		Attachments		Mail	Space		Actions
		Add	Export	Restrict	Remove	Add	Remove	Add	Remove	Add	Remove	Remove	Export	Admin	
 Andrew Lui (alui)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
 Giles Gaskell (ggaskell)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
 Sally Hawse (shawse)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="text"/>  <input type="button" value="Add"/>															

Select All
Deselect All

Anonymous Access

When a user is using Confluence while not logged in, they are using it anonymously.
For example: Enabling anonymous 'commenting' permission, allows non-logged-in users to make comments in this space.

	View	Pages				Blog		Comments		Attachments		Mail	Space		Actions
		Add	Export	Restrict	Remove	Add	Remove	Add	Remove	Add	Remove	Remove	Export	Admin	
 Anonymous	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	

Save All Cancel

Notes about some error messages you may see

In **Confluence 2.7.2** and later, Confluence will let you know if there is a problem with some permissions. In rare situations, you may see the

following error messages below a permission:

- **'User/Group not found'** – This message may appear if your LDAP repository is unavailable, or if the user/group has been deleted after the permission was created.
- **'Case incorrect. Correct case is: xxxxxx'** – This message may appear if the upper/lower case in the permission does not match the case of the username or group name. If you see a number of occurrences of this message, you should consider running the [routine supplied to fix the problem](#).

Related Topics



[Space Permissions Overview](#)
[Viewing Space Permissions](#)
[Revoking Space Permissions](#)
[Users and Groups](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Revoking Space Permissions

You need to be a [space administrator](#) to remove or revoke [space permissions](#).

To revoke space permissions:

1. Choose **Browse > Space Admin**.
 **Space Admin** is displayed only if you are a space administrator for that space or you are a Confluence system administrator.
2. Click **Permissions** in the left-hand panel under the heading 'Security'. This will display the space's current permissions assigned to the different [groups and users](#).
3. Click **Edit permissions**. See screenshot below.
4. Uncheck the permissions you wish to revoke.
5. To bulk assign or revoke permissions for groups or individual users, from the **Actions** drop-down list, choose either **Select All** or **Deselect All**.
 Removing the **View** permission for a user or group will remove all access to that space for the user or group.
6. Click **Save All** to apply the permissions.



Quick removal of permissions

To remove all permissions for a user or group, just remove the **View** permission. The user or group will disappear from the list when you save the permission updates. There's no need to clear all the permissions for that user or group.



Screenshot : Assigning or Revoking Space Permissions

You can edit the current space permissions here. Permissions can be granted to specific users or groups. You can also grant permissions to anonymous users. Anonymous users refers to all users that are not logged in. For information about the individual permissions that can be assigned, please see the [permissions guide](#).

[Save All](#) [Cancel](#)

Groups







These groups have access to this space in Confluence - that means they can view the pages, comments and news items within it.

	View	Pages				Blog		Comments		Attachments		Mail	Space		Actions
		Add	Export	Restrict	Remove	Add	Remove	Add	Remove	Add	Remove	Remove	Export	Admin	
 confluence-users	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	

[Add](#)

Individual Users

These individual users have access to this space in Confluence - that means they can each view the pages, comments and news items within it.



	View	Pages				Blog		Comments		Attachments		Mail	Space		Actions
		Add	Export	Restrict	Remove	Add	Remove	Add	Remove	Add	Remove	Remove	Export	Admin	
 Andrew Lui (alui)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
 Giles Gaskell (ggaskell)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
 Sally Hawse (shawse)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	

[Add](#)

[Select All](#)
[Deselect All](#)

Anonymous Access

When a user is using Confluence while not logged in, they are using it anonymously. For example: Enabling anonymous 'commenting' permission, allows non-logged-in users to make comments in this space.

	View	Pages				Blog		Comments		Attachments		Mail	Space		Actions
		Add	Export	Restrict	Remove	Add	Remove	Add	Remove	Add	Remove	Remove	Export	Admin	
 Anonymous	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	

[Save All](#) [Cancel](#)

Related Topics

[Space Permissions Overview](#)
[Assigning Space Permissions](#)
[Viewing Space Permissions](#)
[Users and Groups](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Viewing Space Permissions

You need to be a [space administrator](#) to view the permissions assigned for a space.

To view the permissions assigned for a space:

1. Choose **Browse > Space Admin**. This tab is only displayed if you are a space administrator.
2. Click **Permissions** in the left-hand panel under the 'Security' heading. This will display all the permissions assigned to the different groups and users for this space.

Below is an example. The ticks in the boxes indicate which permissions have been granted. The crosses indicate which permissions have been denied.

Screenshot : Viewing space permissions

Groups

These are the permissions currently assigned to groups for this space.

		Pages				News		Comments		Attachments		Mail	Space	
	View	Create	Export	Restrict	Remove	Create	Remove	Create	Remove	Create	Remove	Remove	Export	Admin
confluence-administrators	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
confluence-users	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗

Edit Permissions

Individual Users

These are the permissions currently assigned to individual users for this space.

		Pages				News		Comments		Attachments		Mail	Space	
	View	Create	Export	Restrict	Remove	Create	Remove	Create	Remove	Create	Remove	Remove	Export	Admin
Admin	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

Edit Permissions

Anonymous Access

When a user is using Confluence while not logged in, they are using it anonymously.
For example: Enabling anonymous 'commenting' permission, allows non-logged-in users to make comments in this space.

		Pages				News		Comments		Attachments		Mail	Space	
	View	Create	Export	Restrict	Remove	Create	Remove	Create	Remove	Create	Remove	Remove	Export	Admin
Anonymous	✓	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗

Edit Permissions

Notes about some error messages you may see

In **Confluence 2.7.2** and later, Confluence will let you know if there is a problem with some permissions. In rare situations, you may see the following error messages below a permission:

- **'User/Group not found'** – This message may appear if your LDAP repository is unavailable, or if the user/group has been deleted after the permission was created.
- **'Case incorrect. Correct case is: xxxxxx'** – This message may appear if the upper/lower case in the permission does not match the case of the username or group name. If you see a number of occurrences of this message, you should consider running the routine supplied to fix the problem.

Related Topics

[Space Permissions Overview](#)
[Users and Groups](#)
[Assigning Space Permissions](#)
[Page Permissions](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Users and Groups

A 'user' is the account for an individual who accesses Confluence.

New users are created by a [Confluence administrator](#) via the [Administration Console](#). See [Searching For and Managing Users](#) for more

information.

A Confluence administrator can also group users together into user groups for more convenient administration. This means that any permissions you assign at the site, space and page levels can be assigned to a whole group. A user in one of these groups will automatically be granted all permissions granted to the group.

There are two special groups in Confluence:

- **Confluence-Administrators** - This is a 'super-group' and a user from this group has permission to do anything in the site regardless of any other setting.
- **Confluence-Users** - This is the default group into which all new users are assigned. Permissions you assign to this group will be assigned to all newly signed-up users of Confluence.

Anonymous Users

Confluence treats all users who do not log in when they access Confluence as being 'Anonymous'. Administrators can assign permissions to this group separately.



Overlapping group and user permissions

When a user is assigned more than one permission, the most powerful permission will prevail.

Further explanation:


- A user may be assigned a permission specifically to their username. They may also be assigned a permission by belonging to a group, or even several groups.
- The user will then be able to perform all functions assigned to them.
- So if a user is allowed to do something over and above what the group can do, the user will be able to do it. And if the group is allowed to do something over and above the specific permissions granted to the user, the user will still be able to do it.

Related Topics

[Space Permissions Overview](#)
[Viewing Space Permissions](#)
[Assigning Space Permissions](#)
[Page Permissions](#)
[The Administrator's Guide to User Management in Confluence](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Searching for Users



This page describes how to use the 'User Search' window, which appears when you click **Choose Users** or a user search  icon on a Confluence page.

On this page:

- [Accessing the User Search](#)
- [Using the Simple User Search](#)
- [Using the Advanced User Search](#)
- [Searching for Users in One or More Groups](#)
- [Selecting One or More Users](#)
- [Notes](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Accessing the User Search

To access the 'User Search' window:

1. Click the user search link or icon when you are performing one of the following actions:
 - When [assigning space permissions](#), click the  icon in the users section.
 - When [adding members to a group](#), click the  icon.
2. The simple 'User Search' window will appear, as shown below.

Using the Simple User Search

To search via the simple user search:

1. Select the **User** tab on the 'User Search' screen. (See [above](#) for instructions on accessing the screen.)
2. If the **Simple** link is showing, click it. (If you see the **Advanced** link instead, then you're fine. The simple search is already active.)
3. The simple user search screen will appear, as shown [below](#).
4. Type some information about the user into the 'Search' box. You can type all or part of their username, full name or email address.
5. Click **Search**.
6. Confluence will return a list of matching users. See [below](#) for instructions on selecting one or more users.

Screenshot: Simple user search

User Search

User Membership

User Details

Search

Search for users by their user details eg: bob, Bob Smith, bob@example.com

[Advanced](#)

Using the Advanced User Search

The advanced user search allows you to specify the field in which your search term appears, i.e. username, full name or email address. You may find this useful if you need to limit the number of users appearing in the search results.

To search via the advanced user search:

1. Select the **User** tab on the 'User Search' screen. (See [above](#) for instructions on accessing the screen.)
2. If the **Advanced** link is showing, click it. (If you see the **Simple** link instead, then you're fine. The advanced search is already active.)
3. The advanced user search screen will appear, as shown below.
4. Complete one or more of the following fields:
 - **User Name** — Enter all or part of the person's username i.e. their login id, e.g. 'joe', or 'bloggs'.
 - **Full Name** — Enter all or part of the person's name, e.g. 'joe bloggs', or 'bloggs', or 'joe'.
 - **E-Mail** — Enter all or part of the person's email address, e.g. 'acme'
5. Click **Search**.
6. Confluence will return a list of matching users. See [below](#) for instructions on selecting one or more users.

Screenshot: Advanced user search

User Search

User Membership

User Details

User Name Full Name E-Mail

Search

[Simple](#)

Searching for Users in One or More Groups

You can also list the users who appear in a particular group or in a set of groups.

To search for users in a particular group:

1. Select the **Membership** tab on the 'User Search' screen. (See [above](#) for instructions on accessing the screen.)
2. The 'Group Membership' search screen will appear, as shown below.
3. Type all or part of a group name into the 'Search' box.
4. Click **Search**.
5. Confluence will return a list of users belonging to any groups which match your search term.
 - ✓ In the example screenshot below, we entered a group name of 'dev'. The search results show all users belonging to the group 'developers' and all users belonging to the group 'developers-mates'.

6. Now you can select one or more users, as described [below](#).

Screenshot: Searching for users in a group

User Search

User

Membership

Group Membership

Enter a group to list all its members

Listing members of **developers, developers-mates**

Check All	User	Full name	Email
<input type="checkbox"/>	connie	Connie Best	connie@example.com
<input type="checkbox"/>	sally	Sally Smith	sally@example.com
<input type="checkbox"/>	jenny	Jenny James	jenny@example.com

Selecting One or More Users

After searching for users and receiving a list of names from Confluence, as described above, you can now select the user(s) you need.

To select one or more users:

1. Click the box next to the username(s) to select or unselect one or more users.
You can click **Check All** to select or unselect all users.
2. Click **Select User(s)**.
3. The 'User Search' window will close and the selected users will appear on the screen which you were using before you accessed the user search.

Screenshot: Selecting one or more users

User Search

User

Membership

User Details

Search for users by their user details eg: bob, Bob Smith, bob@example.com
[Advanced](#)

Check All	User	Full name	Email
<input type="checkbox"/>	cadmin	Confluence Administrator	admin@example.com
<input type="checkbox"/>	connie	Connie Best	connie@example.com
<input type="checkbox"/>	jenny	Jenny James	jenny@example.com
<input type="checkbox"/>	sally	Sally Smith	sally@example.com

Notes

- **Case sensitivity:** The search is not case sensitive. You can enter either upper- or lower-case text, and it will make no difference to the search results.
- **Wild cards:** The search allows the asterisk as a wild card, but you do not need to use it. The search results will be the same whether you use a wild card or not. The wildcard functionality remains available for compatibility with older versions of Confluence.
- **Multiple user directories:** You may define multiple user directories in Confluence, so that Confluence looks in more than one place for its users and groups. For example, you may use the default Confluence **internal directory** and also connect to an **LDAP** directory server. In such cases, you can define the **directory order** to determine where Confluence looks first when processing users and groups. Here is a summary of how the directory order affects the processing:
 - The order of the directories is the order in which they will be searched for users and groups.
 - Changes to users and groups will be made only in the first directory where the application has permission to make changes.

See [Managing Multiple Directories](#).

- **Crowd and the user search:** If you are using Atlassian's [Crowd](#) for user management, you will need [Crowd 1.5.1 or later](#) to use the 'Simple' option in the user search. If your version of Crowd does not support the simple user search, you will see only the 'Advanced' search form.

Related Topics

[Searching Confluence](#)
[Setting a Page's Restrictions](#)
[Assigning Space Permissions](#)
[Adding or Removing Users in Groups](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Working with Confluence Gadgets

This section introduces the concept of gadgets in Confluence and provides an outline on how to use gadgets in Confluence and other web applications.

On this page:

- [Introduction to Gadgets in Confluence](#)
- [Using Gadgets in Confluence](#)
- [Adding Confluence Gadgets in Other Applications](#)
 - [Adding a Confluence Gadget to JIRA](#)
 - [Adding a Confluence Gadget to Non-Atlassian Web Applications](#)
 - [Confluence Gadgets](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Introduction to Gadgets in Confluence

A gadget is a small object (i.e. a piece of functionality) offering dynamic content that can be placed into the page of:

- An Atlassian application's website, such as a Confluence page or blog post or a JIRA 4.0+ dashboard.
- A third-party application's website, such as [iGoogle](#) or [Gmail](#). (But see the limitations on using [Confluence gadgets in other applications](#).)

Gadgets allow interactions between Confluence and other compatible websites. Confluence interacts with gadgets that support the [OpenSocial](#) specification.



For more information about Atlassian gadgets, please refer to the [introduction to Atlassian gadgets](#) and the [big list of Atlassian gadgets](#).

Using Gadgets in Confluence

You can place any gadget that complies with the OpenSocial specification from an external source, such as [iGoogle](#) or other Atlassian applications such as [JIRA 4.0+](#), onto a Confluence page or blog post. To add a gadget to a page, use the Confluence [macro browser](#) to add a [Gadget macro](#).

See the page on [adding JIRA gadgets to a Confluence page](#).

Adding Confluence Gadgets in Other Applications

You can add a Confluence gadget to a JIRA dashboard or another Confluence site. In principle, you can also put a Confluence gadget on any other OpenSocial-compliant website such as [iGoogle](#) or [Gmail](#). See the limitations on using [Confluence gadgets in other applications](#).

Adding a Confluence Gadget to JIRA

See [Adding a Confluence Gadget to a JIRA Dashboard](#).

Adding a Confluence Gadget to Non-Atlassian Web Applications

For instructions on how to add Confluence gadgets in another compatible non-Atlassian web application or container, refer to [Configuring Confluence Gadgets for Use in Other Applications](#).

Confluence Gadgets

The [Confluence Gadgets](#) topic explains the purpose of the 'Confluence Gadgets' window and provides information about the gadgets which are bundled with Confluence.

Related Topics

[Gadget Macro](#)
[Working with the Macro Browser](#)
[Configuring Confluence Gadgets for Use in Other Applications](#)
[Adding a Confluence Gadget to a JIRA Dashboard](#)
[Confluence Gadgets](#)
[Configuring OAuth](#)
[All Atlassian gadgets](#)

[External Gadgets](#)

Adding a Confluence Gadget to a JIRA Dashboard

JIRA 4.0 is the first major Atlassian application that can incorporate OpenSocial-compliant gadgets, such as Confluence gadgets onto its dashboard. This page explains how to add a Confluence gadget to the dashboard of a JIRA 4.0+ installation.

To add a Confluence gadget to a JIRA dashboard, complete the sections below in order.

On this page:

- [Create an Application Link Between Confluence and JIRA](#)
- [Finding a Confluence Gadget's URL](#)
- [Adding a Confluence Gadget to a JIRA server's Gadgets Directory](#)
- [Adding a Confluence Gadget to the JIRA Dashboard](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Create an Application Link Between Confluence and JIRA

If your Confluence gadgets need to access user-restricted Confluence data, then your Confluence administrator must first establish an [Application Link](#) between your Confluence site and the JIRA site. For more information about configuring an Application Link between Confluence and other web applications, refer to [Configuring OAuth Authentication for an Application Link](#).


If you only need to access anonymously accessible Confluence data, then you can proceed to [Finding a Confluence Gadget's URL](#), below.

Finding a Confluence Gadget's URL

The Confluence gadget's URL is the gadget's XML specification file. These URLs look something like this:



To find a Confluence gadget's URL:

1. Choose **Browse > Confluence Gadgets**. The 'Confluence Gadgets' window will open. The 'Confluence Gadgets' window displays a list of available Confluence gadgets in your Confluence installation, as shown in the screenshot below.
 -  By default, Confluence only includes a few gadgets. However, if your Confluence administrator has installed more Confluence gadgets (typically as Confluence plugins), these will also appear in this list. If a scrollbar is available, use it to find the gadget you want.
2. After finding your gadget, use the **Gadget URL** link to copy the gadget's URL to your clipboard. Many operating systems and browsers allow you to do this by right-clicking the **Gadget URL** link and copying it using the context menu.

Screenshot: Finding a gadget's URL

Confluence Gadgets


Using Confluence gadgets

This list shows the gadgets currently available in your Confluence site. You can embed these gadgets into any other website like JIRA 4, iGoogle, Gmail or another Confluence site using the gadget's URL. These websites must be [OpenSocial-compliant](#).

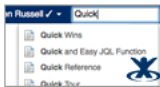
Using a Gadget's URL

To embed one of these gadgets into another application, copy the gadget's URL from its 'Gadget URL' link. For example, right-click on the link and copy it using the context menu. Then, paste that URL into the appropriate configuration area of the other application.


(See our [documentation](#) for more information).



Activity Stream
[Gadget URL](#)
By Atlassian
Lists recent activity in a single project, or in all projects.



Confluence QuickNav
[Gadget URL](#)
By Atlassian
This gadget allows you to embed the Confluence QuickNav into other applications.




Confluence: News
[Gadget URL](#)
By Atlassian Software
News about Confluence

Close

Adding a Confluence Gadget to a JIRA server's Gadgets Directory

To add a Confluence Gadget to the Gadgets Directory in JIRA:

- Go to the dashboard by clicking **Dashboard** at the top left of the screen.
- The dashboard will appear. Click **Add Gadget**.
- The 'Add Gadget' screen appears, showing the list of gadgets in your directory. See [screenshot 1](#) below. Click **Add Gadget to Directory**.
 -  You will only see this button if you have administrator permissions for your dashboard.
- The 'Add Gadget to Directory' screen appears. See [screenshot 2](#) below. Paste the gadget URL (which you copied to your clipboard above) into the text box.
- Click **Add Gadget**.
- The gadget appears in your gadget directory. (It will be highlighted for a short time, so that you can see it easily.)

Screenshot 1: Gadget directory with 'Add Gadget to Directory' button

Gadget Directory


All (56)

Charts (1)

Confluence (2)


JIRA (5)

Other (50)




Dynamic Height
[Gadget URL](#)
Author unknown
Description not available

Add it Now




Fish
[Gadget URL](#) | [Homepage](#)
By [everydaygadget](#)
Add a touch of nature to your page with these hungry little fish. Watch how they eagerly swim toward your mouse hoping that you'll drop a few

Add it Now




Hello World!
[Gadget URL](#)
Author unknown
description is here

Add it Now




118n Test
[Gadget URL](#)
By [Atlassian](#)
Description not available

Add it Now



JIRA Category Gadget
[Gadget URL](#)
By [Atlassian](#)
JIRA Category Gadget description

Add it Now



JIRA Issues
[Gadget URL](#)
By [Atlassian](#)
A list of recently created JIRA issues

Add it Now
Remove

Add Gadget to Directory

[Learn more about gadgets](#)
[Create your own gadget](#)

Finished

Screenshot 2: Adding a gadget to the directory

Add Gadget to Directory

Type or paste the gadget's URL below.

By adding a gadget to the directory, you are making the gadget available for people to use on their dashboards.

Only add gadgets that you trust! Gadgets can allow unwanted or malicious code onto your web page.

You can add gadgets from Atlassian applications such as Confluence, JIRA and others. You can also add gadgets from other websites such as iGoogle. Many public gadgets will work on an Atlassian dashboard. Some gadgets may rely on specific iGoogle features that will not work properly on Atlassian dashboards. In that case, you can simply remove the gadget from the directory.

A gadgets URL looks something like this: `http://example.com/my-gadget-location/my-gadget.xml`

Find [more gadgets](#) to add. | You can create your own gadgets! [Learn how.](#)

Adding a Confluence Gadget to the JIRA Dashboard




i In the procedure below, 'your Atlassian dashboard' and 'your Atlassian application' refers to the JIRA Dashboard and application, respectively.


You can add a gadget from the directory of gadgets that are available to your Atlassian application.

To add a gadget to your Atlassian dashboard,

1. Go to the dashboard by clicking the '**Dashboard**' link or the '**Home**' link at the top left of the screen.
2. The dashboard will appear, looking something like [screenshot 1](#) below. Click '**Add Gadget**'.
3. The '**Add Gadget**' screen will display a list of available gadgets in your gadget directory, as shown in [screenshot 2](#) below. Find the gadget you want, using one or more of the following tools:
 - Use the scroll bar on the right to move up and down the list of gadgets.
 - Select a category in the left-hand panel to display only gadgets in that category.
 - Start typing a key word for your gadget in the '**Search**' textbox. The list of gadgets will change as you type, showing only gadgets that match your search term.
4. When you have found the gadget you want, click the '**Add it Now**' button to add the gadget to your dashboard.


[Screenshot 1: An Atlassian dashboard](#)

 Add Gadget
  Edit Layout
  Tools ▾

Spider


Hello World!

Hello world

Remember The Milk


Username:

Password:

☒ Remember me

[Signup now for a free account](#)

JIRA Issues

Apache Struts JIRA

[\[TILES-287\] Separate 2.1.x examples from 2.0.x ones.](#)

undefined

To show the new features of Tiles 2.1.x, examples in tiles-test webapp should be separated into 2.0.x and 2.1.x ones.

[\[TILES-281\] Fix assembly creation for optional dependencies.](#)

undefined

The binary assembly should contain optional dependencies in a separate directory.

[\[TILES-280\] Move inheritance resolution from UriDefinitionsFactory to a resolving LocaleUriDefinitionDao](#)

undefined

Currently the UriDefinitionsFactory resolves inheritance between definitions. It should be moved to a class like LocaleUriDefinitionDao.

This way, we can move the wildcard-management code, present in CachingLocaleUriDefinitionDao, into a base class, thus providing wildcards for UriDefinitionsFactory too (that is the default).

[\[TILES-275\] Allow the use of multiple containers](#)

undefined

Currently only one Tiles container can be used.

It should be possible to use more than one container under the same application, to be used, for example, in portal applications.

[\[TILES-270\] Update to Servlet 2.5 and JSP 2.1](#)

undefined


The 2.4.x version must depend on Servlet 2.5 and JSP 2.4, though version

Screenshot 2: Adding a gadget from the gadget directory

Add Gadget

All

- Admin
- Bamboo
- Charts
- Clover
- Confluence
- Crowd
- Crucible
- External Content
- Fisheye
- JIRA
- Other




Atlassian Gadgets Reference Implementation

[Gadget URL](#)

By [Atlassian](#)

A testing gadget provided by the Atlassian Gadgets Reference Implementation




Date & Time

[Gadget URL](#)

By [James L.](#)

Add a clock to your page. Click edit to change it to the color of your choice.



Directory Gadget

[Gadget URL](#)

By [Atlassian](#)

Directory Gadget description



Adding a Gadget to the Directory of Available Gadgets

You need to have administrator privileges to add a gadget to the list of available gadgets. If you have permission to add gadgets to and remove gadgets from the directory itself, you will see the **'Add Gadget to Directory'** and **'Remove'** buttons on the 'Add Gadget' screen. Please refer to the [Gadgets and Dashboards Administration Guide](#).

Related Topics

[All Atlassian gadgets](#)

Configuring Confluence Gadgets for Use in Other Applications

This page tells you how to add a Confluence gadget to another (external) application. The instructions and examples given in this topic focus on adding and using Confluence Gadgets in other web applications.



Atlassian support does not cover gadgets on external sites like iGoogle and Gmail

In principle, you should be able to add Atlassian gadgets to iGoogle, Gmail and other external sites that support OpenSocial gadgets. However, these external integrations are experimental at this stage and we have encountered problems with them. Please do have fun playing around with them, but be aware that Atlassian does not support the use of Atlassian gadgets on iGoogle, Gmail or other external web sites. See the detailed section on [gadget limitations](#).

Gadgets that display information from Atlassian applications, such as [Confluence](#), should be able to run on [iGoogle](#), [Gmail](#) and other web applications that provide [OpenSocial containers](#). Below are specific instructions for iGoogle and Gmail. You can experiment by adding a Confluence gadget to other web sites and applications, such as a [Ning](#) community like [The Content Wrangler](#).

On this page:

- [Overview of Adding a Confluence Gadget to Another Web Application](#)
- [Finding a Confluence Gadget's URL](#)
- [Adding an Atlassian Gadget to iGoogle](#)
- [Adding an Atlassian Gadget to Gmail](#)
- [Limitations and Support](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

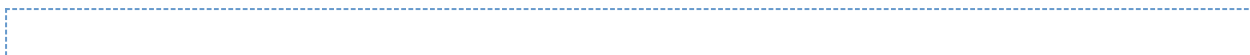
Overview of Adding a Confluence Gadget to Another Web Application

The exact procedure for adding a Confluence gadget depends on the application where you want to add the gadget. The basic steps are the same:

1. Find the Confluence gadget's URL, i.e. the URL for the gadget's XML specification file.
2. Ensure one of the following two mandatory (typically one-off) procedures have been conducted:
 - An OAuth relationship between Confluence (as the 'service provider') and the other web application (as the 'consumer') has been established. Refer to [Configuring OAuth](#) for more information about OAuth and instructions on establishing these relationships.
 - A Trusted Applications relationship between Confluence and JIRA has been established. Refer to [Configuring Trusted Applications](#) in the [JIRA documentation](#) for more information about establishing these relationships.
3. Follow the procedure provided by the external web application where you want to add the Confluence gadget.

Finding a Confluence Gadget's URL

The Confluence gadget's URL is the gadget's XML specification file. These URLs look something like this:



To find a Confluence gadget's URL:

1. Choose **Browse > Confluence Gadgets**. The 'Confluence Gadgets' window will open. The 'Confluence Gadgets' window displays a list of available Confluence gadgets in your Confluence installation, as shown in the screenshot below.
 - By default, Confluence only includes a few gadgets. However, if your Confluence administrator has installed more Confluence gadgets (typically as Confluence plugins), these will also appear in this list. If a scrollbar is available, use it to find the gadget you want.
2. After finding your gadget, use the **Gadget URL** link to copy the gadget's URL to your clipboard. Many operating systems and browsers allow you to do this by right-clicking the **Gadget URL** link and copying it using the context menu.

Screenshot: Finding a gadget's URL

Confluence Gadgets

Using Confluence gadgets

This list shows the gadgets currently available in your Confluence site. You can embed these gadgets into any other website like JIRA 4, iGoogle, Gmail or another Confluence site using the gadget's URL. These websites must be [OpenSocial-compliant](#).

Using a Gadget's URL

To embed one of these gadgets into another application, copy the gadget's URL from its 'Gadget URL' link. For example, right-click on the link and copy it using the context menu. Then, paste that URL into the appropriate configuration area of the other application.

(See our [documentation](#) for more information).

Activity Stream
[Gadget URL](#)
 By Atlassian
 Lists recent activity in a single project, or in all projects.

Confluence QuickNav
[Gadget URL](#)
 By Atlassian
 This gadget allows you to embed the Confluence QuickNav into other applications.

Confluence: News
[Gadget URL](#)
 By Atlassian Software
 News about Confluence

[Close](#)

Adding an Atlassian Gadget to iGoogle

You can customise your [iGoogle](#) home page by adding gadgets and moving them around on the page.

To add an Atlassian gadget to your iGoogle page:

1. First find the gadget's URL as described [above](#).
2. Go to [iGoogle](#) and log in if you have a username and password.
3. Click **Add stuff** near the top right of the iGoogle page.
4. The Google gadget directory will appear, showing a list of available gadgets. Click **Add feed or gadget** in the right-hand panel.

Add feed or gadget

Type or paste the URL below:

[Add](#)

Information for [Feed owners](#) - [Developers](#)

5. A text box will open, as shown above. Enter or paste the gadget's URL from your clipboard into the textbox and click **Add**.
6. Go back to your iGoogle home page. The gadget will appear on your iGoogle page.

Adding an Atlassian Gadget to Gmail

You can add gadgets to the left-hand panel of your [Gmail](#) page.

To add an Atlassian gadget to your Gmail page:

1. First find the gadget's URL as described [above](#).
2. Log in to [Gmail](#).
3. Click **Settings** near the top right of the Gmail page. The Gmail settings page will appear.
4. Click the **Labs** tab. The Gmail Labs page will appear. This is a laboratory area or testing ground where Google allows you to use experimental features in Gmail.
5. Scroll down to find the feature called 'Add any gadget by URL'.
6. Select the **Enable** option, as shown here:

Add any gadget by URL
by Dan P and Dong C

☒ **Enable**
☐ **Disable**

Adds a "Gadgets" tab to Settings, where you'll be able to specify the URL of any gadget. This gadget will show in a box in the left column.

[Send feedback](#)

Add a gadget by its URL:

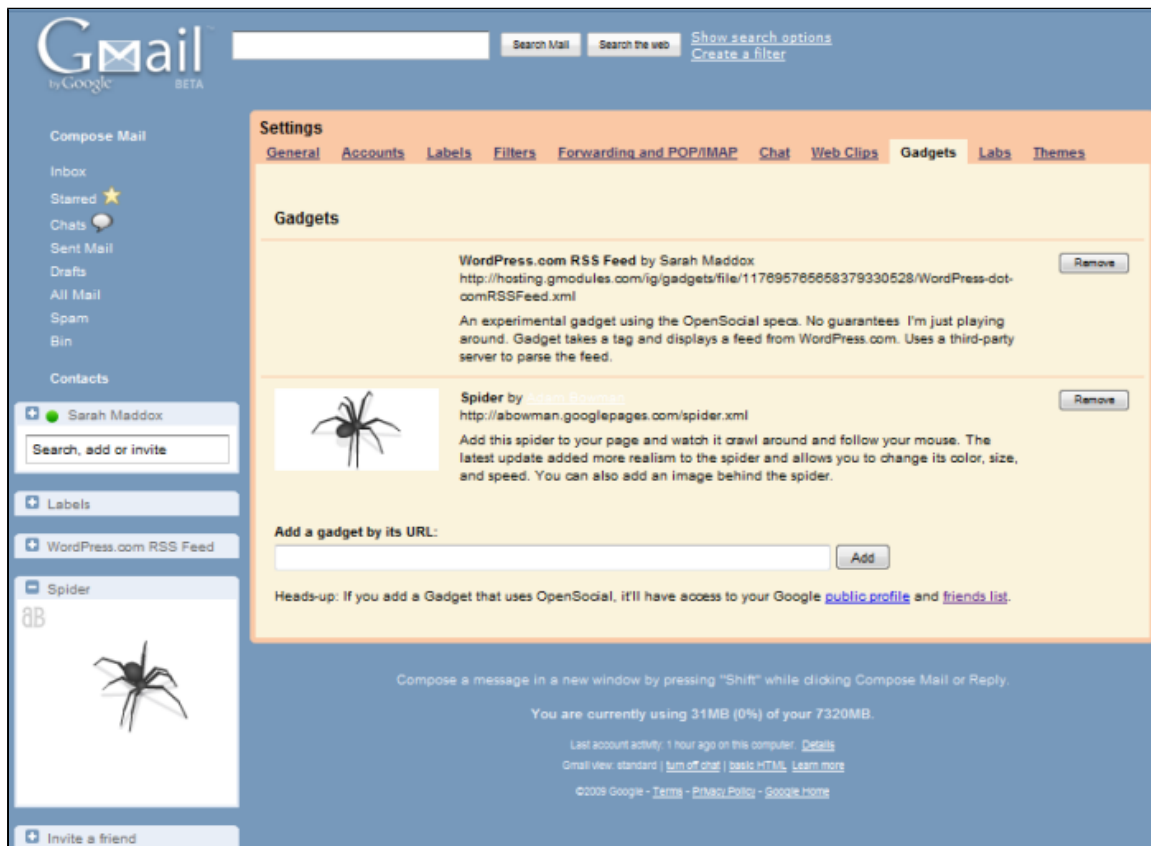
[Add](#)

7. Click **Save Changes**.
8. A new **Gadgets** tab will appear on your 'Settings' page. Click the **Gadgets** tab. The 'Gadgets' page will appear, as shown in the

screenshot [below](#).

9. Enter or paste your gadget's URL into the **Add a gadget by its URL** box, then click **Add**.
10. The gadget will appear in the left-hand panel of your Gmail page, as shown in the screenshot [below](#).

Screenshot: Adding a gadget to Gmail



Limitations and Support



Atlassian support does not cover gadgets on external sites like iGoogle and Gmail

In principle, you should be able to add Atlassian gadgets to iGoogle, Gmail and other external sites that support OpenSocial gadgets. However, these external integrations are experimental at this stage and we have encountered problems with them. Please do have fun playing around with them, but be aware that Atlassian does not support the use of Atlassian gadgets on iGoogle, Gmail or other external web sites. See the detailed section on [gadget limitations](#).

Related Topics

[The big list of Atlassian gadgets](#)

Confluence Gadgets

This page describes the purpose of the 'Confluence Gadgets' dialog and how to access it, and provides information about the gadgets that are bundled with Confluence.

Gadgets:

- Interact with and provide access to data in your Confluence installation
- Can be used externally such as on a JIRA 4+ server's dashboard, a page or blog post of another Confluence server, or any compatible page on a web site that accepts gadgets, such as iGoogle. (But see the limitations on using [Confluence gadgets in other applications](#).)

On this page:

- [The Confluence Gadgets Dialog](#)
- [Confluence Gadgets](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

The Confluence Gadgets Dialog

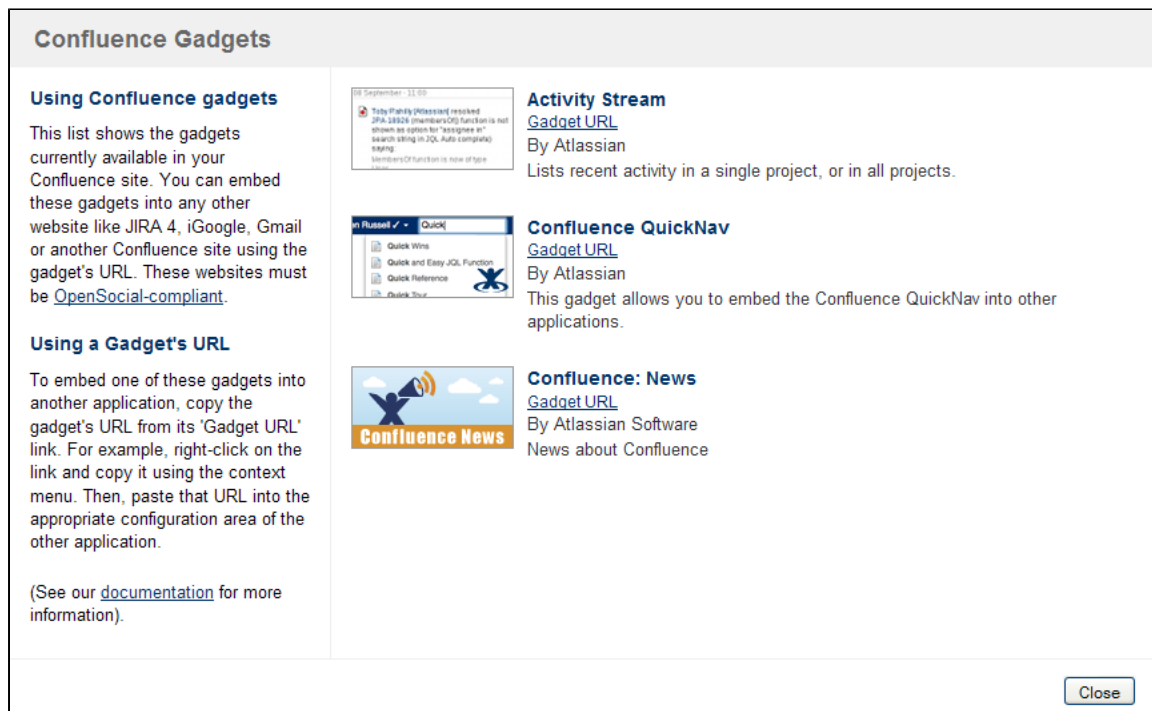
The 'Confluence Gadgets' dialog displays a list of all the Confluence gadgets available in your Confluence installation. The Confluence gadgets bundled with Confluence are described [below](#). Any additional Confluence gadgets installed by your Confluence administrator (typically as Confluence plugins), will also appear in this list.

To access the Confluence Gadgets dialog:

- Choose **Browse > Confluence Gadgets**. The 'Confluence Gadgets' dialog will open.

Refer to [Adding a Confluence Gadget to a JIRA Dashboard](#) or [Configuring Confluence Gadgets for Use in Other Applications](#) for more information on adding Confluence gadgets to external applications. A Confluence gadget can also be used within the same Confluence installation, by adding it to a page or blog post using the [gadget macro](#).

Screenshot: *The Confluence Gadgets dialog*



Confluence Gadgets

This following table lists the gadgets which are bundled with Confluence. Click the name of the gadget for more information.

Name	Description
Confluence Page Gadget	The Confluence page gadget allows you to show content from a page on your Confluence site in a gadget. You can optionally configure the gadget to display links to view and/or edit the page on your Confluence site. The page gadget can also be displayed in canvas view, so that it takes up all of the space provided by your dashboard.
Activity Stream Gadget	The activity stream gadget is similar to the recently updated macro and shows a list of the most recently changed content within your Confluence site.
Confluence News Gadget	The Confluence news gadget is an example of a 'news feed' gadget that shows a list of recent Confluence Product Blogs and events at Atlassian.
Confluence Quicknav Gadget	The Confluence QuickNav gadget provides the Quick Navigation Aid functionality for searching the Confluence site. For more information on how to use this feature, refer to the Quick Navigation Aid section of Searching Confluence .

Related Topics

[Adding a Confluence Gadget to a JIRA Dashboard](#)
[Configuring Confluence Gadgets for Use in Other Applications](#)
[Gadget Macro](#)
[The big list of Atlassian gadgets](#)

Activity Stream Gadget

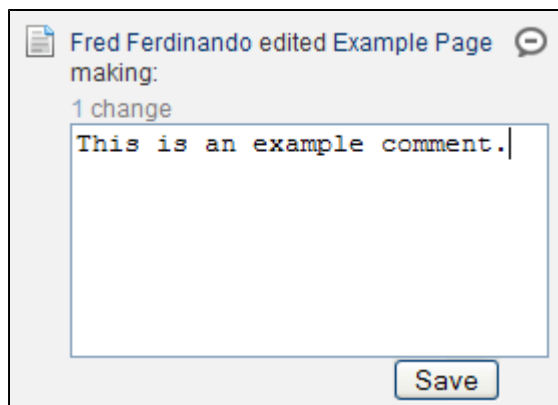
The activity stream gadget is similar to the [recently updated macro](#) and shows a list of the most recently changed content within your Confluence site.

i For instructions on how to use Confluence gadgets in your applications, please see [Confluence Gadgets](#).

In addition to showing a list of most recently changed content, the activity stream gadget also provides the following features:

- The ability to add comments to pages and blog posts, by clicking the 'add comment' icon at the top-right of an added or edited page or blog post in the activity stream.
- The ability to reply to a comment by clicking the 'add comment' icon at the top-right of a comment in the activity stream.
- Activities are grouped by separate date.
- An RSS feed link to its content in the top-right corner of the gadget.

Screenshot: Adding a Comment in the Activity Stream Gadget



Activity Stream Gadget Properties

Properties are settings for Confluence gadgets that allow the user to control the content or presentation of data retrieved by the gadget. These are similar to a Confluence macro's parameters. The table below lists relevant properties for this gadget.

Property	Required?	Default	Description
Title	Yes	None	Adds a title to the top of the Activity Stream.
Projects	No	None specified (i.e. display content in all spaces)	Filters the content by space. This gadget will display only the pages etc. which belong to the space(s) you specify here.
Username	No	None specified (i.e. display content by all users)	Filters the results by user. The macro will display only the pages etc. which were last modified by the user(s) you specify here. You can specify one or more user, separated by a comma or a space.
Number of Entries	No	10	Specify the maximum number of results to be displayed. A maximum of 10 results will be displayed by default. The maximum value that this property can accept is 100.
Refresh Interval	No	Never/false	Specify the time interval between each 'refresh' action undertaken by the activity stream gadget. A refresh makes the activity stream gadget reflect any new activity that has been conducted on the Confluence site.

Confluence News Gadget

The Confluence news gadget is an example of a 'news feed' gadget that shows a list of recent [Confluence Product Blogs](#) and [events at Atlassian](#).

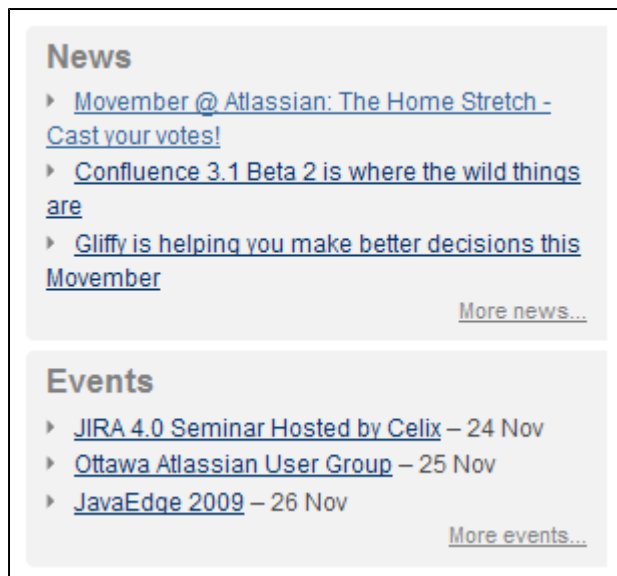
i For instructions on how to use Confluence gadgets in your applications, please see [Confluence Gadgets](#).

Clicking an item in the Confluence news gadget takes you directly to the selected blog post of the [Confluence Product Blogs](#) feed or event

details on the [events at Atlassian](#) page.

Clicking **More news** takes you to the [Confluence Product Blogs](#) feed page and clicking **More events** takes you to the [events at Atlassian](#) page.

Screenshot: Using the News Gadget




Confluence: News Gadget Properties

Properties are settings for Confluence gadgets that allow the user to control the content or presentation of data retrieved by the gadget. These are similar to a Confluence macro's parameters. The table below lists relevant properties for this gadget.

Property	Required?	Default	Description
Show News?	No	True	Shows a short list of the most recent Confluence Product Blogs .
Show Events?	No	True	Shows a short list of the most recent events at Atlassian .
Show Banners?	No	True	Shows any banner advertisements (if available).

Confluence Page Gadget

The Confluence page gadget allows you to show content from a page on your Confluence site in a gadget. You can optionally configure the gadget to display links to view and/or edit the page on your Confluence site. The page gadget can also be displayed in canvas view, so that it takes up all of the space provided by your dashboard.

 For instructions on how to use Confluence gadgets in your applications, please see [Confluence Gadgets](#).



Macros that work with the page gadget

Please note, not all macros work with the page gadget. Please refer to the [Working Macros](#) section below for more information.

On this page:

- [Confluence Page Gadget Properties](#)
- [Working Macros](#)
- [Related Topics](#)


Screenshot: The Confluence page gadget displaying a sample page

Chocolate

Chocolate

View

Edit






Chocolate is a popular ingredient and available in many types. Different forms and flavors of chocolate are produced by varying the quantities of the different ingredients. Other flavors can be obtained by varying the time and temperature when roasting the beans.

Unsweetened chocolate

Unsweetened chocolate is pure chocolate liquor, also known as bitter, baking chocolate or cooking chocolate, mixed with some form of fat to produce a solid substance. It is unadulterated chocolate: the pure, ground, roasted chocolate beans impart a strong, deep chocolate flavor. With the addition of sugar, however, it is used as the base for cakes, brownies, confections, and cookies.

Recently Updated

-  **Chocolate** updated by Andrew Lui (view change) 2 minutes ago
-  **Doc Sprint chocolate** updated by Andrew Lui (view change) 2 minutes ago
-  **Chocs1.jpg** attached by Andrew Lui 16 minutes ago

More

Confluence Page Gadget Properties

Properties are settings for Confluence gadgets that allow the user to control the content or presentation of data retrieved by the gadget. These are similar to a Confluence macro's parameters. The table below lists relevant properties for this gadget.

Property	Required?	Default	Description
Space	No	None	Specify the space that your desired page is located in. Suggestions will display in a dropdown when you start typing. (Note, this property is only used to make searching for pages easier. It is not required.)
Page	Yes	None	Specify the page that you want to display in your gadget. Suggestions will display in a dropdown when you start typing.
Show View Link	No	Yes	Select whether to display a link to view the page on your Confluence site. Clicking the link will open the page in Confluence.
Show Edit Link	No	No	Select whether to display a link to edit the page on your Confluence site. Clicking the link will open the page for editing in Confluence.
Refresh Interval	No	Never/false	Specify the time interval between each 'refresh' action undertaken by the page gadget. A refresh makes the activity stream gadget reflect any new activity that has been conducted on the Confluence site.

Working Macros

The Confluence page gadget will only render a subset of the macros that are used in Confluence correctly. Refer to the table below for the list of macros that work and do not work with the page gadget and known limitations.



Some of the issues with macros in the page gadget can be worked around, if you are comfortable developing in Confluence. Please see [Troubleshooting Macros in the Page Gadget](#) for more information.

Key:

Works with the page gadget















** Partially works with the page gadget*



Does not work with the page gadget

Macro	Works with page gadget?	Limitations
Activity Stream		You cannot have another gadget embedded within the Confluence Page Gadget
Anchor (within a page)	*	Opens in a new page
Attachments		N/A
Blog Posts		N/A
Chart		N/A
Children Display		N/A
Content By Label		N/A
Content By User		N/A
Excerpt		N/A
Gallery		N/A
Include Page		N/A
Info		N/A
Labels List		N/A
Livesearch		N/A
Note		N/A
Metadata		N/A
Metadata Summary		N/A


Pagetree Search		N/A
Pagetree		N/A
Panel		N/A
Quick Nav		You cannot have another gadget embedded within the Confluence Page Gadget
Recently Updated		N/A
RSS Feed		N/A
Section & Column		N/A
Spaces List		N/A
Table of Contents	 *	Works, however links will be opened in a new browser window when clicked.
Tasklist	 *	Tasks can be viewed but not added/edited.
View File (PDF or PPT)	 *	Works, but you may need to refresh the gadget the first time (see CONF-19932).
Widget Connector	 *	Only works for some content: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Works: blip.tv, Episodic, Flickr, Google Calendar, presentations on Google Docs, MySpace Video, Scribd, Skitch.com, SlideRocket, SlideShare, Viddler, Vimeo, YouTube, Dailymotion, Metacafe, FriendFeed, Yahoo Video, Wufoo HTML Form Builder • Does not work: FriendFeed, Google Gadgets, Google Video (consumer service discontinued), Twitter, Widgetbox, DabbleDB, BackType

Related Topics

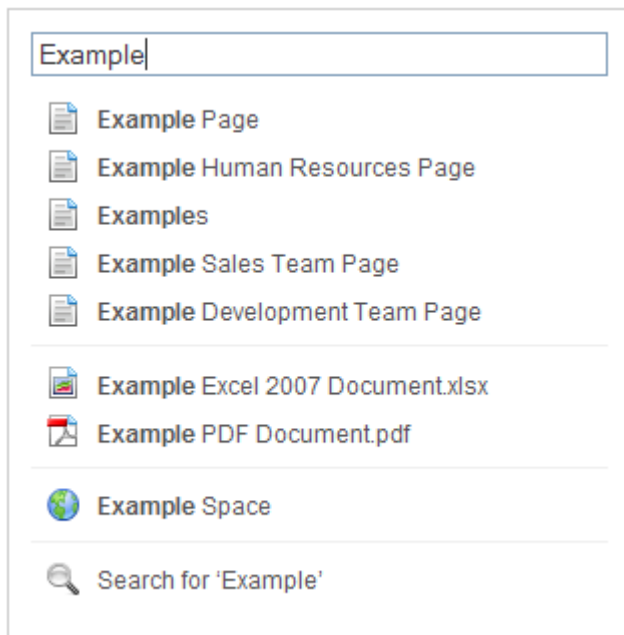
[Confluence Gadgets](#)

Confluence Quicknav Gadget

The Confluence QuickNav gadget provides the [Quick Navigation Aid](#) functionality for searching the Confluence site. For more information on how to use this feature, refer to the [Quick Navigation Aid](#) section of [Searching Confluence](#).

 For instructions on how to use Confluence gadgets in your applications, please see [Confluence Gadgets](#).

Screenshot: *Using the QuickNav Gadget*



Confluence QuickNav Gadget Properties

This gadget has no properties and cannot be customised.

Adding JIRA Gadgets to a Confluence Page

This is a summary of the steps required to add a JIRA gadget to a Confluence page:

- If your JIRA site does not allow anonymous access, your JIRA administrator will need to configure JIRA to trust Confluence via Application Links. See the [JIRA administrator's guide](#).
- Your Confluence administrator will need to add the JIRA gadget URL to the list of authorised external gadgets in Confluence. See the [Confluence administrator's guide](#).
- Now you can add the gadget to a wiki page in Confluence using the Macro Browser. See the Confluence user's guide to the [Macro Browser](#) and the [Gadget macro](#).

Note that the Confluence Gadget macro is a specific type of macro which is used to display a gadget in a Confluence page - so once you have configured external gadgets in the Confluence Administration Console, they will appear in the Macro Browser.

Related Topics

[All Atlassian gadgets](#)

[External Gadgets](#)

Working with Macros

Using a macro, you can add extra functionality or include dynamic content in a page. For example, the [Attachments macro](#) will list a page's attachments in the page itself, so that readers do not have to visit the Attachments tab.

On this page:

- [Adding a Macro in your Page](#)
- [Macros Shipped with your Confluence Installation](#)
- [Information about Other Macros](#)
- [Writing your own Macros](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Adding a Macro in your Page

Including Macros with the Macro Browser

To add a macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

For a complete description of the macro browser, see [Working with the Macro Browser](#).

Macro Parameters

Many macros allow you to include optional parameters to control the macro's output.

With the Attachments Macro, for instance, you have two optional parameters:

- To specify the file formats of the attachments displayed.
- To choose whether or not you want old versions of the attachments displayed.

Macro Placeholders

Macro placeholders are displayed in the editor where you have added a macro to the page.

When editing a page, you can:

- Double-click a macro placeholder to open the Macro Browser (or click on the placeholder and choose **Edit**), where you can edit the macro's parameters.
- Select a macro placeholder to cut, copy and paste the macro.

Macros Shipped with your Confluence Installation

When you download your Confluence installation file, many macros are shipped with the download. Below is a list of the macros currently shipped with Confluence. Click a macro name for details of the usage, including optional parameters and examples.

Anchor Macro

Allows you to link to a specific part of a page.

Attachments Macro

Displays a list of attachments belonging to the current page.

Blog Posts Macro

Lists the most recent news items in the space.

Change-History Macro

Displays a history of updates made to a page.

Chart Macro

Displays a chart based on tabular data.

Cheese Macro

Displays the words "I like cheese!"

Children Display Macro

Displays the children and descendants of the current page.

Code Block Macro

Displays code in your document with the appropriate syntax highlighting.

Column Macro

Used with the Section Macro. Defines columns within the page.

Content by Label Macro

Renders a list of content associated with specific labels.

Content by User Macro

Displays a list of the content items that have been created by a specified Confluence user.

Contributors Macro

Displays a list of Confluence users who have made a contribution of some type to a page.

Contributors Summary Macro

Displays a table of contribution-based statistics for a set of pages.

Create Space Button Macro

Renders a create space button linked to the create space page.

Detailssummary Macro

Presents a tabulated summary of selected metadata, which has been embedded using the Metadata Macro on any page or blog post in the current Confluence space.

Excerpt Include Macro

Allows you to display an excerpt from another page within the current page.

Excerpt Macro

Define a part of a page as the page's 'excerpt' which can then be displayed in another page.

Expand Macro

Displays an expandable/collapsible section of text.

Favourite Pages Macro

Displays a list of your favourite pages.

Gadget Macro

Allows you to add Confluence gadgets to pages or blog posts.

Gallery Macro

Forms a thumbnail gallery of all images attached to a page.

Global Reports Macro

Renders a list of links to global reports within a table.

HTML Include Macro

Includes the content of an external HTML file into a Confluence page.

HTML Macro

Renders your specified HTML code within the current page.

IM Presence Macro

Displays graphically when a contact is online.

Include Page Macro

Inserts the contents of the specified page into the current one.

Info Macro

Displays a block of text in a blue highlight box.

JIRA Issues Macro

Displays a list of JIRA issues in a page.

JIRA Macro

Displays one or more JIRA issues on your Confluence page.

JIRA Portlet Macro

Displays a JIRA dashboard portlet in Confluence.

JUnit Report Macro

Display a summary of JUnit test results.

Labels List Macro

Displays a hyperlinked alphabetical index of all labels within the current space.

Livesearch Macro

Add a dynamic search box to a wiki page.

Loremipsum Macro

Display a few paragraphs of pseudo-Latin text.

Metadata Macro

Allows you to embed metadata into pages and blog posts for presentation with the Detailssummary Macro

Multimedia Macro

Displays videos, animations and more, sourced from a file attached to a Confluence page and displayed on your page.

Navigation Map Macro

Renders the list of pages associated with a specified label as a navigable map.

Network Macro

Displays a list of Network activity for users in your Confluence site

Noformat Macro

Displays a block of text in monospace font.

Note Macro

Displays a block of text in a yellow highlight box.

Page Index Macro

Creates a hyperlinked alphabetical index of all page titles within the current space.

Page Tree Macro

Displays a dynamic, hierarchical list of pages starting from a specified parent (root) page.

Page Tree Search Macro

Adds a search box to your Confluence page and searches a hierarchy of pages starting from a specified parent (root) page.

Panel Macro

Displays a block of text within a fully customisable panel.

Popular Labels Macro

Displays the most popular labels used throughout your Confluence site or within a space.

Profile Picture Macro

Displays a user's profile picture on a page.

Recently Updated Dashboard Macro

Displays a list of the most recently changed content within Confluence and is intended for use on the Confluence dashboard.

Recently Updated Macro

Displays a list of recently changed content (pages, news items, comments, etc).

Recently Used Labels Macro

Lists labels most recently used in a specified scope (Global, Space, or Personal)

Related Labels Macro

Lists labels frequently appearing on the same pages as the current page's labels.

RSS Feed Macro

Displays the contents of an RSS feed.

Search Results Macro

Searches Confluence, and includes the results in the page.

Section Macro

Used with the Column Macro to define columns within the page.

Space Details Macro

Includes the summary of a Confluence space in the page.

Space Jump Macro

Allows you to link from a page in one space to a page with the same name in another space, without knowing the name of the page when you create the link.

Spaces List Macro

Displays a list of all spaces visible to the user.

Status Macro

Displays a coloured lozenge, useful for reporting project status.

Table of Contents Macro

Displays a table of contents from your page headings.

Table of Content Zone Macro

Displays a table of contents from a defined page 'zone'.

Tasklist Macro

Displays a dynamic task list which can be modified in 'view' mode.

Tip Macro

Displays a block of text in a green highlight box.

User List Macro

Displays a list of Confluence users, from an optional group.

User Profile Macro

Displays a short summary of any Confluence user's profile on your Confluence page or blog.

User Status List Macro

Displays a history of any Confluence user's status updates on your Confluence page or blog.

View File Macro

Embeds an Office document or PDF file into your Confluence page.

Warning Macro

Displays a block of text in a red highlight box.

Widget Connector Macro

Displays videos, slide shows, twitter chats, documents and more, sourced from other web sites and displayed on your Confluence page.

Information about Other Macros

Other macros are available as [plugins](#) or as [user macros](#), and can be installed by your Confluence administrator.

Macros that may be of interest are also available from [Adaptavist](#), [CustomWare](#) and the [Confluence SharePoint Connector 1.4 SharePoint Connector](#).

Writing your own Macros

To learn how to write your own macro, take a look at the following documentation:


- User macros are simple template-like macros that allow you to create simple formatting macros using the Confluence web interface. Read more about [Writing User Macros](#).
- The [Confluence Plugin Guide](#) tells you how to develop a plugin for Confluence.

Related Topics

[Working with the Macro Browser](#)
[Atlassian Plugin Exchange](#)
[Installing Plugins and Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Anchor Macro

 The Anchor Macro is documented in [Working with Anchors](#).

Attachments Macro

See [Displaying a List of Attachments in a Page](#).

Blog Posts Macro

The Blog Posts macro allows you to display blog posts on a Confluence page. Clicking on a title takes you to the blog post. The Blog Posts macro generates output like that in the screenshot below:

On this page:

- [Using the Blog Posts Macro](#)
- [Parameters](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Using the Blog Posts Macro

To add the **Blog Posts** macro to a page:


1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Content Type to Display	titles	<p>Available values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • titles — Display a list of blog posts, showing titles only. • excerpts — Display short excerpts from each blog post. 'Read more...' links to the full blog post, if the content is more than 500 characters long.

Time Frame	no limit	<p>Specify how far back in time Confluence should look for the blog posts to be displayed.</p> <p>Available values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>m</code> — Minutes • <code>h</code> — Hours, so '12h' displays blog posts created in the last twelve hours. • <code>d</code> — Days, so '7d' displays blog posts created in the last seven days. • <code>w</code> — Weeks
Restrict to these Labels	None	<p>Filter the results by label. The macro will display only the blog posts which are tagged with the label(s) you specify here.</p> <p>You can specify one or more label values, separated by a comma or a space.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To exclude content which matches a given label, put a minus sign (-) immediately in front of that label value. For example: If you specify a label value of <code>-badpage</code> you will get only content which is not labelled with 'badpage'. • To indicate that the results must match a given label value, put a plus sign (+) immediately in front of that label value. For example: If you specify a label value of <code>+superpage, +goodpage</code> you will get only content which has at least two labels, being 'superpage' and 'goodpage'.
Restrict to these Authors	None	<p>Filter the results by author. The macro will display only the blog posts which are written by the author(s) you specify here.</p> <p>You can specify one or more authors, separated by a comma.</p>
Restrict to these Spaces	@self, i.e. the space which contains the page on which the macro is coded	<p>This parameter allows you to filter content by space. The macro will display only the pages which belong to the space(s) you specify here.</p> <p>You can specify one or more space keys, separated by a comma or a space.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To exclude content in a specific space, put a minus sign (-) immediately in front of that space key. For example: If you specify a space key of <code>-BADSPACE</code> you will get only content which is not in the BADSPACE. • To indicate that the results must come from a specific space, put a plus sign (+) immediately in front of that space key. For example: If you specify a space key of <code>+GOODSPACE</code> you will get only content in GOODSPACE. (Note that this is not particularly useful, because each content item belongs to one space only. If you put a plus sign next to one space key and list other space keys too, the other space keys will be ignored.) <p>Special values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>@self</code> — The current space. • <code>@personal</code> — All personal spaces. • <code>@global</code> — All global spaces. • <code>@favorite</code> — The spaces you have marked as favourite. • <code>@favourite</code> — The same as <code>@favorite</code> above. • <code>@all</code> — All spaces in your Confluence site. • <code>*</code> — The same as <code>@all</code> above. <p> When specifying a personal space, remember to use the tilde (~) sign in front of the username, such as <code>~jbloggs</code> or <code>~jbloggs@example.com</code>.</p>
Maximum Number of Blog Posts	15	<p>Specify the maximum number of results to be displayed. Note that the results are sorted first, and then the maximum parameter is applied.</p>
Sort By	creation	<p>Specify how the results should be sorted. If this parameter is not specified, the sort order defaults to descending order (newest first) based on the creation date.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • title — Sort alphabetically by title. • creation — Sort by the date on which the content was added. • modified — Sort by the date on which the content was last updated.
Reverse Sort	false	<p>Select to change the sort from descending to ascending order (oldest first). Use this parameter in conjunction with the Sort By parameter. This parameter is ignored if the Sort By parameter is not specified.</p>

Related Topics

[Working with Macros](#)
[Working with Blog Posts](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Change-History Macro

The Change-History macro shows the history of updates made to a page — version number, author, date and comment. It displays this information inline, as shown in the following screenshot.

Screenshot: The Change-History Macro in Confluence

Version	Date	Comment
Current Version (v. 3)	Apr 01, 2009 16:55	Conf Admin
v. 2	Apr 01, 2009 13:09	Conf Admin
v. 1	Apr 01, 2009 11:03	Conf Admin

On this page:

- [Using the Change-History Macro](#)
- [Notes](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Using the Change-History Macro

To add the Change-History macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Notes

There are no parameters for this macro.

Related Topics

[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

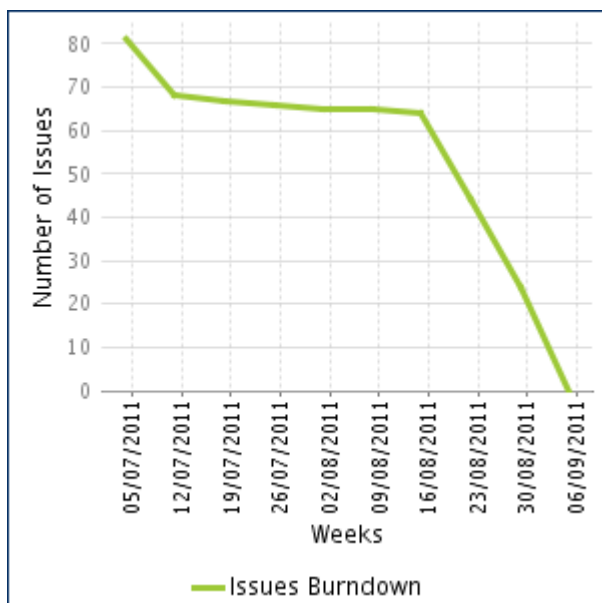
Chart Macro

The Chart macro allows you to display a chart based on tabular data. When you add the macro to a page, you:

- supply the data to be charted by the macro as a table in the placeholder of the macro.
- edit the macro parameters in the Macro Browser to configure the format of the chart.

Screenshots: A table of data in the Chart macro placeholder, and the resulting chart image.





On this page:

- [Using the Chart Macro](#)
- [Parameters](#)
- [Examples](#)
 - [Pie Chart](#)
 - [Bar Chart](#)
 - [3D Bar Chart](#)
 - [Time Series Chart](#)
 - [XY Line Chart](#)
 - [XY Area Chart](#)
 - [Area Charts](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Using the Chart Macro

To add the Chart macro to a page:

1. When editing the page, use autocomplete to add the Chart macro to the page. (Type '{' then begin typing the name of the macro, and choose it from the list of suggestions.)
2. Enter your chart data as one or more tables in the body of the macro placeholder (see the [screenshot](#) above)
3. Edit the macro and select a chart type using the **Type** parameter (see below).
4. Make other parameter settings, in the Macro Browser, as described below.
5. Click **Preview** to check that the chart appears as you expect.
6. Finally, click **Save** to add the chart to your page.

Parameters

[Chart Type Parameters](#) | [Display Control Parameters](#) | [Title and Label Parameters](#) | [Data Specification Parameters](#) | [Colour Parameters](#) | [Axis Parameters](#) | [Pie Chart Parameters](#) | [Attachment Parameters](#)

Chart Type Parameters

These parameters determine the type of chart to display and the way the chart looks.

Parameter	Default	Description
Type	pie	<p>The type of chart to display. XY charts have numerical x- and y-axes. The x values may optionally be time-based (see the Time Series parameter).</p> <p><i>Standard</i> — pie, bar, line, area</p> <p><i>XY Plots</i> — xyArea, xyBar, xyLine, xyStep, xyStepArea, scatter, timeSeries</p> <p><i>Other</i> — gantt (beta)</p>

Display Orientation	vertical	Applies to area, bar and line charts. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> vertical — y-axis is vertical horizontal — x-axis is vertical
Show in 3D	false	Applies to area, bar and line charts.
Stacked Values	false	Applies to area and bar charts.
Show shapes	true	Applies to line charts. Shapes are shown at each data point.
Opacity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 75 percent for 3D charts 50 percent for non-stacked area charts 100 percent for all other charts 	A percentage value between 0 (transparent) and 100 (opaque) that determines how opaque the foreground areas and bars are.

Display Control Parameters

Parameter	Default	Description
Width	300	The width of the chart in pixels.
Height	300	The height of the chart in pixels.
Display rendered data	false	Sets whether to display the rendered body of the macro (usually the data tables). By default, the chart data table isn't rendered. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> before — the data are displayed before the chart. after — the data are displayed after the chart.
Image format	png	The image format to be used for the chart. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> png jpg

Title and Label Parameters

Parameter	Default	Description
Chart Title	none	The title of the chart.
Chart Subtitle	none	A subtitle for the chart, using a smaller font than for Title .
Horizontal-axis Label	none	The label for the x-axis (domain).
Vertical-axis Label	none	The label for the y-axis (range).
Show Legend	true	Show a legend or key.

Data Specification Parameters

The data for the chart is taken from tables found when the macro body is rendered. These options control how this data is interpreted. By default, numeric and date values are interpreted according to the Confluence global default language (locale) formats. If conversion fails, other languages defined in Confluence will be tried. Additional conversion options can be specified using the parameters below.

Parameter	Default	Description
Tables	all first level tables	Comma separated list of table ids and/or table numbers (starting at 1) contained within the body of the macro that will be used as the data for the chart. If data tables are embedded in other tables, then table selection will be required. This occurs when more complex formatting is done (for example using section and column macros).
Columns	all columns	Comma separated list of column labels and/or column titles and/or column numbers for tables used for chart data. This applies to all tables processed. Columns are enumerated starting at 1. Column label is the text for the column in the header row. Column title is the (html) title attribute for the column in the header row.

Content Orientation	horizontal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> vertical — data table columns will be interpreted as series. horizontal — data tables rows will be interpreted as series.
Time Series	false	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> true — the x values in an XY plot will be treated as time series data and so will be converted according to date formats.
Date format	Confluence language defined date formats	For time series data, the date format allows for additional customization of the conversion of data to date values. If a Date format is specified, it will be the first format used to interpret date values. Specify a format that matches the time series data. See simple date format .
Time Period	Day	The time period for time series data. Defines the granularity of how the data is interpreted. Valid values are: Millisecond, Second, Minute, Hour, Day, Week, Month, Quarter, Year .
Language	none	Use in combination with the Country parameter to form a locale. These additional number and date formats will be used for data conversion before the default languages. Valid values are 2 character ISO 639-1 alpha-2 codes .
Country	none	Use in combination with the Language parameter to form a locale. Valid values are 2 character ISO 3166 codes .
Forgive	true	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> true — the macro tries to convert numeric and date values that do not totally match any of the default or user-specified formats. false — enforce strict data format. Data format errors will cause the chart to not be produced.

Colour Parameters

Colours are specified using hexadecimal notation or HTML colour names.

Parameter	Default	Description
Background Colour	White	Background of the chart.
Border Colour	no border	Border around the chart.
Colours		Comma-separated list of colours used to customise category, sections, and series colours.

Axis Parameters

Depending on the chart type, the range and domain axis may be customised. These values are automatically generated based on the data but can be overridden by specifying one or more more of these parameters.

Parameter	Default	Description
Range Minimum Value	none	Range axis lower bound.
Range Maximum Value	none	Range axis upper bound.
Range Axis Tick Unit	none	Range axis units between axis tick marks.
Range Axis Label Angle	none	Angle for the range axis label in degrees.
Domain Axis Lower Bound	none	Only applies to XY plots. Domain axis lower bound. For a date axis, this value must be expressed in the date format specified by the Date format parameter.
Domain Axis Upper Bound	none	Only applies to XY plots. Domain axis upper bound. For a date axis, this value must be expressed in the date format specified by the Date format parameter.

Domain Axis Tick Unit	none	Only applies to XY plots. Domain axis units between axis tick marks. For a date axis, this value represents a count of the units specified in the Time Period parameter. The Time Period unit can be overridden by specifying a trailing character: y (years), M (months), d (days), h (hours), m (minutes), s (seconds), u (milliseconds).
Domain Axis Label Angle	none	Only applies to XY plots. The angle for the domain axis label, in degrees.
Category Label Position	none	Placement of the axis label text for categories. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>up45</code> — 45 degrees going upward • <code>up90</code> — 90 degrees going upward • <code>down45</code> — 45 degrees going downward • <code>down90</code> — 90 degrees going downward
Date Tick Mark Position	start	Placement of the date tick mark. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>start</code> — tick mark is at the start of the date period. • <code>middle</code> — tick mark is in the middle of the date period. • <code>end</code> — tick mark is at the end of the date period.

Pie Chart Parameters

Parameter	Default	Description
Pie Section Label	Show only the pie section key value	Format for how pie section labels are displayed. The format uses a string with special replacement variables: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>%0%</code> is replaced by the pie section key. • <code>%1%</code> is replaced by the pie section numeric value. • <code>%2%</code> is replaced by the pie section percent value. Example 1: <code>"%0% = %1%"</code> would display something like "Independent = 20" Example 2: <code>"%0% (%2%)"</code> would display something like "Independent (20%)"
Pie Section Explode	No exploded sections	Comma separated list of pie keys that are to be shown exploded. Note: requires jFreeChart version 1.0.3 or higher.

Attachment Parameters

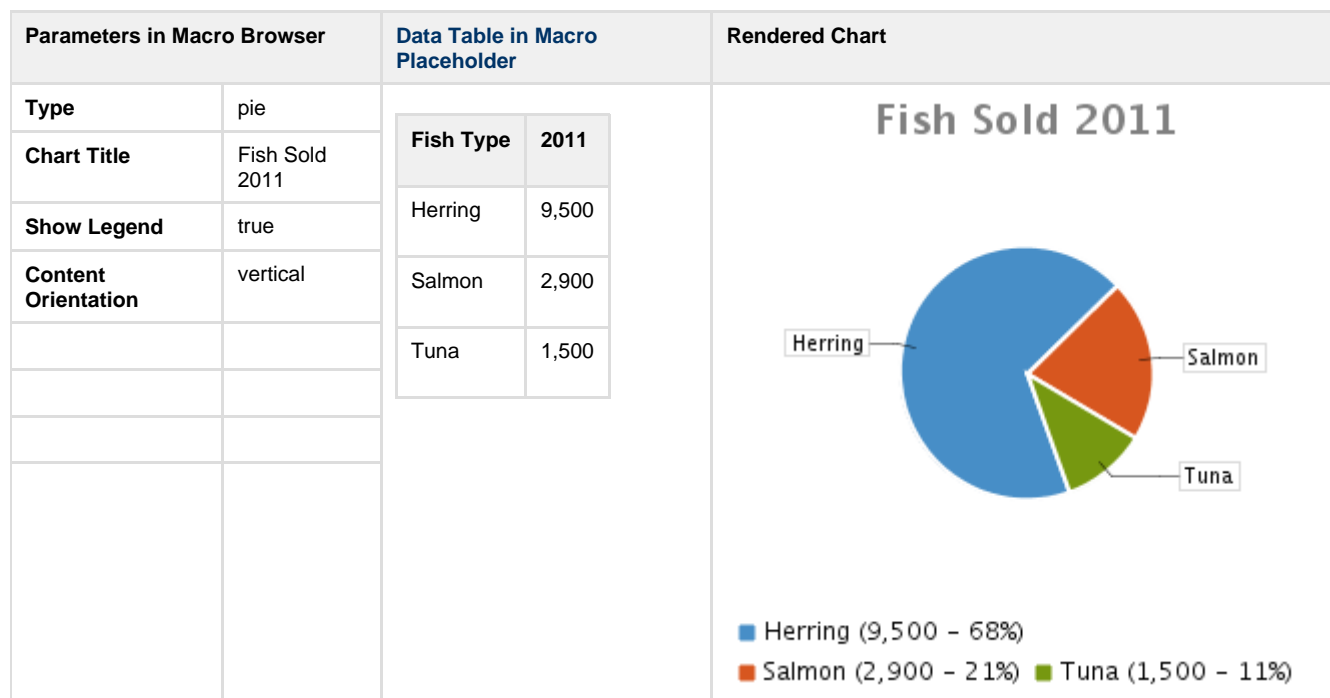
These are advanced options that can be used for chart versioning, to enable automation and to improve performance. Use these options carefully! Normally, the chart image is regenerated each time the page is displayed. These options allow for the generated image to be saved as an attachment and have subsequent access re-use the attachment. This can be useful especially when combined with the Cache Plugin to improve performance. Depending on the options chosen, chart images can be versioned for historical purposes.

Parameter	Default	Description
Attachment	none	The name and location with which the chart image will be saved as an attachment. The user must be authorised to add attachments to the page specified. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>^attachmentName.png</code> — the chart is saved as an attachment to the current page. • <code>page^attachmentName.png</code> — the chart is saved as an attachment to the page name provided. • <code>space:page^attachmentName.png</code> — the chart is saved as an attachment to the page name provided in the space indicated.
Attachment Version	new	Defines the the versioning mechanism for saved charts. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>new</code> — creates new version of the attachment. • <code>replace</code> — replaces all previous versions of the chart. To replace an existing attachment, the user must be authorized to remove attachments for the page specified. • <code>keep</code> — only saves a new attachment if an existing export of the same name does not exist. An existing attachment will not be changed or updated.
Attachment Comment	none	Comment used for a saved chart attachment.
Thumbnail	false	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>true</code> — the chart image attachment will be shown as a thumbnail.

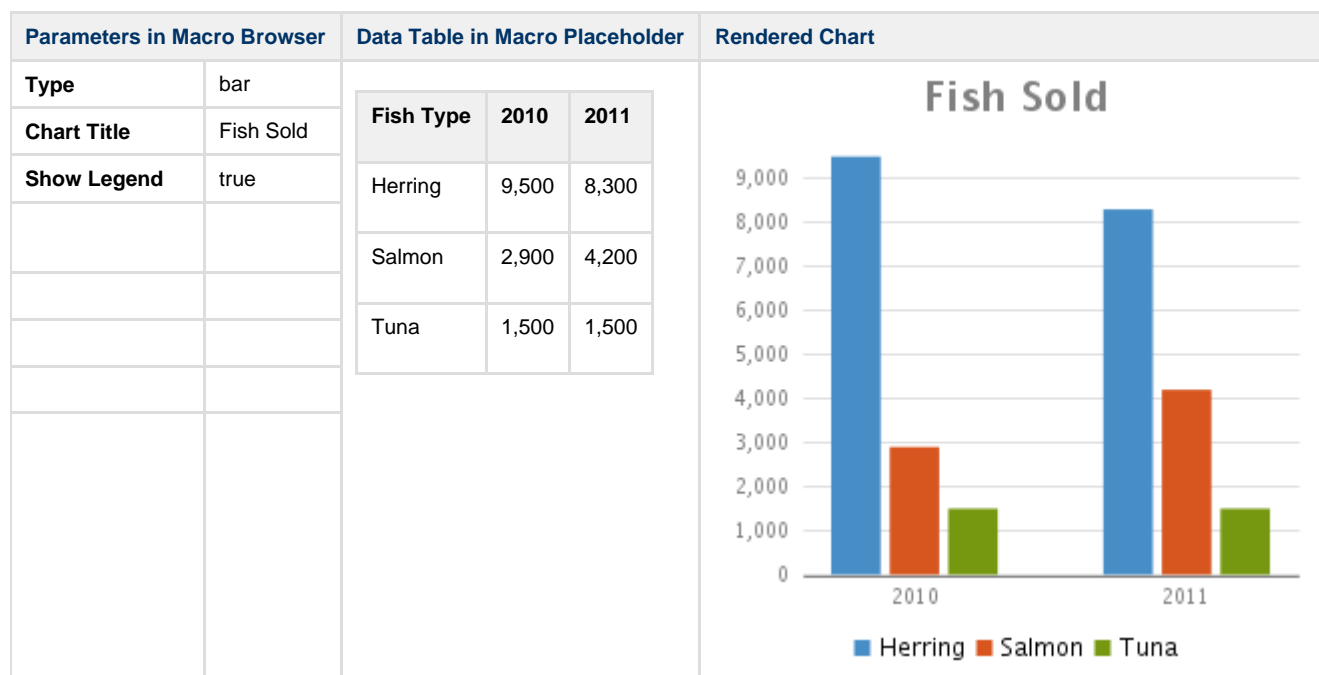
[Chart Type Parameters](#) | [Display Control Parameters](#) | [Title and Label Parameters](#) | [Data Specification Parameters](#) | [Colour Parameters](#) |

Examples

Pie Chart

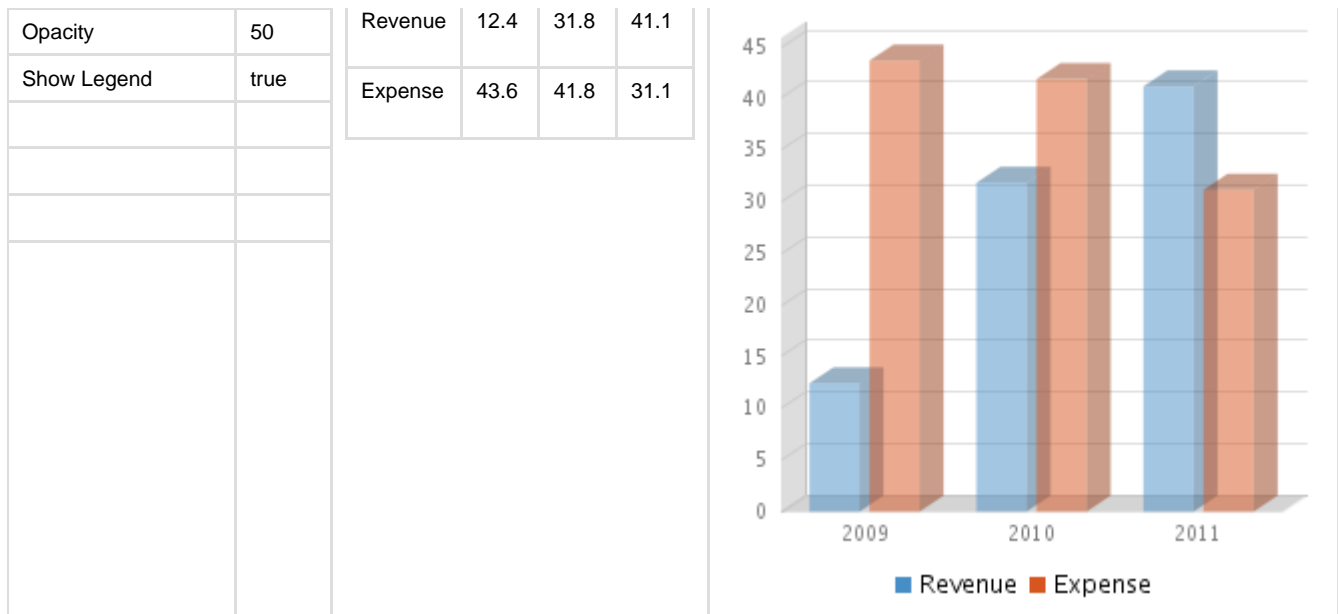


Bar Chart

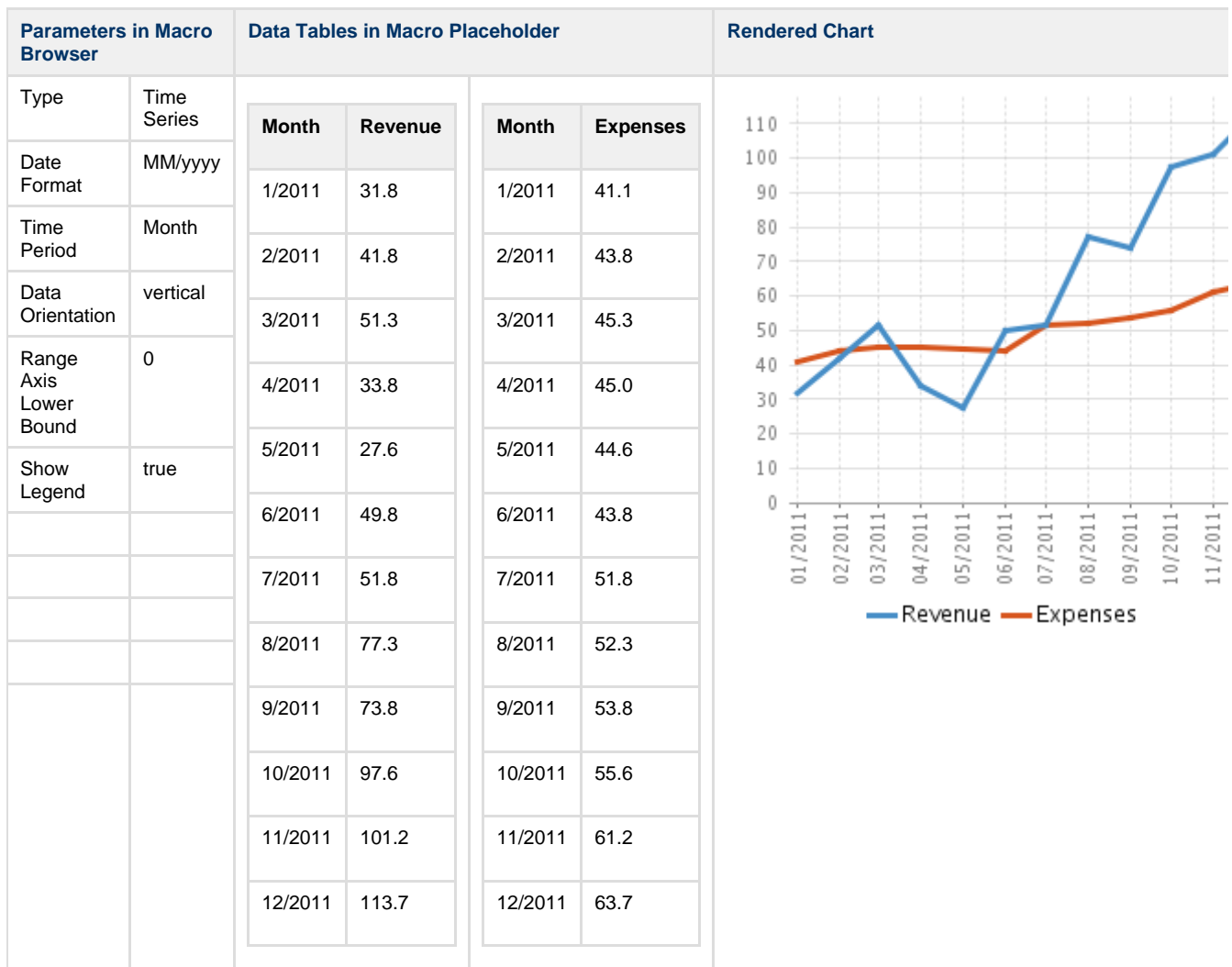


3D Bar Chart

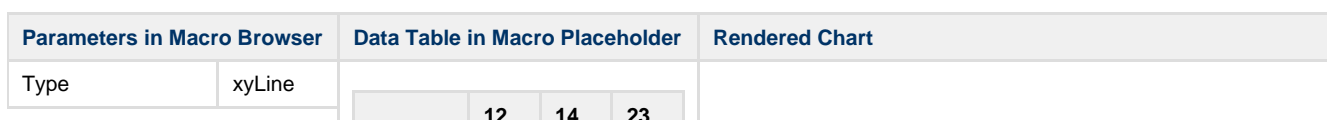
Parameters in Macro Browser		Data Table in Macro Placeholder				Rendered Chart												
Type	bar	<table><tr><td></td><td>2009</td><td>2010</td><td>2011</td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr></table>					2009	2010	2011									
	2009					2010	2011											
Show in 3D	true																	

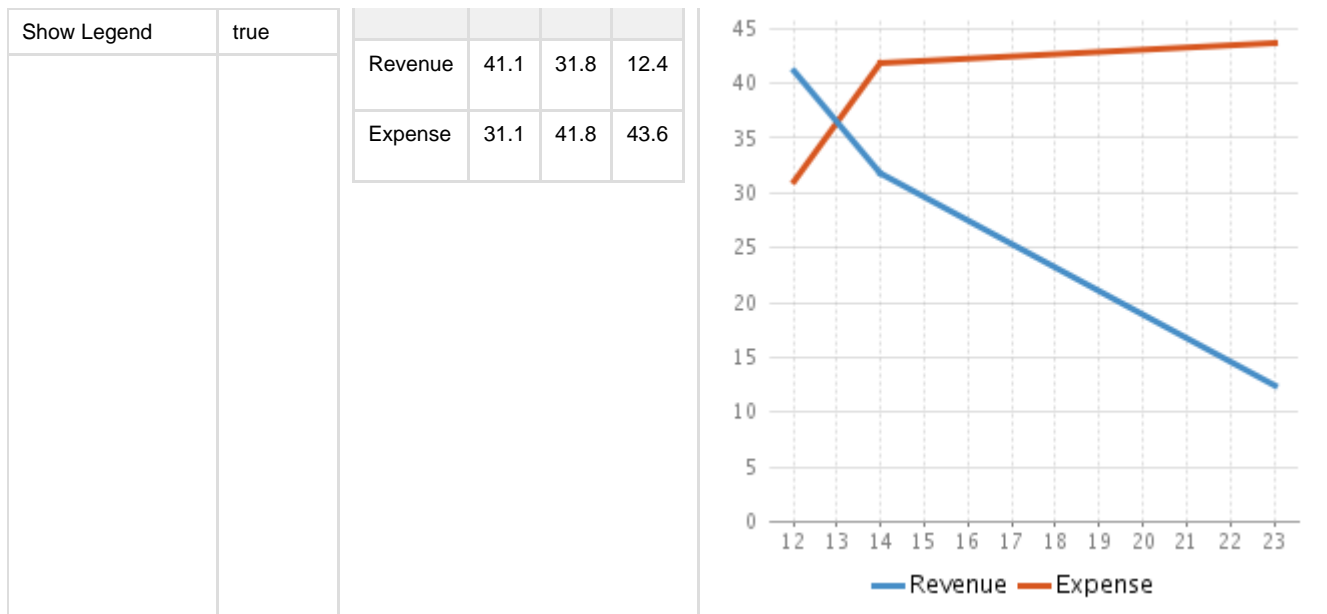


Time Series Chart

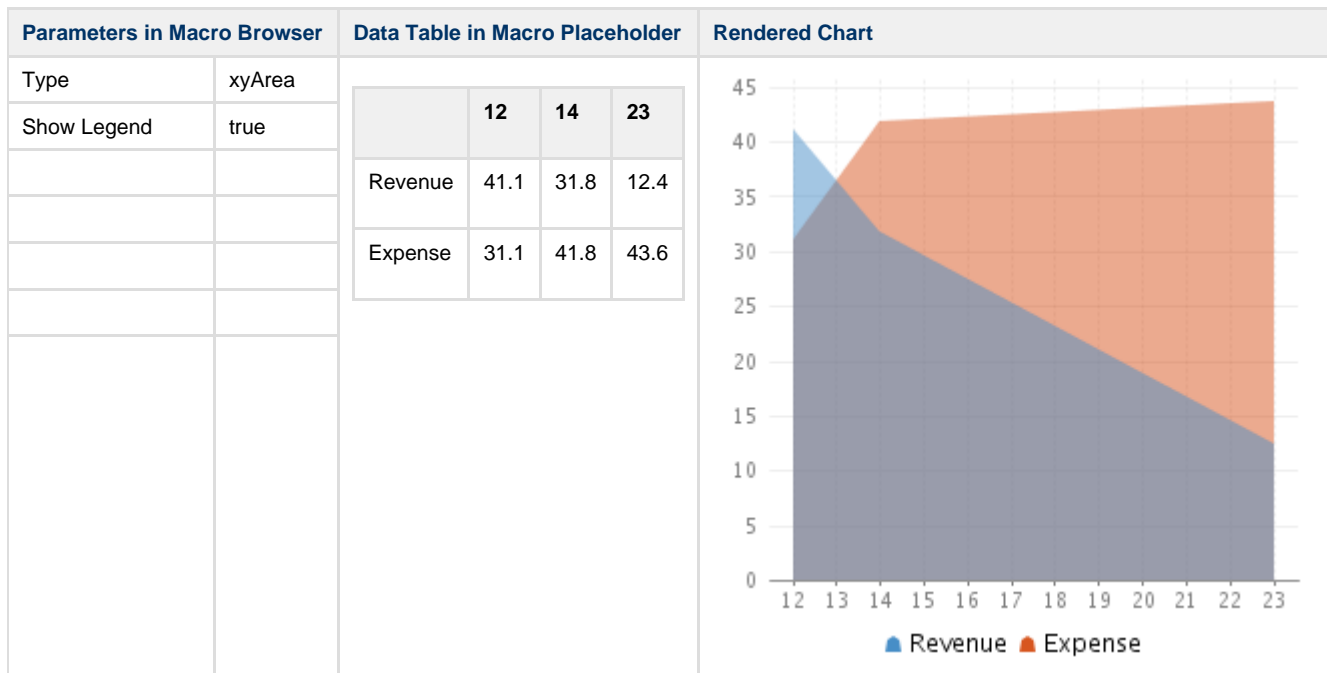


XY Line Chart



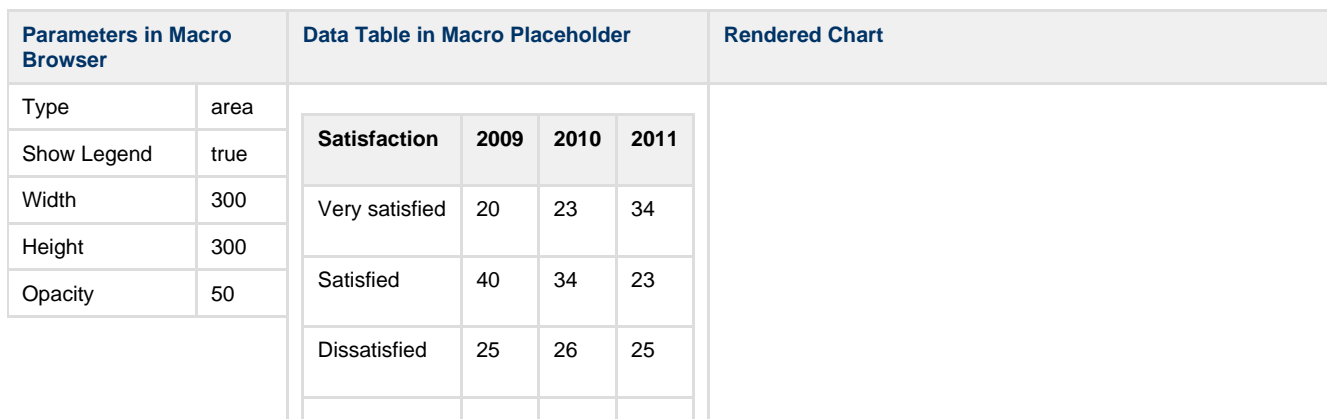


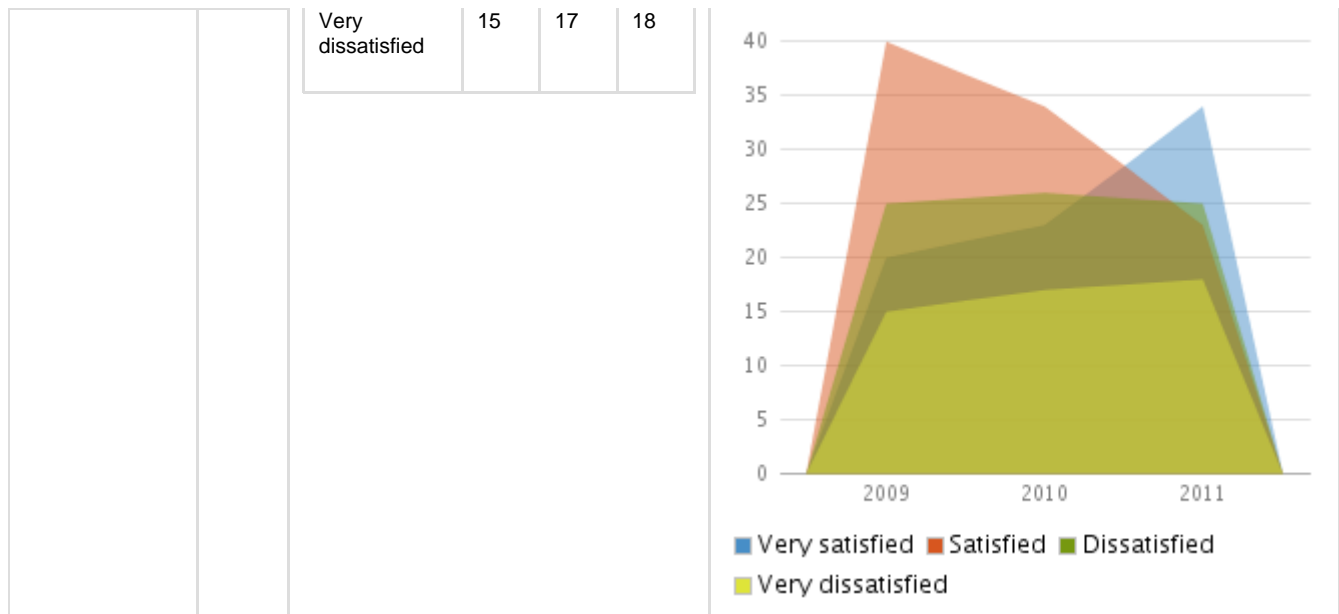
XY Area Chart



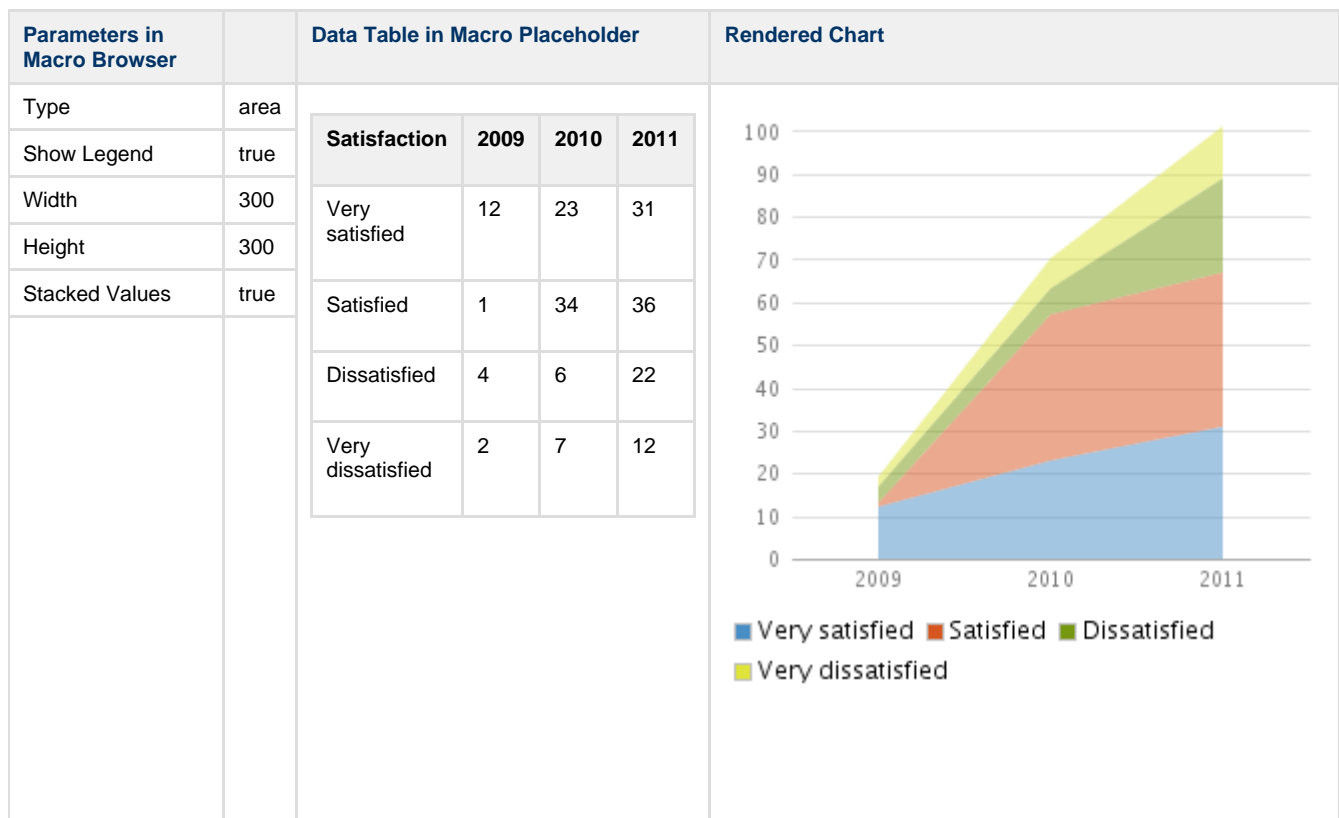
Area Charts

Example 1





Example 2



Related Topics

[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Cheese Macro

The Cheese macro simply displays the words "I like cheese!"

You can use this macro to test the Confluence macro functionality. 😊

Using the Cheese Macro

To add the Cheese macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

The cheese macro renders the following message on the page: I like cheese!

There are no parameters for this macro.

Related Topics

[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).


Children Display Macro

Use the Children Display macro to display the child pages of a page and the descendents (childrens' children). Links to the children are displayed as in the screenshot below:

Screenshot: The Children Display Macro in Confluence

Confluence allows you to collect and archive mail within each space individually. all emails pertaining to a particular project on Confluence alongside it in the sam

- [Adding a Mail Account](#)
- [Deleting Mail](#)
- [Fetching Mail](#)
- [Importing Mail](#)
- [Linking to Mail](#)
- [Managing Mail Accounts](#)
- [Restoring Mail](#)
- [Viewing Mail](#)

 Note that only pages for which you have 'View' permission will be displayed.

On this page:

- [Using the Children Display Macro](#)
- [Parameters](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Using the Children Display Macro**To add the Children Display macro to a page:**

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Show Descendants	false	Select to display all descendents.

Parent Page	current	Specify the page to display children for, from either the current space or a different space. Enter: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ' / ' — to list the top-level pages of the current space, i.e. those without parents. ' pagename ' — to list the children of the specified page. ' spacekey: ' — to list the top-level pages of the specified space. ' spacekey: pagename ' — to list the children of the specified page in the specified space.
Number of Children	none	Restrict the number of children displayed at the top level.
Depth of Descendants	none	Enter a number to specify the depth of descendants to display.
Heading Style	none	Choose the style used to display descendants.
Include Excerpts	false	Display excerpts for the child pages, if they exist.
Sort Children By	Manual if manually ordered, otherwise alphabetical	Optional. Choose: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> creation — to sort by content creation date title — to sort alphabetically on title modified — to sort of last modification date.
Reverse Sort	false	Use with the Sort Children By parameter. When set, the sort order changes from ascending to descending.

Related Topics

[Working with Page Families](#)
[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Child Page 1

Grandchild

Child Page 2

This page is used to test the {children} macro.

Related Topics

[Children Display Macro](#)

Code Block Macro

The Code Block macro allows you to display source code in your document with the appropriate syntax highlighting. The code block displays on the page as shown below:

```
public static void main(String[] args)
{
    System.out.println("Hello World!");
}
```

On this page:

- [Using the Code Block Macro](#)
- [Parameters](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Using the Code Block Macro

To add the Code Block macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

You can now type the code block directly into the macro placeholder in the editor. Note that any white space contained in the placeholder is not manipulated in any way by the Code Block macro. This is to provide the writer with flexibility over code indentation.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Syntax highlighting	java	Specifies the language (or environment) for syntax highlighting. The default language is Java but you can choose from one of the following languages/environments: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • actionscript3 • bash • csharp (C#) • coldfusion • cpp (C++) • css • delphi • diff • erlang • groovy • html/xml • java • javafx • javascript • none (no syntax highlighting) • perl • php • powershell • python • ruby • scala • sql • vb
Title	none	Adds a title to the code block. If specified, the title will be displayed in a header row at the top of the code block.
Collapsible	false	If selected, the code macro's content will be collapsed upon visiting or refreshing the Confluence page. Clicking the expand source link allows you to view this content. If false, the code macro's content is always displayed in full.
Show line numbers	false	If selected, line numbers will be shown to the left of the lines of code.
First line number	1	When Show line numbers is selected, this value defines the number of the first line of code.
Theme	Default	Specifies the colour scheme used for displaying your code block. Many of these themes are based on the default colour schemes of popular integrated development environments (IDEs). The default theme is Confluence (also known as Default), which is typically black and coloured text on a blank background. However, you can also choose from one of the following other popular themes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DJango • Emacs • FadeToGrey • Midnight • RDark • Eclipse • Confluence

Related Topics

[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Column Macro

The Column macro allows you to define a single column in a page.

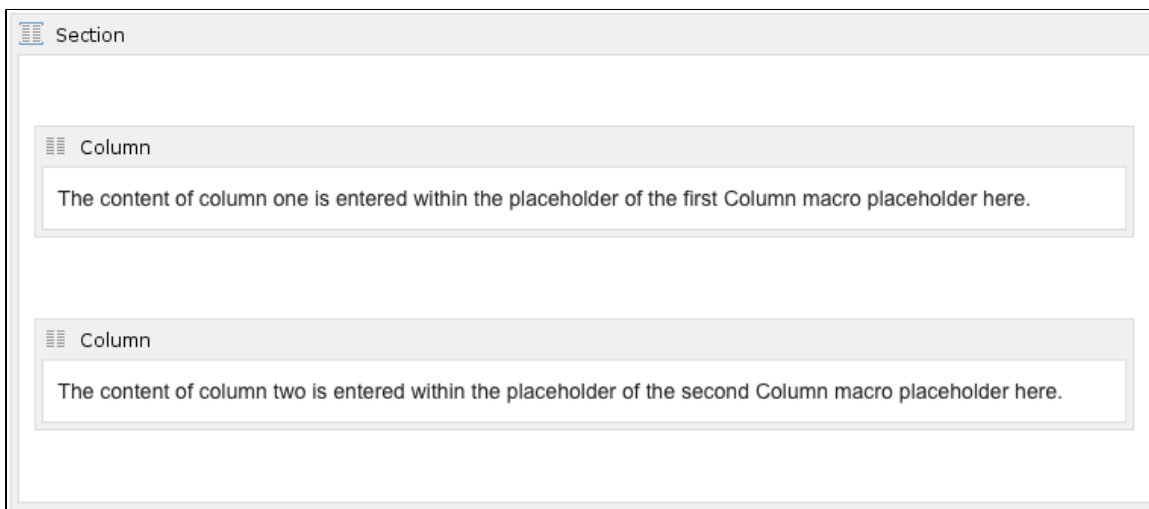
Columns must be defined within a 'section' of a page. So, to display columns correctly in a page, the Column macro placeholders **must** be inserted within a [Section macro](#) placeholder.

Once you have defined the columns inside a Section macro, you can add content to each of the Column macro placeholders.

On this page:

- [Using the Column Macro](#)
- [Parameters](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

The following screenshot shows two columns defined within a section of a page:



which renders on the page like this:


The content of column one is entered within the placeholder of the first Column macro placeholder here.

The content of column two is entered within the placeholder of the second Column macro placeholder here.

Using the Column Macro

To add the Column macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

 Column macros must be inserted within a Section macro for columns to be displayed correctly on a page.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
-----------	---------	-------------

Column Width	100% of the page width, divided equally by the number of columns in the section.	The width of the column. Can be specified either in pixels (e.g. 400px) or as a percentage of the available page width (e.g. 50%).
---------------------	--	--

Related Topics

[Working with Macros](#)
[Working with Tables](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Content by Label Macro

The Content by Label macro shows links to content which has been tagged with specific labels.

On this page:

- [Using the Content by Label Macro](#)
- [Working Example of Usage](#)
- [Parameters](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Using the Content by Label Macro

To add the Content by Label macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Working Example of Usage

Below is a working example of the Content by Label macro, displaying content with the label "LDAP".

Blog post: [Here's some news](#) (Test Space)
 Labels: news, ldap

Page: [Unable to Log In with Confluence 3.5 or Later Due to 'LDAP error code 4 - Sizelimit Exceeded'](#) (Confluence Knowledge Base)

Labels: upgrade, ldap, conf35

Page: [Connecting to SSL services](#) (JIRA Staging)
 Labels: imap, smtp, ldap, ssl

Page: [Connecting to SSL services](#) (JIRA Staging)
 Labels: imap, smtp, ldap, ssl

Page: [Configuring User Directories](#) (Confluence 3.5)
 Labels: user-directory, ldap, active-directory, ad, repository, directory, user-management, authentication, login, user, group



Showing first 5 of 613 results

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Label(s)	None	<p>Filter by label(s) — only that content tagged with the label(s) specified is displayed. See also the Operator parameter below.</p> <p>This parameter is required. Specify one or more labels, separated by a comma or a single space.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To exclude content which matches a given label, put a minus sign (-) immediately in front of that label value. For example: If you specify a label value of <code>-badpage</code> you will get only content which is not labelled with 'badpage'. • To indicate that the results must match a given label value, put a plus sign (+) immediately in front of that label value. For example: If you specify a label value of <code>+superpage, +goodpage</code> you will get only content which has at least two labels, being 'superpage' and 'goodpage'.

Author(s)	None	<p>Filter by author — only that content created or updated by the author(s) specified is displayed.</p> <p>Specify one or more authors, separated by a comma.</p>
Include this Content Type Only	all	<p>Filter by content type — only content of the type specified is displayed.</p> <p>Specify one or more content types, separated by a comma or a space.</p> <p>To exclude content of a given content type, put a minus sign (-) immediately in front of that content type. For example: If you specify a content type of <code>-blogpost</code> you will get pages and all other content except for blog posts.</p> <p>Available values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>page</code> — Pages. • <code>blogpost</code> or <code>news</code> — Blog posts, also known as news items.
Show Labels for Each Page	true	Show or hide labels for results.
Show Space Name for Each Page	true	Show or hide spaces for results.
List Title	None	Adds a title or heading to the list.
Maximum Number of Pages	15	Limits the maximum number of results to be displayed. Note that the results are sorted first, and then the maximum parameter is applied.
Display Excerpts	false	Includes excerpts from each page listed. Note that you must have defined excerpts on each of those pages, by adding the excerpt macro to the page. Only the first few lines of the excerpt for each page are displayed.
Restrict to these Spaces	@all	<p>Filter by space — only that content which belongs to the space(s) specified is displayed.</p> <p>You can specify one or more space keys, separated by a comma or a space.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To exclude content in a specific space, put a minus sign (-) immediately in front of that space key. For example: If you specify a space key of <code>-BADSPACE</code> you will get only content which is not in the BADSPACE. • To indicate that the results must come from a specific space, put a plus sign (+) immediately in front of that space key. For example: If you specify a space key of <code>+GOODSPACE</code> you will get only content in GOODSPACE. (Note that this is not particularly useful, because each content item belongs to one space only. If you put a plus sign next to one space key and list other space keys too, the other space keys will be ignored.) <p>Special values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>@self</code> — The current space. • <code>@personal</code> — All personal spaces. • <code>@global</code> — All global spaces. • <code>@favorite</code> — The spaces you have marked as favourite. • <code>@favourite</code> — The same as <code>@favorite</code> above. • <code>@all</code> — All spaces in your Confluence site. • <code>*</code> — The same as <code>@all</code> above. <p> When specifying a personal space, remember to use the tilde (~) sign in front of the username, such as <code>~jbloggs</code> or <code>~jbloggs@example.com</code>.</p>
Operator	OR	<p>The operator to apply to the labels specified in Label(s):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • OR — Pages with <i>any</i> of the non-prefixed labels are listed. • AND — Pages with <i>all</i> of the specified non-prefixed labels are listed. <p> Note that this parameter only modifies the behaviour of the Label(s) parameter and only affects label values without a plus (+) or minus (-) sign prefix.</p>

Sort By	modified	Specify how the results should be sorted. Values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • title — Sort alphabetically by title. • creation — Sort by the date on which the content was added. • modified — Sort by the date on which the content was last updated. <p>Note: If this parameter is not specified, the sort order defaults to descending order based on the last modification date (i.e. latest first). To change the sort order from ascending to descending, use the Reverse Sort parameter.</p>
Reverse Sort	false	Select Reverse Sort to change the sort from descending to ascending. Use this parameter in conjunction with the Sort By parameter — Reverse Sort is ignored if Sort By is not specified.

Related Topics

[Related Labels Macro](#)
[Navigation Map Macro](#)
[Recently Used Labels Macro](#)
[Working with Labels](#)
[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Content by User Macro

The Content by User macro generates a tabulated list of the content items, throughout the Confluence installation, that have been created by a specified Confluence user. The list includes all current pages, comments and spaces created by the user. Each item in the table is linked to its corresponding page, page comment or space dashboard.

Note that items for page comments contain a link to the page, followed by a second link to the comment itself, with these separated by a greater-than sign (>).

On this page:

- [Using the Content by User Macro](#)
- [Parameters](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Using the Content by User Macro

To add the Content by User macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Username	none	The Confluence username for a person who has created content.

Related Topics

[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Contributors Macro

The Contributors macro displays a list of Confluence users who have made a contribution of some type to a page. It can also be used to list watchers of this page.

The scope of this macro can be extended to include the immediate children or descendants of the specified page. The list of contributors can be based on people who have:

- authored or edited the page(s)
- contributed comments or added labels to the page(s), or
- are simply watching the page(s).

On this page:

- [Using the Contributors Macro](#)
- [Parameters](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Screenshot: *Example list of Contributors*

- [Sarah Maddox](#)
- [Edwin Dawson](#)
- [Giles Gaskell](#)
- [Rosie Jameson](#)
- [Andrew Lui](#)
- [Charles Miller](#)

In this example, the **Display Format** parameter has been set to **list**.

Using the Contributors Macro

To add the Contributors macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Contribution Type	authors	Filters by either the type of contribution made to a page (and optionally its descendant pages), or the watches on the page. Contribution types are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • authors - includes people who created or have edited the page(s) • comments - includes people who have added comments to the page(s) • labels - includes people who have added labels to the page(s) • watches - includes people who are watching the page(s). <p>You can specify one or more contribution types, each of which must be separated by a comma.</p>
Sort By	count	Specifies the criteria used to sort contributors. Sort criteria are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • count - sorts people based on the total number of contributions to the page(s) • name - sorts people into alphabetical order • update - sorts people based on the date of their last contribution to the page(s).
Reverse Sort	false	Reverses the sort order of contributors in the list. Must be used in conjunction with the Sort By parameter.
Maximum Number of Contributors	no limit	Limits the number of contributors in the list. If a number is not specified, all contributors are included.

Display Format	inline	Sets how the list of contributor's names is formatted: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • inline — a comma-separated list • list — a bullet-point list.
Show Anonymous Contributions?	false	Sets whether to include those who contributed anonymously to a page.
Show Count?	false	Sets whether to show the number of times each person made a contribution of the specified Contribution Type .
Show Last Contribution Time?	false	Sets whether to show the last time each person made a contribution of the specified Contribution Type .
Page Name	current	Specifies the page to use when generating the list of contributors. If Page Name and Space(s) are left blank, the current page is assumed.
Label(s)	none	Filters the list of contributors to those who created the specified labels from a page. You can specify one or more labels, each of which must be separated by a comma.
Space(s)	current	Specifies the space key of the Confluence space that contains the page set in Page Name or alternatively, specifies the spaces to search. Space keys are case-sensitive. This parameter also takes special values, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • @global — All global spaces. • @personal — All personal spaces. • @all — All spaces in your Confluence site. You can specify one or more space keys or special values, each of which must be separated by a comma. If no Page Name and Label(s) are specified, all pages from the specified set of spaces are included.
Content Type	both pages and blog posts	Restricts the content type to use when generating the list of contributors: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • pages — pages • blogposts — blog posts.
Blog Post Date	none	Specifies the publish date for a blog post. The date format required is: YYYY/MM/DD.
Include Page Hierarchy	specified page only	Specifies additional pages to include when generating the list of contributors: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • children — just the child pages of the specified page • descendants — all descendants of the specified page.
Show Selected Pages	false	Sets whether to show a list of the pages used to generate the list of contributors.
Custom "None Found" Message	default message	Specifies the message to be used to override the default message that is displayed when no contributors are found.

Related Topics

[Contributors Summary Macro](#)
[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Contributors Summary Macro

The Contributors Summary macro displays a table of contribution-based statistics for a set of pages. These statistics can be grouped according to individual pages or individual contributors.

The default scope for this macro is an individual page, but this can be extended to include the immediate children or descendants of a

specified page. The statistics cover the following types of contributions:

- edits to the page(s)
- comments added to the page(s)
- labels added to the page(s)
- people watching the page(s)

On this page:

- [Using the Contributors Summary Macro](#)
- [Parameters](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

A simple example of the Contributors Summary macro is shown in the screenshot below. It lists statistics for the number of times each contributor has edited, added comments and added labels to this page.

Screenshot: Example Contributors Summary table of statistics

User	Edits	Comments	Labels
Sarah Maddox	2	2	0
Edwin Dawson	2	0	0
Giles Gaskell	2	0	0
Rosie Jameson	2	0	0
Andrew Lui	2	0	1
Charles Miller	1	0	0
Andrew Prentice	0	0	1

In this example, all default parameter settings are used. For more information about this macro's parameters, refer to the [Parameters](#) section below.

Using the Contributors Summary Macro

To add the Contributors Summary macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Group By	contributors	Specifies the basis for grouping contribution-based statistics: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • contributors — group by the people who have contributed • pages — group by the pages used to find contributors.

Columns to Display	edits,comments,labels	<p>Sets the columns that should appear in the table. The statistics or type of information presented depends on the basis for grouping set with the Group By parameter. Statistics may be calculated for:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • edits — the number of times each contributor has edited the page(s) or the number of edits made to each page. • edited — a list of the pages edited by each contributor or a list of contributors who have edited each page. • comments — the number of times each contributor has added comments to the page(s) or the number of comments on each page. • commented — a list of pages to which each contributor has added comments or a list of contributors who have commented on each page. • labels — the number of times each contributor has added labels to the page(s) or the number of labels on each page. • labeled — a list of pages to which each contributor has added labels or a list of contributors who have added a label to each page. • labellist — a list of labels either added by each contributor or on each page. • watches — the number of pages being watched by each contributor/person or the number of contributors/people watching each page. • watching — a list of pages being watched by each contributor/person or a list of contributors/people watching each page. • lastupdate — the last time each contributor made an update or when each page was last updated. Valid updates can include edit, comment or label modifications to a page. <p>One or more columns can be used.</p>
Sort By	count	<p>Sets the criterion used for sorting items in the table. The items sorted depend on the basis for grouping set with the Group By parameter. Sort criteria are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • edits — sorts items in the table based on the total number of edits made, either by a contributor or to a page. • name — sorts items in the table in alphabetical order, either by contributor or page name. • editTime — sorts items in the table based on when the contributor last edited a page (or a specified set of pages) or when the page was last edited. • update — sorts items in the table based on when the contributor last made any contribution to a page (or a specified set of pages) or when the page last had any contribution made to it.
Reverse Sort	false	Reverses the sort order of items in the table, as specified using the Sort By parameter. (Used only in conjunction with the Sort By parameter.)
Maximum Number of Items	no limit	Limits the number of contributors or pages in the table to the value specified. If no number is specified, all items are included.
Show Anonymous Contributions?	false	Includes individuals who have made anonymous contributions to a page.
Show Zero Counts?	false	Sets whether contributors or pages are included for which a calculated statistic is zero.
Page Name	current	Sets the page for which to calculate the contribution-based statistics. If no values for Page Name and Space(s) are specified, the current page is assumed.
Label(s)	none	Restricts the contribution-based statistics to the specified labels only. You can specify one or more labels, each of which must be separated by a comma.

Space(s)	current	<p>Specifies the space key of the Confluence space which contains the specified page name or alternatively, specifies a scope of spaces to search. Space keys are case-sensitive.</p> <p>This parameter also takes special values, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • @global — All global spaces. • @personal — All personal spaces. • @all — All spaces in your Confluence site. <p>You can specify one or more space keys or special values, each of which must be separated by a comma.</p> <p>If no Page Name and Label(s) are specified, all pages from the specified set of spaces are included.</p>
Content Type	both pages and blog posts	Restricts page types to either pages (pages) or blog posts (blogposts). If no value is specified in the Macro Browser, both pages and blog posts are included.
Blog Post Date	none	Specifies the publish date for a blog post. The date format required is: YYYY/MM/DD.
Include Page Hierarchy	specified page only	Includes either the immediate children or all descendants of the specified page. If no value is indicated in the Macro Browser, only the specified page is included.

Related Topics

[Contributors Macro](#)
[Working with Macros](#)


Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Create Space Button Macro

The Create Space Button macro renders a create space icon that links to the 'Create Space' page. The icon appears as rendered below.

Screenshot: The Create Space Button in Confluence



 To display this icon, you require 'Create Space' permission which is assigned by a [site administrator](#) from the [Administration Console](#). See [Security](#) or contact your site administrator for more information.

On this page:

- [Using the Create Space Button Macro](#)
- [Parameters](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Using the Create Space Button Macro

To add the Create Space Button macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
-----------	---------	-------------

Icon Size	large	Specify whether to use large or small icon: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • large • small
------------------	-------	--

Related Topics

[Setting up a New Global Space](#)
[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Detailssummary Macro

The Detailssummary macro presents a tabulated summary of metadata that has been embedded on any page or blog post in the current Confluence space using the [Metadata Macro](#). The Detailssummary macro collects metadata from only those pages or blog posts that have had a particular [page label](#) added to them.

The left-most column of the summary shows the name of each page or blog post with the specified label that contains metadata. Each page or blog post is presented on a single row and is hyperlinked to its appropriate destination page.

Each subsequent column represents a unique field within the selected metadata. The value associated with each metadata field on a page or blog post is presented in the appropriate cell of the summary table. For example, the following Detailssummary macro shows the pages in the current space that have metadata embedded using the Metadata macro, and also the 'test' label.

	Author-Firstname	Author-Nickname	Is-Secret
Detailssummary Macro	<p>Fred</p>	<p>Strawberry Sundae</p>	
Metadata Macro		<p>Banana Split</p>	<p>Yes</p>

Using the Detailssummary Macro

To add the Detailssummary macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Metadata Label	none	Restricts the summary to the contents of Metadata macros on the pages in the current space that have this page label.

Another Metadata Macro Example

The following Metadata macro example generates the second line in the Detailssummary macro (above). Note that this current page requires the 'test' label for this to work.

Author-Nickname	Strawberry Sundae
Author-Firstname	Fred

Related Topics

[Working with Macros](#)
[Working with Labels](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Excerpt Include Macro

The Excerpt Include macro is used to display 'excerpted' (that is, a segment of) content from one page in another.

i To use this macro, the excerpt must have been defined using the [Excerpt macro](#) and both pages must exist in the same space. Note that you can have more than one Excerpt Include macro on a page (although you can have only one Excerpt macro on a page).

The excerpt appears as shown below:

On this page:

- [Using the Excerpt Include Macro](#)
- [Parameters](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Excerpt Macro

Define a part of a page as the page's 'excerpt' which can then be displayed in another page.

For this example, we are taking content from a page called 'Excerpt Macro', where the Excerpt macro has already been placed. The title of the page is shown at the top of the panel and the content within the body of the macro placeholder is rendered in the panel.

Using the Excerpt Include Macro

To add the Excerpt Include macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Page Containing the Excerpt	none	Specifies the page that contains the excerpt to be displayed.
Remove Surrounding Panel	false	Controls whether the panel border around the excerpt and the page title should be hidden. By default, the panel is always shown.

Related Topics

[Excerpt Macro](#)
[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Excerpt Macro

The Excerpt macro is used to mark a part of a page's content for re-use. By itself, the Excerpt macro does not change the display of a page. However, defining an excerpt enables other macros, such as the [Excerpt Include](#) and [Blog Posts](#) macros to display the marked content elsewhere.

i You can only define one excerpt per page. In other words, you can only add the Excerpt macro once to a page.

On this page:

- [Using the Excerpt Macro](#)
- [Parameters](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Using the Excerpt Macro

To add the Excerpt macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

You can then add content to the body of the Excerpt macro placeholder.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Hide Excerpted Content	false	Controls whether the page content contained in the Excerpt macro placeholder is displayed on the page.

Related Topics

[Excerpt Include Macro](#)
[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Expand Macro

The Expand macro displays an expandable/collapsible section of text on your page. Here is an example:

▼ Click here to expand...

This text is hidden until you expand the section.

On this page:

- [Using the Expand Macro](#)
- [Parameters](#)
- [Notes](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Using the Expand Macro

To insert the Expand macro into a page using the Macro Browser:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Title	Click here to expand...	Defines the text that appears next to the expand/collapse icon.

Notes

- **HTML exports do not show the expanded text.** When you export the page to HTML, the text between the macro tags is not visible. Nothing happens when readers click the 'expand' icon. This issue is logged as [CONF-21092](#). If you like, you can vote for the issue or 'watch' it to keep informed of progress.
- **Text is expanded in PDF exports.** When you export the page to PDF, the text between the macro tags is expanded so that readers can see it on the PDF page.

Related Topics

[Working with Macros](#)

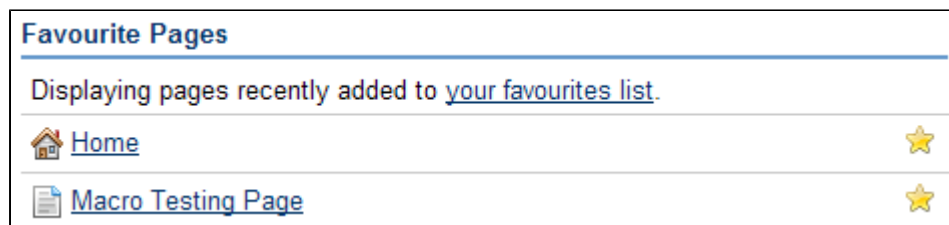
Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Favourite Pages Macro

Use the Favourite Pages macro to display a list of your favourite pages.

The output of the Favourite Pages macro appears as in the following screenshot.

Screenshot: The Favourite Pages Macro in Confluence



On this page:

- [Using the Favourite Pages Macro](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Using the Favourite Pages Macro

To insert the favourite pages macro into a page using the Macro Browser:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

There are no parameters for this macro.

Related Topics

[Working with Favourites](#)

[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Gadget Macro

Gadgets are small applications that can offer dynamic content. They are typically served from a web application server and can be re-used in many other web applications. In Confluence, add gadgets to pages or blog posts with the Gadget macro.

Confluence comes bundled with a few of its own gadgets which can be added to your pages or blog posts using the gadget macro using the [Macro Browser](#). Refer to [Confluence Gadgets](#) for more information. However, you can access additional gadgets in this list if your Confluence Administrator has:

- Installed additional gadgets locally within your Confluence installation (typically as a Confluence plugin) or
- Registered gadgets served from an external web application or website (such as those from a JIRA installation or iGoogle) via the [External Gadgets](#) page.

Unlike other macros in the [Macro Browser](#), the name of each gadget macro in the macro browser is typically unique and follows the convention "**<gadget-name> macro**", where **<gadget-name>** is the name supplied by the gadget itself.

On this page:

- [Inserting Gadgets into a Confluence Page or Blog Post](#)
- [Editing Gadgets on a Confluence Page or Blog Post](#)
- [Parameters](#)
- [Contents of a Gadget Macro](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Inserting Gadgets into a Confluence Page or Blog Post

To add a gadget to a page:

1. Edit your page or blog post.
2. Choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
3. Click **External Content** to see a list of gadgets configured for use in your Confluence installation.
 - i** Some Confluence macros like the [JIRA Issues](#), [JIRA Portlet](#), [RSS Feed](#), [Tasklist](#) and [Widget Connector](#) macros also appear in this category because they can also access external content.
4. Click on the desired gadget to access its parameters and properties and preview any changes to these values.
 - i** Almost all gadgets allow you to set basic parameters ([listed below](#)), which appear on the right of the Macro Browser. Each gadget may also have its own set of modifiable properties.
5. Set the gadget's parameters and properties to your requirements.
 - Click **Refresh** to update the gadget with any changes to parameters, properties or external data.
6. Click **Insert** when finished.

Editing Gadgets on a Confluence Page or Blog Post

To edit an existing gadget on a page or blog post:

1. Edit your page or blog post.
2. Double-click on the Gadget macro placeholder.
3. Set the gadget's parameters and properties to your requirements in the Macro Browser.
 - Click **Refresh** to update the gadget preview in the Macro Browser with any changes to parameters, properties or external data.
4. **Save** the gadget.

i Almost all gadgets allow you to set basic parameters ([listed below](#)), which appear on the right of the Macro Browser. Each gadget may also have its own set of modifiable properties.

Parameters

Parameters are settings for Confluence gadgets, controlling presentation.

Parameter	Default	Description
Width	450 pixels	Expands or shrinks the size of the gadget to match the specified width. The width can be specified in pixels (using <code>px</code> or plain numbers, for example, <code>500px</code> or <code>500</code>), as a percentage of the page width (using <code>%</code> , for example, <code>50%</code>), or automatically resized to fit 100% of the page width (using the value <code>auto</code>).
Border	false	Places a thin grey border around the perimeter of the gadget.

Contents of a Gadget Macro

The body of a gadget macro contains 'parameter-like' content, which represents specific property settings that are particular to each gadget. Hence they are not documented here. Typically, this content would only be changed by customising the gadget's default properties using the macro browser.

Related Topics

[The big list of Atlassian gadgets](#)

Gallery Macro

The Gallery Macro displays a gallery of thumbnail images in a table, based on the images attached to a Confluence page. When viewing the page, a user can click a thumbnail image to zoom into the full-size image and then view the images as a slide show.

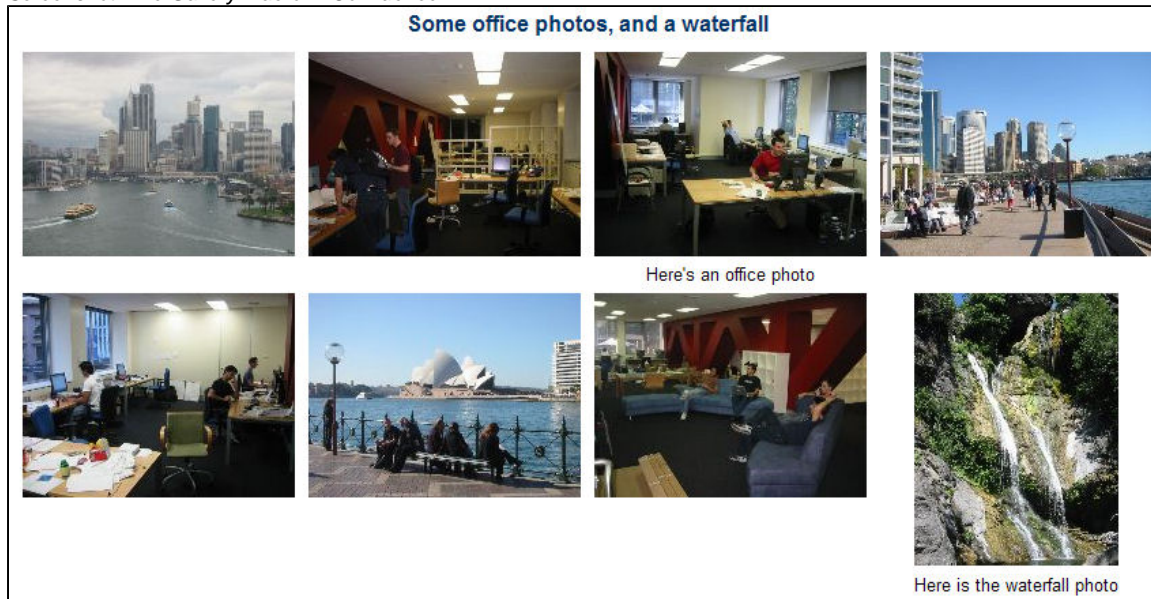
See below for instructions on how to add the gallery macro to your page.

The gallery macro appears as in the screenshot below.

On this page:

- [Using the Gallery Macro](#)
- [Parameters](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Screenshot: The Gallery Macro in Confluence



Using the Gallery Macro

To insert the Gallery macro into a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters


When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

The full list of parameters is shown in the following table.

Parameter	Default	Description
Gallery Title	Nothing	Specify a title for your gallery.
Number of Columns	4	Specify the number of columns for your table.
Images to Exclude	No exclusions i.e. include all the pictures on the page.	The gallery will ignore any pictures specified. You can specify more than one picture, separated by commas. Please note, the filename and filetype for this parameter are case-sensitive, i.e. 'my picture.PNG' will not be recognised as 'my picture.png'.
Include these Images Only	Include all the pictures on the page.	If you specifically include one or more pictures, the gallery will show only those pictures. You can specify more than one picture, separated by commas. Please note, the filename and filetype for this parameter are case-sensitive, i.e. 'my picture.PNG' will not be recognised as 'my picture.png'.
Use Images in these Pages	If no page is specified, the gallery macro displays the images attached to the page on which the macro is used.	Specify the title of the page which contains the images you want displayed. To specify a page in a different space, use the SPACEKEY:Page Title syntax.

Sort Images By	None, i.e. the sort order is unspecified and therefore unpredictable.	Specify an attribute to sort the images by. Sort order is ascending, unless you select the Reverse Sort parameter (see below). Options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • name – file name. • comment – comment linked to the attached file. • date – date/time last modified. • size – size of the attached file.
Reverse Sort	Off, i.e. sort order is ascending	Used in conjunction with the Sort Images By parameter above. Use Reverse Sort to reverse the sort order, from ascending to descending.

 If the name of an attached file or page contains a comma, you can refer to it in the relevant parameters above by enclosing it in single or double quotes, for example "this,that.jpg", theother.png.

Considerations for using the gallery macro

- The images shown in the gallery are taken from the files attached to the Confluence page. You can also specify a different page where the attachments are located. For information about attaching images to a page, see [Attaching Files to a Page](#).
- The comments below the images are drawn from the comments on the attachments. For information about adding comments to attachments, see [Attaching Files to a Page](#).
- By default, the gallery will include all the images attached to the page. You can also exclude or include images using parameters.
- Only the following file formats are supported: **gif**, **png**, **jpeg**. The *bmp* format is not supported.
- You can sort your images into a particular order.
- You can specify a title for the gallery and also configure how many columns you want for the table in which your images are displayed.

Related Topics

[Displaying Images](#)
[Attaching Files to a Page](#)
[Editing Attachment Properties](#)
[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

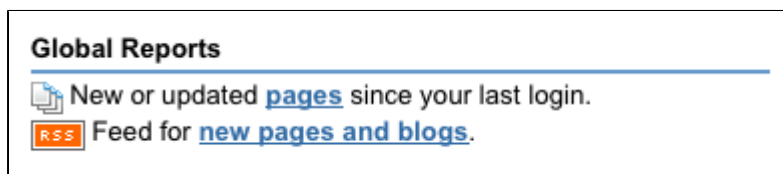
Global Reports Macro

The Global Reports macro renders a list of links to global reports.

This includes a list of new or updated pages [Managing Undefined Pages](#) on the site and [RSS feeds](#) for new pages and blog posts.

The Global Reports macro appears as shown in the screenshot below.

Screenshot: The Global Reports macro in Confluence



Using the Global Reports Macro

To add the Global Reports macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Width of Table	99%	Specifies the width of the table in which the links are displayed, as a percentage of the window width.

Related Topics

[Subscribing to RSS Feeds within Confluence](#)
[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

HTML Include Macro

The HTML Include macro allows you to include the contents of an external HTML file in a Confluence page.



CAUTION: Including unknown HTML inside a webpage is dangerous.

HTML can contain active scripting components. This means that it would be possible for a malicious attacker to present a user of your site with script that their web browser would believe came from you. Such code could be used, for example, to steal a user's authentication cookie and give the attacker their Confluence login password.

Using the HTML Include Macro

To insert the HTML Include macro into a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
HTML Page's URL	None	The URL of the page to include.

Troubleshooting

- The HTML Include macro will only be available if it has been [enabled](#) by your Confluence administrator. Also, your Confluence Administrator can define a [whitelist of trusted URLs](#). You will see an error message on the Confluence page if the included URL is not in the whitelist.
- You can only use the HTML Include macro for pages with absolute links. If you use the macro to include an HTML page that has relative links, navigating those links in the wiki results in a 'Page Not Found' error. See [CONF-6567](#).


Related Topics

[HTML Macro](#)
[Working with Macros](#)
[Configuring a URL Whitelist](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

HTML Macro

The HTML macro allows you to add HTML code to a Confluence page.

 Note that the HTML macro will only be available if it has been [enabled](#) by your [System Administrator](#).

Using the HTML Macro

To add the HTML macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

There are no parameters for this macro.

Enter the HTML code into the body of the macro placeholder.

Related Topics

- [HTML Plugin](#) (has better security than the HTML macro)
- [HTML Include Macro](#) (embeds remote HTML or pages)
- [Working with Macros](#)
- [Enabling HTML macros](#)

Take me back to [Confluence User's Guide](#)

IM Presence Macro

The IM Presence macro indicates graphically when a contact is signed into an Instant Messaging (IM) service. The IM Presence macro appears as a small icon on the page, like this image: .

Using the IM Presence Macro

To add the IM Presence macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Description
User ID/Screen Name	Identify the user by their ID, account name or screen name.
Service	<p>aim – AOL Instant Messenger</p> <p>gtalk – Google Talk</p> <p>icq – ICQ</p> <p>jabber – Jabber</p> <p>msn – MSN Instant Messenger</p> <p>sametime – IBM Lotus Sametime</p> <p>skype – Skype</p> <p>skypeme – Skype</p> <p>wildfire – Openfire Server</p> <p>yahoo – Yahoo! Messenger</p>
Show User ID	Shows or hides the User ID of the contact.

Related Topics

[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Include Page Macro

You can use the Include Page macro to display the contents of one Confluence page or blog post in another page or blog post.

Using the Include Page Macro

To add the Include Page macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Page to Include	None	<p>This is the name of the Confluence page or blog post that you want to include in the current page.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the page or blog post is located in another space, add the space key and a colon in front of the page name. For example, <code>DOC:My page name</code>. • To include a blog post, specify the date as well as the title of the blog post. For example: <code>/2010/12/01/My blog post</code>. • The space key is case sensitive. • You can include pages from personal spaces using <code>~username</code> as the space key, where 'username' is the person's username. For example, <code>~jsmith:My page name</code>.

Notes

- If you want to include part of a page rather than the whole page, use the [Excerpt](#) and [Excerpt Include](#) macros.
- To display a page's contents, you need 'View' permission for that page. Similarly, people who view the page will need 'View' permissions for the embedded page as well as the page into which it is embedded. See [space permissions](#) or contact your Confluence [space administrator](#) for more information.
- If someone changes the name of the included page after you have added the macro to your page, the page name does **not** change automatically in the macro. You will need to change the page name manually in the macro parameters.
- If you want to embed an external page into a Confluence page, you need the [HTML Include Macro](#).

Related Topics

[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Sample Include Page

Start of sample page content

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Aliquam fermentum vestibulum est. Cras rhoncus. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Sed quis tortor. Donec non ipsum. Mauris condimentum, odio nec porta tristique, ante neque malesuada massa, in dignissim eros velit at tellus. Donec et risus in ligula eleifend consectetur. Donec volutpat eleifend augue. Integer gravida sodales leo. Nunc vehicula neque ac erat. Vivamus non nisl. Fusce ac magna. Suspendisse euismod libero eget mauris.

End of sample page content

Info Macro

The Info macro allows you to highlight helpful information on a Confluence page.

It creates a blue-coloured box surrounding your text, as shown below.



Info Macro Example

This text is rendered inside the info macro.

Using the Info Macro

To add the Info macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Optional Title	none	The title of the information box. If specified, the title text will be displayed in bold next to the icon.
Show Information Icon	true	If "false", the icon will not be displayed.

Related Topics

[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

JIRA Issues Macro











[JIRA](#) is the issue tracking and project management system supplied by Atlassian. The JIRA Issues macro allows you to display a list of issues from a JIRA site on a Confluence page.






You can list publicly accessible issues from any JIRA site, as well as issues restricted to your user account on a JIRA site, assuming:

- You are logged in to both the JIRA and Confluence sites, and
- Your usernames on both of these sites match.

☒ You can also create, find and insert JIRA issues directly within text on a Confluence page or blog post. For more information, refer to [Inserting JIRA Issues](#).

Screenshot: Example of JIRA issues shown on a Confluence page

Jira Issues		
Type	Key	Summary
	CONF-1181	Parse exception in jiraissues
	CONF-2746	jiraissues macro flaky
	CONF-4472	jiraissues macro is broken in Preview mode
	CONF-3729	robust (and safer) {jiraissues} macro authentication
	CONF-6878	jiraissue macro not including desired columns
	CONF-1415	jiraissues macro custom icons break
	CONF-854	ParseException when trying to use rss / jiraissues macro
	CONF-11829	jiraissues macro issues when multiple on page
	CONF-7322	Jiraissues macro doesn't show icons or timestamps
	CONF-2711	Better authentication method for jiraissues and jiraportlet macros



Page of 13



Displaying 1 to 10 of 125 items

On this page:

- [Using the JIRA Issues Macro](#)
- [Displaying a List of JIRA Issues from any Accessible JIRA Site](#)
- [Parameters](#)
- [Displaying Issues which have Restricted Viewing](#)
- [Troubleshooting](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Using the JIRA Issues Macro

To add the JIRA Issues macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

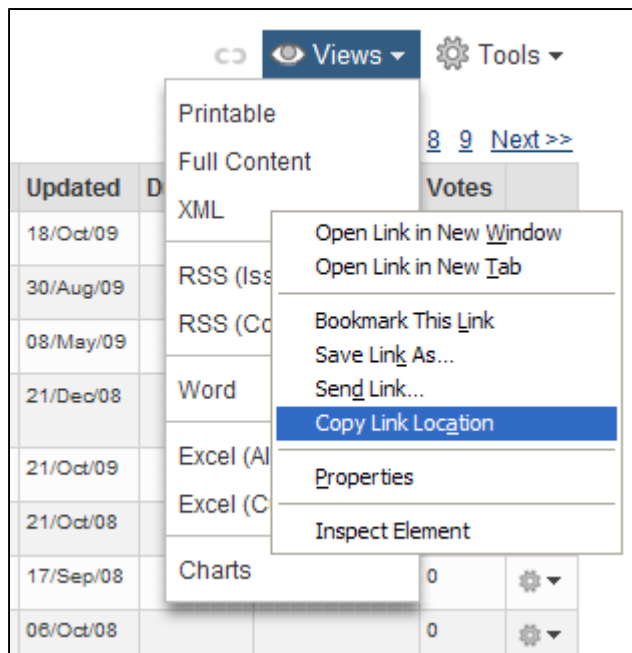
Refer to the [instructions below](#) for details on obtaining the URL of the XML view of a search. An example URL is:

<http://jira.atlassian.com/sr/jira.issueviews:searchrequest-xml/temp/SearchRequest.xml?jqlQuery=project+%3D+CONF+AND+%28summary+9>

Displaying a List of JIRA Issues from any Accessible JIRA Site

Step 1 — Obtain the URL of the Issue Filter

1. Log in to your JIRA system.
2. Go to the 'Issues' screen and create a new filter. Do not modify an existing filter.
3. Set up your search parameters and use 'View' to check the issues returned.
4. Once the filter is finished, go to the Filter's 'View' tab/section in the top-left area of the JIRA interface.
5. Copy the XML link. To do this, follow the appropriate step below:
 - If you are using JIRA 4.0.x or later, choose **Views**, right-click on **XML**, and choose **Copy Link Location**.



- If you are using **JIRA 3.13.x or earlier**, locate the 'Current View' links section, right-click on **XML**, and choose **Copy Link Location**.

Step 2 — Embed the Issue Filter URL onto your Confluence Page

1. Log in to your Confluence system.
2. Edit the page where you wish to display the list of JIRA issues.
3. Add the JIRA Issues macro to the page, as described above.
4. Edit the macro, and paste the JIRA filter URL from your clipboard into the **URL** box.
5. Customise the macro output using the optional parameters. See [below](#).
6. Save the Confluence page.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

The JIRA Issues macro allows the following parameters:

Parameter	Default	Description
URL	none	The URL of the XML view of your selected issues in the JIRA Issue Navigator. Note: If the URL in the URL parameter does not contain a <code>tempMax</code> argument, then the value of <code>tempMax</code> will default to 500. For JIRA 3.12 or earlier, the JIRA Issues macro will return a maximum of 500 issues. For JIRA 3.13 or later, the JIRA Issues macro will return a maximum of 500 issues per page.
JIRA Field Columns to Display	By default, the following columns are shown: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • type • key • summary • assignee • reporter • priority • status • resolution • created • updated • due 	A list of JIRA column names, separated by semi-colons (;). Example columns are: <code>key</code> , <code>summary</code> , <code>type</code> , <code>created</code> , <code>fixversion</code> , <code>updated</code> , <code>due</code> , <code>assignee</code> , <code>reporter</code> , <code>priority</code> , <code>status</code> and <code>resolution</code> . You can include any columns recognised by your JIRA site, including custom columns. See the JIRA documentation for a list of names.

Display Total Numbers Only	false	When selected, the issue list will only show the number of issues in JIRA. The count will be linked to your JIRA site.
Cache	on	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> on – the macro maintains a cache of the issues which result from the JIRA query. off – the relevant part of the cache is cleared each time the macro is reloaded.
Anonymous Retrieval	false	When selected, JIRA will return only the issues which allow unrestricted viewing i.e. the issues which are visible to anonymous viewers, as determined by JIRA's viewing restrictions. Otherwise, the results depend on how your administrator has configured the communication between JIRA and Confluence. By default, Confluence will show only the JIRA issues which the user is authorised to view. See more details below .
Width	100%	The width of the table displaying the JIRA issues. Can be indicated either as a percentage (%) or in pixels (px).
Height (pixel value only)	480	<p>The height in pixels of the table displaying the JIRA issues.</p> <p>Note that this height specification is ignored in the following situations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you set the Render Mode parameter (see below) to static. When the JIRA issues are displayed in a PDF or Word document, in an email message or in an RSS feed.
Title	JIRA Issues	You can customise the title text at the top of the JIRA issues table with this parameter. For instance, setting the title to 'Bugs-to-fix' will replace the default 'JIRA Issues' text. This can help provide more context to the list of issues displayed.
Render Mode	<p>static – when the JIRA issues are displayed in a PDF or Word document, in an email message or in an RSS feed.</p> <p>dynamic – for all other formats.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> dynamic – dynamic issue display with the following features: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Click the column headers to sort the output. Drag and drop the columns into a different order. Temporarily remove a column from the display. View a page of issues at a time, for faster response times. static – disables the dynamic display features.

Displaying Issues which have Restricted Viewing

Maybe your JIRA instance is not visible to anonymous visitors — everyone has to log in before they can see JIRA issues. Or maybe some of the JIRA issues are restricted to viewing by certain users only. This section explains how to handle JIRA issues that have restricted viewing.

Using Confluence-to-JIRA Trusted Communication (Recommended)

For **Confluence 2.7.0 and later** and **JIRA 3.12 and later**, your administrator can set up trusted communication between Confluence and JIRA. The entire process is described in the [Confluence Administrator's Guide](#). Provided that your administrator has [set up trusted communication](#), you don't need to add any extra parameters. Confluence and JIRA will work out the security between them, ensuring that the user will see only the issues they are authorised to see. Read the section below if you want more detail.



Remove the username and password from your macro markup code

Prior to Confluence 2.7, you needed to include a username and password in the macro markup code if you wanted to display JIRA issues which had restricted viewing. Once your administrator has set up trusted communication between Confluence and JIRA, you no longer need to include a username and password in the markup code for your JIRA macros.

The following options are available for determining the issues which will be retrieved from JIRA and displayed on the Confluence page:

What you want to do	Macro parameter	URL parameter	Comments
---------------------	-----------------	---------------	----------

Display the JIRA issues which the logged-in user is authorised to see. And if the user is not logged in, display only issues which allow unrestricted viewing.			Do not specify any authentication parameters. In this case, the behaviour depends on the way your administrator has set up trusted communication between JIRA and Confluence. Here is a summary of the behaviour. If trusted communication is enabled , the authorisation will work seamlessly. When a logged-in user views your page, they will see only the JIRA issues they are allowed to see. And if they are not logged in, they will see only the issues which allow unrestricted viewing. If trusted communication is disabled , the Confluence page will show only the JIRA issues which allow unrestricted viewing.
Ensure that Confluence will display only the JIRA issues which allow unrestricted viewing.	anonymous		Regardless of who the user is (logged in or not), the Confluence page will show only anonymously-visible issues. Confluence will not attempt to set up a trusted communication link with JIRA in this case.
Use a pre-determined username and password to access the JIRA issues.		<code>&os_username=MYNAME&os_password=MYPASSWORD</code>	Not recommended. Prior to Confluence 2.7, this was the only way of displaying issues with restricted viewing. For Confluence 2.7 and later, this method will still work. Confluence will not attempt to set up a trusted communication link with JIRA in this case.

Troubleshooting

HTTPS

The JIRA Issues macro can access a JIRA instance running under SSL as long as the Confluence server is set to accept the JIRA SSL certificate. Refer to the Confluence Knowledge Base article for more information about [problems connecting to SSL services](#).

And see also:

- [Troubleshooting Trusted Communication between JIRA and Confluence](#)

Related Topics

[Inserting JIRA Issues](#)
[JIRA Portlet Macro](#)
[Working with Macros](#)

In the *Administrator's Guide*:

- [Configuring JIRA with Confluence](#)
- [Setting Up Trusted Communication between JIRA and Confluence](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

JIRA Macro

See [Inserting JIRA Issues](#).

JIRA Portlet Macro

The JIRA Portlet macro, for **JIRA 3.x and earlier**, allows you to display a [JIRA dashboard portlet](#) on a Confluence page. [JIRA](#) is the issue tracking and project management system supplied by Atlassian.

Using JIRA 4.0 and Later

Setting up *new* JIRA portlets will not work when using JIRA 4.0 and later. Please consider using a [JIRA gadget](#) instead of a JIRA Portlet macro.

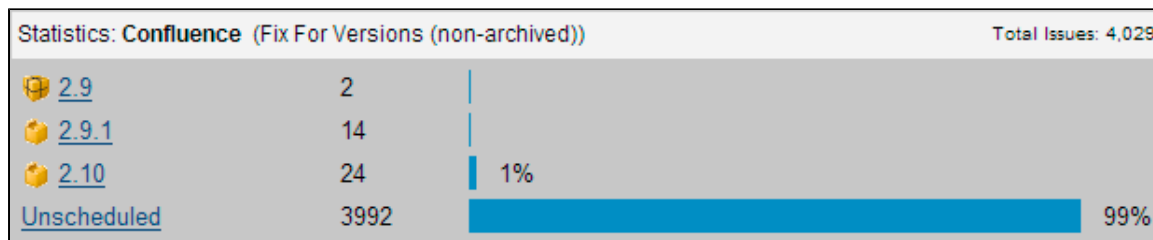
- Gadgets replaced portlets in JIRA 4.0 and Confluence 3.1.
- Existing JIRA portlet macros based on earlier versions of JIRA will continue to work in Confluence.
- However, due to architectural changes in JIRA 4.0, the ability to create **new** JIRA portlet macros in Confluence is not available. Please refer to [JRA-19285](#) and [JRA-18521](#) for more information.

On this page:

- [Using JIRA 4.0 and Later](#)
- [Using JIRA 3.x](#)
 - [Obtaining the JIRA Portlet URL](#)
 - [Usage with the Macro Browser](#)
 - [Parameters](#)
 - [Displaying Issues which have Restricted Viewing](#)
 - [Using Confluence-to-JIRA Trusted Communication](#)
- [Troubleshooting](#)
 - [Ideas for new features or want more tips?](#)
 - [Logging Bugs and Requesting Support](#)
 - [Known Limitations when used with JIRA Calendar](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Using JIRA 3.x

The JIRA portlet macro appears as shown in the screenshot below.



Screenshot above: The JIRA Portlet Macro in Confluence

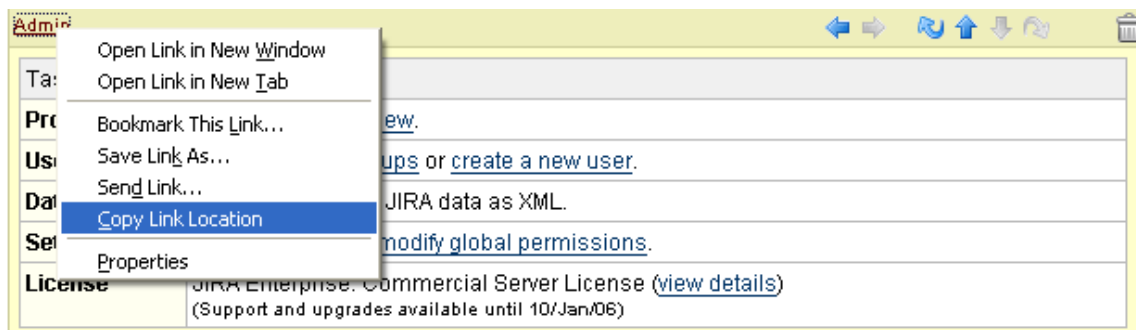
Obtaining the JIRA Portlet URL

The JIRA Portlet macro requires the URL of the JIRA portlet you wish to show on a Confluence page.

To obtain the JIRA portlet URL:

1. Log in to your JIRA system.
2. Add the portlet you wish to include in Confluence to your JIRA dashboard. (Once you have copied the portlet's URL into Confluence, you can remove it from your JIRA dashboard.)
3. Click **On** beside 'Configure' on your JIRA dashboard. (If you don't see this link, you need to click the 'Manage Portal' link, click the 'Configure' button and then return to the dashboard.)
4. Right-click the title located at the top-left corner of the portlet and copy its link location. See Screenshot 1.

Screenshot 1: Copy link location

**Usage with the Macro Browser**


To add the JIRA Portlet macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Required	Default	Description
JIRA Portlet URL	yes	none	URL of the JIRA portlet, as described above.  Certain JIRA portlets may require user authentication details in order to display their content. Hence you may need to append: <code>&os_username=yourJiraUsername&os_password=yourJiraPassword</code> to the end of this url.
Anonymous Retrieval	no	false	For Confluence 2.7.0 and later. If this parameter is selected, JIRA will return only the issues which allow unrestricted viewing i.e. the issues which are visible to anonymous viewers, as determined by JIRA's viewing restrictions. If this parameter is not set, then the results depend on how your administrator has configured the communication between JIRA and Confluence. By default, Confluence will show only the JIRA issues which the user is authorised to view. See more details below .
Base URL	no	none	If Confluence retrieves the JIRA portlet from some other URL than JIRA's public URL, you should supply JIRA's public URL in the baseurl parameter.

Displaying Issues which have Restricted Viewing

This section explains how to handle JIRA issues that have restricted viewing. Maybe your JIRA instance is not visible to anonymous visitors - everyone has to log in before they can see JIRA issues. Or maybe some of the JIRA issues are restricted to viewing by certain users only.

Using Confluence-to-JIRA Trusted Communication

Your administrator can set up trusted communication between Confluence and JIRA. The entire process is described in the [Confluence Administrator's Guide](#).

Here is a relevant extract from the above page:



Remove the username and password from your macro markup code

Prior to Confluence 2.7, you needed to include a username and password in the macro markup code if you wanted to display JIRA issues which had restricted viewing. Once your administrator has set up trusted communication between Confluence and JIRA, you no longer need to include a username and password in the markup code for your JIRA macros.

The following options are available for determining the issues which will be retrieved from JIRA and displayed on the Confluence page:

What you want to do	Macro parameter	URL parameter	Comments
Display the JIRA issues which the logged-in user is authorised to see. And if the user is not logged in, display only issues which allow unrestricted viewing.			Do not specify any authentication parameters. In this case, the behaviour depends on the way your administrator has set up trusted communication between JIRA and Confluence. Here is a summary of the behaviour. If trusted communication is enabled , the authorisation will work seamlessly. When a logged-in user views your page, they will see only the JIRA issues they are allowed to see. And if they are not logged in, they will see only the issues which allow unrestricted viewing. If trusted communication is disabled , the Confluence page will show only the JIRA issues which allow unrestricted viewing.

Ensure that Confluence will display only the JIRA issues which allow unrestricted viewing.	anonymous		Regardless of who the user is (logged in or not), the Confluence page will show only anonymously-visible issues. Confluence will not attempt to set up a trusted communication link with JIRA in this case.
Use a pre-determined username and password to access the JIRA issues.		&os_username=MYNAME&os_password=MYPASSWORD	Not recommended. Prior to Confluence 2.7, this was the only way of displaying issues with restricted viewing. For Confluence 2.7 and later, this method will still work. Confluence will not attempt to set up a trusted communication link with JIRA in this case.

Troubleshooting

Ideas for new features or want more tips?

If you have an idea for a new feature, please log it on our [JIRA site](#).

You will also find many hints and tips on [Atlassian Answers](#). Try asking a question or sharing your ideas with other Confluence users.

Logging Bugs and Requesting Support

If you have found a bug in this macro, please log it on our [JIRA site](#).

If you encounter a problem using this macro, please raise a ticket on our [Support site](#).


Known Limitations when used with JIRA Calendar

If you are using the JIRA Portlet macro in combination with the [JIRA Calendar](#), paging will work only if your Confluence and JIRA sites are running on the **same host**. Otherwise, you see error messages like `Access to restricted URI`.

Reason: the Calendar portlet communicates with JIRA via AJAX requests. Because of security concerns, browsers by default do not allow requests to any host different from the one the page was originally downloaded from.

There is a workaround. If you wish, you can turn off this security check in your browser. The exact way depends on your browser version, so Google for hints.

 **Please consider all implications of turning off this security check before you perform this action.**

 There is an existing request to develop support for proxying of the AJAX requests from Confluence to JIRA. If you need this feature, please vote for this issue: [JCAL-64](#).

Related Topics

[JIRA Issues Macro](#)
[Working with Macros](#)

In the *Administrator's Guide*:

- [Configuring JIRA with Confluence](#)
- [Setting Up Trusted Communication between JIRA and Confluence](#)


Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

JUnit Report Macro

The JUnit Report macro displays a summary of JUnit test results from a directory accessible by the Confluence server. [JUnit](#) is a unit testing framework which allows programmers to ensure that individual units of Java source code are functioning correctly.

The JUnit Report macro appears as shown in the screenshot below.

Screenshot: The JUnit Report macro in Confluence

Test		Time	Messages
MoneyTest	100% 	00:03.391	Tests:Failures:Exceptions: 1 0 0
▶ testAdd		00:03.0	

 When generating reports from the JUnit Report macro, set the Apache Ant formatter to 'XML'.

Using the JUnit Report Macro

To add the JUnit Report macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
URL of the test result XML file	None	<p>URL of a particular test result XML file. Is overridden by the Directory (URL) of your test result files parameter if you use both.</p> <p>Example, from a Confluence instance: <code>http://yourConfluenceInstance.com/download/attachments/<page id>/file.xml</code></p> <p>For Confluence installations without anonymous user access, you can specify logon credentials as part of this parameter in the form of URL parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>os_username</code> — The username of a Confluence user with permission to access to the JUnit test results. • <code>os_password</code> — The password of the Confluence user specified in the <code>os_username</code> parameter.
Directory (URL) of your test result files	None	<p>URL of a directory containing your test result files. This must be a directory name and not the XML file itself. Overrides the URL of the test result XML file parameter if you use both.</p> <p>Example, for a local drive: <code>file:///C:/TEMP/</code></p> <p>Example, for a network drive: <code>http://*host*/*path*</code></p>
Report Detail	all	Detail for the report. Can be all , fixture , summary or failuresonly .
Debug	None	Shows the content of failures, as well as the error messages.

Related Topics

[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Labels List Macro

The Labels List macro displays a hyperlinked alphabetical index of all labels within the current space.

The label index generated consists of numerous cells, each beginning with one or more letters of the alphabet or a number. Each label within the space is grouped alphanumerically into its appropriately headed cell.

Each label in the list links to a page that displays all the pages on which the label occurs within the current space.

Screenshot: Labels List Macro segment

Below are the 582 labels used in **Confluence Docs 2.10** listed alphabetically. Click on a label to see its associated content.

A [access](#), [accessibility](#), [account](#), [active](#), [activedirectory](#), [ad](#), [added](#), [address](#), [admin](#), [administration](#), [admin-macros](#), [admin-other](#), [admin-support](#), [aggregator](#), [all](#), [analyser](#), [analyzer](#), [ancestor](#), [anchor](#), [anonymiser](#), [apache](#), [api](#), [app](#), [application](#), [appserver](#), [architecture](#), [archive](#), [at](#), [atlassianuser](#), [atlassian-user](#), [attachment](#), [attachments](#), [audit](#), [authentication](#), [auto-startup](#), [awstats](#), [axis](#)

B [backup](#), [bandana](#), [base](#), [best-practices](#), [bindexception](#), [blob](#), [blog](#), [bookmark](#), [bottom](#), [browser](#), [build](#), [builder](#), [bulk](#), [bundled](#)

C [cache](#), [camelcasing](#), [case](#), [caching](#), [cause](#), [certificate](#), [change](#), [character](#), [check](#), [class](#), [clone](#), [cloud](#), [cluster](#), [clustered](#), [code](#), [codes](#), [coherence](#), [column](#), [commenting](#), [comments](#), [component](#), [compression](#), [configuration](#), [configuring](#), [confluence](#), [confluence14](#), [confluence20](#), [confluence21](#), [confluence22](#), [confluence23](#), [confluence24](#), [confluence25](#), [confluence28](#), [confluence-documentation](#), [confluence_faq_support](#), [confluencehome](#), [confluence-jira](#), [confluence-label-filter](#), [confluence-usermanagement](#), [confluence-users](#), [connector](#), [console](#), [content](#), [contentbylabel](#), [contents](#), [cookies](#), [copy](#), [corrupt](#), [corruption](#), [cpu](#), [create](#), [css](#), [custom](#), [customisation](#), [customising-looknfeel](#), [customising-tag](#), [customize](#)

D [daily-backup](#), [data](#), [database](#), [database-configuration](#), [data-storage](#), [date](#), [db](#), [db2](#), [db2-setup](#), [db-setup](#), [deactivate](#), [debug](#), [debugging](#), [delete](#), [demos](#), [dependency](#), [details](#), [developer](#), [development](#), [diagnostics](#), [diagram](#), [directory](#), [disable](#), [do](#), [doc](#), [documentation](#), [documentation](#), [dump](#), [duplicate](#), [dynamic](#)

E [eap](#), [ear-war](#), [easy](#), [editable](#), [editor](#), [email](#), [embed](#), [enable](#), [encoding](#), [entry](#), [error](#), [error_messages](#), [euro](#), [events](#), [example](#), [excel](#), [exception](#), [explorer](#), [export](#), [extension](#), [external](#), [external-usermanagement](#)

F-G [faq](#), [faq_conf_dev](#), [fast](#), [fatal](#), [favourite](#), [feed](#), [file](#), [fileappender](#), [files](#), [filetype](#), [filterbylabel](#), [filter-common-tasks](#), [firefox](#), [fixed](#), [flags](#), [folksonomy](#), [font](#), [format](#), [forms](#), [forum](#), [freeze](#), [front-end](#), [frozen](#), [fun](#), [gmail](#), [group](#), [guide](#), [guideline](#), [gzip](#)

Using the Labels List Macro

To add the Labels List macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

This macro has no parameters.

Related Topics

[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Livesearch Macro

The Livesearch macro allows you to add a search box to a Confluence page. When users enter a search term into the search box, Confluence will dynamically display matching results as they type.

Using the Livesearch Macro

To add the Livesearch macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
ID	none	Uniquely identifies the Livesearch when there are multiple Livesearch macros in one page.
Restrict to this Space Key	all spaces	Specify a space key to limit the search to the given space. Case-sensitive.

Related Topics

[Searching Confluence](#)
[Search Results Macro](#)
[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Loremipsum Macro

The Loremipsum macro displays paragraphs of pseudo-Latin text ([more information](#)). You can use this macro to generate more-or-less meaningless text for demonstration purposes in pages showing a draft layout or arrangement of page elements. The text is deliberately non-meaningful so that it does not influence the viewer's perception of the page arrangement or design.

A basic example of the Loremipsum text:

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Aliquam fermentum vestibulum est. Cras rhoncus. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Sed quis tortor. Donec non ipsum. Mauris condimentum, odio nec porta tristique, ante neque malesuada massa, in dignissim eros velit at tellus. Donec et risus in ligula eleifend consectetur. Donec volutpat eleifend augue. Integer gravida sodales leo. Nunc vehicula neque ac erat. Vivamus non nisl. Fusce ac magna. Suspendisse euismod libero eget mauris.

Using the Loremipsum Macro

To add the Loremipsum macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Number of Paragraphs	3	The amount of pseudo-Latin (space-filler) text to display.

Related Topics

[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Metadata Macro

The Metadata macro allows you to embed metadata into pages and blog posts for presentation with the [Detailssummary Macro](#). Each metadata item consists of a field name and an associated value. When a Metadata macro is rendered on a page, each metadata item is presented as a table row, with the field name followed by its value, for example:

Is-Secret	Yes
-----------	-----

Author-Nickname	Banana Split
-----------------	--------------

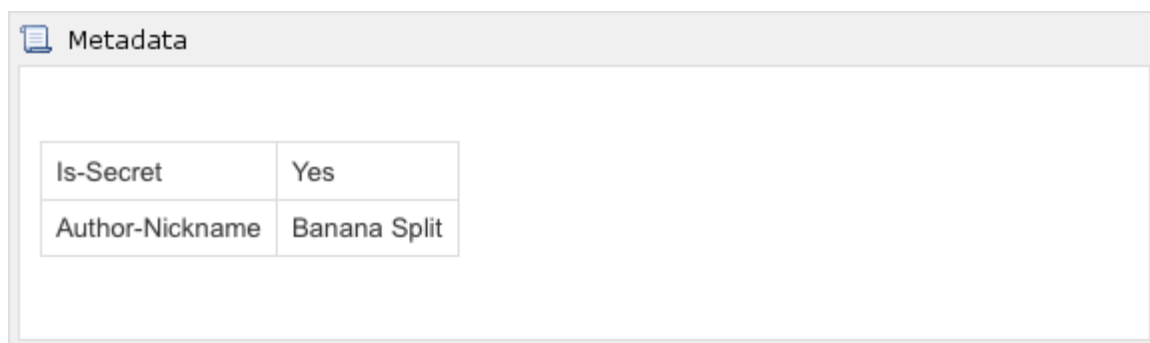
The metadata added to a page using the Metadata macro is 'tagged', or identified, by adding a label to the page. This allows the Detailsummary macro to generate a summary based on Metadata macros from all pages that have each had the same page label added to them.

Using the Metadata Macro

1. **Add the Metadata macro to a page:**
 - a. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
 - b. Find and select the required macro.

2. **Add metadata items as rows in a table inserted into the macro placeholder.**

For example, the screenshot below shows a table, with rows containing metadata items, in the macro's placeholder.



3. **Add a label to the page to 'tag' the page.**

For example, the current page has a 'test' label. This label is used by the example Detailsummary macro on the [Detailsummary Macro](#) page.

Parameters

This macro has no parameters.

Related Topics

[Working with Macros](#)

[Working with Labels](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Multimedia Macro

See [Embedding Multimedia Content](#).

Navigation Map Macro

The Navigation Map macro displays the list of pages associated with a specified label as a navigation map.

A label must be specified for this macro.

Using the Navigation Map Macro

To add the Navigation Map macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Label	none	Specify the label associated with the pages you want to show in the navigation map.
Map Title	none	Specify a title for the navigation map.
Number of Cells Per Row	5	Specify the number of cells in a row
Cell Width (Pixels)	90 px	Specify the cell width
Cell Height (Pixels)	60 px	Specify the cell height
Navigation Map Theme	Confluence	<p>Define a theme for the navmap.</p> <p>If you want to create your own navmap 'look and feel' (for example, one with rounded corners), you need to add a customised navmap macro theme file to the <code>WEB-INF/classes/templates/macros</code> directory. The file name convention to use is <code>navmap-mytheme.vm</code>. Use the name of your choice for the <code>mytheme</code> part of the file name, which is also the value you use for this parameter. Hence, if your theme was called <code>navmap-roundededges.vm</code>, use the value of <code>roundededges</code> for this parameter.</p>

Related Topics

[Related Labels Macro](#)
[Content by Label Macro](#)
[Recently Used Labels Macro](#)
[Working with Labels](#)
[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

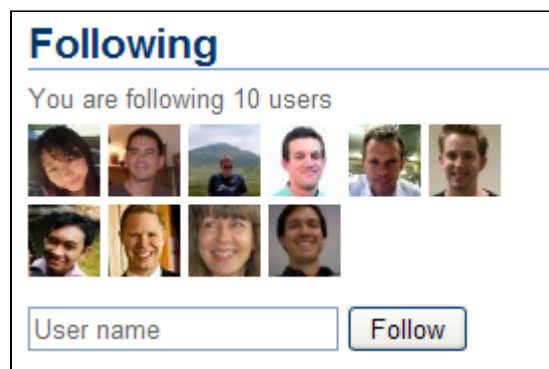
Network Macro

The Network macro displays a list of [Network](#) activity for users in your Confluence site, on a Confluence page or blog post.

The Network macro allows you to specify the user whose network activity you wish to show. These interactions include the users that the specified user is following or users who are following the specified user. The Network macro shows each listed user by their profile picture. It also provides a choice of two themes and the ability to limit the number of users in the list.

net

Screenshot: Network Macro



Using the Network Macro

To add the Network macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Username	current user's username	The username of the Confluence user whose network interactions you wish to show. If no username is specified, then current user's (that is, your) network interactions are shown.
Mode	following	Determines which users are listed, with respect to the specified user: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • following – those who the user is following. • followers – those who are following the user.
Theme	full	Determines how the user's network is displayed: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • full – shows a large version of user's profile pictures and, if the following mode is set, provides an entry field function to follow more users. • tiny – shows only the small version of user's profile pictures.
Maximum Results	no limit imposed up to a maximum of 30	Restricts the number of users displayed. If the number of users exceeds the specified maximum, then a Show All link is provided. This link leads to the specified user's Network view , showing the complete list of network interactions.

Related Topics

[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Noformat Macro

The Noformat macro displays a block of text in monospace font with no other formatting.

Using the Noformat Macro**To add the Noformat macro to a page:**

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Enter the content that is to be unformatted into the body of the macro placeholder.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
No Panel	False	Removes the panel around the content.

Related Topics

Working with Macros

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Note Macro

The Note macro allows you to highlight a note on a Confluence page.

It creates a yellow-coloured box surrounding your text:



Note Macro Example

This text is rendered inside the Note macro.

Using the Note Macro

To add the Note macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Add the text of the note to the body of the macro placeholder.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Optional Title	none	If specified, the title is displayed in bold next to the icon.
Show Exclamation Mark Icon	true	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • true – displays the warning icon • false – the icon is not displayed

Related Topics

Working with Macros

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Page Index Macro

The Page Index macro creates a hyperlinked alphabetical index of all page titles within the current space.

The top section of the index contains a cell for each letter of the alphabet, with cells for numbers and symbols. Each cell indicates how many pages are in the corresponding list.

The lower section contains lists of page titles followed by the first few sentences of content on that page.

Each letter, number or symbol in the top section is hyperlinked to the corresponding cell in the lower section. Each page title in the lower section is hyperlinked to the page in the space.

Screenshot: Page Index macro segment

Space Index

0-9 ... 2	A ... 64	B ... 12	C ... 263
E ... 13	G ... 19	H ... 93	I ... 109
L ... 31	M ... 39	N ... 36	O ... 10
R ... 193	S ... 80	T ... 46	U ... 59
X ... 2	Y ... 1	Z ... 0	!@#\$... 0

0-9

[1.4 Interface - Where Did Everything Go?](#)
you're used to the Confluence Classic interface, the new 1.4 interface might be a little hard to navigate at first. We think that the new design is a vast improvement, but it's inevitable that people who have used the application since its release will be wondering where ...

[2.2.5 Security Patch](#)
patch fixes a minor security vulnerability regarding the administration of space mail accounts. It affects only Confluence 2.2.5. To install this patch please download the three files attached to this page, stop Confluence and copy them to your {{WEBINF/classes/com ...

A

[Access Log Scripts](#)
access log scripts are attached to this page Access Log ScriptsAt the 7z file. # Copy all the daily access logs to a folder called {{logs}} generate a {{csv}} file called {{summary.csv}} and several directorie

[Accessing Confluence Components From Plugin Modules](#)
Confluence is built around Spring <http://www.springframework.org>. If you are familiar with Spring, then you may only wish to know that C classes) are autowired by name. Thus, if you want to access ...

[Activating External User Management](#)
your user management is being handled outside of Confluence by option in Confluence, from the Administration Console. Running C user management outside of Confluence ...

[Add Confluence EAR-WAR to JIRA Standalone](#)
document will assist you in adding Confluence to your existing JIRA. This guide is for experts only. If you run into any difficulties with this limited assistance outside ...

[Add LDAP Integration](#)
Atlassian's Crowd <http://www.atlassian.com/software/crowd/> is a w application provisioning and identity management. Confluence can group memberships to set the user's Confluence access ...

[Add LDAP Integration For User Authentication Only](#)
Confluence 2.7.0 and above, all user management is performed by Management in Confluence <http://confluence.atlassian.com/display/DOC/UnderstandingUserManagementinConfluence#UnderstandingOSUser> user management, described in this document, has been

Using the Page Index Macro

To add the Page Index macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

This macro accepts no parameters.

Related Topics

[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Page Tree Macro

The Page Tree macro displays a dynamic, hierarchical list of pages starting from a specified parent (root) page. It can act as a table of contents or a list of related topics.

When viewing the page tree, your reader can click a link to view the relevant page. The page's current position is highlighted in the page tree.

**Creating a navigation panel for your space**

The Page Tree macro is used in the Confluence Documentation theme, to create a navigation panel showing a table of contents for your space. Read the instructions on [Configuring the Documentation Theme](#).

Using the Page Tree Macro

To add the Page Tree macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Click **Refresh** in the Macro Browser to see the effect of changes to the macro parameters.

Macro Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Root Page	The home page of the space	Specify the parent page for the page tree. The tree will include all children of the given page, plus their children and grand-children etc. The tree will <i>not</i> include the root page itself. Specify the page title or a special value as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Your page title — to specify a page name for the parent or root of the tree. The tree will include all children and grand-children of the specified root. The tree will <i>not</i> include the specified root page itself. • '@home' — will include all pages under the home page of the space (default). • '@self' — will include all pages under the current page. • '@parent' — will include all pages under the parent of the current page, including the current page. • '@none' — will include all pages in the space, including orphaned pages and the home page.
Sort Pages By	position	Specify the order to display the pages in the tree. This sort order is for display purposes only. It does not permanently re-arrange the page order. The value may be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • bitwise — sort alphabetically, for example: title1, title10, title2. • creation — sort by date of creation. • modified — sort by order of date last modified. • natural — sort in 'natural' alphabetical order, for example: title1, title2, title10. • position — sort by the default Confluence sorting rules. If your pages have been ordered manually, this sort will respect the defined order. Otherwise the pages will be displayed in the 'natural' alphabetical order, such as: title1, title2, title10.
Include Excerpts in Page Tree	false	Select if you want the page tree to show excerpts from each page. The excerpts must be defined on each page by the Excerpt macro .
Reverse Order	false	Select to show the pages in reverse (descending) natural order. Must be used in combination with the Sort Pages By parameter.
Include Search Box above Page Tree	false	Select if you want to include a search box above the page tree. The search box allows your readers to search within the page tree for the specified value.
Show Expand/Collapse Links	false	Select if you want to display the 'expand all' and 'collapse all' links at the top of your page tree. Your readers can click these links to open or close all branches of the tree at once.
Start Depth	1	Enter any number greater than 0 to set how many levels of children the tree should show when it opens for the first time.

Related Topics

[Page Tree Search Macro](#)
[Adding a Navigation Sidebar](#)
[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Sample Page Tree

This page is a sample, used to demonstrate the Pagetree macro.

For more information, take a look at the main page on the [Page Tree Macro](#).

What you need to type	What you will get
<code>{pagetree:root=@parent|expandCollapseAll=false}</code>	

Another Sample Page Tree

We're using this page to demonstrate the Pagetree macro.

For more information, take a look at the main page on the [Page Tree Macro](#).

What you need to type	What you will get
<code>{pagetree:root=@parent|expandCollapseAll=true}</code>	Collapse all Expand all Collapse all

Sample Page Tree 2

This is another sample page, used to demonstrate the Pagetree macro.

For more information, take a look at the main page on the [Page Tree Macro](#).

What you need to type	What you will get
<code>{pagetree:root=@parent|expandCollapseAll=true}</code>	Collapse all Expand all Collapse all

Page Tree Search Macro

The Page Tree Search macro allows you to add a search box to your Confluence page. When a viewer enters a search term, Confluence will search a hierarchy of pages starting from a specified parent (root) page and return the search results on a new tab of your browser.



You may be interested in the Page Tree macro

You can also add a search box as part of a dynamic page tree, which looks like a table of contents. Read the instructions on the [Page Tree macro](#).

Using the Page Tree Search Macro

To add the Page Tree Search macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.

2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Name of Root Page	none	The name of the root page whose hierarchy of pages will be searched by this macro. If this not specified, the root page is the current page.

Related Topics

[Page Tree Macro](#)
[Adding a Navigation Sidebar](#)
[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Panel Macro

The Panel Macro allows you to display a block of text within a customisable panel, like a text box. Here is an example:

My Title
A formatted panel.

Using the Panel Macro

To add the Panel macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Panel Title	none	The title of the panel. If specified, this title will be displayed in its own title row.
Border Style	solid	The style of the panel's border. Accepted values are <code>solid</code> , <code>dashed</code> and other valid CSS border styles.
Border Colour		The colour of the panel's border.
Border Pixel Width (Value Only)		The width of the panel's border (in pixels).
Background Colour		The background colour of the panel.
Title Background Colour		The background colour of the title row of the panel.

Title Text Colour		The colour of the text in the title row of the panel.
--------------------------	--	---

Colours can be specified HTML colour names or hexadecimal codes.

Notes

- You can use panels within [columns](#) and table cells.

Related Topics

[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Popular Labels Macro

The Popular Labels macro displays the most popular labels used throughout your Confluence site or within a space.

Using the Popular Labels Macro

To add the Popular Labels macro to a page:

- In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
- Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Number of Labels to Display	100	Specifies the total number of labels to display in the heatmap.
Restrict Labels to this Space Key	none	Restricts the list of popular labels to the specified space.
Style of Labels	list	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> list – displays the popular labels as a bulleted list, ordered by popularity (highest first). heatmap – displays the popular labels using different font sizes for each label depending on the label's popularity, ordered by label names.

Related Topics

[Using Label Macros to Categorise Wiki Content](#)

[Related Labels Macro](#)

User-contributed extension: [Sortable Popular Labels](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Profile Picture Macro

The Profile Picture macro displays a user's profile picture on a page.

- When viewing the page, mouse-over the picture to see the [Hover Profile](#) for the user.
- When editing the page, click on the picture and choose **View User Profile** to see the [profile](#) for the user.



Edit View User Profile Remove

The Profile Picture macro is useful for such tasks as creating Team Pages that show all members of a project team.

On this page:

- [Using the Profile Picture Macro](#)
- [Parameters](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Using the Profile Picture Macro

To add the Profile Picture macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
User	none	The username, or real name, of a Confluence user.

Related Topics

[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Recently Updated Dashboard Macro

The Recently Updated Dashboard macro displays a list of the most recently changed content within Confluence. It is similar to the [Recently Updated macro](#) but is intended for use on the Confluence dashboard.

Using the Recently Updated Dashboard Macro

To add the Recently Updated Dashboard macro to a page:


1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
-----------	---------	-------------

Space(s)	The space which contains the page on which the macro is added	Filter content by space. The macro will display only the pages etc which belong to the space(s) you specify here. You can specify one or more space keys, separated by commas. '*' means all spaces.
Include these Content Types Only	all types	Filter content by type. You can specify one or more types, separated by commas. Available types are: page, blogpost or news, spacedesc, attachment, comment, mail, userinfo.
Label(s)	none	Filter content by label. The macro will display only the pages etc which are tagged with the label(s) you specify here. You can specify one or more labels, separated by commas.  If there are no pages matching any of the specified labels, then Confluence will ignore the labels and will list all recently updated pages, as well as showing a message, "These labels don't exist and were ignored: xxx ". This unexpected behaviour is noted in issue CONF-10167 .
User(s)	all users	Filter by username of the user who updated the content. The macro will only display content created and updated by the user(s) you specify here. You can specify one or more usernames separated by commas.
Width of Table	100%	Specify the width of the macro display, as a percentage of the window width.
Show User Profile Pictures	false	Select whether profile pictures of the users who updated the content are displayed.


Related Topics

[Recently Updated Macro](#)
[Viewing Recently Updated Content](#)
[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Recently Updated Macro

The Recently Updated macro displays a list of the most recently changed content within Confluence.

 The [Recently Updated Dashboard macro](#) is similar to this macro, but is intended for display on the Confluence dashboard.

Using the Recently Updated Macro

To add the Recently Updated macro to a page:



1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Author(s) by username	None specified i.e. display all content	Filter the results by author. The macro will display only the pages etc which were last modified by the author(s) you specify here. You can specify one or more authors, separated by a comma or a space.

Space(s)	@self, i.e. the space which contains the page on which the macro is used	<p>This parameter allows you to filter content by space. The macro will display only the pages etc which belong to the space(s) you specify here.</p> <p>You can specify one or more space keys, separated by a comma or a space.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To exclude content in a specific space, put a minus sign (-) immediately in front of that space key. For example: If you specify a space key of <code>-BADSPACE</code> you will get only content which is not in the BADSPACE. To indicate that the results must come from a specific space, put a plus sign (+) immediately in front of that space key. For example: If you specify a space key of <code>+GOODSPACE</code> you will get only content in GOODSPACE. (Note that this is not particularly useful, because each content item belongs to one space only. If you put a plus sign next to one space key and list other space keys too, the other space keys will be ignored.) <p>Special values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <code>@self</code> — The current space. <code>@personal</code> — All personal spaces. <code>@global</code> — All global spaces. <code>@favorite</code> — The spaces you have marked as favourite. <code>@favourite</code> — The same as <code>@favorite</code> above. <code>@all</code> — All spaces in your Confluence site. <code>*</code> — The same as <code>@all</code> above. <p> When specifying a personal space, remember to use the tilde (~) sign in front of the username, such as <code>~jbloggs</code> or <code>~jbloggs@example.com</code>.</p>
Label(s)	None specified i.e. display all content	<p>Filter the results by label. The macro will display only the pages etc which are tagged with the label(s) you specify here.</p> <p>You can specify one or more label values, separated by a comma or a space.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To exclude content which matches a given label, put a minus sign (-) immediately in front of that label value. For example: If you specify a label value of <code>-badpage</code> you will get only content which is not labelled with 'badpage'. To indicate that the results must match a given label value, put a plus sign (+) immediately in front of that label value. For example: If you specify a label value of <code>+superpage, +goodpage</code> you will get only content which has at least two labels, being 'superpage' and 'goodpage'. <p> If there are no pages matching any of the specified labels, then Confluence will ignore the labels and will list all recently updated pages, as well as showing a message, "These labels don't exist and were ignored: xxx ". This unexpected behaviour is noted in issue CONF-10167.</p>
Width of Table	100%	Specify the width of the macro display, as a percentage of the window width.
Include these Content Types Only	all types	<p>This parameter allows you to filter content by content type. The macro will display only the content of the type you specify here.</p> <p>You can specify one or more types, separated by a comma or a space.</p> <p>To exclude content of a given content type, put a minus sign (-) immediately in front of that content type. For example: If you specify a content type of <code>-blogpost</code> you will get pages and all other content except for blog posts.</p> <p>Available values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <code>page</code> — Pages. <code>blogpost</code> or <code>news</code> — Blog posts, also known as news items. <code>comment</code> — Comments on pages and blog posts. <code>attachment</code> — Attachments. <code>status</code> — Status updates made by other users.
Maximum Number of Results	15	Specify the maximum number of results to be displayed. If this parameter is omitted, then a maximum of 15 results are displayed. The theoretical maximum value that this parameter can accept is 2 to the power of 31, minus 1 (or 2147483647), though this has been limited to 200 in the code, for performance reasons. More details are here .

theme	'concise' with the heading 'Recently Updated'	<p>Choose the appearance of this macro:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <code>concise</code> — the default list, showing the names of pages which were updated or commented on, the users who made the page modifications and time when the modifications occurred. <code>social</code> — lists recent modifications in reverse chronological order, but groups them by user into short time segments. A 'sub' list appears within each user's time segment, showing the names of pages which they updated or commented on and time when these modifications occurred. <code>sidebar</code> — lists recent updates in reverse chronological order, showing the names of pages which were updated or commented on and time when the page modifications occurred. This theme does not show authorship.
Show User Profile Pictures	false	Specify <code>showProfilePic=true</code> to display the profile pictures of the users who updated the content.

**Customising the wording**

If you would like to change the wording displayed by the Recently Updated macro, please refer to the document on [modifying the Confluence interface text](#).

Related Topics

[Recently Updated Dashboard Macro](#)
[Viewing Recently Updated Content](#)
[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Recently Used Labels Macro

The Recently Used Labels macro displays a list of the most recently used labels in a specified scope (Global/Space/Personal).

Using the Recently Used Labels Macro

To add the Recently Used Labels macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Number of Labels to Display	10	Specifies the total number of labels to display in the list.
Scope for Retrieving Labels	global	<p>Specifies the scope of labels to be displayed in the list. Valid values include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> global — covers all non-personal spaces in the Confluence installation. space — the current space. personal — your own personal space.
List Style	list	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> list — displays the list of labels horizontally. table — includes additional information such as the page to which the label was added and the user who added it.

Table Title	none	Adds a title to the top of the list in table style. Titles are only visible when the List Style parameter has been set to table .
--------------------	------	---

Related Topics

[Related Labels Macro](#)
[Content by Label Macro](#)
[Recently Used Labels Macro](#)
[Working with Labels](#)
[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Related Labels Macro

The Related Labels macro lists all labels from every page which has one or more labels in common with the current page.

Using the Related Labels Macro

To add the Related Labels macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Restrict to these Labels	none	Specify the labels for which you want to view related labels. For example, <code>documentation,my:stuff</code> .

Related Topics

[Navigation Map Macro](#)
[Content by Label Macro](#)
[Recently Used Labels Macro](#)
[Working with Labels](#)
[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

RSS Feed Macro

The RSS Feed macro embeds an [RSS feed](#) on a page. It can display the contents of external feeds, or of internal feeds generated by Confluence. To display blog posts or to list recently updated pages in a space, use the [Feed Builder](#) to create an internal feed, then render it using this macro.



CAUTION: Including unknown HTML inside a webpage is dangerous.

HTML inside an RSS feed can contain active scripting components. This means that it would be possible for a malicious attacker to present a user of your site with script that their web browser would believe came from you. Such code could be used, for example, to steal a user's authentication cookie and give the attacker their Confluence login password.

The RSS Feed macro will only be available if it has been enabled by your Confluence administrator. Also, your Confluence administrator can define a [whitelist of trusted URLs](#). You will see an error message on the Confluence page, if the included URL is not in the whitelist.

Using the RSS Feed Macro

To add the RSS Feed macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
RSS Feed URL	none	The URL of the RSS feed link you want to show.
Maximum Number of Entries	15	Limit the number of entries displayed.
Show Item Titles Only	false	Show only the titles of the news items, not the content.
Show Name/Title of RSS Feed	true	Hide the feeds title bar.

How Up to Date is the Feed?

By default, the RSS Feed macro caches the feed results for 60 minutes before fetching the data again.

If you wish to change the default caching, use the [Cache macro](#) to define how often the RSS Feed macro fetches the feed updates. You will need to install the [Cache plugin](#) onto your Confluence site.

What Happens to a Page Containing a Disallowed URL?

Your Confluence Administrator can set up a whitelist of allowed URLs. If this is the case, you may see an error on the pages which contain the RSS Feed macro.

A user can add the [RSS Feed macro](#) or the [HTML-include macro](#) to a Confluence page. The macro code includes a URL from which the content is drawn. When the page is displayed, Confluence will check the URL against the whitelist. If the URL is not allowed, Confluence will display an error message on the page.

The error message says that Confluence "could not access the content at the URL because it is not from an allowed source" and displays the offending URL. If the person viewing the page is a Confluence Administrator, they will also see a link to the Administration page where they can configure the URL whitelist.

Here is an example of the error message, including the link shown only to Confluence Administrators:

Could not access the content at the URL because it is not from an allowed source.

<http://feathers.wordpress.com>

[Configure whitelist >>](#)

Here is an example of the error message, but without the link.

Could not access the content at the URL because it is not from an allowed source.

<http://feathers.wordpress.com>

You may contact your site administrator and request that this URL be added to the list of allowed sources.

Authentication***Private Feeds from External Sites***

RSS feeds which require authentication cannot be accessed using the RSS Feed macro.

Accessing Internal HTTPS Feeds

This applies only to Confluence instances which have [enabled HTTPS for all content](#). If your site is fully HTTPS, the RSS Feed macro cannot access internal feeds. To enable the RSS Feed macro to access internal feeds without affecting your HTTPS setup, enable local-only HTTP access:

1. Shut down Confluence.
2. Consult the [SSL guide](#) to enable HTTP access to Confluence. You'll want to ensure that you have an HTTP connector and an SSL connector, both commented in. This means that Confluence will be accessible via both HTTP and HTTPS. However, you should *not* have a redirect port, nor rules in web.xml to redirect all traffic.
3. Instead of using web.xml to redirect traffic, insert a firewall rule to redirect all HTTP requests not from the Confluence server to the equivalent HTTPS URL. This ensures that users will only be able to access Confluence via HTTPS, as intended. If you have still left HTTP access for attachments enabled (to avoid the [IE download bug](#)) you must selectively enable those URLs as well.
4. Modify your Confluence RSS Feed macro feed link to use the HTTP URL, and restart Confluence.

Related Topics

[Subscribing to RSS Feeds within Confluence](#)

[Watching Changes](#)

[Working with Macros](#)

[Configuring a URL Whitelist](#)

Return to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Search Results Macro

The Search Results macro searches your Confluence site based on search terms specified in the macro code, and displays the results on the wiki page.

Using the Search Results Macro

To add the Search Results macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Search Terms	none	<p>The search terms which this macro will use to generate its results.</p> <p>You can refine your search query by using operators such as 'AND' and 'OR'. For example: <code>my_query1 AND my_query2</code></p> <p>For more information, take a look at the documentation on the Confluence search syntax.</p>
Maximum Number of Results	10	Set a limit to the number of search results displayed.
Restrict to this Space Key	all	Specify the key of the space you want to search in. Note that this is case-sensitive.
Content Type	all	Specify the content type. The content types are: page , comment , blogpost , attachment , userinfo (the content of user profiles only) and spacedesc (the content of space descriptions only).

Last Modified	all	<p>Specify a period of time in weeks, days, hours and/or minutes, to see the content modified within that time frame. For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 2h 35m • 3d 30m <p>These are the values you can use:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • w = weeks • d = days • h = hours • m = minutes <p>If no time category is specified, Confluence assumes minutes. If you specify more than one time period (e.g. weeks and days), the periods must be separated by a space and they can come in any order. The time categories are not case sensitive e.g. '4d' is the same as '4D'.</p>
Restrict to this Username	all	Specify the username of a Confluence user, to show only content created or updated by that user.

**Permissions**

When a user views the page containing the Search Results macro, the search results will show only pages and other content types for which the user has 'View' permission.

Related Topics

[Livesearch Macro](#)
[Searching Confluence](#)
[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Section Macro

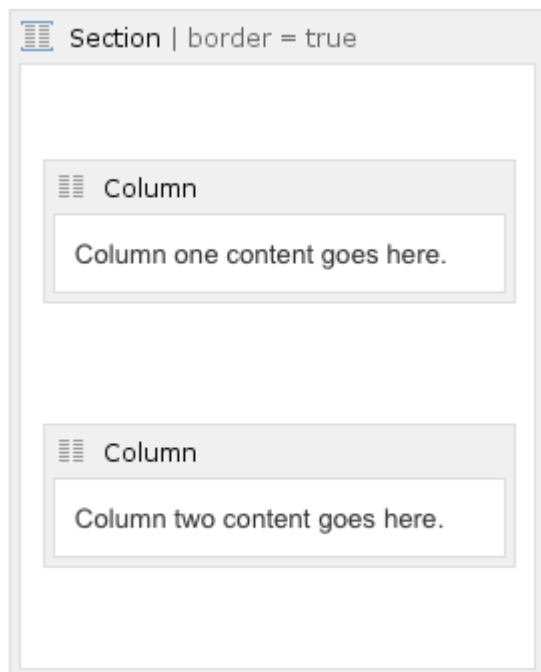
The Section macro allows you to define a section of a page in which you can insert one or more columns across the page.

Using the Section Macro

To add the Section macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

You can then add instances of the [Column macro](#) to the body of the Section macro placeholder, as in the following screenshot:



⚠ Please note, all content within your section elements **must** be enclosed by a [Column macro](#). If you do not do this, the section macro will not work.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Show Border	false	Determines whether to draw a border around the section and columns. ⚠ Without a Column macro , the border parameter will not be displayed correctly.

Related Topics

[Working with Macros](#)
[Working with Tables](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Space Details Macro

The Space Details macro renders the space's details in a table within the page.

Using the Space Details Macro

To add the **Space Details macro** to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
-----------	---------	-------------

Width of Table	100%	The width of the space details table, specified as a percentage (%) of the page width.
-----------------------	------	--

Related Topics

[Viewing Space Details](#)
[Editing Space Details](#)
[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

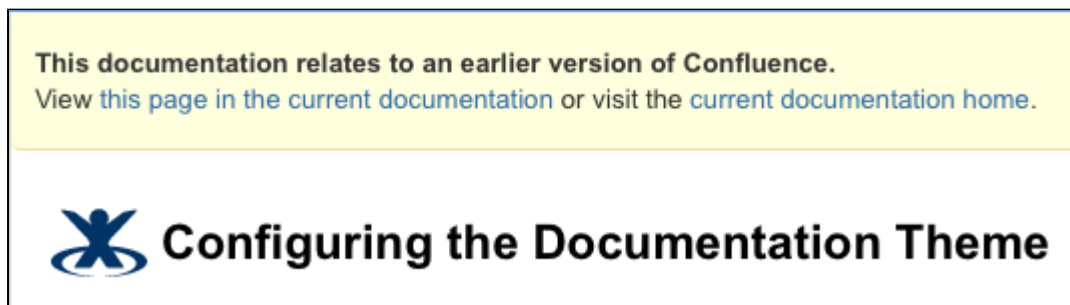
Space Jump Macro

This page describes the Space Jump Macro, which is provided with the [Documentation theme](#). You can use space jumping to link from a page in one space to a page with the same name in another space, without knowing the name of the page when you create the link.

The Space Jump macro inserts a link onto the page. When the reader clicks the link, they will jump to a page that has the same name in another space. You specify the space when you insert the Space Jump macro.

Example: We use the Space Jump macro to put a standard message at the top of our archive spaces, telling people that they're reading an old version of the documentation and letting them jump quickly to the same page in the latest documentation. See the words '**this page in the current documentation**' in the screenshot below.

Screenshot: One way of using the Space Jump macro



Using the Space Jump Macro

To add the Space Jump macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Space	None	The space key that contains a page with the same page title that you want the link to jump to. Space keys are case-sensitive.
Alias	None	The text to display as the hyperlinked text. If you do not supply an alias, Confluence will display the page name.

More Information

What happens if there is no page with the same name in the target space?

For the space jump to work, the target space must contain a page with the same name as the page that renders the Space Jump macro. If the target space does not contain such a page, you will see a broken link. Confluence handles this in its usual manner: the link is coloured red. If you click the link, Confluence offers to create the page for you.

Can I use the Space Jump macro in any space?

Yes. You can use the Space Jump macro in any space, even if that space is not currently using the Documentation theme. Provided that the Documentation theme plugin and its components are installed and enabled on your Confluence site, the Space Jump macro is available in any space.

Related Topics

[Configuring the Documentation Theme](#)
[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Spaces List Macro

The Spaces List macro is used to display a list of spaces within a page, similar to the list of spaces seen on the dashboard.

Using the Spaces List Macro

To add the Spaces List macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Required?	Default	Description
Scope of spaces	no	all	Specify the view from which spaces are listed. Available options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • all – All spaces in the Confluence installation. • category – Spaces grouped according to space categories. • favourite – Spaces which you have added to your favourites list. • new – New spaces which have been created within the last 7 days.
Width of List	no	100%	Specify the width of the table. The width of the spaces list table, specified as a percentage (%).

Related Topics

[Browsing a space](#)
[Creating a Page](#)
[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Status Macro

The Status macro displays a coloured lozenge (a rounded box) that is useful for reporting project status. You can choose the colour of the lozenge and the text that appears inside the lozenge. The macro also displays its current status in the editor, and you can change the status directly in the editor.

All good!

Screenshot: Click on the Status macro lozenge to change the status.

All good!

Edit



Remove

On this page:

- [Using the Status Macro](#)
- [Parameters](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Using the Status Macro

To add the **Status** macro to a page using the Macro Browser:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Colour	Grey	The colour of the lozenge and its border. The border will be a darker version of the same colour. The following colours are available: Grey , Red , Yellow and Green .
Title	The colour that you select.	The text that will appear inside the lozenge. If you do not specify any text, the title will be the colour of the lozenge, that is 'Grey', 'Red', 'Yellow' or 'Green'.

Related Topics

[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#)

Table of Contents Macro

The Table of Contents macro scans the headings of the current Confluence page to dynamically create a table of contents from your page headings. This helps readers navigate lengthy pages by summarising the content structure and providing links to headings. Headings are indented progressively.

On this page:

- [Using the Table of Contents Macro](#)
- [Macro Parameters](#)
- [Examples](#)
 - [Filtered Table of Contents](#)
 - [Flat List](#)
- [Notes](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Using the Table of Contents Macro

To add the **Table of Contents** macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

You can also add the macro to a page by choosing **Insert > Table of Contents** from the editor toolbar.

Macro Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Output Type	list	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> list — produces a typical list type TOC. flat — produces a horizontal menu-type series of links.
Display Section Numbering	clear	Select the check box to apply outline numbering to your headings, for example: 1.1, 1.2, 1.3.
List Style	none	<p>Select the style of bullet point for each list item. You can use any valid CSS style. For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> none — no list style is displayed circle — the list style is a circle disc — the list style is a filled circle. This is the typical bullet list, and is used for this example list. square — the list style is a square decimal — the list is numbered (1, 2, 3, 4, 5) lower-alpha — the list is lower-case, alphabetised (a, b, c, d, e) lower-roman — the list style is lower roman numerals (i, ii, iii, iv, v, vi) upper-roman — the list style is upper roman numerals (I, II, III, IV, V, VI)
Heading Indent		Sets the indent for a list according to CSS quantities. Entering 10px will successively indent heading groups by 10px. For example, level 1 headings will be indented 10px and level 2 headings will be indented an additional 10px.
Separator	brackets	<p>This parameter applies to flat lists only. You can enter any of the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> brackets — Each item is enclosed by square brackets: []. braces — Each item is enclosed by braces: { }. parens — Each item is enclosed by parentheses: (). pipe — Each item is separated by a pipe: anything — Each item is separated by the value you enter. You can enter any text as a separator, for example "****". If using a custom separator, be aware that text displays exactly as entered, with no additional white space to further separate the characters.
Minimum Heading Level	1	Select the highest heading level to start your TOC list. For example, entering 2 will include levels 2, and lower, headings, but will not include level 1 headings.
Maximum Heading Level	7	Select the lowest heading level to include. For example, entering 2 will include levels 1 and 2, but will not include level 3 headings and below.
Include Headings		Filter headings to include according to specific criteria. You can use wildcard characters. See Sun's Regex documentation for examples of constructing regular expression strings.
Exclude Headings		Filter headings to exclude according to specific criteria. You can use wildcard characters. See Sun's Regex documentation for examples of constructing regular expression strings.
Printable	checked	By default, the TOC is set to print. If you clear the check box, the TOC will not be visible when you print the page.
CSS Class Name		If you have custom TOC styles in your CSS style sheet, use this parameter to output the TOC inside <div> tags with the specified class attribute.

Examples

The examples below are based on this table of contents:

1. Places
1. Favourite Places
2. Unknown Places
2. Foods
1. Favourite Foods
2. Unknown Foods
3. Things
1. Favourite Things
2. Unknown Things

Filtered Table of Contents

This example filters the headings to include those that contain 'Favourite', but excludes headings which end with 'Things'. The list is styled with Roman numerals.

Parameter	Value
List Style	upper-roman
Include Headings	Favourite.*
Exclude Headings	.*Things

The resulting table of contents is:

I. Favourite Places
II. Favourite Foods

Flat List

This example filters all headings to render a flat list of 'Unknowns' enclosed in square brackets (the default list style).

Parameter	Value
Output Type	flat
Maximum Heading Level	2
Include Headings	Unknown.*

The resulting table of contents is:

[Unknown Places] [Unknown Foods] [Unknown Things]

Notes

- Due to an outstanding issue in the Table of Contents macro ([CONF-10619](#)), the Macro Browser's **Refresh** function does not render any parameter modifications. Currently, the rendering of parameter value modifications to the Table of Contents macro occurs only after the page is saved.
- Using HTML Heading Markup with the Table of Contents Macro**
The Table of Contents macro cannot handle HTML heading markup on its own. Hence, if you use the [HTML](#) and [HTML Include](#) macros to render HTML heading markup in a Confluence page, the Table of Contents macro will not create a contents list out of these headings. (For more information about this issue, please refer to [TOC-93](#).) However, if you insert an HTML anchor into each HTML heading on your page (based on the following syntax), the Table of Contents macro will incorporate these headings into your contents list.

```
<h2><a name="pagename-headingname"></a>Heading Name</h2>
```

The syntax for the anchor name is the page name and heading name separated by a hyphen, in which the page and heading names have all spaces removed and are converted to lowercase. If punctuation marks occur within a page or heading name, each mark should usually be converted to its URL escape code in the anchor name.

Related Topics

[Table of Content Zone Macro](#)

[Page Tree Macro](#)

[Adding a Navigation Sidebar](#)

[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Table of Content Zone Macro

The Table of Content Zone macro enables you to mark out a 'page zone' from which to create a table of contents. Styling the headings as a flat list enables you to enclose the page text by top and bottom navigation bars similar to web navigation. When styled as a list, headings are indented progressively.

On this page:

- [Using the Table of Content Zone Macro](#)
- [Parameters](#)
- [Examples](#)
 - [Filtered Table of Contents](#)
 - [Flat List](#)
- [Notes](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Using the Table of Content Zone Macro

To add the Table of Content Zone macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
location	both	Specifies where in the zone the output list is displayed: top , bottom , or both , which encloses the page zone content.
Output Type	list	Specifies the layout for the table of contents: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • list – produces a vertical list, typical of a TOC. • flat – produces a horizontal menu-type series of links, for example: [Heading 1] [Heading 2] [Heading 3].
Display Section Numbering	false	Select to apply outline numbering to your headings, for example: 1.1, 1.2, 1.3.

List Style	none	Specifies the style of bullet point for each list item. You can use any valid CSS style. For example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>none</code> — no list style is displayed • <code>circle</code> — the list style is a circle • <code>disc</code> — the list style is a filled circle. This is the typical bullet list, and is the one we're using for this example list • <code>square</code> — the list style is a square • <code>decimal</code> — the list is numbered (1, 2, 3, 4, 5) • <code>lower-alpha</code> — the list is lower-case, alphabetised (a, b, c, d, e) • <code>lower-roman</code> — the list style is lower roman numerals (i, ii, iii, iv, v, vi) • <code>upper-roman</code> — the list style is upper roman numerals (I, II, III, IV, V, VI)
Heading Indent		Sets the indent for a list output type, according to CSS quantities. Entering "10px" will successively indent list heading levels by 10px. For example, h1 headings will be indented 10px and h2 headings will be indented an additional 10px.
Separator	brackets	Only applies to the flat output type. Specifies the display style of the links. You can enter any of the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>brackets</code> — Each item is enclosed by square brackets: []. • <code>braces</code> — Each item is enclosed by braces: { }. • <code>parens</code> — Each item is enclosed by parentheses: (). • <code>pipe</code> — Each item is separated by a pipe: • <i>anything</i> — Each is separated by the value you enter. You can enter any text as a separator, for example <code>****</code>. If using a custom separator, be aware that text displays exactly as entered, with no additional white space to further separate the characters.
Minimum Heading Level	1	Select the largest heading level to start your TOC list. For example, 2 will list h2, h3, and h4 headings, but will not include h1 headings.
Max Heading Level	7	Select the smallest heading level to include in the TOC. For example, 2 will list h1 and h2, but will not include h3 and below.
Include Headings		Filter the included headings according to specific criteria. You can use wildcard characters. See Sun's Regex documentation for examples of constructing regular expression strings.
Exclude Headings		Exclude headings according to specific criteria. You can use wildcard characters. See Sun's Regex documentation for examples of constructing regular expression strings.
Printable	true	By default, the TOC is set to print. If you clear this parameter, the TOC will not be visible when you print the page.
CSS Class Name		If you have a custom TOC in your CSS style sheet, you can use this parameter to output the TOC with the specified "class" attribute.

Examples

The examples are based on a page with the following headings:

1. [Places](#)
 1. [Favourite Places](#)
 2. [Unknown Places](#)
2. [Foods](#)
 1. [Favourite Foods](#)
 2. [Unknown Foods](#)
3. [Things](#)
 1. [Favourite Things](#)
 2. [Unknown Things](#)

Filtered Table of Contents

This example will filter all headings to include those that contain "Favourite", but will exclude any heading which ends with the word "Things".

The list is styled with upper-case Roman numerals.

Parameter	Value
Output Type	list
List Style	upper-roman
Include Headings	Favourite.*
Exclude Headings	. *Things

Screenshot: Filtered TOC 'zone' headings

I. Favourite Places
II. Favourite Foods

Flat List

This example will filter all headings to render a flat list of "Unknowns" enclosed in square brackets.

Parameter	Value
Output Type	flat
Separator	brackets
Max Heading Level	2
Include Headings	Unknown.*

Screenshot: Filtered TOC 'zone' headings displayed as a flat list

[Unknown Places] [Unknown Foods] [Unknown Things]

Notes

- Due to an outstanding issue in the Table of Content Zone macro ([CONF-10619](#)), the Macro Browser's **Refresh** function does not render any parameter modifications. Currently, the rendering of parameter value modifications to the Table of Content Zone macro occurs only after the page is saved.
- Using HTML Heading Markup with the Table of Content Zone Macro — The Table of Content Zone macro cannot handle HTML heading markup on its own. Hence, if you used the [HTML](#) and [HTML Include](#) macros to render HTML heading markup in a Confluence page, the Table of Content Zone macro will not create a contents list out of these headings. (For more information on about this issue, please refer to [TOC-93](#).)

However, if you insert an HTML anchor into each HTML heading on your page (based on the following syntax), the Table of Content Zone macro will incorporate these headings into your contents list.

```
<h2><a name="pagename-headingname"></a>Heading Name</h2>
```

The syntax for the anchor name is usually the page name and heading name separated by a hyphen, in which the page and heading names have all spaces removed and are converted to lowercase. If punctuation marks occur within a page or heading name, each mark should usually be converted to its URL escape code in the anchor name.

Related Topics

[Table of Contents Macro](#)
[Page Tree Macro](#)
[Adding a Navigation Sidebar](#)
[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Tasklist Macro

The Tasklist macro allows you to create and update a list of tasks on the wiki page. Users viewing the page can modify the tasks without having to edit the page, provided they have the required permissions to modify the page.

On this page:

- [Using the Tasklist Macro](#)
- [Parameters](#)
- [Editing the Task List while Viewing a Page](#)
- [Sorting the Tasks](#)
- [Viewing the Progress on Tasks Completed](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Using the Tasklist Macro

To add the Tasklist macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Title	'Task List'	The name of the task list. This is displayed as the title above the list of tasks.
Width of List	530px	The width of the task list.
Enable Locking	clear	When selected, you can lock individual tasks so that they cannot be changed. See instructions below on editing the task list .
Prompt on Delete	clear	When selected, the user must confirm the deletion of a task in the list.

Editing the Task List while Viewing a Page

While viewing a page, you can change the tasks in a task list as follows:

Action	Description
Adding a task	Type the task description in the box under the list title, and click Add .
Completing/uncompleting a task	Click the check box next to a task to mark the task as complete. The task name will become a lighter color and the progress bar will be updated. Clear the check box to mark the task as uncompleted. You can also click Uncheck all to mark all tasks as uncompleted.
Editing a task	Move your cursor over the task and click the edit icon (pencil) that appears to the right of the task. The task name will become editable and the edit icon will be replaced with a save icon. Make your change and press the 'Enter' key to save or click the save icon.
Deleting a task	Move your cursor over the task and click the delete icon (trash can) that appears to the right of the task.
Viewing details of a task	Click the arrow icon to the left of the task name. The task details will open in an expanded view.

Locking a task	Provided that the Enable Locking parameter has been selected, you can click the lock icon to prevent the task from being edited, deleted, or otherwise changed.
Changing the priority	When the task details are visible, click the appropriate option — High , Medium or Low .
Assigning the task	When the task details are visible, change the assignee of the task by typing in or searching for a username.

Screenshot: Task List showing task details

Planning a Holiday

▶ ☐ Book tickets

▼ ☐ Check passport expiry

Priority: ☒ High ☐ Medium ☐ Low

Assigned To:

Created: Mar 28, 2008

▶ ☐ Apply for visa

▶ ☐ Buy suitcases

Sort by: ▼

Sorting the Tasks

There are two ways to sort the tasks in the list:

- Using the **Sort by** list.
- Using drag and drop.

Select one of the sort options from the 'Sort by' list:

Option	Description
Custom	This is the default option.
Priority	Sort the list in order of the priority you have allocated to each task.
Date Created	Sort the list in order of the dates upon which the tasks were created.
Completed	Move all completed tasks to the bottom or top of the list.
Name	Sort the list in order of the task names.
Assignee	Sort the list in order of the usernames assigned to the tasks.

Once you have selected a sort option, use the icon beside the **Sort by** box to reverse the sort order.

Dragging and dropping a task into a new position:

Drag a task up or down the list using the 'drag me' handle to the right of the task name. Make sure the task is positioned to the left of the existing tasks. A space will open and you will be able to drop the task into its new position.

Viewing the Progress on Tasks Completed

The bar at the top of the task list displays two different colours, indicating the percentage of tasks completed.

Screenshot: Progress Bar on Task List

Related Topics

[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Tip Macro

The Tip macro allows you to highlight a helpful tip on a Confluence page.

It creates a green-coloured box surrounding your text as shown below.



Tip Macro Example

This text is rendered inside the tip macro.

Using the Tip Macro

To add the Tip macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Optional Title	none	The title of the tip. If specified, it will be displayed in bold next to the icon.

Show Tip Icon	true	If cleared, the icon will not be displayed.
----------------------	------	---

Related Topics

[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

User List Macro

The User List macro displays a list of users registered in Confluence, based on their group membership. See also [Configuring the User List Macro](#).

Using the User List Macro

To add the User List macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Group(s)	none	Specifies one or more groups whose Confluence users you want to list, using a comma-separated list of group names. To see all users registered in a Confluence installation, specify an asterisk (*) for this parameter's value.
Display Online/Offline Users	none	Select to generate a list of online users. Clear to generate a list of offline users. In order to make this feature functional, a System Administrator needs to enable the User Log In Listener for your Confluence site.



List of online users can be misleading

When the **Display Online** parameter is used, Confluence uses a context listener to generate the list of online users. A context listener is a J2EE term for something that listens for events in the application server. We listen for session open and close events, so a user is 'online' if they have a session on the application server. Some application servers don't correctly despatch close events for sessions – in these cases, the list of online users may be misleading.

Related Topics

[Working with Macros](#)

[Configuring the User List Macro](#) in the [Confluence Administrator's Guide](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

User Profile Macro

The User Profile macro displays a short summary of any Confluence user's profile on your Confluence page or blog. This is the same summary that appears in a [Hover Profile](#), which appears whenever you mouse-over any user's name in the Confluence interface.



The information contained within your own summarised profile can be [edited](#) using your [User Profile](#) view.

Screenshot: Example of the User Profile Macro



Giles Gaskell
gaskell@atlassian.com
"Working on final User Profile updates."
Website: <http://www.atlassian.com>
Position: Technical Writer
Department: Development
Location: Sydney

Using the User Profile Macro

To add the User Profile macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Username	none	The username of the Confluence user whose profile summary you wish to show.

Related Topics

[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

User Status List Macro

The User Status List macro displays a history of any Confluence user's status updates on your Confluence page or blog. This is the same history that appears in the user's [Status Updates view](#).

Screenshot: Example output of the User Status List macro

History of my Status Updates

“ Working on final User Profile updates.

[Clear](#) | [Delete](#) | [about 2 hours ago](#)

“ Moving onto Networks.

[Delete](#) | [May 06](#)

“ Well... Just one last status update.

[Delete](#) | [May 01](#)

“ Now venturing off onto other topics.

[Delete](#) | [April 30](#)

“ Now working on User Status Updates. At last...

[Delete](#) | [April 30](#)

Using the User Status List Macro

To add the User Status List macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert** > **Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Username	none	The username of the Confluence user whose history of status updates you wish to show.



If you wish to list status updates made by more than just one user, you can use the [Recently Updated macro](#) with the following parameter-value combinations:

- **Include these Content Types Only** — `status`
- **Author(s) by username** — the user(s) whose status updates you want to include in the list. If you leave this field blank, the status updates of all users will be included.

Related Topics

[Working with Macros](#)

[User Status Updates](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

View File Macro

The View File macro allows you to embed an Office or PDF document into your Confluence page. First attach the document to a wiki page and then use one of the View File macros to display the document's content.

When users view the page, they will see the content of the Office document. Users do not need to have Office installed in order to see the content of the Office document. If they do have Office installed, users will be able to open the document for editing in their Office application.

For a full list of Office Connector prerequisites and limitations, please refer to:

- [Office Connector Prerequisites](#)
- [Office Connector Limitations and Known Issue](#)

For an overview of all Office Connector features, please refer to [Working with the Office Connector](#).

On this page:

- [Displaying an Office or PDF Document in Confluence](#)
- [Parameters for the Office and PDF Macros](#)
- [Editing a Word Document or Excel Spreadsheet](#)
- [Troubleshooting](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Displaying an Office or PDF Document in Confluence

To display an Office or PDF document in a page, use one of the following View File macros in the [Macro Browser](#):

- Office Excel
- Office Powerpoint
- Office Word
- PDF

To add one of the View File macros to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters for the Office and PDF Macros

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Macro	Parameter	Default	Description
All View File macros	Page Name	The page which contains the macro	Enter a page name, if you wish to display a document which is attached to another Confluence page.
	File Name	none	The file name of the Office or PDF document to be displayed. The document must be attached to a page on your Confluence site.
Office Excel	Show Grid?	true	Select to show grid lines around each cell of the Excel spreadsheet. Clear to hide these grid lines.
	Worksheet Name	Last worksheet viewed in the spreadsheet	The name of the worksheet that you want displayed.
	Last Row	Last row with content	The number of the last row you want displayed, starting from '0' as the first row.
	Last Column	Last column with content	The number of the last column you want displayed, starting from '0' as the first column.
Office Powerpoint	Height		Specify the height of the display, in pixels (default) or as a percentage of the window's height.
	Slide Number	none	Specify the number of the slide that you want displayed on the Confluence page, where the first slide is numbered zero. Instead of a slide show, the page will display just the single slide, represented as a JPEG image.

	Width	Specify the width of the display, in pixels (default) or as a percentage of the window's width.
--	--------------	---



Reducing the size of the spreadsheet

Use the **Last Column** and **Last Row** parameters to reduce the size of the spreadsheet displayed on the wiki page. This is especially useful to prevent the display from showing empty cells. This will also help to prevent 'out of memory' errors.



Presentation display options

By default, a presentation is displayed as a dynamic slide show, using Adobe Flash Player. However, you can use the **Slide Number** parameter to display just one of the slides as a static JPEG image.

Editing a Word Document or Excel Spreadsheet

When viewing a wiki page that displays an attached Office document, you can launch your Office editor directly from Confluence by clicking the title bar of the document.

You will find detailed instructions in [Editing an Office Document from Confluence](#).

Troubleshooting

Problems? Please refer to our guide to the [Office Connector limitations and known issues](#).

Related Topics

- [Working with the Office Connector](#)
- [Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Warning Macro

The Warning macro allows you to highlight a warning note on a Confluence page.

It creates a red-coloured box surrounding your text as shown below.



Warning Macro Example

This text is rendered inside the warning macro.

Using the Warning Macro

To add the Warning macro to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Default	Description
Optional Title	none	The title of the warning note. If specified, will be displayed in bold next to the icon.

Show Warning Icon	true	If "false", the icon will not be displayed.
--------------------------	------	---

Related Topics

Working with Macros

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Widget Connector Macro

The Widget macro, or Widget Connector, allows you to embed multimedia content from other web sites into your Confluence page.

It supports content such as:

- Gadgets and other widgets: [Google Gadgets](#), [Widgetbox](#).
- Videos: [YouTube](#), [MySpace Video](#), [Yahoo Video](#), [Dailymotion](#), [Episodic](#), [Vimeo](#), [Metacafe](#), [blip.tv](#), [Viddler](#).
- Photos and images: [Flickr](#), [Skitch.com](#).
- Micro-blogging: [Twitter](#), [FriendFeed](#), [BackType](#).
- Documents and presentations: [SlideShare](#), [SlideRocket](#), [Scribd](#), presentations on [Google Docs](#).
- Calendars: [Google Calendar](#).
- Forms and online databases: [Wufoo HTML Form Builder](#), [Dabble DB](#).
- Support and customer satisfaction: [Get Satisfaction](#).

There are live examples of many of these on the [widget examples page](#).

On this page:

- [Using the Widget Connector](#)
- [Parameters](#)
- [Live Example of Flickr Photos](#)
- [Live Example of Google Gadget](#)
- [More Examples of Macro Code](#)
- [Troubleshooting](#)
- [Related Topics](#)

Using the Widget Connector

To add the Widget Connector to a page:

1. In the Confluence editor, choose **Insert > Other Macros**.
2. Find and select the required macro.

Parameters

When editing, you can click on the macro placeholder and choose **Edit** to display the parameters for this macro in the Macro Browser.

Parameters are options that you can set for Confluence macros to control the content or format of the macro output. The table below lists parameters for this macro that can be set in the Macro Browser.

Parameter	Description
Web Site's Widget URL	This is the URL provided by the external web site for embedding content from that web site onto another web page.
Pixel Height (Value Only)	Specify the height of the display, in pixels.
Pixel Width (Value Only)	Specify the width of the display, in pixels.

Live Example of Flickr Photos

This example displays all photos from Flickr with the tag 'Atlassian'. It uses this URL: <http://www.flickr.com/photos/tags/atlassian/>

Live Example of Google Gadget

This example lets you play with a Google Gadget, Gadzi's Monkey Virtual Pet. It uses this URL:

<http://www.google.com/ig/directory?synd=open&num=24&url=http://www.gadzi.com/gadgets/monkey.xml&output=html>

More Examples of Macro Code

Google Gadgets

You need to find the URL for the Google Gadget you want to display.

Here is one way to find a gadget's URL:

1. Go to the [Google Gadgets directory](#).
2. Find the gadget you want then click its name, such as 'Spider'.
3. The gadget's summary page will open. Copy the URL from your browser's address bar. The URL looks something like this one:

```
http://www.google.com/ig/directory?synd=open&num=24&url=http://abowman.googlepages.com/spider
```

You can also use the URL of the 'add gadget' page. The page is called 'Add "gadgetx" to your iGoogle page':

1. There are a couple of ways to get to the 'add gadget' page:
 - Click a '+Google' button underneath the gadget when displayed on a page somewhere.
 - Or click 'Add Stuff' on your iGoogle page.
2. Copy the URL from your browser's address bar. The URL would look something like this one:


```
http://www.google.com/ig/adde?synd=open&source=ggyp&moduleurl=abowman.googlepages.com/spider
```


Widgetbox widgets

You will need to find the URL for the Widgetbox widget you want to display.

Here is one way to find a widget's URL:

1. Ensure you are logged in to Widgetbox and that you are viewing the [Widgetbox Gallery](#).
2. Find the widget you want then click its name, such as 'cyber-pet'.

3. The widget's summary page will open. Within the Get Widget section, click the Atlassian Confluence icon . The Widgetbox **Add to Confluence** dialog box appears, containing the URL required for the Widget Macro.

 If you cannot see this icon, click the **more...** link to reveal it.

4. In the Widgetbox Add to Confluence dialog box, click **Copy**.
5. Copy the URL from your browser's address bar. The URL looks something like this one:

```
http://widgetbox.com/confluence/b8327e33-c8eb-4a38-b842-fba866ffdd28
```

YouTube

You will need to find the URL for the YouTube video that you want to display.

To find a YouTube video's URL:

1. Go to [YouTube](#) and search for the video you want.
2. Click the title of the video, such as 'Wikis in Plain English'.
3. The video's summary page will open. Copy the URL from your browser's address bar. The URL looks something like this one:

```
http://au.youtube.com/watch?v=-dnI00TdmLY
```

MySpace Videos

You will need to find the URL for the MySpace video that you want to display.

To find a MySpace video's URL:

1. Go to [MySpace Video](#) and search for the video you want.
2. Click the title of the video, such as 'Glacier Creek Confluence Time Lapse'.
3. The video's summary page will open. Copy the URL from your browser's address bar. The URL looks something like this one:

```
http://vids.myspace.com/index.cfm?fuseaction=vids.individual&videoid=3376248&searchid=20c789f
```


Yahoo Video

You will need to find the URL for the Yahoo video that you want to display.

To find a Yahoo video's URL:

1. Go to [Yahoo Video](#) and search for the video you want.
2. Click the title of the video, such as 'Wiki Technology Trend: Past, Now and Future'.
3. The video's summary page will open. Copy the URL from the address bar of your browser. The URL looks something like this:

```
http://video.yahoo.com/watch/423158/2424140
```

 If you are unable to obtain a unique URL from your browser's address bar, click the envelope (Share) icon on the lower section of the video screen and copy the contents of the **Link** field.


Dailymotion Video

You will need to find the URL for the Dailymotion video that you want to display.

To find a Dailymotion video's URL:

1. Go to [Dailymotion](#) and search for the video you want.
2. Click the title of the video, such as 'Wiki Technology Trend: Past, Now and Future'.
3. The video's summary page will open. Copy the URL from the address bar of your browser. The URL looks something like this:

```
http://www.dailymotion.com/user/spacevidcast/video/x7zevj_spacevidcast-2009-promo-video_tech
```

 If you are unable to obtain a unique URL from your browser's address bar, click **Menu** at the lower right section of the video screen, select **URL & Embed Code** and copy the contents of the **Link** field.

Episodic

You will need an [Episodic](#) user account if you want to create and distribute videos via Episodic.

To embed an Episodic video onto a Confluence page:

1. Find the video and copy the URL from the address bar of your browser. The URL looks something like this:

```
http://app.episodic.com/shows/13/episodes/493
```

2. Paste the URL into the **Web Site's Widget URL** box in the Macro Browser.

Vimeo

You will need to find the URL for the Vimeo video that you want to display.

To find a Vimeo video's URL:

1. Go to [Vimeo](#) and search for the video you want.
2. Click the title of the video, such as 'The Wiki Show - Allison the Russian High Kicker'.
3. The video's summary page will open. Copy the URL from the address bar of your browser. The URL looks something like this one:

```
http://www.vimeo.com/909808
```

Metacafe

You will need to find the URL for the Metacafe video that you want to display.

To find a Metacafe video's URL:

1. Go to [Metacafe](#) and search for the video you want.
2. Click the title of the video, such as 'Wikis In Plain English (How To)'.
3. The video's summary page will open. Copy the URL from the address bar of your browser. The URL looks something like this one:

```
http://www.metacafe.com/watch/679493/wikis_in_plain_english_how_to/
```

blip.tv

You will need to find the URL for the blip.tv video that you want to display.

To find a blip.tv video's URL:

1. Go to [blip.tv](#) and search for the video you want.
2. Click the title of the video, such as 'River cruising on the Rhine'.
3. The video's summary page will open. Copy the URL from the address bar of your browser. The URL looks something like this one:

```
http://blip.tv/file/996864/
```

Viddler

You will need to find the URL for the Viddler video that you want to display.

To find a Viddler video's URL:

1. Go to [Viddler](#) and search for the video you want.
2. Click the title of the video.
3. The video's summary page will open. Copy the URL from the address bar of your browser. The URL looks something like this one:

```
http://www.viddler.com/explore/Markus_Z/videos/1/
```

Flickr

You can embed a slide show of photos from [Flickr](#) by supplying a URL that specifies one of the following:

- Photos with a specific **tag**.
- Photos belonging to the photostream of a specific Flickr **user**.
- A **set** of photos as defined by the Flickr user.
- A user's photostream starting at a specific **photo**.

If you want to do something else, we suggest that you try any Flickr URL. It should work.

Below are some examples of the Widget macro code for embedding Flickr images.

Flickr Photos with a Specific Tag

This URL displays a slide show of Flickr photos that are tagged with the word 'Atlassian': <http://www.flickr.com/photos/tags/atlassian/>

Flickr Photos from a Specific User

This URL displays a slide show of photos from the Flickr photostream of user 'Atlassian': <http://www.flickr.com/photos/atlassian/>

Flickr Photos from a Specific Set

This URL displays a slide show of Flickr photos from the set 'Melbourne Cup - November 2008' created by user 'Atlassian': <http://www.flickr.com/photos/atlassian/sets/72157608657271078/>

A Specific Flickr Photo

This URL displays a slide show of photos from the Flickr photostream of the user 'Atlassian', starting with a specific photo: <http://www.flickr.com/photos/atlassian/3003538919/>

Skitch.com

You will need to find the URL for the Skitch image that you want to display.

To embed a Skitch image onto a Confluence page:

1. Go to [Skitch.com](http://skitch.com).
2. Find the image and copy the URL from the address bar of your browser. The URL looks something like this:

```
http://skitch.com/atlassian/411g/example-image
```

Twitter

Use a [Twitter](#) link in the Widget macro to display a dynamic list of the latest tweets sent by a user or matching a Twitter search.

To display the latest messages from a Twitter user, add the user's Twitter link as the URL in the Widget macro.

```
http://twitter.com/username
```

This URL will display Mike Cannon-Brooke's Twitter messages: <http://twitter.com/mcannonbrookes>

To display the latest messages resulting from a Twitter search, add the Twitter search link as a URL in the Widget macro.

- Make sure you use the supported format of the search URL:

```
http://search.twitter.com/search?q=my search term
```

The following format is *not* supported:

```
http://twitter.com/#search?q=my search term
```

- The '#' tag is not supported (not even in its URL-encoded form %23).

This URL will display the most recent tweets containing the word 'AtlassianDragons': <http://search.twitter.com/search?q=AtlassianDragons>

FriendFeed

To display the latest messages from a [FriendFeed](#) user, add the user's FriendFeed link as the URL in the Widget macro. For example:

BackType

To display the latest blog or website comments from a [BackType](#) user, add the user's BackType widget link as the URL in the Widget macro. For example:

SlideShare

You will need to find the URL for the SlideShare presentation that you want to display.

To find a SlideShare presentation's URL:

1. Go to [SlideShare](http://www.slideshare.net) and search for the presentation you want.
2. Click the title of the presentation, such as 'Using JIRA & Greenhopper for Agile Development'.
3. The presentation's summary page will open. Copy the URL from the address bar of your browser. The URL looks something like this one:

```
http://www.slideshare.net/jleyser/using-jira-greenhopper-for-agile-development-presentation
```

SlideRocket

You will need to find the URL for the SlideRocket presentation that you want to display.

To find a SlideRocket presentation's URL:

1. Log in to [SlideRocket](#) and go to your library of presentations.
2. Copy the 'web link' for the presentation you want to display. This will give you a URL that looks something like this one:

```
http://app.sliderocket.com/app/FullPlayer.aspx?id=132f9db7-b0fb-4f51-b974-36652774971b
```

3. Paste the URL into the Widget macro code on your Confluence page.

Scribd

You will need to find the URL for the Scribd presentation that you want to display.

To find a Scribd presentation's URL:

1. Go to [Scribd](#) and search for the presentation you want.
2. Click the title of the presentation, such as 'My Sea Friends Coloring Book'.
3. The presentation's summary page will open. Copy the URL from the address bar of your browser. The URL looks something like this one:

```
http://www.scribd.com/doc/5683554/My-Sea-Friends-Coloring-Book
```

4. Paste the URL into the Widget macro code on your Confluence page.

Google Docs Presentations

You can embed presentations from Google Docs, but not other document types. You will need to find the URL for the Google Docs presentation that you want to display.

To find the URL of a Google Docs presentation:

1. Publish your presentation in [Google Docs](#).
2. View your published document, then copy the URL from your browser's address bar. The URL will look something like this:

```
http://docs.google.com/Presentation?docid=ddpqn8g5_0fx96zmmq&mm=en_GB
```

3. Paste the URL into the Widget macro code on your Confluence page.

Google Calendar

You can embed a Google Calendar into your page and to do this, you will need to add the URL for the Google Calendar that you want to display.

To find the URL for a Google Calendar:

1. Log in to [Google Calendar](#).
2. In the calendar list on the left side of the page, ensure the appropriate calendar is selected, click the down-arrow button next to the calendar name and then select the **Calendar settings** option.
(Alternatively, if available, click the **Manage Calendars** link at the bottom of the calendar list and then click the name of the appropriate calendar.)
3. In the **Calendar Address** section, click the **HTML** button. A pop-up message with your calendar's public URL appears.
4. Copy the URL from this pop-up message. The URL looks something like this:

```
http://www.google.com/calendar/embed?src=somebody%40example.com&ctz=Australia/Sydney
```

5. Paste the URL into the Widget macro code on your Confluence page.

Wufoo HTML Form Builder

To display an HTML form built in the [Wufoo HTML Form Builder](#), add the form's link as a URL to the Widget Macro. For example:

```
http://examples.wufoo.com/forms/contact-form/
```

Dabble DB online database builder

To display a shared page built in [Dabble DB](#), add the page's link as a URL to the Widget Macro. For example:

```
https://confluence-sample.dabbledb.com/page/confluence-sample/nSQqdgIg
```

i The Widget Macro supports shared Dabble DB **view** and **form** pages. You can insert a Dabble DB data entry form into a Confluence page. On the same page or another page, you can use a Dabble DB view to display data submitted via the form.

Get Satisfaction social support application

To display a feedback form for a [Get Satisfaction](#) community, add the community or company link as a URL to the Widget Macro. For example:

```
http://getsatisfaction.com/atlassian
```

Troubleshooting

If the URL given in the Widget Connector macro does not work, the macro displays an icon and the base URL.

For example, the following code:

```
http://example.com/invalid
```

will result in an image like the one below:



Related Topics

[Working with Macros](#)

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Widget Connector Examples

i This page contains working examples of some services currently supported by the Widget Connector. This page lets you preview what each widget will look like and see how to interact with it.

- [Flickr](#)
- [Google Docs](#)
- [YouTube](#)
- [MySpace](#)
- [Episodic](#)
- [Vimeo](#)
- [BlipTV](#)
- [Viddler](#)
- [Sketch](#)
- [Twitter](#)
- [FriendFeed](#)
- [SlideShare](#)

- SlideRocket
- Scribd
- Wufoo
- Error Message
- Related Content

Flickr

<http://www.flickr.com/photos/tags/atlassian>

<http://www.flickr.com/photos/atlassian/>

<http://www.flickr.com/photos/atlassian/sets/72157608657271078/>

<http://www.flickr.com/photos/atlassian/3003538919/>

Google Docs

https://docs.google.com/present/view?id=dgjvr7tq_243fjgwnvfx

YouTube

<http://au.youtube.com/watch?v=-dnL00TdmLY>

MySpace



<http://vids.myspace.com/index.cfm?fuseaction=vids.individual&videoid=3376248&searchid=20c789f6-1ae9>

Episodic



<http://app.episodic.com/shows/13/episodes/493>

Vimeo



<http://www.vimeo.com/909808>

BlipTV



<http://blip.tv/file/996864/>

Viddler



http://www.viddler.com/explore/Markus_Z/videos/1/

Skitch



skitch.com

<http://skitch.com/jnolen/bbybm/skitch.com-jnolen>

Twitter

<http://twitter.com/mcannonbrookes>

<http://search.twitter.com/search?q=AtlassianDragons>

FriendFeed

<http://friendfeed.com/myname>

SlideShare



<http://www.slideshare.net/jleyser/using-jira-greenhopper-for-agile-development-presentation>

SlideRocket

`http://app.sliderocket.com/app/FullPlayer.aspx?id=132f9db7-b0fb-4f51-b974-36652774971b`

Scribd

`http://www.scribd.com/doc/28967704/How-did-Shakespeare-change-the-English-language|height=600px`

Wufoo

`http://atlassian.wufoo.com/forms/let-us-know-what-you-think-of-the-new-sdk/|height=800px`

Error Message



`http://example.com/invalid`

Related Content

- [Working with Macros](#)

Guides to Specific Uses of Confluence

This section of the Confluence user's guide contains a number of targeted guides showing you how to use Confluence for a specific purpose. Each guide:

- Shows you how to set up a Confluence space to suit your purpose.
- Gives an overview of the Confluence functionality that you will find most useful in that particular usage of the wiki.
- Mentions plugins that you may find useful to extend Confluence's core functionality.

Contents

- [Developing Technical Documentation on Confluence Wiki](#)
- [Developing a Knowledge Base on Confluence Wiki](#)
- [Developing an Intranet on Confluence Wiki](#)

RELATED TOPICS

Take me back to the [Confluence User's Guide](#).

Developing Technical Documentation on Confluence Wiki

Welcome! This is a guide to using Confluence wiki for technical documentation. You will find this guide useful if you want to write a technical manual such as a user's guide, administrator's guide, installation guide, and so on.

- [Creating your Technical Documentation Space](#)
- [Using Templates in Technical Documentation](#)
- [Re-using Content in Technical Documentation](#)
- [Managing the Life Cycle of your Technical Documentation](#)
- [Providing PDF Versions of your Technical Documentation](#)
- [Exporting and Printing Technical Documentation](#)
- [Essential Confluence Features for Technical Documentation](#)
- [Confluence Plugins for Technical Documentation](#)
- [Further Reading about Developing Technical Documentation on Confluence](#)

RELATED TOPICS

[Confluence User's Guide](#)
[Confluence Administrator's Guide](#)

Creating your Technical Documentation Space

This guide is for people who want to develop and publish technical documentation on Confluence wiki. You will find it useful if you want to write a technical manual such as a user's guide, administrator's guide, installation guide, and so on. This page is a quick-start guide to creating a wiki space for technical documentation.

**Quick guide to creating a technical documentation space**

- Add a space and select the Documentation theme.
- Set the space permissions.
- Change the title and content of the space home page.
- Customise the Documentation theme.
- Create an inclusions library to manage your re-usable content.
- Create the table of contents for your manual or manuals, by adding top-level pages for all the usual sections (user's guide, administrator's guide, and so on).
- Customise your PDF layout and stylesheet, if required.
- *Hint:* Now that you have a good skeleton for a documentation space, save the space as a template space.

The rest of this page gives more details of the above procedure.

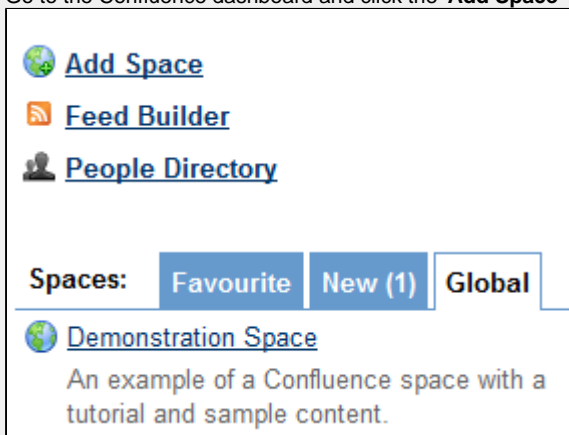
On this page:

- [Step 1. Add your Space](#)
- [Step 2. Set the Space Permissions](#)
 - [A Bit More about Permissions](#)
- [Step 3. Customise the Title and Content of the Home Page](#)
- [Step 4. Customise the Documentation Theme](#)
 - [Example of a Customised Footer](#)
- [Step 5. Create an Inclusions Library](#)
 - [Examples of Inclusions Libraries](#)
- [Step 6. Create the Table of Contents](#)
- [Step 7. \(Optional\) Customise the PDF Layout and Stylesheet](#)
- [Step 8. Save your New Space as a Template Space](#)

Step 1. Add your Space

Below is a quick guide to adding a space. See [Setting up a New Global Space](#) for a full description.

1. Go to the Confluence dashboard and click the '**Add Space**' link located above the list of spaces.



Hint: If you cannot see the 'Add Space' link, this means that you do not have permission to add spaces. Please contact your Confluence administrator.

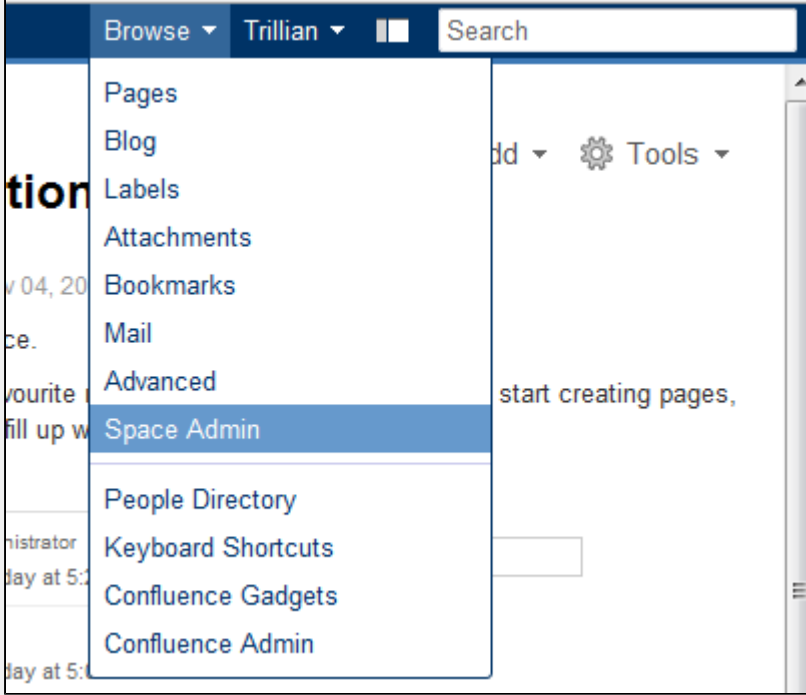
2. The '**Create Space**' screen appears. Enter a **space name** and a short, unique **space key**.
3. Leave the **permission** settings as default, or choose to allow only yourself to view or contribute content to this space. You can change these settings later and with more flexible options.
4. Select the '**Documentation Theme**'.
5. Click '**OK**'.

The home page of your new space will appear. Because you created the space, you are the space administrator. Now you can do some basic configuration, as described in the sections below.

Step 2. Set the Space Permissions

Define the space permissions to determine who can do what in your new space.

1. Open the **'Browse'** menu and select **'Space Admin'**.



The screenshot shows the Confluence interface with the 'Browse' menu open. The menu items are: Pages, Blog, Labels, Attachments, Bookmarks, Mail, Advanced, Space Admin (highlighted), People Directory, Keyboard Shortcuts, Confluence Gadgets, and Confluence Admin. The background shows a 'Tools' dropdown menu and a 'start creating pages,' button.

2. Click **'Permissions'** in the left-hand panel.

3. Confirm your administrator access as prompted.

4. Click **'Edit Permissions'**.

5. Set the permissions to suit your needs then click **'Save All'**.

- You can add **groups** and/or individual **users** to the list, then select the permissions for each group or user.
- You can also set the permissions for **anonymous** users – these are people who have not logged in to the wiki. Anonymous access is available only if enabled for the entire Confluence site.
- Note that you can change these permissions at any time. You may want to restrict the permissions to specific groups now, and later open the space to more people.

A Bit More about Permissions

Confluence has a robust and granular permissions scheme that you can use to determine who can view, comment on and even update the documentation. There are three levels of permissions in Confluence:

- Global permissions apply across the entire site.
- Space permissions apply to a space.
- Page restrictions allow you to restrict the editing and/or viewing of a specific page. Below we discuss a way of using these in the draft, review and publishing workflow.

Space permissions in Confluence are simple yet granular enough to be useful for technical documentation. You can:

- Use the permission levels to control who can create pages in the space, delete pages, create comments, delete comments, administer the space, and so on.
- Grant a permission level to one or more users, and/or to one or more groups, and/or to anonymous users.

Terminology:

- 'Anonymous'** means people who have not logged in to the wiki.
- The **'confluence-users'** group is the default group into which all new users are assigned. Everyone who can log in to Confluence is a member of this group.

For example, you might allow your team full edit and administration rights while others can only add comments. Or you might grant the general public access to your documentation, while only staff members can update it.

Example: Allow your team full edit and admin rights while others can only add comments

Attachments | Bookmarks | Mail | Advanced | Activity | Space Admin

Groups

These are the permissions currently assigned to groups for this space.

	View	Pages				News		Comments		Attachments		Mail	Space	
		Create	Export	Restrict	Remove	Create	Remove	Create	Remove	Create	Remove	Remove	Export	Admin
confluence-users	✓	✗	✓	✓	✗	✗	✗	✓	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗
my-team	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

Edit Permissions

Individual Users

These are the permissions currently assigned to individual users for this space.

	View	Pages				News		Comments		Attachments		Mail	Space	
		Create	Export	Restrict	Remove	Create	Remove	Create	Remove	Create	Remove	Remove	Export	Admin
Administrator (admin)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

Edit Permissions

Anonymous Access

When a user is using Confluence while not logged in, they are using it anonymously.
For example: Enabling anonymous 'commenting' permission, allows non-logged-in users to make comments in this space.

	View	Pages				News		Comments		Attachments		Mail	Space	
		Create	Export	Restrict	Remove	Create	Remove	Create	Remove	Create	Remove	Remove	Export	Admin
Anonymous	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗

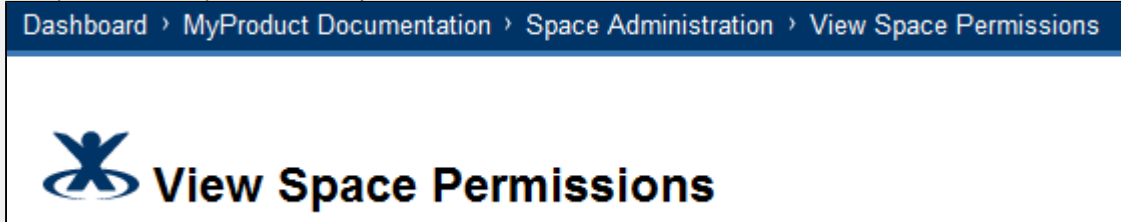
For detailed information, see the documentation on:

- Global permissions
- Space permissions
- Page restrictions
- Users and groups

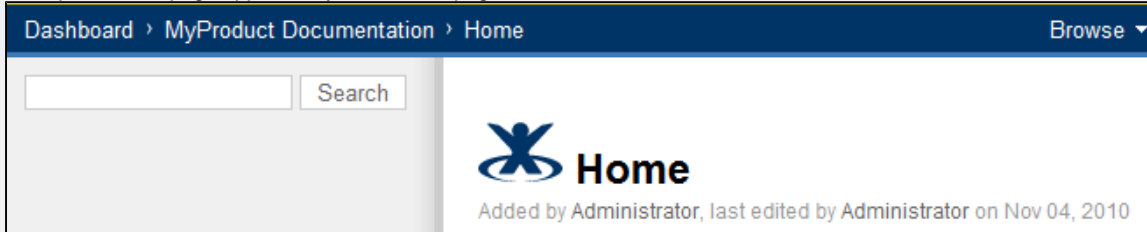
Step 3. Customise the Title and Content of the Home Page

When you created your space, Confluence created a home page with default content and a default title, 'Home'. You will want to change the title and content.

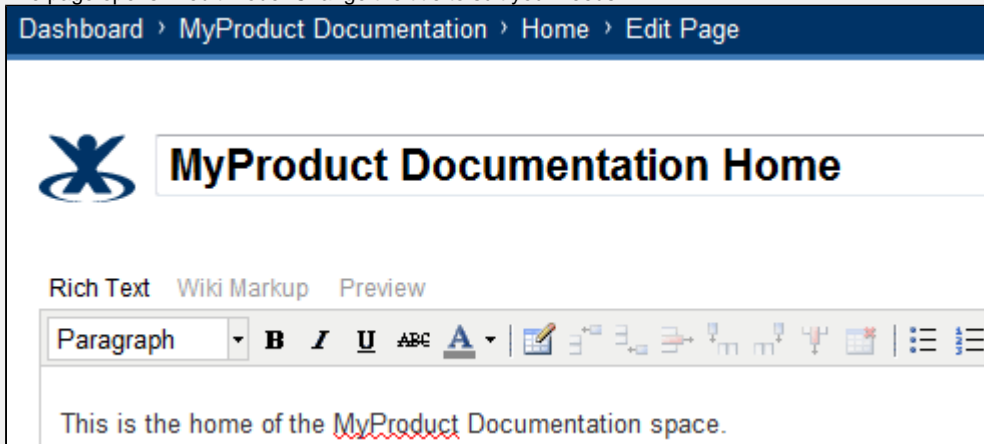
1. Go back to your space home page, by clicking the space name in the breadcrumbs at the top of the screen. In the example below, the space name is 'MyProduct Documentation':



2. The space home page appears. By default, the page title is 'Home'.



3. Click 'Edit'.
4. The page opens in edit mode. Change the title to suit your needs.



5. Update the content to suit your needs.
Hint: If you do not know what to add yet, just add a short description. You can refine the content of the page later. Take a look at an [example of a home page](#).
6. Click 'Save'.

Step 4. Customise the Documentation Theme

When you added the space you chose the Documentation theme, which provides a left-hand navigation bar and a good look and feel for technical documentation. If necessary, you can configure the Documentation theme to add your own page header and footer or to customise the default left-hand navigation bar. These customisations affect the online look and feel of your documentation. See [Configuring the Documentation Theme](#) for the full description.

1. Open the **'Browse'** menu and select **'Space Admin'**.
2. Click **'Themes'** in the left-hand panel.
3. If the space is not yet using the Documentation theme, apply the theme now.
4. Click **'Configure theme'** in the yellow area of the 'Current Theme' section at the top of the page.

Current Theme

The current theme controls the layout and colours of this space.



Documentation Theme

This theme is well suited for structured content, such as documentation. It features a table of contents (page tree) on the left, making it easier to see the structure of a space and move from page to page. You can customise the left-hand panel, page header and page footer. This theme supports Firefox, Safari and Internet Explorer 7+.

[Configure theme](#) - further customise this theme's options

5. The **'Documentation Theme Configuration'** screen appears. Customise the left-hand navigation bar, header and footer to suit your needs. Details are in the [documentation](#). Here are some hints:
 - The **'Page Tree'** check box determines whether your space will display the default search box and table of contents (page tree) in the left-hand panel.
 - The **'Limit search results to the current space'** check box determines whether Confluence will search only the current space or the whole Confluence site. This setting affects the default search. Viewers can override it each time they do a search.
 - Enter text, images, macros and other wiki markup into any or all of the three text boxes for the left-hand navigation bar, header and footer. You can use the [Include macro](#) and the [Excerpt Include macro](#) to include re-usable content.
 - Any content you add to the navigation panel will appear **above** the default page tree.
 - If you like, you can remove the default page tree (by unticking the box) and add your own, customised version of the [Pagetree](#) macro instead.
6. Click **'Save'**.

Example of a Customised Footer

Take a look at the footer of a page in the Crowd documentation space.

[Get Support](#)
 Log a [request](#) with our support team.

[Report a Bug](#)
 Raise an [issue](#) for our developers.

[Visit the Forums](#)
 See [answers](#) from the community.

[Add to our Docs](#)
 Blog and update our documentation.

Except where otherwise noted, content in this space is licensed under a [Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 Australia License](#).

Powered by Atlassian Confluence 3.4.1, the Enterprise Wiki | [Report a bug](#) | [Atlassian News](#)

To produce the above footer, we have the following content in the footer panel in the Documentation theme configuration screen:

Footer

```
{include:_Documentation Footer|npanel=true}
{include:ALLDOC:_Copyright Notice|npanel=true}
```

Here it is in text form:

```
{include:_Documentation Footer|npanel=true}
{include:ALLDOC:_Copyright Notice|npanel=true}
```

The above content consists of two [Include macros](#).

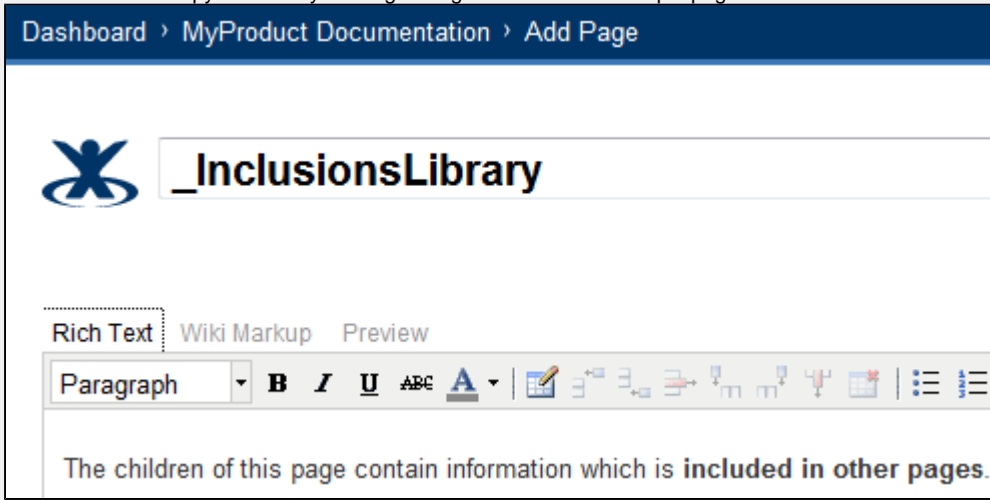
- The first macro includes a page called [_Documentation Footer](#). This page contains the big blue buttons and hyperlinked text.
- The second macro includes a page from a different space, the ALLDOC space, called [_Copyright Notice](#). This page includes our standard copyright notice, used in all our documentation spaces.

Step 5. Create an Inclusions Library

Using Confluence, you can dynamically include content from one page into another page. You can include a whole page into another one, using the [Include macro](#). You can also define an 'excerpt' on a page, and then include that excerpted text into another page using the [Excerpt Include macro](#).

To organise your re-usable content, we recommend that you create a set of pages called an 'inclusions library'.

1. Open the '**Browse**' menu and select '**Pages**'.
2. The '**List Pages**' screen will appear. Open the '**Add**' menu and select '**Page**'.
This will add a page at the root of the space, at the same level as the home page.
3. Enter a suitable title. We use '**_InclusionsLibrary**'. The unusual format of the title helps to let people know this page is special.
4. Enter some content on the page. We enter text explaining the purpose of the inclusions library and how to re-use the content. You can copy our text by clicking through to one of the example pages listed [below](#).



5. Add child pages containing your re-usable content. See the examples of our own inclusions libraries listed [below](#).

Some notes about inclusions libraries:

- The inclusions library is not a specific feature of Confluence. The pages in the inclusions library are just like any other Confluence page.
- The pages are located at the root of the wiki space, not under the home page. This means that they will not appear in the table of contents on the left and they will not be picked up by the search in the left-hand navigation bar either.
- The pages will be picked up by other searches, because they are just normal wiki pages.
- We have decided to start the page name with an underscore. For example, '[_My Page Name](#)'. This indicates that the page is slightly unusual, and will help prevent people from changing the page name or updating the content without realising that the content is re-used in various pages.

Examples of Inclusions Libraries

Here are some examples in our documentation:

- [Crowd inclusions library](#)
- [Confluence inclusions library](#)

Step 6. Create the Table of Contents

Create the table of contents for your documentation, by adding the top-level pages for all the usual sections:

- User's guide
- Administrator's guide
- Installation guide
- Configuration guide
- Release notes
- FAQ
- Whatever else you need

1. Go back to your space home page, by clicking the space name in the breadcrumbs at the top of the screen.
2. Open the 'Add' menu and select 'Page'. This will add the page as a child of the home page.
3. Enter the page title, 'User's Guide'.
4. Enter the content of the page.
Hint: If you do not know what to add yet, just add a short description then refine the content of the page later. If you like, you can add the [Children macro](#). That will act as a table of contents on the page once you have added child pages.
5. Click 'Save'.

Now do the same for all the sections of your technical document.

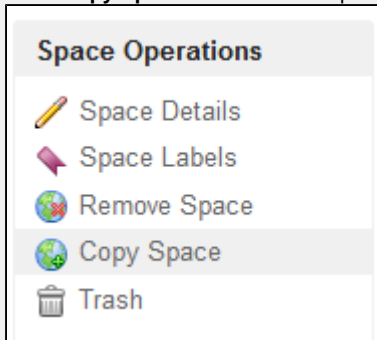
Step 7. (Optional) Customise the PDF Layout and Stylesheet

If you are planning to provide PDF versions of your documentation, you may want to customise the PDF layout and styles for your space. You can skip this step for now and do it later, if you prefer. The instructions are in a separate section of this guide, dedicated to PDF. See [Providing PDF Versions of your Technical Documentation](#).

Step 8. Save your New Space as a Template Space

This is a useful suggestion. Once you have set up your first documentation space and are more-or-less happy with it, use the [Copy Space plugin](#) (see notes [below](#)) to copy the space while it still has very little content. From this point on, you can copy it each time you want to create a new documentation space.

1. Open the 'Browse' menu and select 'Space Admin'.
2. Click 'Copy Space' in the left-hand panel.



Hint: If you cannot see the 'Copy Space' option, this means that the plugin is not installed on your Confluence site. Refer to the documentation on [installing plugins](#).

3. The 'Copy Space' screen will appear. Enter the details as prompted, to copy your space to another new space.

Copy Space

You are about to copy this space. Please fill in the new key and space name you wish to use.

Name:

Key:

Use existing authors and dates:

☒

Copy comments:

☒

Copy attachments:

☒

Copy personal labels:

☐

4. Click 'Save'.

You now have a template space. From this point on, you can use the Copy Space plugin to copy the template space each time you want to create a new documentation space.

Notes:

- The Copy Space plugin is not covered by Atlassian support. However, the Atlassian technical writers use it for all our documentation. If you like, you can vote for an comment on the request for Atlassian support to cover this plugin: [CONF-14198](#).
- Your site administrator will need to install the Copy Space plugin into Confluence. Refer to the documentation on [installing plugins](#).

Next Steps

You now have the basic structure and configuration for your technical documentation space. You have also created a handy template to use next time you need a space. What next? Take a look at [Using Templates in Technical Documentation](#).

Using Templates in Technical Documentation

This page is part of the guide to [developing technical documentation on Confluence Wiki](#). We have already shown you how to [create your technical documentation space](#). Now we offer an introduction to the templates that Confluence provides.



Quick guide to templates in Confluence

- A template is a page with predefined content that can be used as a prototype when creating other pages.
- Templates are available across the Confluence site (global templates) or per space (space templates).
- Both 'global templates' and 'space templates', as described on this page, define the content of a page. They do not define the content of an entire space.
- You can import predefined templates, including those shipped with Confluence and additional templates from the [Atlassian Plugin Exchange](#).
- To create a template for an entire space, see our guide to [creating your documentation space](#).

On this page:

- [Deciding Where to Put Your Templates](#)
- [Creating a Global Template](#)
- [Creating a Space Template](#)
- [Importing Templates](#)
- [Using a Template to Create a Page](#)

Deciding Where to Put Your Templates

In Confluence, there are two places to store your templates:

- **Global templates:** These are defined by [site administrators](#) through the [Administration Console](#) and are available in every space.
- **Space templates:** These are defined by [space administrators](#) on the space administration screens, and are only available in the space in which they are defined.

Decide whether your template is useful across more than one space.

- If yes, create a global template. You will need Confluence administrator permissions.
- If no, create a space template.
 - You will need space administrator permissions for the relevant space(s).
 - You may have already saved your documentation space as a template, as described in our guide to [creating your documentation space](#). In that case, it may be useful to save your template page in your template space. When you later copy the space, the template pages will be copied too.

Creating a Global Template

1. Choose **Browse > Confluence Admin**.
2. Enter your password and click **Confirm**. You will be temporarily logged into a [secure session](#) to access the 'Administration Console'.
3. Select **Global Templates** in the left-hand panel.
4. Click **Add New Global Template**.

See [Global Templates](#) for more information.

Creating a Space Template

1. From any page in the space, choose **Browse > Advanced**.
2. Click **Templates** in the left-hand panel.
3. Click **Add New Space Template**.

See [Adding a Template](#) for more information.

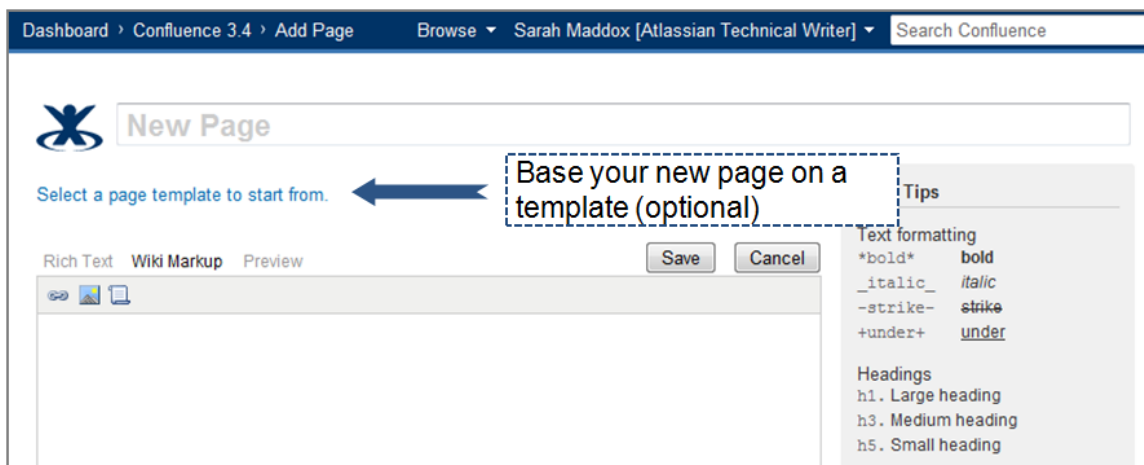
Importing Templates

Confluence ships with a number of templates, including the 'Charts', 'Document List' and 'Meeting Notes' templates. These templates are not available for use by default. However, if you have the appropriate [permissions](#) to access the Administration Console, you can import any of these templates to be used globally or within a specific space. In addition, you can find more template bundles on the [Atlassian Plugin Exchange](#).

1. Go to the 'Confluence Administration Console' and click **Import Templates**.
2. Select the templates that you want to import.
3. Choose which space to import the templates to, or whether to import them as global templates.
4. Click **Import**.

Using a Template to Create a Page

When people add a page on your Confluence site, they can choose to base their new page on a template.



Next Steps

You now have a good idea of how Confluence templates work. What next? Take a look at [Re-using Content in Technical Documentation](#).

Re-using Content in Technical Documentation

This page is part of the guide to [developing technical documentation on Confluence Wiki](#). In the page about [creating your technical documentation space](#), we showed you how to set up an 'inclusions library' to contain content that you can re-use on more than one page. Now we offer further guidelines on re-using content in your documentation space.

Your documentation may be about using a software application, or it may be a technical manual for your product range. On this page, we use the term 'widget' to describe the things that you are documenting, such as the screen, form, document, product or object.



Quick guide to re-using content

- Create an 'inclusions library' to manage your re-usable content. See our guide to [creating your technical documentation space](#).
- Use the `excerpt` macro to define a re-usable section ('excerpt') on a page, or just decide to re-use the entire content of the page.
- Use the `excerpt-include` macro to include the excerpt from one page onto another page.
- Use the `include` macro to include the entire content of a page onto another page.
- Consider installing the Multi Excerpt plugin if you need to define multiple excerpts per page.

The rest of this page gives an overview and more details of the above procedures.

On this page:

- [Reasons for Re-Using Content](#)
- [Defining an Inclusions Library](#)
- [Working with Excerpts and Inclusions](#)
 - [Using the Include Page Macro](#)
 - [Using the Excerpt Include Macro](#)
 - [Using the Multi Excerpt Plugin](#)
- [An Example of Content Re-Use: A Glossary](#)
 - [Creating a One-Page Glossary](#)
 - [Creating a Glossary with Child Pages](#)
 - [Referring to Glossary Terms](#)
- [Further Reading](#)

Reasons for Re-Using Content

A golden rule for technical documentation is to write the content only once but allow that content to be used in many places and in many forms.

For example, you may have the following types of content:

- A technical manual that describes each widget in detail.
- Tips and tricks on how to get the most out of the widget.
- A step-by-step user guide for first-time users on how to use the most common widgets.
- A training manual with exercises or videos that people can follow in their own time.
- A one-page cheat sheet for users to stick up on their workstation.
- Text for a sales brochure that is sent out to a print house for production.

Each of these types of content will share common information, such as a glossary entry, a technical or marketing description of the widget, or a step-by-step guide on how to use the widget.

Some initial planning of your technical documentation will allow you to re-use any or all of the content you write, so there is only ever one place to update the content, and those changes flow through to all of your other documentation.

Defining an Inclusions Library

We recommend that you create an 'inclusions library' to manage your re-usable content. If you have not already done this when creating your documentation space, see our guide to [creating your technical documentation space](#).

Working with Excerpts and Inclusions

Excerpts and inclusions (sometimes called 'includes') are very useful for re-using content:

- Use the Excerpt macro (`excerpt`) to define a re-usable section ('excerpt') on a page.
- Use the Excerpt Include macro (`excerpt-include`) to include the excerpt on another page.
- Use the Include Page macro (`include`) to include the entire content of a page onto another page.

A simple example of an inclusion is a note or warning that is used in many places in your documentation. Here is an example:

**Example note -- "Draft in progress"**

This document is still in draft status. Please treat the content with caution.

Tip: Keep your re-usable pages short and sweet. Do not worry if you find that you need hundreds of pages to hold your inclusions. It helps to keep things separate and organised.

Using the Include Page Macro

In this example, we use the Include Page macro to create a note that you can re-use on your documentation pages. The Include Page macro will include the entire content of one page into another page. (See the '**Excerpt**' macro below for including parts of a page.)

1. Create a page in your inclusions library called **_Draft Note**.
2. Add the content of the page. In this example, we use the Note macro with some text in the title and body:

```
{note:title=Draft in progress}This document is still in draft status. Please
treat the content with caution.{note}
```

3. Use the Include Page macro to include that note in any page in your documentation. For example:

```
{include:_Draft Note|nopanel=true}
```

See the documentation on the [Include Page macro](#) for more details.

Using the Excerpt Include Macro

An excerpt is a section of a page that you can include into another page.

1. Use the `excerpt` macro to define any content in your page that you want to be able to use elsewhere. This content can be as short as a word or as long as the entire page. For example, let's assume we have a page called 'My Short Poem':

```
I really love this poem:
{excerpt}
Mary had a little lamb
Its fleece was white as snow
{excerpt}
And I'm going to use it all over the place.
```

2. Use the Excerpt Include macro to include the excerpt into another page. For example:

```
{excerpt-include:My Short Poem|nopanel=true}
```

You can only define one `excerpt` on a page. See the documentation on the [Excerpt Include macro](#) for more details.

To have multiple excerpts on a page, see the '[Multi Excerpt plugin](#)' below.

Using the Multi Excerpt Plugin

The Multi Excerpt plugin provides additional macros that enable you to have multiple excerpts on a page. A good example of where you would find this useful is in the glossary page discussed below. If you want to include a single glossary entry or a subset of the glossary entries in another page, then the named excerpts allowed by the Multi Excerpt plugin are very useful.

Notes:

- The [Multi Excerpt plugin](#) is a commercial plugin and is not free.
- Your Confluence administrator will need to download and install the plugin into your Confluence site before you can use the macros described below. Refer to the documentation on [installing plugins](#)
- Before installing a plugin into your Confluence site, please check the plugin's information page to see whether it is supported by Atlassian, by another vendor, or not at all. See our guidelines on [plugin support](#). Please refer to the [Multi Excerpt plugin page](#) for support details.

1. Use the following code on the base page containing the content you want to use elsewhere:

```
{multi-excerpt:name=ExcerptName1}
Excerpt text 1
{multi-excerpt}
Any other text
{multi-excerpt:name=ExcerptName2}
Excerpt text 2
{multi-excerpt}
```

2. Use the following code on the page where you want to include the named excerpt:

```
{multi-excerpt-include:pageTitle=PageName|name=ExcerptName1|npanel=true}
```

3. You can also include excerpts from other spaces using the following syntax:

```
{multi-excerpt-include:spaceKey:pageName|name=excerptName|npanel=true}
```

See the [Multi Excerpt plugin page](#) for more details.

An Example of Content Re-Use: A Glossary

A glossary is something that most technical documentation will require. There are a few ways to set up glossaries in Confluence. These are the most popular:

- All glossary entries on one page.
- Each glossary entry on separate child pages with a main page showing excerpts of the glossary.

Once you have defined the glossary entry, you can refer to it from the main pages of your technical documentation.

Creating a One-Page Glossary

This style of glossary is useful if the glossary entries tend to be short and there are not too many of them.

1. Create a page named **Glossary**.
2. Add an alphabetical index at the top of the page and a heading for each letter of the alphabet:

```
[A|#A] | [B|#B] | [C|#C] ...
{anchor:A}
h2. A
{anchor:B}
h2. B
{anchor:C}
h2. C ...
```

3. Enter each glossary entry under the relevant alphabetical heading. Each glossary entry (term) should include:
 - An anchor tag, so that you can link to it from other pages.
 - The term itself.
 - A definition of the term.
 - A link to the page in your technical documentation that explains the term in greater detail, where relevant.

```
{anchor:MyGlossaryTerm}
h4. MyGlossaryTerm
This is the definition of MyGlossaryTerm. See [Page Name] for more
information.
```

4. Optionally, include a horizontal line between the terms. This depends on how long each entry is. If your glossary tends to have short entries, it may look too cluttered with horizontal lines.

```
---
```

See the glossary in the [Confluence documentation](#) for an example of this style of glossary (without the alphabetical index).

Creating a Glossary with Child Pages

This style of glossary is useful if the glossary entries tend to be quite long or have additional information over and above the definition of the term.

1. Create a page named **Glossary**.
2. Create a child page for each glossary entry (term). Each child page should contain:
 - The term as the title of the page.
 - The definition of the term in the body of the page.
 - Excerpt tags (`excerpt`) tags surrounding the definition.
 - Any additional information after the `excerpt` tags.

```
{excerpt}
This is the definition of MyGlossaryTerm
{excerpt}
More information to describe MyGlossaryTerm
```

3. On the '**Glossary**' page, use the `children` macro to show the excerpts from each child page in a list, with the page name displayed in 'h4' style.

```
{children:excerpt=true|style=h4}
```

See the glossary in the [Crowd documentation](#) for an example of this style of glossary.

Referring to Glossary Terms

In the main pages of your technical documentation, create a link to the glossary page for each glossary term.

```
_\[MyGlossary Term|Glossary#MyGlossaryTerm\]_
```

Note that this is a standard page link with an anchor. We have formatted the link as italics, because it helps to have the glossary links looking different to other page links. Readers can just skip over the glossary link if they are already familiar with the term.

Further Reading

- A blog post about content re-use: [Technical Writing in a Wiki - Content Re-use and Structure](#) (November 2010).

Next Steps

You now have a good idea of how to re-use content in a Confluence documentation space. What next? Take a look at [Managing the Life Cycle of your Technical Documentation](#).

Managing the Life Cycle of your Technical Documentation

This page is part of the guide to [developing technical documentation on Confluence Wiki](#). We have already shown you how to [create your technical documentation space](#), including how to set permissions for your space. Now we offer a quick-start guide to managing the life cycle of your technical documentation in Confluence. The life cycle includes drafting, reviewing and publishing a document, as well as managing documentation that is release-specific.



Quick guide to managing the technical documentation life cycle

- Create draft pages with restricted permissions, to hide them until they are ready for publication.
- Set the permissions to allow reviewers to comment on and/or update the pages.
- When ready, publish the page by removing the permission restrictions.
- Monitor updates to your draft and published pages by watching your space and/or subscribing to RSS feeds.
- Use spaces as a mechanism for matching your documentation version to product releases: one space per major release number.
- Consider installing plugins for extended workflow and publication management.

The rest of this page gives more details of the above procedures.

On this page:

- Using the Built-In Confluence Functionality to Manage Workflow and Release Cycle
 - Drafting, Reviewing and Publishing a Page
 - Keeping Track of Documentation Updates
 - Viewing the History of a Page
 - Receiving Email Notification of Updates
 - Monitoring Updates via RSS Feeds
 - Release Management
 - Space Keys
 - The Release Management Process
 - Other Scenarios using the Built-In Confluence Functionality
- Using Plugins for Extended Workflow and Publication Management
- Notes

Using the Built-In Confluence Functionality to Manage Workflow and Release Cycle

This section describes how to use the built-in Confluence functionality to manage your workflow (draft, review, publish) and to align your documentation version control to the product release cycle.

In this scenario we also assume that you want a *live* space that always has the same space key and always contains the *latest* version of your documentation. This scenario suits the requirements of an organisation that wants their technical documentation to be 'live'. Various groups of people can refine the content as and when required. People can also subscribe to the space, knowing that they will always get the latest version of the documentation and comments.

This is the way we manage our documentation at Atlassian. The content of the wiki is dynamic, continuously updated, commented on, subscribed to and watched by thousands of people all over the world.

Drafting, Reviewing and Publishing a Page

The workflow is simple.

1. Create a page with [restricted permissions](#). For example, you might restrict viewing to a group of people such as your team. On a public wiki, you might restrict viewing to staff members, so that the general public cannot see the page.
2. Write the page content.
3. Ask other people to review the page. They can add comments to the page or simply edit the page content directly.
4. Publish the page when ready, by doing the following:
 - Delete the comments on the page.
 - Remove the permission restrictions on the page. The page has now been published. The space permissions and site permissions now determine who can see and/or update the page.

The screenshot below shows a page under review. Notice the lock icon at top left, indicating that restricted permissions apply to this page.

The screenshot shows a Confluence page titled "Introducing workflow". The page is locked, as indicated by the lock icon in the top left. The page content includes a comment by Sarah, a message stating "Confluence does not have any built-in workflow.", and a list of plugins. A blue box highlights a message: "Atlassian does not officially support these plugins". A comment from Andrew is shown at the bottom. Annotations with arrows point to specific elements: "A comment about an update made" points to the yellow comment box; "Page updated by the reviewer" points to the blue box; and "A comment from the reviewer" points to Andrew's comment.

Keeping Track of Documentation Updates

On a wiki, it is quite usual for a number of different people to update a single page. Technical writers need to know what happens to our documents, both during review and after publication.

Viewing the History of a Page

Confluence creates a new version of the page every time someone edits the page. The page history shows all the versions, with date, author, and any comments made on the update.

Go to the page and choose **Tools > Page History**.

Version	Date	Changed By	Operations
<input type="checkbox"/> CURRENT (v. 41)	Jul 07, 2009 11:33	Giles Gaskell [Atlassian Technical Writer]	
<input type="checkbox"/> v. 40	Jun 18, 2007 11:08	Rosie Jameson [Atlassian Technical Writer]	Restore this version
<input type="checkbox"/> v. 39	Jun 18, 2007 10:19	Rosie Jameson [Atlassian Technical Writer]	Restore this version

On the page history view, you can:

- View the content of a specific version of the page.
- Revert to (restore) a specific version.
- Select any two versions and ask for a comparison, to see what has changed between those two versions.

See [Page History and Page Comparison Views](#) for detailed information.

It is all very well to go to a specific page and see what has happened to it, but how do you know when to go and look at the page? You need a notification of any changes made to your documentation space.

In Confluence, you can monitor updates to your documentation via email notifications and via RSS feeds.

Receiving Email Notification of Updates

You can 'watch' a page or an entire space. Whenever anyone updates the page or space, you will receive an email notification.

To watch a page:

Open the **'Tools'** menu and select **'Watch'**.

To watch a space:

1. Go to a page in the space and choose **Browse > Advanced**.
2. In the left-hand panel, click **'Start watching this space'**.

See [Subscribing to Email Notifications of Updates to Confluence Content](#) for details of the various notifications Confluence will send, and how to configure your notification settings.

Monitoring Updates via RSS Feeds

RSS feeds provide another way to keep track of updates. The simplest way to build an RSS feed is to use Confluence's feed builder, accessible from the dashboard. This will give you a URL that you can ping to get the latest updates.

Below we describe how to set up a useful feed for your technical documentation space. Remember that you can adjust the settings to suit your own needs.

1. Choose **Browse > Feed Builder**. The RSS feed builder form appears.
2. Check the boxes to select all the content types. (Even if you are not expecting comments, blog posts or mail in your documentation space, it does no harm to receive notifications if they do arrive.):
 - **Pages** and the **comments** and **attachments** on pages.
 - **Blog posts** and their **comments** and **attachments**.
 - **Mail**.
3. Select your documentation **space** from the list. Press Ctrl and click to select multiple spaces.
4. Click the **Create RSS Feed** button to create your feed.
5. This will take you to a new screen. Drag or copy the link into your RSS reader. The feed URL is linked to the words **Drag or copy this link to your RSS reader**.

Now that you have set up your RSS feed, you need to decide how to read it. There are various options to choose from. For example:

- Use an RSS reader, such as the [Sage add-on for Firefox](#).
- Use an email client, such as [Thunderbird](#).

See [Subscribing to RSS Feeds within Confluence](#) for details.

Release Management

Let's assume that your product goes through a regular release cycle, and that you need to retain separate documentation for each major version of the product.

At Atlassian, we use spaces as our version-control mechanism.

- **Archive spaces.** At each release, we create a new archive space to house the *previous* version of the documentation.
- **The live space.** The documentation for the *latest* version of the product resides in the live space. The live space always retains the same space key and is always available for viewing and updating.

Space Keys

The live space has just the product name as its space key. For example, for the Crowd product the space key is 'CROWD'. (See the [Crowd documentation space](#).)

For the archived versions, we use a combination of the product name plus version number as the space key. For example, we use 'CROWD020' for the Crowd 2.0 documentation, 'CROWD016' for the Crowd 1.6 documentation, and so on.

The Release Management Process

Here is an overview of the process we follow at Atlassian.

1. **Leading up to release date.** Work with hidden draft pages in the live space. A 'hidden draft' is simply a page that has [restricted permissions](#) applied:
 - For each new feature, create a new page with restricted permissions.
 - If you need to update existing pages, create a hidden copy of the existing page and apply the updates to the copy.
 - Follow the usual draft and review procedure for each page.
2. **A few days before release date.** Use the [Copy Space plugin](#) to copy the live space to a new space. This creates a snapshot of the current documentation, and will act as an archive for the current release which is soon to become the previous release. (We described the use of the Copy Space plugin in the earlier section of this guide: [Creating your Technical Documentation Space](#).)
3. **On release date.** Publish the updated documentation for the new version of the product:
 - Rebrand the live documentation space to reflect the new release number. In other words, change the space name and any other descriptions that include the product release number.
 - Unhide all the new pages, by removing the permission restrictions on each hidden page.
 - Copy the content of the updated pages to the proper pages, then delete the copies.
 - Export the newly updated space to PDF, HTML and XML, for those customers who prefer offline versions of the documentation.

Note that the above process is applicable to major releases of the product. For minor bug-fix releases, we simply update the documentation in the live space. We do not create archive spaces for every minor release.

The example below shows an extract from the dashboard of our documentation wiki, listing the spaces for different versions of the Crowd documentation. (Crowd is one of our products.) Each space holds the documentation for a specific major release of Crowd.

Dashboard

Confluence is the enterprise wiki designed to make it easy for you and your team to share information with each other, and with the world.

Spaces: **All**

- [Application Links 1.1](#)
- [Crowd 1.3](#)
Documentation for Crowd version 1.3.x
- [Crowd 1.4](#)
Documentation for Crowd version 1.4.x
- [Crowd 1.5](#)
Documentation for Crowd version 1.5.x
- [Crowd 1.6](#)
Documentation for the latest version of Crowd single signon and identity management

Archive spaces such as CROWD014

Live CROWD space contains current release

Other Scenarios using the Built-In Confluence Functionality

It is easy to design other ways of managing your documentation spaces using the built-in Confluence functionality. For example, the simplest scenario is to publish a new space for every new release of your product, using the same [Copy Space plugin](#) as described above.

Using Plugins for Extended Workflow and Publication Management

For advanced workflow features, consider installing the [Ad Hoc Workflows plugin](#) onto your Confluence site.

Similarly, consider using the [Content Publishing plugin](#) to publish content from a master space to a published space. In this scenario, you will create a *master* space that contains your drafts in progress and new releases. The master space is visible only to the authors and reviewers. You will periodically publish the master space to a *published* space. This suits the requirements of an organisation that needs a 'published' or 'official' set of documentation, published only when a new version of the product is released. There is no requirement for continual updating of the documentation.

1. Install the Content Publishing plugin.
2. Create a space for your master content.
3. Create a space for your published content.
4. When the content in the master space is ready to publish, go to the '**Advanced**' tab in the '**Space Admin**' section of the master space.
5. Click '**Publish Space**' to configure the settings and then publish your space. See the plugin documentation to choose the options best for your needs.
6. Click '**Publish**'.

i Automatic publishing. The Content Publishing plugin can work together with the Ad Hoc Workflows plugin to publish pages automatically when the page reaches a specified state in the workflow.

Notes

- **Installing plugins.** If you decide to use additional plugins, your site administrator will need to install the plugins into your Confluence

site. Refer to the documentation on [installing plugins](#).

- **Plugin support.** Before installing a plugin into your Confluence site, please check the plugin's information page to see whether it is supported by Atlassian, by another vendor, or not at all. See our guidelines on [plugin support](#).

Next Steps

Now you know about managing your workflow and documentation release process on Confluence. What next? Take a look at [Providing PDF Versions of your Technical Documentation](#).

Providing PDF Versions of your Technical Documentation

This page is part of the guide to [developing technical documentation on Confluence Wiki](#). Confluence itself is an excellent platform for publishing online documentation. In some cases, though, you may need to produce PDF versions of your documentation for printing, or to supply to customers who cannot access the online version.

Confluence itself provides an export to PDF. Plugins provide additional functionality.



Quick guide to PDF exports

- Customise the PDF layout (title page, header and footer) and stylesheet, for use each time you export your documentation.
- Export a single page to PDF.
- Export an entire space or a selection of pages to PDF.
- Consider installing a third-party plugin for advanced functionality.

The rest of this page gives more details of the above procedures.

On this page:

- [Customising the PDF Layout and Stylesheet](#)
 - [Editing the PDF Layout](#)
 - [Setting a global PDF layout](#)
 - [Setting the PDF layout at space level](#)
 - [Editing the PDF Stylesheet](#)
 - [Setting a global PDF Stylesheet](#)
 - [Setting a space-level PDF stylesheet](#)
 - [Some Useful Examples](#)
 - [Adding a Title Page](#)
 - [Adding Headers and Footers](#)
 - [Adding Page Numbering to a Header or Footer](#)
- [Exporting a Single Page to PDF](#)
- [Exporting a Space or a Selection of Pages to PDF](#)
- [Exporting a Spaces or Pages to PDF via a Plugin](#)
- [Notes](#)

Customising the PDF Layout and Stylesheet

If you are planning to provide PDF versions of your documentation, you may want to customise the PDF layout and styles for your space. These customisations will apply each time you export your documentation to PDF.


In the **PDF layout**, you can add your own HTML to customise the title page, page headers and page footers in the PDF output. In the **PDF stylesheet**, you can adjust the appearance of the PDF pages.

Editing the PDF Layout

Setting a global PDF layout

1. Open the Confluence Admin screen.
2. Select **Look and Feel > PDF Layout**. The following screens allows you to enter HTML and CSS that will be rendered on the PDF title page, as well as page headers and footers.

Setting the PDF layout at space level

1. Choose **Browse > Space Admin**.
 **Space Admin** is displayed only if you are a space administrator for that space or you are a Confluence system administrator.
2. Click **PDF Layout** in the 'Look and Feel' section of the left-hand panel.
3. Click **Edit**, and customise the HTML that generates the following areas in the exported PDF document:
 - **PDF Space Export Title Page** – title page.
 - **PDF Space Export Header** – page headers.
 - **PDF Space Export Footer** – page footers.
4. Enter your customisations into each text box as required. The PDF layout section accepts HTML code. You can include inline CSS in the HTML too. Save your work.

Editing the PDF Stylesheet**Setting a global PDF Stylesheet**

1. Open the Confluence Admin screen.
2. Click **Look and Feel > PDF Stylesheet**. The following screen allows you to enter and save CSS code that will render content on each page.

Setting a space-level PDF stylesheet

1. Choose **Browse > Space Admin**.
 **Space Admin** is displayed only if you are a space administrator for that space or you are a Confluence system administrator.
2. Click **PDF Stylesheet** in the left-hand panel. The 'PDF Export Stylesheet' section appears, showing the current contents of your PDF stylesheet. It contains all CSS rule customisations applied to the pages in the space.
3. Click **Edit** and enter your customisations into the text box as required. The PDF stylesheet section accepts Cascading Style Sheets (CSS) rules. Save your work.

Some Useful Examples

Below are the typical customisations you may want to make for your technical documentation. For more examples, see [Customising Exports to PDF](#).

Adding a Title Page

You can create a title or cover page to your PDF document using HTML. Use the **PDF Space Export Title Page** section of the PDF layout to do this. Adding a New Title Page

The following example uses HTML with an inline CSS rule to generate a title page.

**Including Content Above Table of Contents in Default Title Page**

The following example includes content above the automatically-generated table of contents that appears on the default title page, so that your title page includes your own content plus the table of contents.

**Adding an Image to your Title Page**

In the examples above, the title page includes an image called 'titlepage.png', centred in the middle of the page. The image is attached to a Confluence page and is referenced via its relative URL (that is, we use only the last part of the URL, excluding the Confluence site's base URL).

Follow these instructions to include an image on your title page:

1. Attach the image to a Confluence page.
2. View the list of attachments on that page.
3. Right-click the image and copy its location.

4. Paste the link into the appropriate `src=""` attribute within your PDF stylesheet, as shown above.
5. Remove the first part of the URL before `/download/...`

Adding Headers and Footers

You can add headers and footers to your PDF pages using HTML. Use the 'PDF Space Export Header' and 'PDF Space Export Footer' sections of the PDF layout to do this. For simple headers and footers, plain text is enough. The following example adds a simple copyright notice.

Adding Page Numbering to a Header or Footer

To add page numbering, you need to combine customised HTML in the PDF Layout with customised CSS in the PDF Stylesheet.

1. PDF Layout HTML: In the Footer section (or the Header section), use an empty span element with a unique ID, for example `pageNum`, to act as a place holder for the page number.

HTML - PDF Layout: Footer Section

2. PDF Stylesheet CSS: Create the following CSS selector rule for the empty span:

CSS - PDF Stylesheet

Analysing the above CSS selector rule in more detail:

- The `#pageNum` rule selects the HTML element with the specified ID of "pageNum", which is the `span` element we created for the header or footer.
- The `:before` part of the selector is a pseudo class that allows the insertion of content before the `span` element is processed.
- The `counter(page)` is a function that returns the current page number as its content.
- The `content` property tells the CSS processor that dynamic content (that is, an incrementing page number) is to be inserted at the span tag.

Exporting a Single Page to PDF

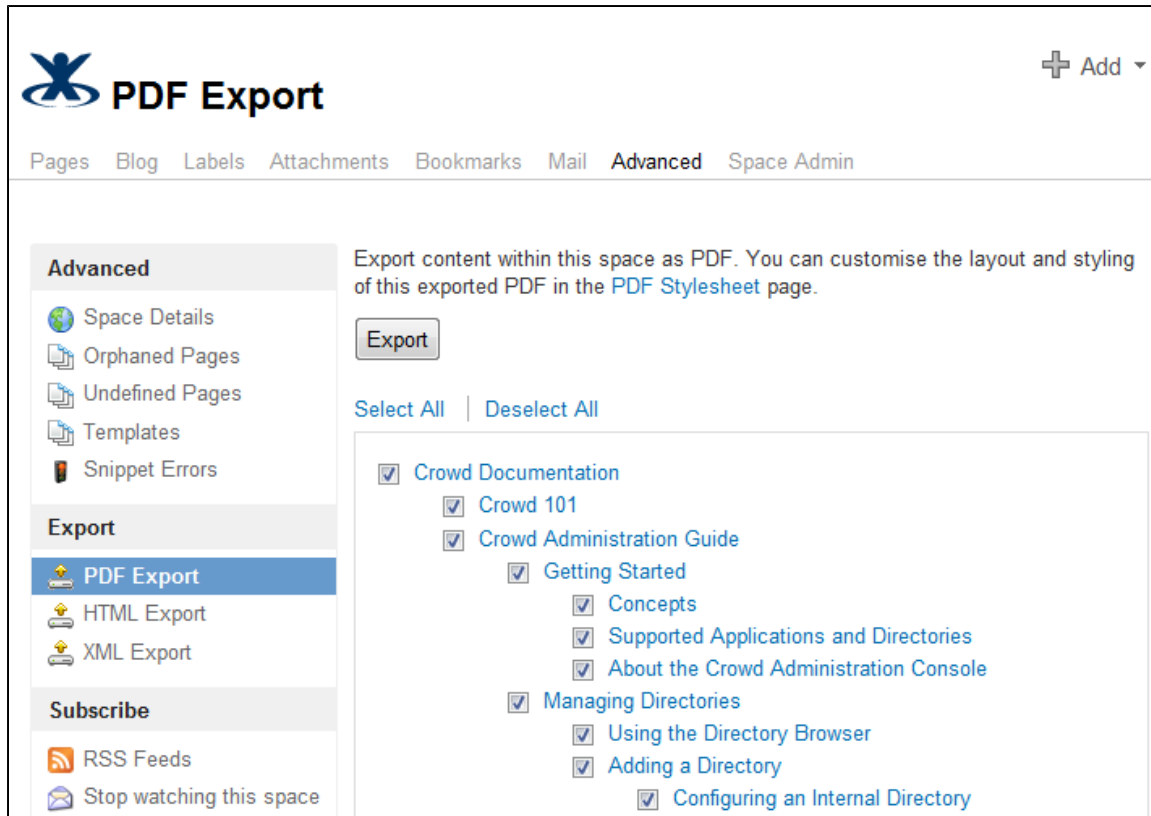
You can export a Confluence page to PDF. This option exports a single page and is available to all users who have permission to view the page:

- Go to a page in the space and choose **Tools > Export to PDF**. Follow the prompts to export the page.

Exporting a Space or a Selection of Pages to PDF

Using the built-in [Confluence PDF export](#), you can export a single page, a selection of pages or an entire space into a single PDF file.

1. Go to a page in the space and choose **Browse > Advanced**.
2. Click **PDF Export** in the left-hand panel.
This option will only be visible if you have the 'Export Space' permission.
3. Select the pages you want to export.
 - You have the option to **Select All** or **Deselect All** pages.
 - When you select a page, all its child pages will also be selected. Similarly, when you deselect a page all its child pages will also be deselected.
4. Click **Export**.
5. When the export process has finished, download and save the PDF file as prompted.



Exporting a Spaces or Pages to PDF via a Plugin

For advanced PDF export, consider installing the [Scroll Wiki Exporter](#) plugin onto your Confluence site. Scroll provides flexible themes for configuring PDF layout and styles. You can select one of Scroll's built-in themes and [configure](#) your table of contents, header and title pages.

Advanced techniques for Scroll Wiki Exporter. For even more flexibility, you can add your own theme plugins. Scroll supports themes based on DocBook XSL stylesheets. See the [Scroll developer's guide](#).

Notes

- **Permissions required to export a space.** To use the space export functionality, you need 'Export Space' permission. See the guide to [space permissions](#) or contact a [space administrator](#) for more information.
- **Installing plugins.** If you decide to use additional plugins, your site administrator will need to install the plugins into your Confluence site. Refer to the documentation on [installing plugins](#).
- **Plugin support.** Before installing a plugin into your Confluence site, please check the plugin's information page to see whether it is supported by Atlassian, by another vendor, or not at all. See our guidelines on [plugin support](#).

Next Steps

Now you know all about providing PDF versions of your documentation. What next? See other ways of [Exporting and Printing Technical Documentation](#).

Exporting and Printing Technical Documentation

This page is part of the guide to [developing technical documentation on Confluence Wiki](#). Confluence is a great tool for writing and maintaining technical documentation. There are times when we need to export the content out of Confluence into other forms, such as PDF, HTML, Microsoft Word and paper.

Confluence itself provides an export to both PDF and HTML. Plugins provide additional functionality. Below are guidelines on exporting your technical documentation to various formats, including printed output.



Quick guide to printing and exporting content

- Use the browser's print option to print a single page.
- To print more than one page and for more advanced printing options, export your documentation to PDF.
- Confluence can export your pages to PDF, HTML, Confluence-specific XML and Word.
- Consider installing plugins to export your pages to PDF (enhanced functionality), Word (enhanced functionality), DocBook XML, Eclipse Help and JavaHelp.
- Make your exports available to your customers for download by attaching the exported file to a Confluence page.

The rest of this page gives more details of the above procedures.

On this page:

- [Printing](#)
- [Exporting to PDF](#)
- [Exporting to HTML](#)
- [Exporting to Confluence-Specific XML](#)
- [Exporting to DocBook XML via a Plugin](#)
- [Exporting to Microsoft Word](#)
- [Exporting to Word via a Plugin](#)
- [Exporting to Eclipse Help via a Plugin](#)
- [Exporting to JavaHelp via a Plugin](#)
- [Making the PDF and Other Exported Files Available to your Readers](#)
- [Notes](#)
- [Further Reading](#)

Printing

To print a single Confluence page, just use the browser's print option. This option is available to all users who have permission to view the page.

To print more than one page and for more advanced printing options, export your documentation to PDF. See [Providing PDF Versions of your Technical Documentation](#).

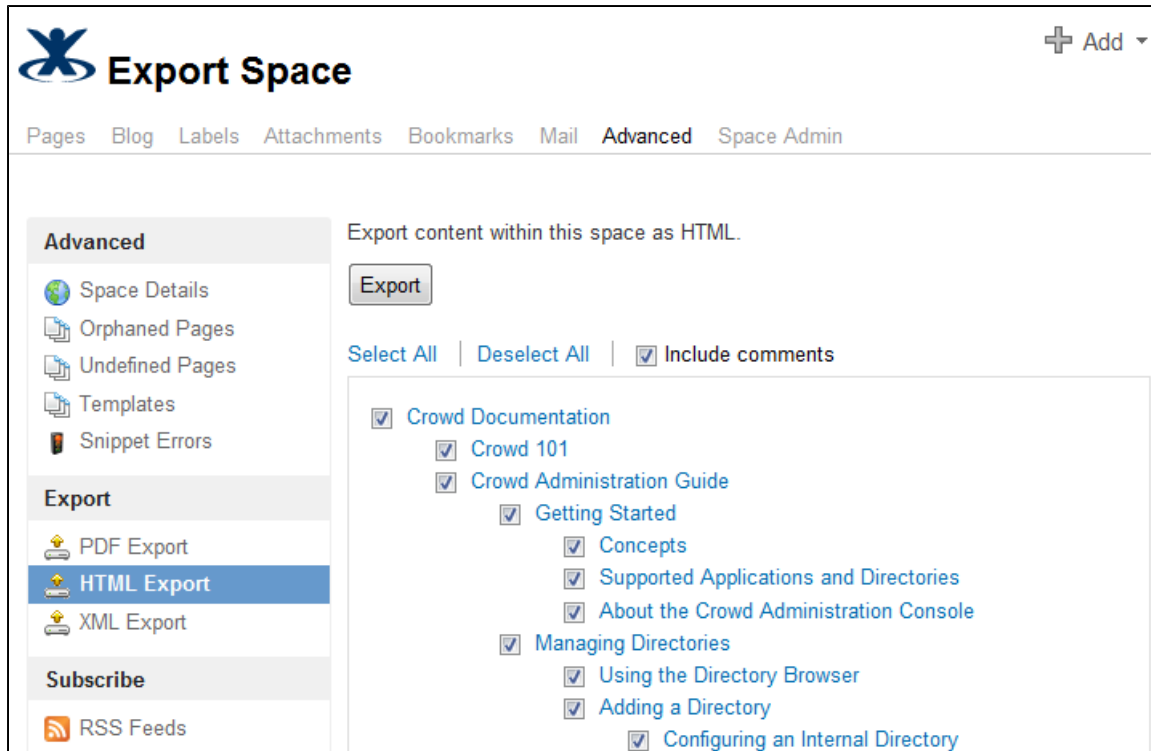
Exporting to PDF

Because this is such an important topic, we have a section of this guide dedicated to PDF. See [Providing PDF Versions of your Technical Documentation](#).

Exporting to HTML

Using the built-in [Confluence HTML export](#), you can export a single page, a selection of pages or an entire space to HTML. Confluence supplies the HTML and associated files in a zip file.

1. Go to a page in the space and choose **Browse > Advanced**.
2. Click **HTML Export** in the left-hand panel.
This option will only be visible if you have 'Export Space' permission.
3. Select the **Include Comments** check box if you want to include comments for the pages you are exporting.
4. Select the pages you want to export by selecting the check boxes in the tree view of pages displayed. By default, all pages are selected. You have the option to **Select All** or **Deselect All** pages.
If you select the check box of a page that contains one or more child or descendant pages, all of these child and descendant pages will also be selected. Similarly, if you clear the check box of such a page, all of its child and descendant pages will also be cleared. This provides a convenient method of exporting subtrees, for example, chapters or sections within a document.
5. Click **Export**. This will create a zipped archive of HTML files.
6. When the export process has finished, download the zipped archive as prompted and extract the files into a folder.



Exporting to Confluence-Specific XML

Confluence provides an [XML export](#). The XML produced is a proprietary format and is intended for backups or for transferring a space from one Confluence instance to another. If you write your documentation on Confluence and your customers have Confluence too, then you can export your manuals to XML and customers can upload them onto their own Confluence site.

Exporting to DocBook XML via a Plugin

[Scroll Wiki Exporter](#) converts Confluence pages to [DocBook XML](#). Your Confluence system administrator will need install the plugin onto your Confluence site.

Exporting to Microsoft Word

Confluence can export a page to Word. (Select '**Export to Word**' from the '**Tools**' menu.) This option performs a basic conversion of wiki content to HTML and applies some Word CSS stylesheets. It processes just one page at a time.

Exporting to Word via a Plugin

[Scroll Office Word Exporter](#) is a Confluence plugin. Once installed, Scroll Office Word Exporter replaces Confluence's built-in 'Export to Word' functionality. You can export a single page or a hierarchy of pages.

You can define your templates in Word in the usual way, and upload them to Confluence as global templates or space templates. When you export your Confluence pages to Word, Scroll Office Word Exporter will use those templates to build Word documents from the wiki pages.

Scroll Office Word Exporter provides additional features such as [enforcing page-breaks](#), [setting the page orientation](#) to landscape or portrait, and [ignoring content](#). The latest version offers a REST-style API for automated export.

Exporting to Eclipse Help via a Plugin

[Scroll Wiki EclipseHelp Exporter](#) provides an export to Eclipse Help format.

A hint about the Eclipse Help platform: You can use a cut-down version of the Eclipse Help platform to provide online documentation for any system. It doesn't have to be an Eclipse tool that you are documenting. For some ideas, take a look at a couple of articles about [documenting your project using the Eclipse help system](#).

Exporting to JavaHelp via a Plugin

[Scroll Wiki Exporter](#) also converts Confluence pages to [JavaHelp](#) format.

Making the PDF and Other Exported Files Available to your Readers

There are a number of ways to make your exported files available to your readers, such as putting the files on a disc and shipping them with your product.

One of the simplest ways is to attach the files to a Confluence page. (See [Attaching Files to a Page](#).)

For example, Atlassian uses the out-of-the-box Confluence export functionality to provide PDF, HTML and XML versions of our documentation. People can download the files from our [documentation wiki](#). For example, here are the [JIRA documentation downloads](#) and the [Confluence documentation downloads](#).

For those people who would like to use the XML files to recreate the documentation on their own Confluence sites, we provide instructions on [setting up your own local documentation](#).

Notes

- **Permissions required to export a space.** To use the space export functionality, you need 'Export Space' permission. See the guide to [space permissions](#) or contact a [space administrator](#) for more information.
- **Installing plugins.** If you decide to use additional plugins, your site administrator will need to install the plugins into your Confluence site. Refer to the documentation on [installing plugins](#).
- **Plugin support.** Before installing a plugin into your Confluence site, please check the plugin's information page to see whether it is supported by Atlassian, by another vendor, or not at all. See our guidelines on [plugin support](#).

Further Reading

- A blog post about exporting and importing content from/to Confluence: [Technical Writing in a Wiki - Single Source Publishing](#) (November 2010).
- A good overview of the Scroll Office features in this [blog post](#) (August 2010) and the [followup post](#) (November 2010).

Next Steps

Now you know about a number of ways to get your technical documentation out of Confluence into various formats, for printing or for input into another system or process flow. What next? Take a look at [Essential Confluence Features for Technical Documentation](#).

Essential Confluence Features for Technical Documentation

This page is part of the guide to [developing technical documentation on Confluence](#). In this section we highlight the built-in Confluence macros that are most useful in technical documentation. For more information about Confluence macros, see [Working with Macros](#).

 To add a macro to a Confluence page, use the [Macro Browser](#).

On this page:

- [Auto-Generating a Table of Contents for Page Content](#)
- [Drawing Attention to Elements of a Page](#)
- [Putting Content inside Customisable Panels](#)
- [Inserting Anchor Links on Pages](#)
- [Structuring Content using Sections and Columns](#)
- [Making your Documentation more Engaging by Embedding Videos](#)

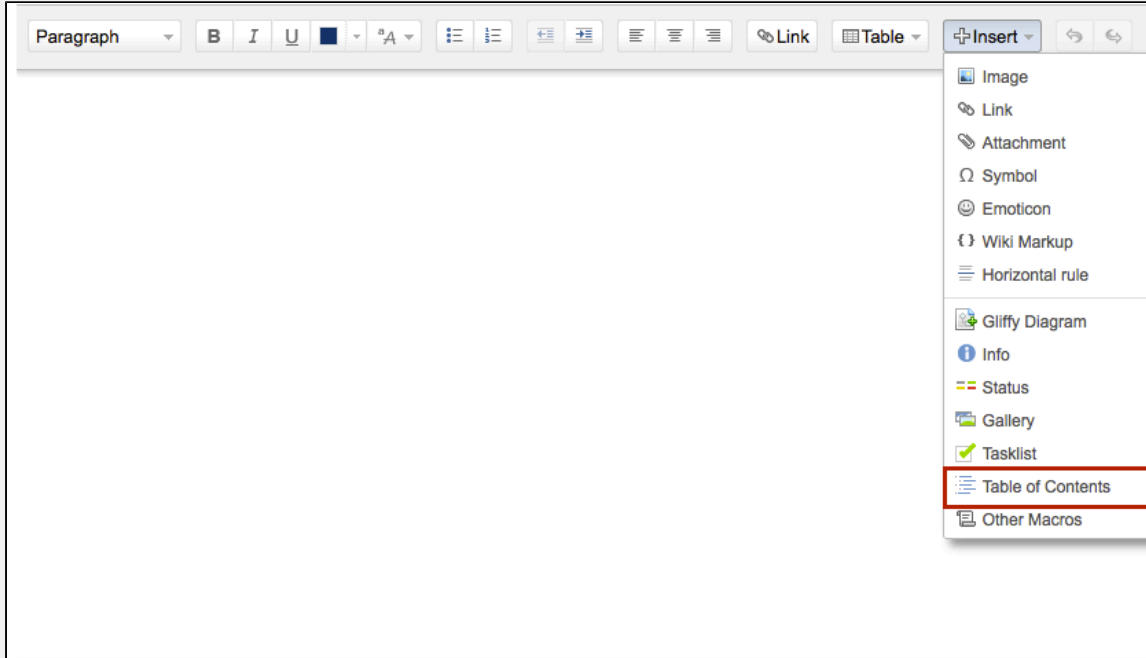
Auto-Generating a Table of Contents for Page Content

It is important to make it easy for viewers to jump to the section of a Confluence page that they are most interested in. The [Table of Contents macro](#) helps you navigate lengthy pages by summarising the content structure and providing links to headings used on the page. Headings are indented progressively.

▼ [Click here to see a common example >>](#)

1. You document the *Release Notes* for the latest version of your product in a Confluence page.
2. Each feature in the release is a heading on the page.

3. You can generate a list of hyperlinks to each of the features in the release notes by inserting the Table of Contents macro:



4. The image below shows the Table of Contents macro inserted at the top of the 'Release Notes' page. Note that we have excluded the 'Highlights of Confluence 4.0' heading from the table of contents by modifying the macro's parameters.

Confluence 4.0 Release Notes

30 Added by [Sarah Maddox \[Atlassian Technical Writer\]](#), last edited by [Edwin Dawson \[Atlassian Technical Writer\]](#) on Sep 20, 2011 (view change) show comment

DOWNLOAD
latest version

19 September 2011

With great pleasure, Atlassian presents Confluence 4.0. This is one of the most significant updates to Confluence since its we're confident that Confluence 4.0 is the most productive and user-friendly version to date.

Highlights of Confluence 4.0:

- [Brand New Editor](#)
- [Simplified Editing Experience](#)
- [New Macros](#)
- [Faster Editing Experience](#)
- [Introducing @mentions](#)
- [Improved Page Comparison Functionality](#)
- [Email Notification Improvements](#)
- [New Confluence Installer and Guided Upgrades](#)
- [New Editor Plugin Points for Developers](#)
- [Other Improvements](#)
- [Helping You Transition to Confluence 4.0](#)
- [Release Notices](#)

Table of Contents Macro

- Minimum Heading Level Set to '2'
- Maximum Heading Level set to '7'

More:

- Read the [Upgrade Notes](#) for important information about this release.
- See the full list of [issues resolved in this release](#).

Learn more
about Confluence 4.0

Highlights of Confluence 4.0

Heading Style 1

1

Brand New Editor

Heading Style 2

We've rebuilt the Confluence editor from the ground up, bringing you an editing experience that's simpler, faster and richer.

5. The image below shows the macro parameters specified in the [Macro Browser](#). Note the 'Minimum Heading Level' and 'Maximum Heading Level' parameters.

Edit 'Table of Contents' Macro

Preview Refresh

- [Brand New Editor](#)
- [Simplified Editing Experience](#)
- [New Macros](#)
- [Faster Editing Experience](#)
- [Introducing @mentions](#)
- [Improved Page Comparison Functionality](#)
- [Email Notifications Improvements](#)
- [New confluence Installer and Guided Upgrades](#)
- [New Editor Plugin Points for Developers](#)
- [Other Improvements](#)
- [Helping You Transition to Confluence 4.0](#)
- [Release Notes](#)

List Style
none
The style of bullet-point applied to each item in the list. Any CSS styles are valid. Examples: disc, circle, square.

Heading Indent

The amount by which to indent each heading level (in CSS units). Example: 10px

Separator
brackets
The type of separator used when 'Output Type' is set to 'flat'. Examples: brackets, braces, pipe.

Minimum Heading Level
2
The minimum heading level to report in the TOC. For example, '3' will list headings from 'h3.' onwards, but not 'h1.' or 'h2.'

Maximum Heading Level
4
The maximum heading level to report in the TOC. For example, '4' will list headlines up to 'h4.' but not from

[Back](#) Save Cancel


[Return to top of page](#)

Drawing Attention to Elements of a Page

Often when creating documentation there are elements of a page that you want to highlight, or draw the the viewers attention to. Confluence ships with the following macros that help you focus a viewer's attention to a note, information, tip or warning.


▼ [Click here to see common examples >>](#)

Note Macro

What is it?	Example
<p>The Note macro allows you to highlight a note on a Confluence page.</p> <p>It creates a yellow coloured box surrounding your text, as shown to the right.</p>	 Draft in progress This document is a draft and is under development.

See [Note Macro](#) for more examples and instructions.

Info Macro

What is it?	Example
<p>The Info macro allows you to highlight helpful information on a Confluence page.</p> <p>It creates a blue coloured box surrounding your text, as shown to the right.</p>	 Did you know? Confluence is the best wiki ever.

See [Info Macro](#) for more examples and instructions.

Tip Macro

What is it?	Example
-------------	---------

The Tip macro allows you to highlight a helpful tip on a Confluence page.

It creates a green coloured box surrounding your text, as shown to the right.




Learn more

Check out this blog post: [Technical Writing in a Wiki: Technical Communicators Explain How & Why?](#)

See [Tip Macro](#) for more examples and instructions.

Warning Macro

What is it?	Example
<p>The Warning macro allows you to highlight a warning note on a Confluence page.</p> <p>It creates a red coloured box surrounding your text, as shown to the right.</p>	 <p>Draft</p> <p>This page is a draft in progress and visible to Atlassian staff only.</p>

See [Warning Macro](#) for more examples and instructions.

[Return to top of page](#)

Putting Content inside Customisable Panels

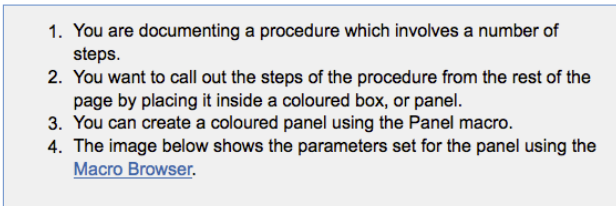
The [Panel macro](#) allows you to place content inside a customisable coloured panel. This is particularly useful when you want to clearly separate elements on a page.

▼ [Click here to see a common example >>](#)

1. You are documenting a procedure which involves a number of steps.
2. You want to call out the steps of the procedure from the rest of the page by placing it inside a coloured box, or panel.
3. You can create a coloured panel using the Panel macro.
4. The image below shows the parameters set for the panel using the [Macro Browser](#).

Edit 'Panel' Macro

Preview



Refresh

Draw a panel with an optional title and border

[Documentation](#)

Panel Title

Border Style

Examples: solid, dashed

Border Colour

Border Pixel Width (Value Only)

Background Colour

Title Background Colour

Title Text Colour

Back

Save Cancel

[Return to top of page](#)

Inserting Anchor Links on Pages

Anchor links can be especially useful when navigating between sections of a long document or when you want to link to a segment of a page from another page. The [Anchor macro](#) allows you to link to specific parts of a page.

▼ Click here to see a common example >>

1. You are documenting part of a user guide.
2. The page is split into multiple sections.
3. After each section you want to provide a link for viewers to click, taking them back to the top of the page.
4. To achieve this you first must create an *anchor* at the top of the page using the Anchor macro. You can give the anchor any name you like. In the image below, the anchor at the top of the page will be named 'top'.

Insert 'Anchor' Macro

Preview

Refresh

Create an anchor that allows people to link to a specific point in a page [Documentation](#)

Anchor Name *

top

Back

Insert Cancel

5. The anchor placeholder will appear to indicate where your anchor link is located on the page:



This guide is for people who want to author and publish technical documentation on Confluence wiki on. This page is highlights out-of-the-box Confluence macros that you may want to use to create doc document in Confluence

6. Create a link to the anchor, anywhere on the page, using the [Link Browser](#). The image below shows a link to the anchor called 'top' by using the hash '#' followed by the name of the anchor you created earlier, with an alias of 'Return to Top'.

Insert Link

Search

Recently Viewed

Attachments

Web Link

Advanced

Here you can insert a link into the page using [Wiki Markup](#).

Link:

To insert a link to a new page, type in the desired page title.
To insert an anchor link, type #anchormame.

Link Text:

Hint: type "[" in the Editor to see a list of suggested pages and insert a link.

[Insert](#) [Cancel](#)

See [Working with Anchors](#) for more examples and instructions.

[Return to top of page](#)

Structuring Content using Sections and Columns

Sometimes it is necessary to structure content into sections and columns.


- You can create any number of sections on a Confluence page using the [Section macro](#).
- Each section can contain any number of columns, created using the [Column macro](#).
- Columns can either have a fixed width, specified in pixels, or a dynamic width, specified as a percentage of the page width.
- Note: A *column* must be created inside a *section*


▼ [Click here to see a common example >>](#)

The images below show part of a Confluence page with two sections (red), each with two columns (blue) of different widths.

1. Section 1:

1. Put a name to your face
2. Learn how content is organised
3. Get familiar with the Confluence screens
4. Start creating content
5. Add a panel to your page

 Tweet it! »

 Share It! »


1 Put a face to your name

Your profile picture is used to identify you across Confluence. Upload your own picture via your **Profile**.

► Learn More >>

Dashboard › People › Fred Flintstone › Profile Picture

Help ▾ Browse ▾ Fred Flintstone ▾ Search

**Fred Flintstone**

Profile Network Status Updates Labels Watches Drafts Settings


Profile
Details
Picture
Password


Your profile picture is used as the icon for your personal space, and to represent you in Confluence. You can upload your own profile picture, or you can choose from one of our standard icons.

Upload a Profile Picture: Upload your own profile picture. Profile pictures will be resized to 48 x 48 pixels.

2. Section 1 columns – left column has a fixed width of 400 pixels:

1. Put a name to your face
2. Learn how content is organised
3. Get familiar with the Confluence screens
4. Start creating content
5. Add a panel to your page

 Tweet it! »

 Share It! »


1 Put a face to your name

Your profile picture is used to identify you across Confluence. Upload your own picture via your **Profile**.

► Learn More >>

Dashboard › People › Fred Flintstone › Profile Picture

Help ▾ Browse ▾ Fred Flintstone ▾ Search

**Fred Flintstone**

Profile Network Status Updates Labels Watches Drafts Settings


Profile
Details
Picture
Password


Your profile picture is used as the icon for your personal space, and to represent you in Confluence. You can upload your own profile picture, or you can choose from one of our standard icons.

Upload a Profile Picture: Upload your own profile picture. Profile pictures will be resized to 48 x 48 pixels.

3. Section 2:

- Put a name to your face
- Learn how content is organised
- Get familiar with the Confluence screens
- Start creating content
- Add a panel to your page

 Tweet it! »


 Share It! »

1 Put a face to your name

Your profile picture is used to identify you across Confluence. Upload your own picture via your **Profile**.

► Learn More >>

Dashboard › People › Fred Flintstone › Profile Picture
 Help ▾ Browse ▾ Fred Flintstone ▾ Search


Fred Flintstone

Profile Network Status Updates Labels Watches Drafts Settings

Profile

Details

Picture


Password


Your profile picture is used as the icon for your personal space, and to represent you in Confluence. You can upload your own profile picture, or you can choose from one of our standard icons.

Upload a Profile Picture: Upload your own profile picture. Profile pictures will be resized to 48 x 48 pixels.

4. Section 2 columns – left column has a fixed width of 10 pixels:

- Put a name to your face
- Learn how content is organised
- Get familiar with the Confluence screens
- Start creating content
- Add a panel to your page

 Tweet it! »


 Share It! »

1 Put a face to your name

Your profile picture is used to identify you across Confluence. Upload your own picture via your **Profile**.

► Learn More >>

Dashboard › People › Fred Flintstone › Profile Picture
 Help ▾ Browse ▾ Fred Flintstone ▾ Search


Fred Flintstone

Profile Network Status Updates Labels Watches Drafts Settings

Profile

Details

Picture

Password

Your profile picture is used as the icon for your personal space, and to represent you in Confluence. You can upload your own profile picture, or you can choose from one of our standard icons.

Upload a Profile Picture: Upload your own profile picture. Profile pictures will be resized to 48 x 48 pixels.

[Return to top of page](#)

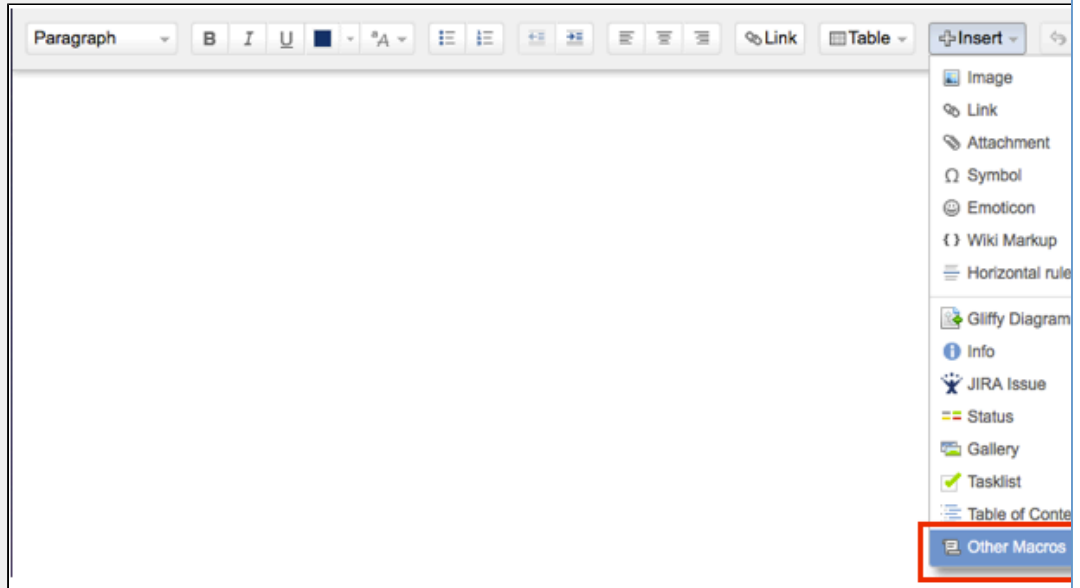
Making your Documentation more Engaging by Embedding Videos

Pictures can be worth a thousand words. The same can be said for videos. Often, it's easy to explain a concept or demonstrate a procedure using a video. The **Widget** macro allows you to embed web content, including YouTube, Episodic and Vimeo videos, in a Confluence page.

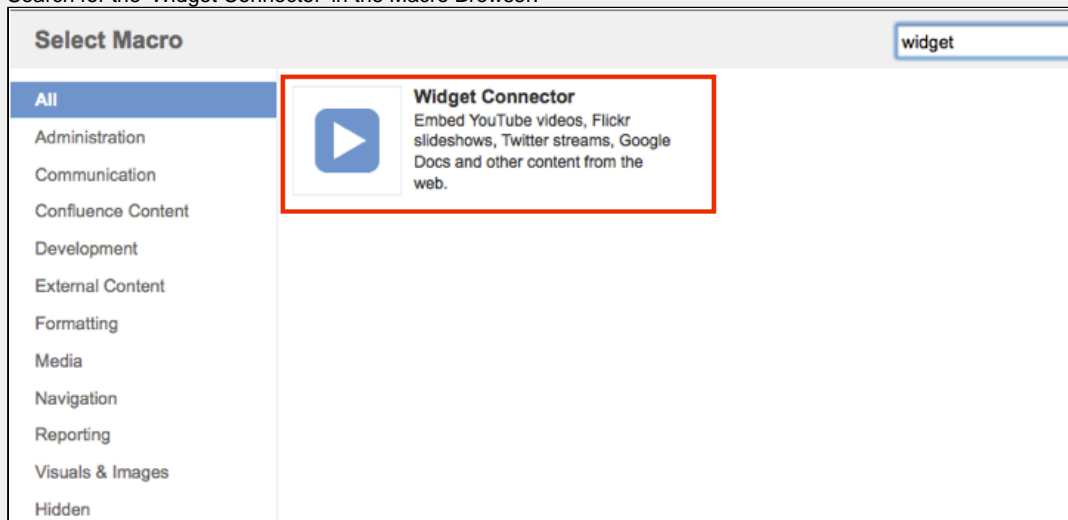
▼ [Click here to see a common example >>](#)

- You release a new version of your product.
- You document the Release Notes on a Confluence page.
- The marketing team creates a video demonstrating the new features of the release and uploads it to YouTube.
- You can embed the video in your Release Notes using the Widget macro, for playback on your Confluence page.

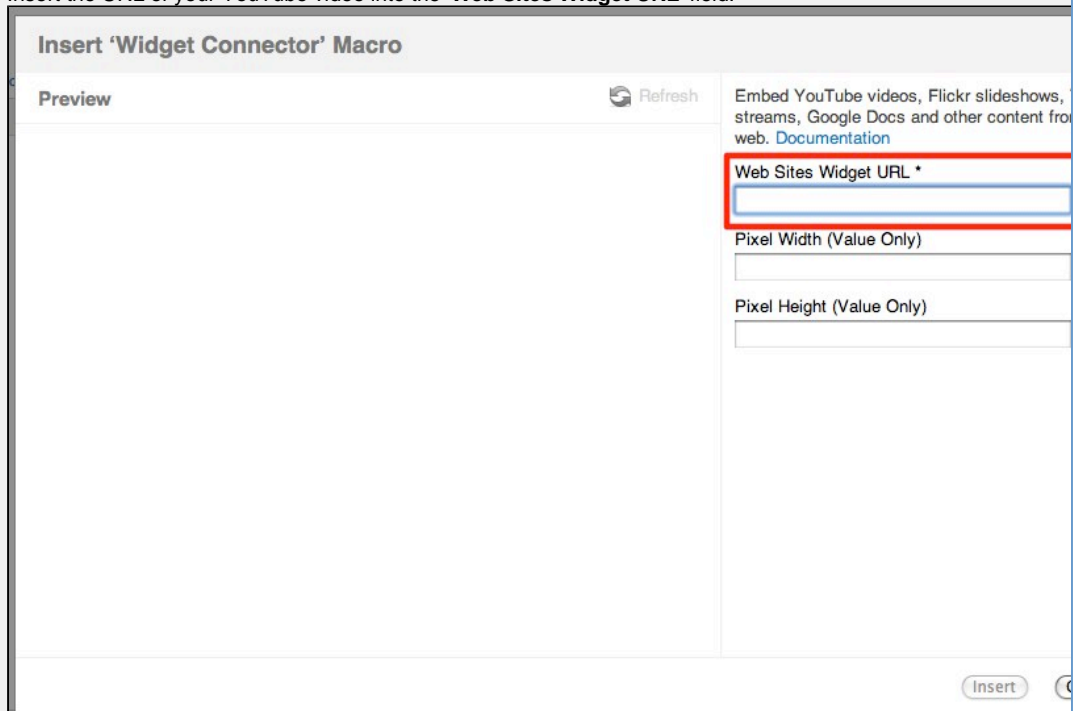
- a. Select '**Other Macros**' from the '**Insert**' menu in the Rich Text Editor toolbar.



- b. Search for the 'Widget Connector' in the Macro Browser.



- c. Insert the URL of your YouTube video into the '**Web Sites Widget URL**' field.



d. Click 'Insert' and save your page.

Confluence 4.0 Release Notes

30 Added by Sarah Maddox [Atlassian Technical Writer], last edited by Edwin Dawson [Atlassian Technical Writer] on Sep 20, 2011 (view change) show comment

19 September 2011

With great pleasure, Atlassian presents Confluence 4.0. This is one of the most significant updates to Confluence since its initial release in 2004. With a brand new WYSIWYG editor, wide-ranging user interface improvements, we're confident that Confluence 4.0 is the most productive and user-friendly version to date.

Highlights of Confluence 4.0:

- Brand New Editor
- Simplified Editing Experience
- New Macros
- Faster Editing Experience
- Introducing @mentions
- Improved Page Comparison Functionality
- Email Notification Improvements
- New Confluence Installer and Guided Upgrades
- New Editor Plugin Points for Developers
- Other Improvements
- Helping You Transition to Confluence 4.0
- Release Notices

More:

- Read the [Upgrade Notes](#) for important information about this release.
- See the full list of [issues resolved in this release](#).

[Learn more](#) about Confluence 4.0

Video of What's New:

New Atlassian Confluence Editor Demo Video

Angry Birds 1.1

Introducing the iPad App!

Release Notes

Thank you for your feedback:

- ★ More than 215 requests implemented
- ★ Over 1050 votes fulfilled

See [Widget Connector Macro](#) for information on the supported services and for more usage examples.

[Return to top of page](#)

Next Steps

Take a look at [Confluence Plugins for Technical Documentation](#).

Confluence Plugins for Technical Documentation

This page is part of the guide to [developing technical documentation on Confluence](#). In this section we highlight some of the Confluence plugins that are useful for technical writers in designing and developing documentation.

A plugin is an extension module that you can add to your Confluence site, to extend the wiki's core functionality. It is similar to an add-on for your browser. Confluence plugins may be developed by Atlassian or by third parties. To find the plugins featured on this page, and other plugins too, visit the [Atlassian Plugin Exchange](#).

This page features plugins that provide the following extended capabilities:

- [Extended Wiki Markup Features](#)
 - [Quick Overview of Macros](#)
 - [Composition Plugin](#)
 - [Using the Composition Plugin to Outline Text Blocks](#)
 - [Using the Composition Plugin to Add Tabs to a Page](#)
 - [Using the Composition Plugin to Flow your Text around Images](#)
 - [Scaffolding Plugin](#)
- [Extended Version Control](#)
 - [Attachment Checkout Plugin](#)
- [Drawing Tools](#)
 - [Gliffy Plugin](#)
 - [Notes](#)
 - [Further Reading](#)



Quick guide to the plugins featured below

- [Composition plugin](#) – Provides macros which allow finer control over the layout (composition) of a page. For example, outline text; add tabs to your page; flow your text around diagrams. This plugin is free.
- [Scaffolding plugin](#) – Provides macros for creating 'permanent templates' and editable forms. Free.
- [Attachment Checkout plugin](#) – Adds check-out/check-in functionality for Confluence attachments. Free.
- [Gliffy plugin](#) – Provides an embedded diagram editor. Commercial.

**Plugins featured in other parts of this guide**

- [Copy Space plugin](#) – Provides an easy way of copying a space within a Confluence site. Free. See [Creating your Technical Documentation Space](#).
- [Multi Excerpt plugin](#) – Enables you to have more than one excerpt (re-usable chunk) on a page. Commercial. See [Re-using Content in Technical Documentation](#).
- [Ad Hoc Workflows plugin](#) – Provides advanced workflow features. Commercial. See [Managing the Life Cycle of your Technical Documentation](#).
- [Content Publishing plugin](#) – Publishes content from a master space to a published space. Commercial. See [Managing the Life Cycle of your Technical Documentation](#).
- [Scroll Wiki Exporter](#) – Provides advanced PDF export features, as well as export to DocBook XML, Eclipse Help, JavaHelp. Commercial. See [Providing PDF Versions of your Technical Documentation](#) and [Exporting and Printing Technical Documentation](#).
- [Scroll Office](#) – Provides advanced features for export to Microsoft Word. Commercial. See [Exporting and Printing Technical Documentation](#).

On this page:

- [Extended Wiki Markup Features](#)
 - [Quick Overview of Macros](#)
 - [Composition Plugin](#)
 - [Using the Composition Plugin to Outline Text Blocks](#)
 - [Using the Composition Plugin to Add Tabs to a Page](#)
 - [Using the Composition Plugin to Flow your Text around Images](#)
 - [Scaffolding Plugin](#)
- [Extended Version Control](#)
 - [Attachment Checkout Plugin](#)
- [Drawing Tools](#)
 - [Gliffy Plugin](#)

Extended Wiki Markup Features

All wiki markup extensions are provided by **macros** in Confluence. Some macros are built in to Confluence. Other macros are supplied by plugins.

Quick Overview of Macros

Before looking at plugins, let's take a quick look at macros in general. There are two ways to add a macro to your page:

- Use the [Macro Browser](#). This is the simplest and recommended way.
- Or insert the macro's name in curly brackets into the text of your page and specify the parameters.

▼ [Click here to see an example of a macro >>](#)

The following code uses the {include} macro to insert the text from the page called 'My Page'. The text will appear on the page where the macro is used:

```
Page text...
{include:My Page}
page text...
```

The resulting page will look like this:

```
Page text...
<text from the 'My Page' page>
page text...
```

A number of macros are shipped with your Confluence installation by default. See [Working With Macros](#). Below we describe some plugins that provide additional useful macros for Confluence:

Composition Plugin

The [Composition plugin](#) adds some formatting features to compose a page in a more flexible way. Using the macros provided by the Composition plugin, you can:

- Outline your text blocks.
- Add tabs to a page.
- Flow your text around the images or diagrams on the page.

Using the Composition Plugin to Outline Text Blocks

Use the {cloak} macro to outline a text block.

Usage: The following code creates a text block named 'SeeAlso' for the outlined 'See Also' section within a page. The text block with id='SeeAlso' will be hidden after the 'See Also' title:

```
{composition-setup}
h2. {toggle-cloak:id=SeeAlso} See Also
{cloak:id=SeeAlso}

h3. Working With Macros:
[Link 1]
[Link 2]

h3. Working with Rich Text Editor:
[Link 3]
[Link 4]
{cloak}
```

Alternatives: You can also use the {expand} macro available in Confluence by default, but this macro can outline only text of the same level and cannot hide headings within the text. The {expand} macro does not require parameters and just hides the text placed between the {expand} tags.

Note: If you need to outline a text block containing nested headings, consider the text structure. Maybe the block is too big. You could create a child page from this block to decompose the whole text. Then you can include and outline the text block using the {include} macro within {expand}.

Using the Composition Plugin to Add Tabs to a Page

Use the {deck} and {card} macros to separate content between tabs on the same page.

Usage: The following code creates two tabs with client information:

```
{composition-setup}
h1. Client Name
{deck:id=ClientName}

{card:label=Basic}
Client Company Name: Company
[Client Web Site|http://url.com]
Our projects: [Project1|Project1 Home]
{card}

{card:label=Contacts}
Company CEO: John Brown, e_mail: brown@company.com
{card}

{deck}
```

The tabs on a page will look like this:

Added by [Ekaterina Stepalina](#), last edited by [Ekaterina Stepalina](#) on Nov 08, 2010 ([view change](#))

Client Name

Basic

Contacts

Client Company Name: Company

[Client Web Site](#)

Our projects: [Project1](#)

Using the Composition Plugin to Flow your Text around Images


Use the {float} macro to make your text flow around images or diagrams.

Usage: The following code demonstrates how a picture can be surrounded by the description, as often shown in printed publications:

```
{composition-setup}
{float:left}
!shakespeare.jpg!
{float}
William Shakespeare (baptised 26 April 1564; died 23 April 1616) was an English poet and
playwright, widely regarded as the greatest writer in the English language and the world's
pre-eminent dramatist.
...
```

The page will look like this:

Floating Text demo



William Shakespeare (baptised 26 April 1564; died 23 April 1616) was an English poet and playwright, widely regarded as the greatest writer in the English language and the world's pre-eminent dramatist. He is often called England's national poet and the "Bard of Avon". His surviving works, including some collaborations, consist of about 38 plays, 154 sonnets, two long narrative poems, and several other poems. His plays have been translated into every major living language and are performed more often than those of any other playwright.

Shakespeare was born and raised in Stratford-upon-Avon. At the age of 18, he married Anne Hathaway, with whom he had three children: Susanna, and twins Hamnet and Judith. Between 1585 and 1592, he began a successful career in London as an actor, writer, and part owner of a playing company called the Lord Chamberlain's Men, later known as the King's Men. He appears to have retired to Stratford around 1613, where he died three years later. Few records of Shakespeare's private life survive, and there has been considerable speculation about such matters as his physical appearance, sexuality, religious beliefs, and whether the works attributed to him were written by others.

Shakespeare produced most of his known work between 1589 and 1613.^{[nb 4](#)} His early plays were mainly comedies and histories, genres he raised to the peak of sophistication and artistry by the end of the 16th century. He then wrote mainly tragedies until about 1608, including *Hamlet*, *King Lear*, and *Macbeth*, considered some of the finest works in the English language. In his last phase, he wrote tragicomedies, also known as romances, and collaborated with other playwrights.

For more macros, see the [Composition plugin page](#).

Scaffolding Plugin

The [Scaffolding plugin](#) allows you to create sophisticated page templates in order to add content easily and fast. Scaffolding templates are suitable for dynamically-filled data and allow people to create pages by completing form fields and selecting values from drop-down lists.

The Scaffolding templates are useful for creating pages with a well-determined structure, such as:

- API methods or property descriptions.
- Constant list.
- Feature description.
- Software requirement specifications.

Example: The following Scaffolding template creates a description of an API method:

```

h3. Method Name
{text-data:methodName|required=true}{text-data}

h3. Method Description

{text-data:methodDescription|type=area|required=true|width=100%}description{text-data}

h3. Parameters
{table-data:parameters}
|| Name || Type || Mandatory || Description ||
| {text-data:paramName}ParamName{text-data} |
| {list-data:paramType}{list-option:Number}Number{list-option}{list-option:String}String{list-option}
|
| {list-data:paramMandatory}{list-option:Required}Required{list-option}{list-option:Optional}Optional
| {text-data:paramDescription|type=area}param description{text-data} |
{table-data}

h3. Return Value

The returned value is an XML structure of the following format:

\{code:xml\}
\{code\}

Where elements mean:

{table-data:returnValues}
|| Name || Type || Description ||
| {text-data:paramName}ParamName{text-data} |
| {list-data:paramType}{list-option:Number}Number{list-option}{list-option:String}String{list-option}
| {text-data:paramDescription}param description{text-data} |
{table-data}

h3. Remarks

{text-data:remarks}remarks{text-data}

h3. See Also

```

This template will look like this:

Dashboard > Документирование > ... > Черновики > API Method demo > Edit Page Data

Browse Ekaterina Stepalina Search

API Method demo

Edit Data Preview Notation Guide Save Cancel Edit Layout

Method Name

API Method demo

Method Description

description

Parameters

Name	Type	Mandatory	Description
Param1	Number	Required	param description
Param2	Number	Required	param description

+

Return Value

The returned value is an XML structure of the following format:

Where elements mean:

Name	Type	Description
Element1	String	param description

+

Remarks

remarks

For more information on how to create templates in Confluence, see [Adding a Template](#).

Alternatives: Confluence includes built-in templates which are useful for static data and simple text. For more information, see [Working with Templates](#).

Notes: The Scaffolding (and any) template changes will affect only new pages created from the modified template. In order to change the existing pages, you need to edit each individual page and add or modify the formatting manually.

For more information on Scaffolding, see the [Scaffolding plugin page](#).




Extended Version Control

Attachment Checkout Plugin

The [Attachment Checkout](#) plugin adds check-out/check-in functionality for Confluence attachments. It allows you to control the versions of the documents attached to a page with the same file name.

Attachment checkout allows Confluence to warn contributors that the document is being edited by someone else. Note that there are no merge features for attachments.

Example: To store and control the versions of Project Vision documentation received from a customer on the Confluence page:

Name	Size	Creator (Last Modifier)	Comment
 Client1_Project1_Vision.doc	30 kB	Ekaterina Stepalina	Checkout | Edit | Remove
<ul style="list-style-type: none">  Version 2 (30 kB - Ekaterina Stepalina - Nov 8, 2010 11:19:49 AM MSK)  Version 1 (30 kB - Ekaterina Stepalina - Nov 8, 2010 11:19:03 AM MSK) 			

For information on working with attachments, see [Working with Attachments](#).
For information on attachment versioning, see [Attachment Versions](#).

Drawing Tools

Gliffy Plugin

The [Gliffy plugin](#) provides an embedded diagram editor. Gliffy allows you to create and edit diagrams directly from a Confluence page. It supports various [diagram types](#) (UML, business process, and so on).

Alternatives: As an alternative you can use the standalone version of Gliffy available at <http://www.gliffy.com/>. Gliffy online has a free basic version.

For more information, see the [Gliffy plugin page](#).

Notes

- **Installing plugins.** If you decide to use additional plugins, your site administrator will need to install the plugins into your Confluence site. Refer to the documentation on [installing plugins](#).
- **Plugin support.** Before installing a plugin into your Confluence site, please check the plugin's information page to see whether it is supported by Atlassian, by another vendor, or not at all. See our guidelines on [plugin support](#).

Further Reading

- A blog post about useful plugins and tools for exporting and importing content from/to Confluence: [Technical Writing in a Wiki - Single Source Publishing](#) (November 2010).
- Website for exploring and downloading the available plugins: [Atlassian Plugin Exchange](#).
- Documentation on installing and configuring plugins: [Installing and Configuring Plugins using the Universal Plugin Manager](#).
- Documentation on using macros: [Working With Macros](#).
- [Further Reading about Developing Technical Documentation on Confluence](#)

Further Reading about Developing Technical Documentation on Confluence

This page is part of the guide to [developing technical documentation on Confluence](#). Once you have absorbed all the information in this guide, you may be ready for more reading. 😊

- The Confluence documentation: [Confluence 4.1](#).
- Tips from other technical writers, in the Confluence documentation: [Tips of the Trade](#).
- Blog post about using Confluence for online help: [Using a wiki for online help](#).
- Now you have your documentation space up and running, it's fun and rewarding to use the full power of the wiki to engage your readers and embed content from other social sites. Here is a blog post and presentation slides on [engaging readers in the documentation](#).



Let us know about more links

We plan to add more links to this page or to the 'Tips of the Trade' page. Let us know of any we have missed.

Developing a Knowledge Base on Confluence Wiki

Welcome! This is a guide to using Confluence as a knowledge base. You will find this guide useful if you want to produce a knowledge base with a survey, content curation, intelligent search and standardized templates.

In these pages, we'll show you how to use Confluence to achieve a high-functioning knowledge base, including these features:

- Using **Templates**
- **Subscriptions** (RSS or Email)
- **Exporting** articles (PDF or Word)
- **Organizing content** (hierarchically or by label)
- **Involving Customers** (using comments)
- **Populating data**
- **Scripts** to update content programatically
- A **"Was This Helpful?"** survey
- **Intelligent searching** algorithms (higher ranked articles are promoted in search results)
- **Targeted searching** across specified Confluence spaces and content types
- How to show **related content**
- Extensive **metrics and reporting**
- Maintenance

PAGES IN THE GUIDE

- [Creating Your Knowledge Base Space](#)
- [Using Templates and Formatting Macros in a Knowledge Base](#)
- [Proactive Communications in a Knowledge Base](#)
- [Additional Plugins for a Knowledge Base](#)

RELATED TOPICS

[Confluence User's Guide](#)

Creating Your Knowledge Base Space

This guide is for people who want to develop and publish a knowledge base using Confluence. You'll find Confluence useful because it combines professional web publishing features with the ease-of-use and flexibility of a wiki - requiring a low barrier to entry, but high quality output for all your team members. Confluence provides all of the collaborative features for your reports (such as automatic versioning, granular enterprise security, email and RSS subscriptions, and JIRA integration). This page is a quick-start guide to creating a wiki space for a knowledge base.



Quick guide to creating a knowledge base space

- Add a Space and Select the Documentation Theme
- Set the Space Permissions
- Customise the Title and Content of the Homepage
- Customise the Documentation Theme
- Create an Inclusions Library to Manage Reusable Content
- Create the Table of Contents
- Make your Knowledge Base Proactive with a Subscribable RSS Feed
- Insert Google Analytics Code into Confluence's Custom HTML
- Set up Atlassian's Content Survey and Reporting Plugin

The rest of this page gives more details of the above procedure.

On this page:

- [Step 1. Add a Space and Select the Documentation Theme](#)
- [Step 2. Set the Space Permissions](#)
- [Step 3. Customise the Title and Content of the Homepage](#)
- [Step 4. Customise the Documentation Theme](#)
- [Step 5. Create an Inclusions Library to Manage Reusable Content](#)
- [Step 6. Create the Table of Contents](#)
- [Step 7. Make your Knowledge Base Proactive with a Subscribable RSS Feed](#)
- [Step 8. Insert Google Analytics Code into Confluence's Custom HTML](#)
- [Step 9. Set up Atlassian's Content Survey and Reporting Plugin](#)
- [Note about Plugin Support](#)

Step 1. Add a Space and Select the Documentation Theme

Below is a quick guide to adding a space. See [Setting up a New Global Space](#) for a full description.

1. Go to the Confluence dashboard and click **Add Space** located on the 'Spaces' tab.
Hint: If you cannot see the **Add Space** link, this means that you do not have permission to add spaces. Please contact your Confluence administrator.
2. In the 'Create Space' screen, enter a **space name** and a short, unique **space key**.
3. Leave the **permission** settings as default, or choose to allow only yourself to view or contribute content to this space. You can change these settings later and with more flexible options.
4. Select the **Documentation Theme**.
5. Click **OK**.

The homepage of your new space will appear. Because you created the space, you are the space administrator. Now you can do some basic configuration, as described in the sections below.

Step 2. Set the Space Permissions

Define the space permissions to determine who can do what in your new space.

1. Choose **Browse > Space Admin**.
2. Click **Permissions** in the left-hand panel.
3. Confirm your administrator access as prompted.
4. Click **Edit Permissions**.
5. Set the permissions to suit your needs then click **Save All**.
 - You can add **groups** and/or individual **users** to the list, then select the permissions for each group or user.
 - You can also set the permissions for **anonymous** users – these are people who have not logged in to the wiki. Anonymous access is available only if enabled for the entire Confluence site. We recommend this setting if you are using this space for Technical Documentation or for a Knowledge Base.
 - Note that you can change these permissions at any time. You may want to restrict the permissions to specific groups now, and later open the space to more people.

A Bit More about Permissions

Confluence has a robust and granular permissions scheme that you can use to determine who can view, comment on and even update the documentation. There are three levels of permissions in Confluence:

- Global permissions apply across the entire site.
- Space permissions apply to a space.
- Page restrictions allow you to restrict the editing and/or viewing of a specific page. Below we discuss a way of using these in the draft, review and publishing workflow.

Space permissions in Confluence are simple yet granular enough to be useful for technical documentation. You can:

- Use the permission levels to control who can create pages in the space, delete pages, create comments, delete comments, administer the space, and so on.
- Grant a permission level to one or more users, and/or to one or more groups, and/or to anonymous users.

Terminology:

- 'Anonymous' means people who have not logged in to the wiki. These are users that won't affect your the number permitted by your license.
- The 'confluence-users' group is the default group into which all new users are assigned. Everyone who can log in to Confluence is a member of this group.

For example, you might allow 'Anonymous' users specific view and content creation rights so that they can access and engage with your knowledge base while your team lead (Bill) maintains full Space Administration rights.

Individual Users

These are the permissions currently assigned to individual users for this space.

	View	Pages				Blog		Comments		Attachments		Mail	Space	
		Add	Export	Restrict	Remove	Add	Remove	Add	Remove	Add	Remove	Remove	Export	Admin
Bill (admin)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

[Edit Permissions](#)

Anonymous Access

When a user is using Confluence while not logged in, they are using it anonymously.
For example: Enabling anonymous 'commenting' permission, allows non-logged-in users to make comments in this space.

	View	Pages				Blog		Comments		Attachments		Mail	Space	
		Add	Export	Restrict	Remove	Add	Remove	Add	Remove	Add	Remove	Remove	Export	Admin
Anonymous	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗	✓	✗	✓	✗	✓	✗	✗	✓	✗

[Edit Permissions](#)

Example: Allow anonymous users specific edit and view rights and your admins full access to the space.

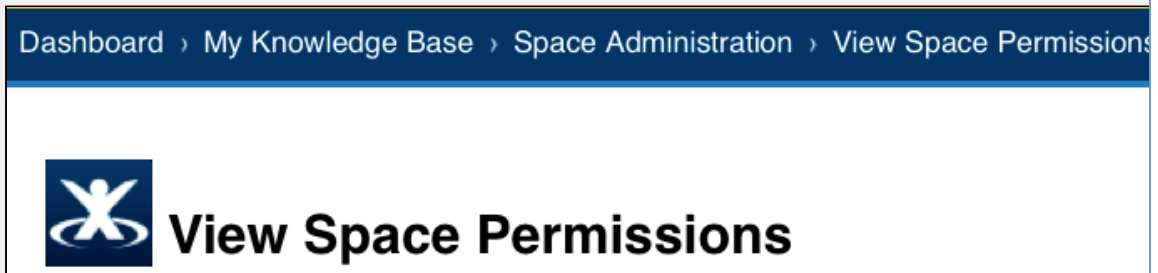
For detailed information, see the documentation on:

- [Global permissions](#)
- [Space permissions](#)
- [Page restrictions](#)
- [Users and groups](#)

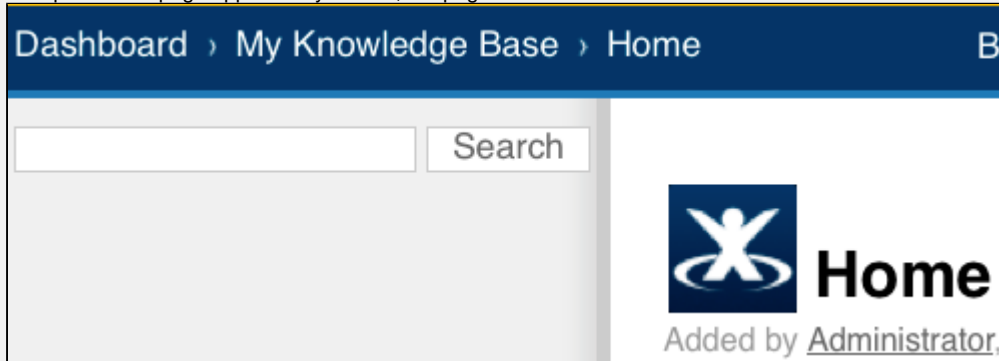
Step 3. Customise the Title and Content of the Homepage

When you created your space, Confluence created a homepage with default content and a default title, 'Home'. You will want to change the title and content.

1. Go back to your space homepage, by clicking the space name in the breadcrumbs at the top of the screen. In the example below, the space name is 'My Knowledge Base':



2. The space homepage appears. By default, the page title is 'Home'.



3. Click **Edit**.
4. Change the title to suit your needs.
5. Update the content to suit your needs.
Hint: If you do not know what to add yet, just add a short description. You can refine the content of the page later. Take a look at an [example of a homepage](#).
6. Click **Save**.

Step 4. Customise the Documentation Theme

When you added this space you chose the Documentation theme, which provides a left-hand navigation bar and a good look and feel for a knowledge base. If necessary, you can configure the Documentation theme to add your own page header and footer or to customise the default left-hand navigation bar. These customisations affect the online look and feel of your knowledge base. See [Configuring the Documentation Theme](#) for the full description in our product documentation.

1. Choose **Browse > Space Admin**.
2. Click **Themes** in the left-hand panel.
3. If the space is not yet using the Documentation theme, apply the theme now.
4. Click **Configure theme** in the yellow area of the 'Current Theme' section at the top of the page.

Current Theme

The current theme controls the layout and colours of this space.



Documentation Theme

This theme is well suited for structured content, such as documentation. It features a table of contents (page tree) on the left, making it easier to see the structure of a space and move from page to page. You can customise the left-hand panel, page header and page footer. This theme supports Firefox, Safari and Internet Explorer 7+.

Configure theme - further customise this theme's options

5. The 'Documentation Theme Configuration' screen appears. Customise the left-hand navigation bar, header and footer to suit your needs. Details are in the [documentation](#). Here are some hints:
 - The **Page Tree** check box determines whether your space will display the default search box and table of contents (page tree) in the left-hand panel.
 - The **Limit search results to the current space** check box determines whether Confluence will search only the current space or the whole Confluence site. This setting affects the default search. Viewers can override it each time they do a search.
 - Enter text, images, macros and other wiki markup into any or all of the three text boxes for the the left-hand navigation bar, header and footer. You can use the [Include macro](#) and the [Excerpt Include macro](#) to include re-usable content.
 - Any content you add to the navigation panel will appear *above* the default page tree.
 - If you like, you can remove the default page tree (by unticking the box) and add your own, customised version of the [Pagetree](#) macro instead.
6. Click **Save**.

Example of a Customised Footer

Take a look at the footer of a page in the [Crowd documentation space](#).

Get Support Log a request with our support team.	Report a Bug Raise an issue for our developers.	Get Answers See answers from the community.	Add to our Docs Tweet, blog and update our documentation.
Except where otherwise noted, content in this space is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 Australia License .			

To produce the above footer, we have the following content in the footer panel in the Documentation theme configuration screen:

Footer	<pre>{include:_Documentation Footer|nopanel=true} {include:ALLDOC:_Copyright Notice|nopanel=true}</pre>
--------	---

Here it is in text form:

```
{include:_Documentation Footer|nopanel=true}
{include:ALLDOC:_Copyright Notice|nopanel=true}
```

The above content consists of two [Include macros](#).

- The first macro includes a page called [_Documentation Footer](#). This page contains the big blue buttons and hyperlinked text.
- The second macro includes a page from a different space, the ALLDOC space, called [_Copyright Notice](#). This page includes our standard copyright notice, used in all our documentation spaces.
- In each include macro, the content has been drawn from an inclusions library, a hidden content repository, from which you can store frequently and reusable content throughout your knowledge base space.

Step 5. Create an Inclusions Library to Manage Reusable Content

Using Confluence, you can dynamically include content from one page into another page. You can include a whole page into another one, using the [Include macro](#). You can also define an 'excerpt' on a page, and then include that excerpted text into another page using the [Excerpt Include macro](#).

To organise your re-usable content, we recommend that you create a set of pages called an 'inclusions library'.

1. Choose **Browse > Pages**.
2. Choose **Add > Page**. This will add a page at the root of the space, at the same level as the homepage.
3. Enter a suitable title. We use `'_InclusionsLibrary'`. The unusual format of the title helps to let people know this page is special.
4. Enter some content on the page. We enter text explaining the purpose of the inclusions library and how to re-use the content. You can copy our text by clicking through to one of the example pages listed below.
5. Add child pages containing your re-usable content. See the examples of our own inclusions libraries listed below.

Some notes about inclusions libraries:

- The inclusions library is not a specific feature of Confluence. The pages in the inclusions library are just like any other Confluence page.
- The pages are located at the root of the wiki space, not under the homepage. This means that they will not appear in the table of contents on the left and they will not be picked up by the search in the left-hand navigation bar either.
- The pages will be picked up by other global searches, because they are just normal wiki pages.
- We have decided to start the page name with an underscore. For example, `'_InclusionLibrary'`. This indicates that the page is slightly unusual, and will help prevent people from changing the page name or updating the content without realising that the content is re-used in various pages.

Examples of Inclusions Libraries

Here are some examples in our documentation:

- [Crowd inclusions library](#)
- [Confluence inclusions library](#)

Step 6. Create the Table of Contents

Create the table of contents for your knowledge base, by adding the top-level pages for all the usual sections. For instance, our Technical Support Team designed the following pages in the [Confluence Knowledge Base](#) on our public wiki:

- Browse Articles by Label
- Browse Articles by Top Ranked Content
- Browse Articles by Page Tree Hierarchy
- Browse Articles by Version
- Subscribe to Proactive Announcements

1. Go back to your space homepage, by clicking the space name in the breadcrumbs at the top of the screen.
2. Choose **Add > Page**. This will add the page as a child of the homepage.
3. Enter the page title, for instance: 'Browse Articles by Label'.
4. Enter the content of the page.
 - *Hint:* If you do not know what to add yet, just add a short description then refine the content of the page later. If you like, you can follow a similar outline as the Confluence Knowledge Base and add the [Label List macro](#). This displays a hyperlinked alphabetical index of all labels within the current space. As you create content in this space and apply appropriate labels, the macro will update this page automatically.

Browse Content by Label

Click on one of the labels below to find related content:

Below are the **181** labels used in **Confluence Knowledge Base** listed alphabetically. Click a label to see its associated content.

A-B [apache](#),
[applinks](#),
[appserver](#),
[attachments](#), [backup](#),
[bamboo](#), [build](#)

C [cache](#),
[calendar](#),
[camelcase](#),
[camel_case](#),
[captcha](#),
[case_sensitivity](#),

D [dashboard](#),
[database](#), [db2](#),
[deadlock](#), [directory](#),
[doc_import](#),
[documentation_theme](#),
[dynamictasklist](#)

5. Click **Save**.

Now do the same for all the sections of your Knowledge Base that you wish to appear in the left-navigation bar of the Documentation theme. Below is what the Table of Contents looks like for our Confluence Knowledge Base:

Search the Knowledge Base and Documentation Spaces

Browse Content

- ☐ Browse Articles by Label
- ☐ Browse Articles by Top Ranked Content
- ☒ Browse Articles by Page Tree Hierarchy
- ☒ Browse Articles by Version
- ☒ Subscribe to Proactive Announcements

Step 7. Make your Knowledge Base Proactive with a Subscribable RSS Feed

Let's populate the knowledge base homepage with content by creating an RSS feed that your coworkers and customers can subscribe to and receive important updates on your knowledge base and technical alerts on your products.

This is a strategy that Atlassian's Technical Support Team uses to create a proactive knowledge base that provides technical alerts to customers and coworkers and helps solve support issues before they're even created.

By following the quick guide below, you'll create a homepage similar to the one Atlassian's Technical Support Team has created for the [Confluence Knowledge Base](#) on our public wiki and turn your knowledge base from reactive to proactive:

Technical Announcements

Copy the RSS feed into your favourite RSS reader:

Important Technical Announcements for Confluence

Blog Posts



End of Support and New Support Announcements for Confluence 3.5 and Confluence 4.0 created by

Sarah Maddox [Atlassian Technical Writer]

Confluence Knowledge Base Jan 06



Welcome to the Confluence Technical Announcements Blog created by

Jeremy Largman [Atlassian]

Confluence Knowledge Base Dec 22



Technical Alert for Confluence 3.4 - Login Errors when Delegating to Crowd created by

Adam Laskowski [Atlassian]

Confluence Knowledge Base Oct 14

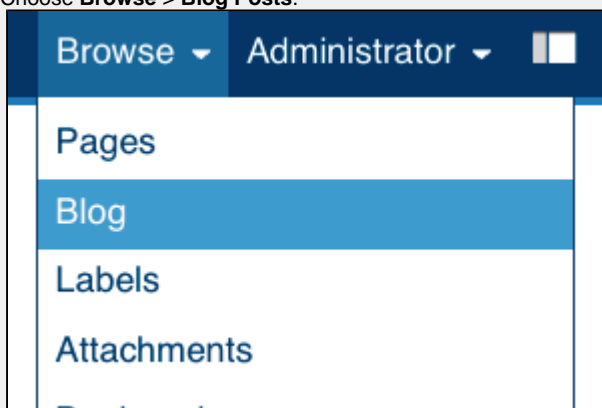
[View more recent blog posts](#)



Creating your RSS Feed

Confluence can filter spaces by content type. To filter your knowledge base for 'blog post' content, do the following:

1. Choose **Browse > Blog Posts**.



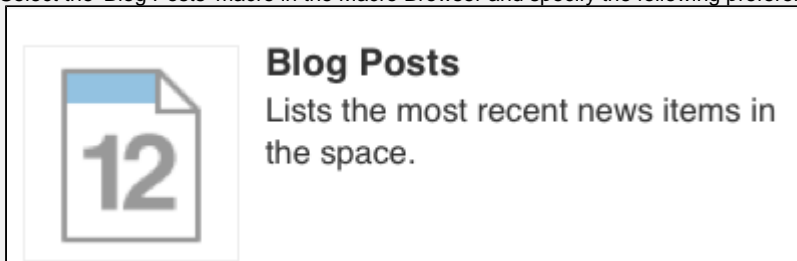
2. Copy this URL to your clipboard.
 3. Create an RSS feed for the URL of your knowledge base space.
- i** Now your RSS feed will consist of any blog posts created in the knowledge base space.

Highlighting Your Technical Announcement RSS Feed

1. Go to your space homepage by clicking the appropriate breadcrumb in the top-left of your screen.
2. Click **Edit**.
3. Insert an 'h2' heading, such as 'Important Technical Announcements'.
4. Insert bold text that reads something like, 'Copy the RSS feed into your favourite RSS reader:'.
5. Choose **Insert > Other Macros** to open the Macro Browser.
6. Select the 'Panel' macro in the Macro Browser and specify your desired macro preferences. We recommend that you change the **Panel Title**, **Border Style**, and **Background Color** to further highlight the panel on the page.
7. Click **Insert**.

Insert a Blog Posts Macro

1. Click in the Panel macro placeholder and choose **Insert > Other Macros** to open the Macro Browser again.
2. Select the 'Blog Posts' macro in the Macro Browser and specify the following preferences:



- **Content Type to Display:** Title
 - **Restrict to These Spaces:** Your knowledge base Spacekey
 - **Maximum Number of News Items:** 5
 - **Sort By:** Creation
 - **Reverse Sort:** Tick the box
3. Click **Insert** to insert the Blog Posts macro onto the page inside your Panel macro.
- Now your panel will display the last 5 blog posts created in your knowledge base space.

Inserting your RSS Feed into your 'Technical Announcement' Panel

First, let's create a link so that your coworkers and customers can view all of the blog posts in your knowledge base space. See [Working with Links](#) for a full description in our product documentation.

1. Place your cursor after/below the Blog Posts macro in the Panel macro placeholder.
2. Type: 'View more recent blog posts'.
3. Highlight this text and click **Link** on the editor toolbar.

4. Select 'Web Link' and paste the link you copied to create your RSS Feed.
5. Click **Insert**.

Now, let's insert your RSS Feed into your panel by linking an image. See [Linking an Image](#) for a full description in our product documentation.

1. Attach an RSS Icon  to the page by dragging and dropping it into the editor (preferably below the link you just created). See [Drag-and-Drop](#) for a full description in our product documentation.
2. Click the RSS Icon image and then click the 'Align right' button on the editor toolbar.
3. Click **Border** in the image properties panel.
4. Link the RSS Icon by selecting the image and then clicking **Link** on the editor toolbar.
5. Click the 'Web Link' tab and insert the RSS Feed URL you created.
6. Click **Insert** to link your RSS Feed to the RSS Icon image.
7. Click **Save** to save your page and test your RSS Icon.

Congratulations! You have successfully created a proactive knowledge base.

Step 8. Insert Google Analytics Code into Confluence's Custom HTML

Now that you have a strong foundation for a knowledge base, it's critical to assess how effectively it services your customers. Google Analytics is a tool that gives you rich insights into your website traffic and marketing effectiveness. You are going to want to understand how your customers are accessing the resources in your knowledge base. This is a quick guide to inserting Google Analytics HTML code into Confluence so you can measure your knowledge base traffic.

1. If you don't have one already, create a Google Account and then create a Google Analytics Account using your Confluence instance's URL.
2. Copy the Google Analytics code to your clipboard.
3. Log into Confluence as a System Administrator or Confluence Administrator.
4. Go to the Confluence 'Administration Console'. To do this:
 - a. Choose **Browse > Confluence Admin**.
 - b. Enter your password and click **Confirm**. You'll be temporarily logged into a secure session to access the 'Administrator Console'.
5. Click **Custom HTML** under 'Look and Feel'.
6. Click **Edit** to insert custom HTML into your Confluence instance.

Insert Custom HTML	
At end of the HEAD	
At beginning of the BODY	
At end of the BODY	

7. Paste your Analytics code you have saved to your clipboard into the table labeled **At end of the BODY**.
8. Click **Save**.

You can now monitor the activity and traffic for every page you create in your Confluence instance and Knowledge Base.

Hint: If your knowledge base only represents a space within your greater Confluence instance, you can search Google Analytics for activity in the specific space by exclusively filtering for the space key.

Filter Page:

Filter 'Top Content' using a Space Key


 Read David Simpson's blog post about [Tracking Confluence Usage with Google Analytics](#) for more information.

Step 9. Set up Atlassian's Content Survey and Reporting Plugin

Now that you can monitor the traffic and activity of your knowledge base, let's measure its effectiveness. When the [Content Survey and Reporting Plugin](#) is activated for a space, it will generate a report that includes:


- Direct feedback from customers about article quality
- Amalgamated "composite score" results
- Answers to secondary questions, such as "Was the info complete?" or "Was the article well-written?".
- Rollup at-a-glance view of the metrics for the whole space.

Lastly, the Content Survey and Reporting Plugin will institute 'intelligent searching' which means that based on the results of the surveys, higher ranked pages are promoted in search results, so your best and most popular pages are found easiest. This is a quick guide for how to set up the Content Survey and Reporting Plugin.


 This plugin only functions properly if the Documentation Theme is applied to the space. Let's install the Content Survey and Reporting Plugin using Confluence's [Universal Plugin Manager](#).

Installing the Content Survey and Reporting Plugin

1. Log into Confluence as a System Administrator or Confluence Administrator.
2. Go to the Confluence 'Administration Console'. To do this:
 - a. Choose **Browse > Confluence Admin**.
 - b. Enter your password and click **Confirm**. You'll be temporarily logged into a secure session to access the 'Administrator Console'.
3. Click **Plugins** under 'Configuration'
4. Click the **Install** tab of the UPM and search for the 'Content Survey and Reporting Plugin'.


 **Install**

The Universal Plugin Manager allows you to view, manage and upgrade your installed plugins, as well as install new ones from the [Atlassian Plugin Exchange](#).

Manage Existing
Upgrade (5)
Install
Confluence Upgrade Check
Audit Log
 [Upload Plugin](#)

Plugins to show:

Plugins matching "content survey and reporting plugin"

	Content Survey and Reporting Plugin	Great for a Knowledge Base, Documentation or an Intranet, this plugin includes space-wide configurable surveys, reports, intelligent searching algorithms, top articles and dynamic content by labels macros, and multi-space QuickNav searching.
---	--	---

5. Click **Install Now**.

Now that you've installed the Content Survey and Reporting Plugin, let's configure a survey:

Configuring a Survey

1. Go to your space homepage by clicking the appropriate breadcrumb in the top-left of your screen.
2. Choose **Browse > Space Admin**.
3. Click **Configure Survey** under 'Knowledge Base Survey'. Here you can:
 - Add a question
 - Edit a question's text
 - Activate or deactivate a question
 - Edit the response text
4. Configure a 'Primary Question' for the survey

Primary Question:	Was this helpful?
Add an Additional Question:	
Edit Survey Completed Response (anonymous):	Thanks!
Edit Survey Completed Response (user):	Thanks!

5. Click **Save**.

Now that you've added a primary question, let's test out the plugin by adding it to the footer of the Documentation theme so that every page within your Knowledge Base space includes your survey.

Invoking the Content Survey and Reporting Macro

1. Go to your space homepage by clicking the appropriate breadcrumb in the top-left of your screen.
2. Choose **Browse > Space Admin**.
3. Click **Themes** under 'Look and Feel'.
4. Click **Configure theme** in the yellow area of the 'Current Theme' section at the top of the page.
5. Visit the 'Footer' section of the 'Documentation Theme Configuration' page and insert this recommended markup to achieve a nice layout of the Content Survey and Reporting Plugin:

```
{section}
{column:width=5%}
{column}
{column:width=90%}
{panel}
{kbsurvey}
{panel}
{column}
{column:width=5%}
{column}
{section}
```

6. Click **Save** and go to your space homepage to view your Content Survey and Reporting Plugin in the footer of the page.

With the Content Survey and Reporting Plugin you can dramatically improve the quality of our knowledge base and the efficiency with which your team creates and maintains it. Here is an example of how our Technical Support Team uses the Content Survey and Reporting Plugin in the Confluence Knowledge Base:

Help us improve!

Is this article helpful? ☐ Yes ☐ No

Is the content complete? ☐ Yes ☐ No

Is it well written? ☐ Yes ☐ No

Content Survey and Reporting Plugin Results:

Survey results are viewable by Space Administrators only. The plugin develops three results:

- **Pages with Results** - Determine page-by-page, which are you most effective knowledge base articles and which ones need improvement.

View: Pages with Results | Pages without Results | Rollup Report					
Confluence Knowledge Base	Direct Feedback		Secondary Questions		
	Total Ballots	Composite Score	Is this article helpful?	Is the content complete?	Is it well written?
Cannot Save Large Pages with Over 700,000 Characters	2	6	100% (2/2)	100% (1/1)	100% (2/2)
Unable to Export to HTML due to Page Title with * Symbol	2	6	100% (2/2)	100% (1/1)	100% (1/1)
Unable to Download Attachments in IE over SSL	2	4	100% (2/2)	100% (2/2)	100% (2/2)
MySQL Table is Marked as Crashed and Should be Repaired	1	3	100% (1/1)	100% (1/1)	100% (1/1)
ClientAbortException java.net.SocketException Broken Pipe	1	3	100% (1/1)	100% (1/1)	100% (1/1)
Getting PacketTooBigException Error 'Packet for query is too large'	1	3	100% (1/1)	100% (1/1)	100% (1/1)
Cluster Panic due to Multiple Deployments	1	3	100% (1/1)	0% (0/0)	0% (0/0)
Page Footer Appears in the Middle of the Page	1	3	100% (1/1)	0% (0/0)	0% (0/0)
Confluence Fails to Process Index Queue Automatically	1	3	100% (1/1)	0% (0/0)	0% (0/0)
Fatal JVM Crash - 'java.lang.OutOfMemoryError ... Out of Swap Space?'	1	3	100% (1/1)	100% (1/1)	100% (1/1)
'A call into SPS Single Sign-on failed' Due to Invalid Credentials in the Database	1	2	100% (1/1)	100% (1/1)	100% (1/1)
Database Deadlock on Microsoft SQL Server	2	2	50% (1/2)	0% (0/2)	0% (0/1)
Cluster Panic due to Multicast Traffic Communication Problem	2	2	50% (1/2)	0% (0/0)	0% (0/0)
Confluence Rebuild Indexing task fails to complete.	1	2	100% (1/1)	100% (1/1)	100% (1/1)
Broken Page Layout Due to Disabled Velocity Helper Module in Documentation Theme Plugin	1	-1	0% (0/1)	0% (0/1)	100% (1/1)

As you can see, the plugin develops a '**Composite Score**' which ranks articles in search, so your highest scoring (best) content can be found most easily. The score is based on the last 32 votes cast, using the global search configuration. See [Confluence Content Survey and Reporting Plugin](#) for a full description on how Global Search boosting works.

- **Pages without Results** - These are the pages in your knowledge base without survey results.
- **Rollup Report** - This is the summary of all survey results. The report can be used to determine how effective your overall knowledge base content is.

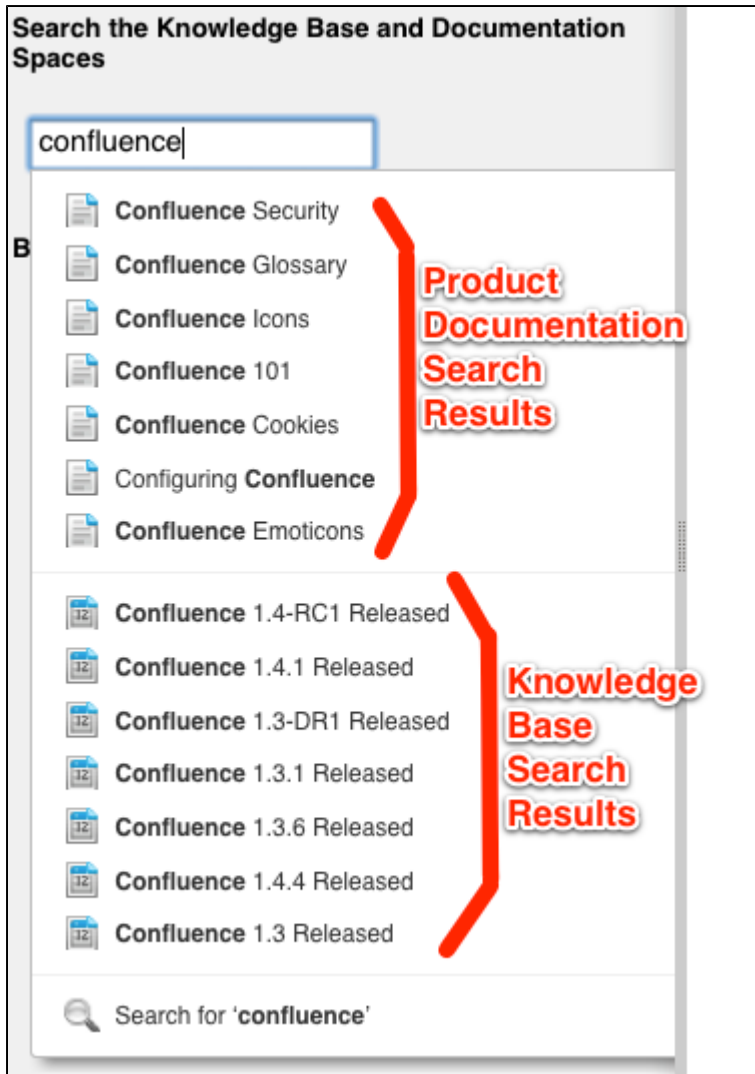
Number of Pages in Space	Total Ballots Cast	Is this article helpful?	Is the content complete?	Is it well written?
645	29	59% (17/29)	61% (11/18)	84% (16/19)

Searching Multiple Spaces from your Knowledge Base

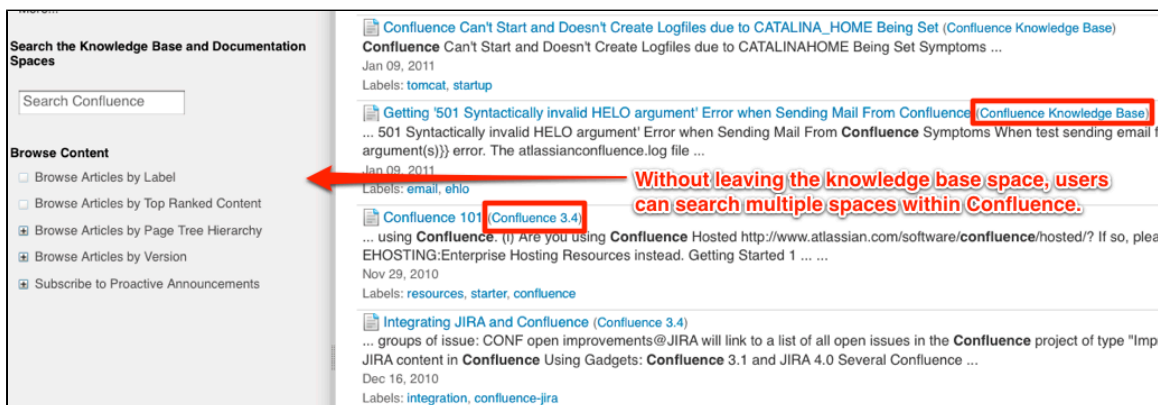
As mentioned, the Content Survey and Reporting Plugin generates a composite score that ranks pages and articles within your knowledge base to make the highest (most well regarded) pages more retrievable by visitors. The plugin also improves Confluence search by allowing users to search multiple spaces without ever leaving your knowledge base space. This is really helpful for users that are unfamiliar with Confluence because they can keep the knowledge base as a point of reference within the greater instance of Confluence.

At Atlassian, our product knowledge bases and product documentation exist in the same Confluence instance so that we can make both available to 'Anonymous' users. Our Technical Support team uses the Content Survey and Reporting Plugin to allow visiting users to search for Confluence resources in the product documentation space from the Confluence Knowledge Base space. This provides the visitor twice the chances of finding an answer to their question.

In the image below, you can see the space specific search used in the left-navigation bar to find content related to Confluence in both the 'Documentation' and 'Knowledge Base' spaces. Pages in the 'Documentation' space are listed first and pages in the 'Knowledge Base' space are listed second.



If a user doesn't choose one of the recommendations from the quick search drop-down menu, the plugin will display a search results page inside the Knowledge Base space rather than directing them to the Confluence global search page. By keeping the visitor in the same space, it will help new users find the information they need and only navigate to pages they intend to, minimising confusion and the number of times a user has to hit the 'Back' button in their browser.



Note about Plugin Support

Before installing a plugin into your Confluence site, please check the plugin's information page to see whether it is supported by Atlassian, by another vendor, or not at all. See our guidelines on [plugin support](#). Next Steps

See [Using Templates and Formatting Macros in a Knowledge Base](#) for next steps.

Using Templates and Formatting Macros in a Knowledge Base

This page is part of the guide to [developing a knowledge base on Confluence Wiki](#). We have already shown you how to [create your knowledge base space](#). Now we offer an introduction to the templates that Confluence provides.

**Quick guide to templates in Confluence**

- A template is a page with predefined content that can be used as a prototype when creating other pages.
- Templates are available across the Confluence site (global templates) or per space (space templates).
- Both 'global templates' and 'space templates', as described on this page, define the content of a page. They do not define the content of an entire space.
- You can import predefined templates, including those shipped with Confluence and additional templates from the [Atlassian Plugin Exchange](#).
- To create a template for an entire space, see our guide to [creating your documentation space](#).

Space Information Design

One question that comes up is whether a knowledge base should be implemented as a decision matrix, with a multi-select or other list. We knew that most of our users visit our documentation directly from search engines. Early on, we learned that at least for us, Google Analytics was showing that most traffic was coming from search engines, not from within our site. See [Metrics](#) for a discussion on that. So, we knew to focus on optimising page titles and tags rather than focus on a decision matrix.

Confluence's Built-in Feature Set**Page Templates**

Confluence's [Page Templates](#) are an easy place to start. Begin by choosing how you want your templates to look. Here's how we made our page template:

```
h3. Symptoms
FILL IN SYMPTOMS HERE

h3. Cause
FILL IN CAUSE HERE

h3. Resolution
FILL IN RESOLUTION HERE

{htmlcomment}
ENTER SUPPORT TICKET LINKS
{htmlcomment}
```



The {htmlcomment} macro is part of Adaptavist's [Content Formatting Macros](#), a handy plugin.

You might consider the [scaffolding plugin](#) or [Form Field Markup](#) for filling out forms. Our support engineers are quite used to using wiki markup (we live and breathe Confluence!), so we left this template as is.

Construct a Home Page: Section, Panels, RSS, and Notifications

Check out the Confluence Knowledge Base Home. The colored content in the middle of the page is an amalgamation of panel, rss and attachment macros. Go to [Tools >> Wiki Markup](#) to see.



Wondering how we just made [Tools >> Wiki Markup](#) in a different font in the sentence above? Use the `{{ }}` notation to get the courier font, which you can use for breaking out text. And this would be, of course, a {tip}. Remember, you can visit [Tools >> Wiki Markup](#) on this page as well!

The wiki markup there is a little confusing, but it breaks down like this:

1. A [Section](#) macro, defining the top and bottom of the page
2. [Column](#) macros, dividing the panels into three
3. [Panel macros](#), with hot, hot, hot html colours
4. [Content By Label](#) Macros
5. An RSS Icon, embedded as an attachment, with a link to the RSS feed. Notice the magic on this one:

```
[!rss20.gif|align=right!|http://confluence.atlassian.com/createrssfeed.action?types=page&sort
```



That's a link, with the attachment as the alias, an alignment parameter, and the URL to the RSS feed. Cool, right?

Exporting Pages

These are built-in Confluence features. Check [Page Exports](#). You can learn how to customise the PDF export as well.

Content Macros

Besides the ones listed above, some favourite macros for formatting content around the site are the [Tip](#), [Info](#), [Warning](#), and [Note](#) Macros, and the [Code](#) macro. They make things look great. We also use Adaptavist's [Content Formatting Macros](#) when we really want to bring our A-game.



Every once in a while we get mileage out of the `{nomarkup}` [user macro](#), when we want to discuss using a macro itself. I suppose that's because Confluence is one of the products we support! It might be useful for other reasons...

JIRA Issues Macro

Using JIRA for bug tracking? You can't expect your users to necessarily have exactly the right JQL filters to show the appropriate topics. We have some nice JIRA Issues Macros on display. One of my favourites is in the JIRA KB's [Causes for OutOfMemory Errors](#):

```
{jiraissues:url=http://jira.atlassian.com/sr/jira.issueviews:searchrequest-xml/temp/SearchRequest.xml
```

Notice the JQL there including components and sorting, plus the specific columns.

Labels

Sometimes, an article needs to be cross listed. For that we label our articles. Some great macros to use for this are `{contentbylabel}`, `{listlabels}` and the `{dynamiccontentbylabels}` macro in the [Content Survey Plugin](#).

Next Steps

You now have a good idea of how Confluence templates work. What next? Take a look at [Proactive Communications in a Knowledge Base](#).

Proactive Communications in a Knowledge Base

This page is part of the guide to [developing a knowledge base on Confluence Wiki](#). We have already shown you how to [create your knowledge base space](#) and how to [use templates and formatting macros](#). We touched a bit on creating proactive communications in [Creating your Knowledge Base Space](#), and discuss a bit further here.



Quick guide to proactive communications

- A template is a page with predefined content that can be used as a prototype when creating other pages.
- Confluence can either produce or consume rss feeds
- Both the rss and blog-posts macro are a good way to show summaries

Proactive Alerts

Sending technical alerts to customers is a great way to keep customers and staff informed, and good way to reduce support load. At Atlassian we use the Knowledge Base both to consume and produce proactive content for which customers can opt in. This page describes how to achieve that.

Using Confluence as a producer

- The [Working with Blog Posts](#) describes how to produce blog posts from Confluence.
- [E-mailing a Page](#) is a great way to send mass emails to users or an email distribution list.

Using Confluence as a consumer

Even if your Confluence instance isn't producing your proactive content, it can consume and display it in a prominent way:

- The [RSS Feed Macro](#) can consume content from any RSS feed on the Internet.
- We use the [Blog Posts Macro](#) for It looks especially handsome in a panel, accentuated by an RSS image in a link. Here's the wiki markup:

```
h4. Technical Alerts
{panel:title=Important Technical Alerts for Confluence| borderStyle=solid|
borderColor=#ccc| titleBGColor=#f93 | bgColor=#fc9}
{blog-posts:content=title|max=5|sort=modified|spaces=CONFKB|time=30d}
*[View more recent blog
posts|http://confluence.atlassian.com/pages/viewrecentblogposts.action?key=CONFKB]*
[!CONFKB:Confluence Knowledge Base
Home^rss20.gif|align=right!|http://confluence.atlassian.com/createrssfeed.action?types=blogpc
```



Note that the [blog posts macro](#) can display mail! Use it to highlight mail you've sent as alerts, after [archiving mail](#).

Next Steps

You now have a good idea of how to do proactive communications. Next up, consider [Additional Plugins for a Knowledge Base](#) in more detail.

Additional Plugins for a Knowledge Base

This page is part of the guide to [developing a knowledge base on Confluence Wiki](#). This page includes additional plugins that might expand your usage.

Useful Plugins for a Knowledge Base

These are some great plugins for Confluence as a Knowledge Base:

- The [Content Survey and Reporting Plugin](#) gives a good report on popular and unpopular content.
- The [Archiving Plugin](#) flags old content.
- The [Ad Hoc Workflows Plugin](#) or [Content Publishing Plugin](#), which manages workflows and a review process.

Note about Plugin Support

Before installing a plugin into your Confluence site, please check the plugin's information page to see whether it is supported by Atlassian, by another vendor, or not at all. See our guidelines on [plugin support](#).

Bye

Hope you enjoyed the tutorial! Have a chocolate, and please share with us your experiences. You can comment directly on this page or email us at .

Developing an Intranet on Confluence Wiki

This guide is for people who are using Confluence as a platform for an intranet. You will find this guide useful if you want to create a space where your team can collaborate and share information.



Quick guide to creating an intranet space

- Add a space.
- Set the space permissions.
- Customise the title and content of the home page.
- Subscribe to email notifications for any updates made to the space.
- Manage your existing Office documents.
- Import page templates.
- Set up your personal space.
- Publish a blog post.

The rest of this page gives more details of the above procedures.

Step 1. Add a Space

Below is a quick guide to adding a space for your team.

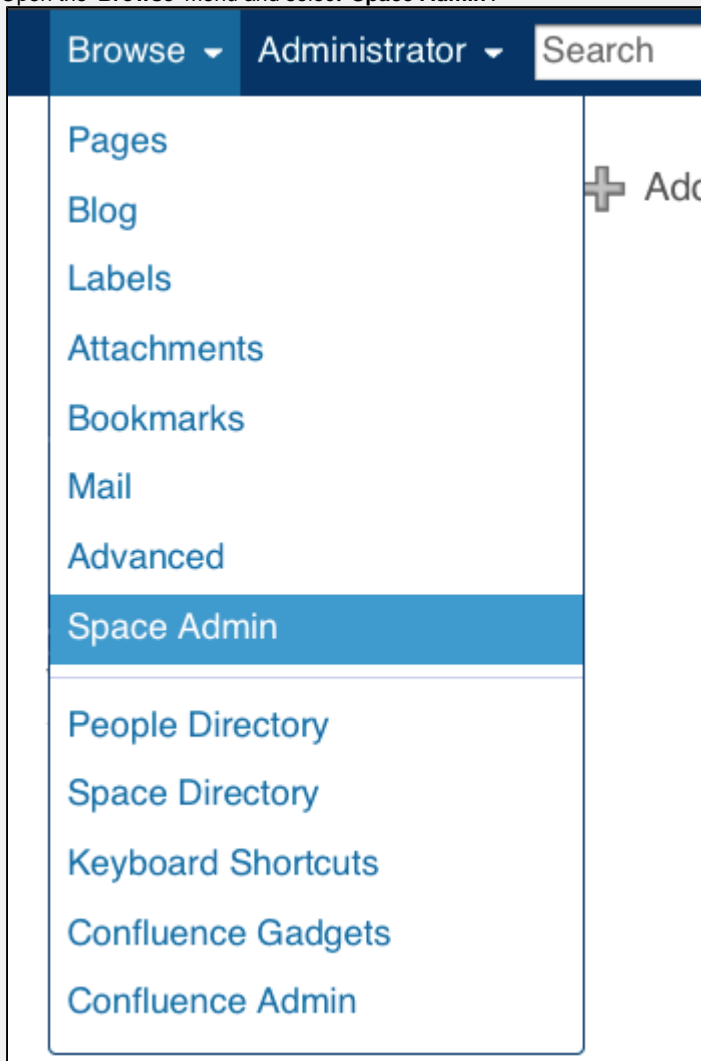
1. Go to the Confluence dashboard and click the '**Add Space**' link.
2. The '**Create Space**' screen appears. Enter a **space name** and a short, unique **space key**.
3. Leave the **permission** settings as default, or choose to allow only yourself to view or contribute content to this space. You can change these settings later and with more flexible options.
4. Select a theme. We recommend the '**Global Look and Feel**' theme for an intranet.
5. Click '**OK**' to add the space to your Confluence site.

The home page of your new space will appear. Because you created the space, you are the space administrator. Now you can do some basic configuration, as described in the sections below.

Step 2. Set the Space Permissions

Define the space permissions to determine who can do what in your new space.

1. Open the '**Browse**' menu and select '**Space Admin**'.



2. Click '**Permissions**' in the left-hand navigation panel.
3. Confirm your administrator access as prompted.
4. Click '**Edit Permissions**'.
5. Set the permissions to suit your needs then click '**Save All**'.
 - You can add **groups** and/or individual **users** to the list, then select the permissions for each group or user.
 - You can also set the permissions for **anonymous** users – these are people who have not logged in to the wiki and will not count towards the number allocated by your license. Anonymous access is available only if enabled for the entire Confluence site. However, it is unlikely you will need anonymous users for your intranet.
 - Note that you can change these permissions at any time. You may want to restrict the permissions to specific groups now, and later open the space to more people.

More about Permissions

Confluence has a robust and granular permissions scheme that you can use to determine who can view, create content and comment within your intranet. There are three levels of permissions in Confluence:

- Global permissions apply across the entire site.
- Space permissions apply to a space.
- Page restrictions allow you to restrict the editing and/or viewing of a specific page.

Space permissions in Confluence are simple yet granular enough to be useful for an intranet. You can:

- Use the permission levels to control who can create pages, delete pages, create comments, delete comments, administer the space, and so on.
- Grant a permission level to one or more users, and/or to one or more groups, and/or to anonymous users. A space administrator has complete control.

Terminology:

- '**Anonymous**' means people who have not logged in to the wiki.
- The '**confluence-users**' group is the default group into which all new users are assigned. Everyone who can log in to Confluence is a member of this group.

For example, you might allow the '**confluence-users**' group permission to create and edit comments, but reserve full editing rights for your team members. Let's assume your team members are all members of the '**dev-team**' group. The example below shows that members of the '**dev-team**' group have all permissions except space administration, but '**Ryan Reynolds**' only has a few editing rights.

Labels

Attachments

Bookmarks

Mail

Advanced

Space Admin

Groups

These are the permissions currently assigned to groups for this space.

	Pages					Blog		Comments		Attachments		Mail	Space	
	View	Add	Export	Restrict	Remove	Add	Remove	Add	Remove	Add	Remove	Remove	Export	Admin
confluence-users	✓	✓	✗	✗	✗	✓	✗	✓	✗	✓	✗	✓	✓	✗
dev-team	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗

Edit Permissions

Individual Users

These are the permissions currently assigned to individual users for this space.

	Pages					Blog		Comments		Attachments		Mail	Space	
	View	Add	Export	Restrict	Remove	Add	Remove	Add	Remove	Add	Remove	Remove	Export	Admin
Administrator (admin)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Ryan Reynolds (randerson@atlassian.com)	✓	✓	✗	✗	✗	✓	✗	✓	✗	✓	✗	✗	✓	✗

Edit Permissions

Example: Allow Confluence users some edit rights while your team maintains full edit rights for content creation in the space.

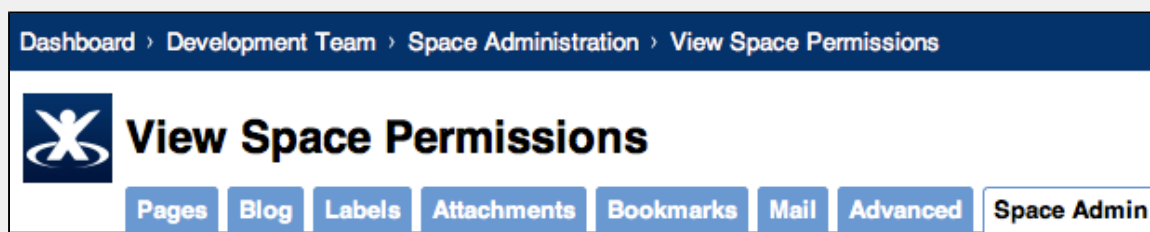
For detailed information, see the documentation on:

- [Global permissions](#)
- [Space permissions](#)
- [Page restrictions](#)
- [Users and groups](#)

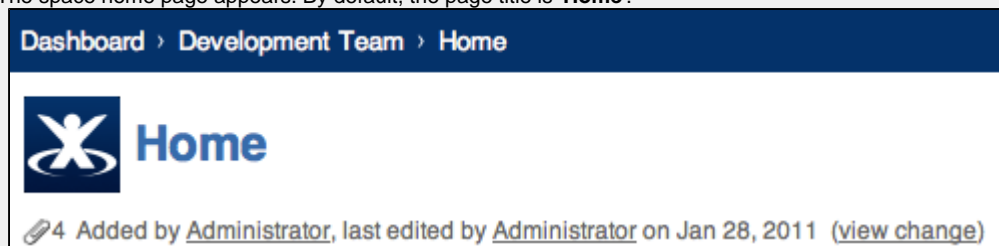
Step 3. Customise the Title and Content of the Home Page

When you created your space, Confluence created a home page with default content and a default title, 'Home'. You will want to change the title and content to suit your team.

1. Go back to your space home page, by clicking the space name in the breadcrumbs at the top of the screen. In the example below, the space name is 'Development Team Space':



2. The space home page appears. By default, the page title is 'Home'.



3. Click 'Edit'.
4. The page opens in edit mode. Change the title to suit your needs.

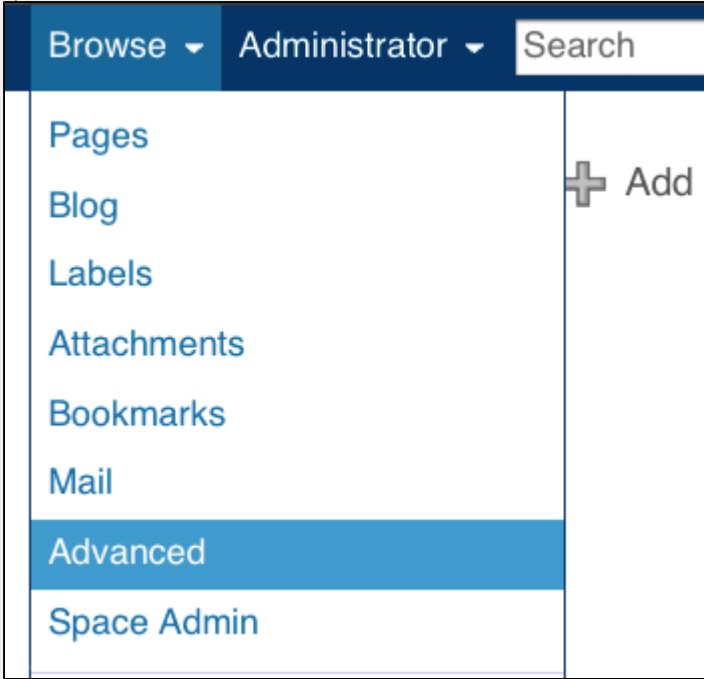


5. Update the content to suit your needs.
Hint: If you do not know what to add yet, just add a short description. You can refine the content of the page at any time.
6. Click 'Save' to save your home page.

Step 4. Subscribe to Email Notifications for Updates Made to the Space

You can configure your email notifications to suit your needs: Subscribe to all blog posts from Confluence, subscribe to your network, or stay informed about any changes in a specific space. Below is a quick guide to monitoring a space's content. See [Watching a Space](#) for a full description.

1. Open the **'Browse'** menu and select **'Advanced'**.

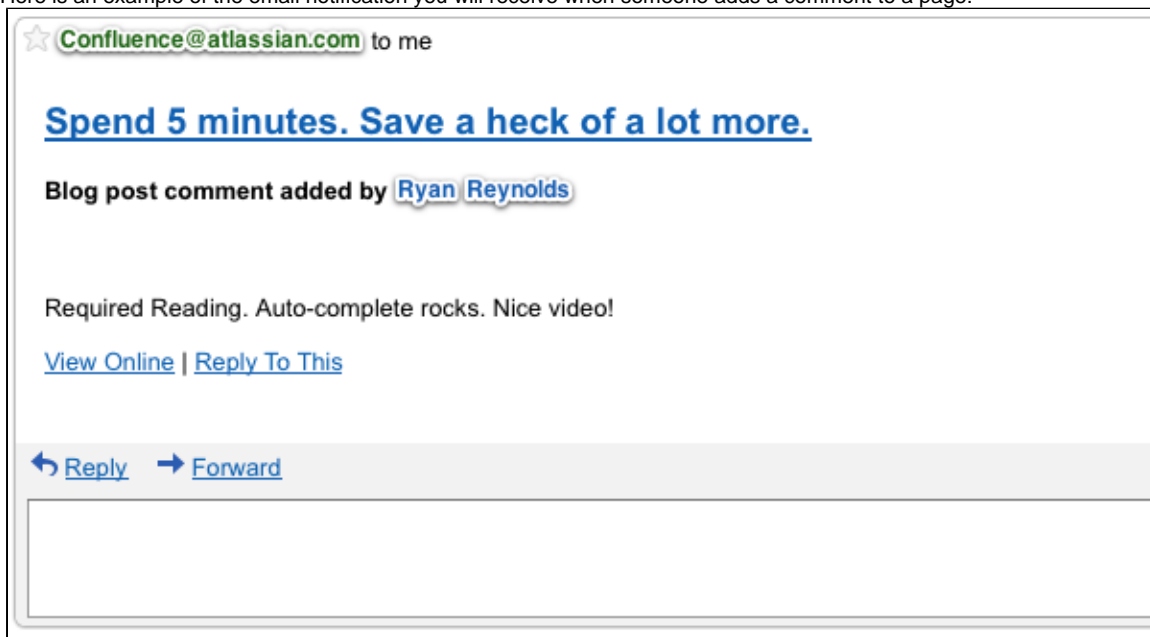


2. Click **'Start watching this space'** in the bottom section of the left-hand navigation panel.

If at any time you wish to stop watching the space, just click **'Stop watching this space'**.

Example of an Email Notification

Here is an example of the email notification you will receive when someone adds a comment to a page:



★ Confluence@atlassian.com to me

Spend 5 minutes. Save a heck of a lot more.

Blog post comment added by [Ryan Reynolds](#)

Required Reading. Auto-complete rocks. Nice video!

[View Online](#) | [Reply To This](#)

↩ [Reply](#) → [Forward](#)

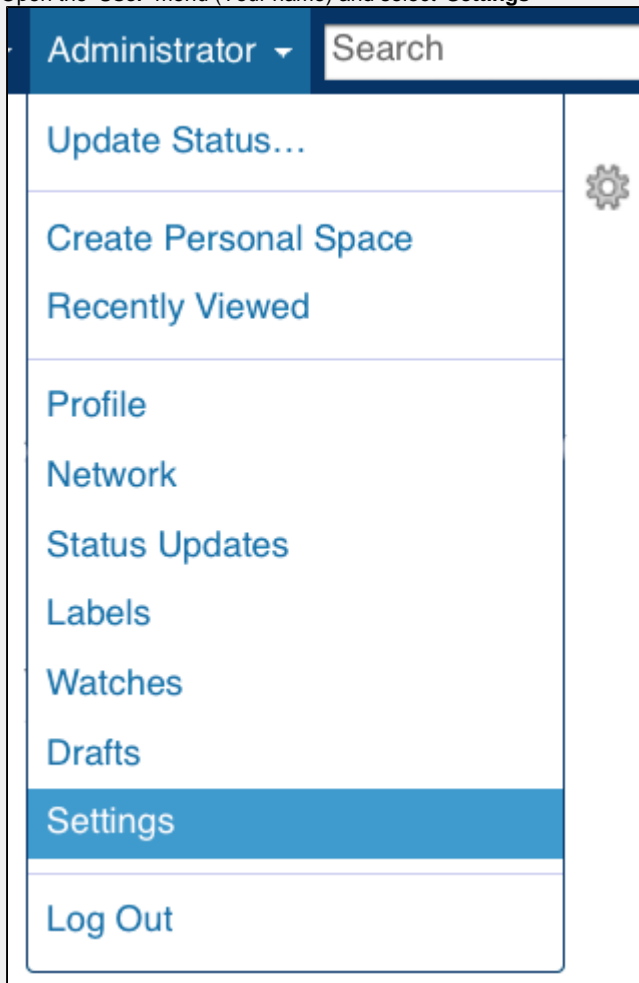
More about Notifications

You can specify the notifications you want to receive on a global, space and page level. The quick guide above demonstrated how to set up notifications for a space. Now we will show you how to configure your notifications on the global and page levels.

Global Notifications

Global notification settings determine the overall behaviour of the notifications you receive from Confluence.

1. Open the '**User**' menu (Your name) and select '**Settings**'



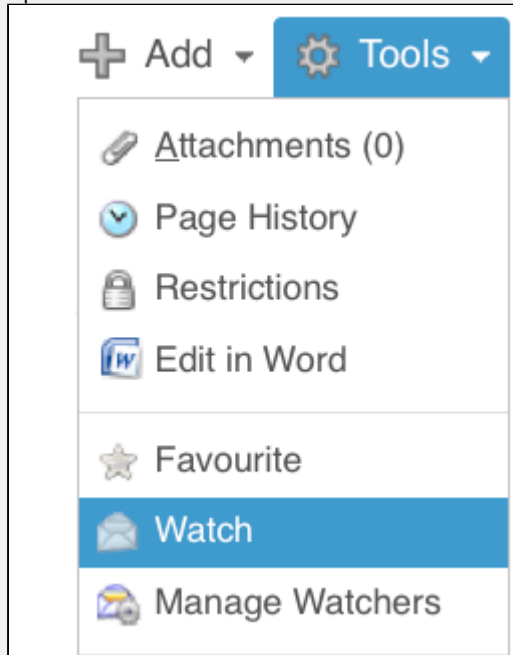
2. Click '**Email**' in the left-hand navigation panel.
3. Click '**Edit**'.
4. Change the default settings to suit your needs. You can alter these email settings at any time.
5. Click '**Submit**' to save your changes.

Page and Blog Post Notifications

Follow the quick guide below to receive notifications from Confluence about changes to and comments on a specific page or blog post. See [Watching a Page or Blog Post](#) for a full description.

You can watch any given page or blog post that you have permission to view. We will use your space's home page as an example.

1. Open the home page of your space.
2. Open the **'Tools'** menu and select **'Watch'**.



You are now watching the current page and Confluence will notify you about any updates made or comments added.

Note that Confluence will **not** notify you about content changes that are due to the output of a macro. For example: The output of the [Children macro](#) will change if someone adds a child page. The page containing the Children macro will show the new child page. But the page content itself has not been edited, so no notifications will be sent.

You can stop watching a page or blog post at any time. Just open the page, go to the 'Tools' menu and click **'Stop Watching'**.

Step 5. Attach or Import Office Documents if Applicable

Below are some guidelines on managing your existing Office documents in Confluence. You can choose to attach them to a Confluence page, so that team members can view and access them in Confluence. Or you can import the documents into Confluence, converting the content to wiki format.

Attaching Office Documents to a Page

You can use Confluence as a central repository for your team's the Microsoft Office documents. This means that you can share your Office documents without having to email them to your teammates. People can view the Office documents even if they do not have Office installed on their computers.

1. Go to your space home page, by clicking the space name in the breadcrumbs at the top of the screen.
2. Hovering over the **'Tools'** menu and click **'Attachments'**.
3. Choose one of the following methods for attaching files to the page:
 - Use the 'Attachments' view's 'browse and attach' feature to attach one or more file(s):
 - a. Click the **'Browse'** button.
 - b. Browse through your files and select the file that you would like to attach to the page.
 - c. Enter a description for the attachment in the **'Comment'** text field (optional).
 - d. Click **'Attach more files'** if required. More attachment entry fields will appear, allowing you to attach more files.
 - e. Click the **'Attach'** button.

Attach File

You cannot attach files with names containing '+' or '&' characters.

1. Comment:

[Attach more files](#)

- Alternatively, use the drag-and-drop feature to attach one or more file(s): Drag one or more file(s) accessible from your computer and drop them onto the 'Attachments' view. The 'Attach File(s)' message box appears, indicating the upload status of the file(s) being attached to your page.

Attach File(s)

Example of Image.png

478.73 Kb of 478.73 Kb

Excel Spread Sheet.xls

515.23 Kb of 36.50 Kb

Microsoft Word.docx

672.22 Kb of 156.99 Kb

PowerPoint.pptx

805.72 Kb of 229.96 Kb

In Progress

Importing Existing Word Documents into Confluence

You can also import content from Microsoft Word into Confluence, so that it becomes a wiki page. See [Importing an Office Document into Confluence](#) for a full description.

1. Go to your space home page, by clicking the space name in the breadcrumbs at the top of the screen.
2. Open the **'Tools'** menu and select **'Import Word Document'**. The Office Connector import screen will appear.
3. Click the **'Browse'** button and find the Office document on your local drive or network.
4. Click the **'Open'** or **'Upload'** button provided by your browser. The path and file name of the document will now appear in the text box on the Office Connector import screen.
5. Click the **'Next'** button. The import document options screen will display.

Development Team Space

Import Word Document: Configuration

Root page title:

Where to import: ☒ Import as a new page in the current space
☐ Replace Development Team Space
☐ Delete existing children of Development Team Space

Title conflicts: ☒ Rename imported pages if page name already exists
☐ Replace existing pages with imported pages of the same title
☐ Remove existing pages with the same title as imported pages

Split by heading: *Can't split this document. It contains no Heading styles.*

6. Enter the following information:
 - **'Root page title'** – The title of the wiki page that will contain the information from your imported document.
 - **'Import as a new page in the current space'** – A new wiki page will be created with the page title specified above.
 - Choose what you want the importer to do if there are page title conflicts, by selecting one of the following options:
 - **'Rename imported pages if page name already exists'** – Confluence will assign new names to any new page which would otherwise have a duplicate name. The content of existing pages will remain unchanged.
 - **'Split by heading'** – Use this field to split your document into multiple wiki pages. If you do not want to split your document into multiple wiki pages, leave the default 'Don't split' option selected.
7. Click **'Import'** to import your document.


When the upload has finished, the content of the Office document will have been transformed into Confluence page content. You can now view and edit this page in the normal way, using the Confluence Rich Text Editor or Wiki Markup. There is no connection between the original Office document and this wiki page.

Step 6. Import Page Templates

In order for an intranet to be effective, people need to use it. One way to spur new user adoption is to provide your team mates with templates so that they can focus more on content creation and less on page format. Confluence offers a number of templates, including a template for 'Meeting Notes' and a 'Three-Column Layout', to help your team get started populating your intranet and improving its productivity. See [Importing Templates](#) for a full description.

1. Log in to Confluence as an administrator and go to the Confluence '**Administration Console**'.
2. Click '**Import Templates**' in the left-hand navigation panel. The 'Import Templates' screen will appear, listing the template packages deployed to your Confluence instance (for example, 'Default Templates Package') and the templates included in each package.

Dashboard › Administration › Import Templates
Browse ▾ Administration



Import Templates

Security

- Security Configuration
- Manage Users
- Manage Groups
- Global Permissions
- User Directories

Configuration

- General Configuration
- Daily Backup Admin
- Manage Referrers
- Plugins
- Languages
- Shortcut Links
- External Gadgets
- Global Templates
- Import Templates**

The following template package plugins were found. To import templates, tick the checkboxes for the desired templates, select to import the templates to, and click the Import button.

Default Templates Package (8) [Check All](#) [Uncheck All](#)

- ☐ Charts
- ☐ Document List
- ☐ Meeting Notes
- ☐ Multimedia Content
- ☐ RSS News Feed
- ☐ Tasklist
- ☐ Three-Column Layout
- ☐ Two-Column Layout

Import To:

3. Select the templates you want by ticking the check boxes next to the template names.
Note: You can view a preview of the template by clicking the template name.
4. Select the import destination for the templates in the '**Import To**' dropdown. If you want the templates to be available to a specific space only, select the name of the space, otherwise select '**Global Templates**' to make the templates available to all spaces.
5. Click the '**Import**' button to import the selected templates.

How Users will Find Templates

Now that you have made Confluence's templates available to your site or space, other Confluence users will be able to choose a template when they want to create a page.

Choosing a Template from the Dashboard

When you add a page from the Confluence dashboard, you will be able to select the template and space for the new page at the same time.

1. Go to the Confluence Dashboard by clicking '**Dashboard**' from the breadcrumbs at the top left of your screen.
2. Click the '**Add Page**' button. The 'Add Page' dialog appears.

3. Select the space where you want to add the page.
4. Select the template you want to use to populate your page.

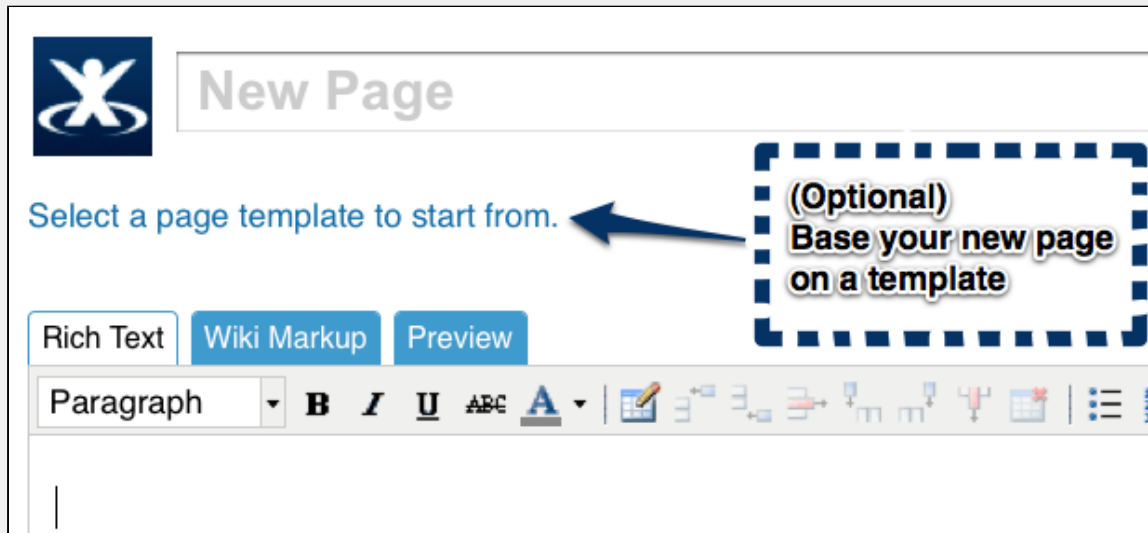
5. Click '**Next**' to create the page.

Choosing a Template from within the Editor

Often you will add a page from within a space, or as a child of another page. This guide shows you how to choose a template from within the Confluence editor.

1. Go to your space home page, by clicking the space name in the breadcrumbs at the top of the screen.
2. Hover over the '**Add**' menu and click '**Page**'. This will launch the Confluence editor.

3. To populate the editor from a template, click the **'Select a page template to start from'** link below the 'Title' field. This will launch the 'Page Template Wizard'.



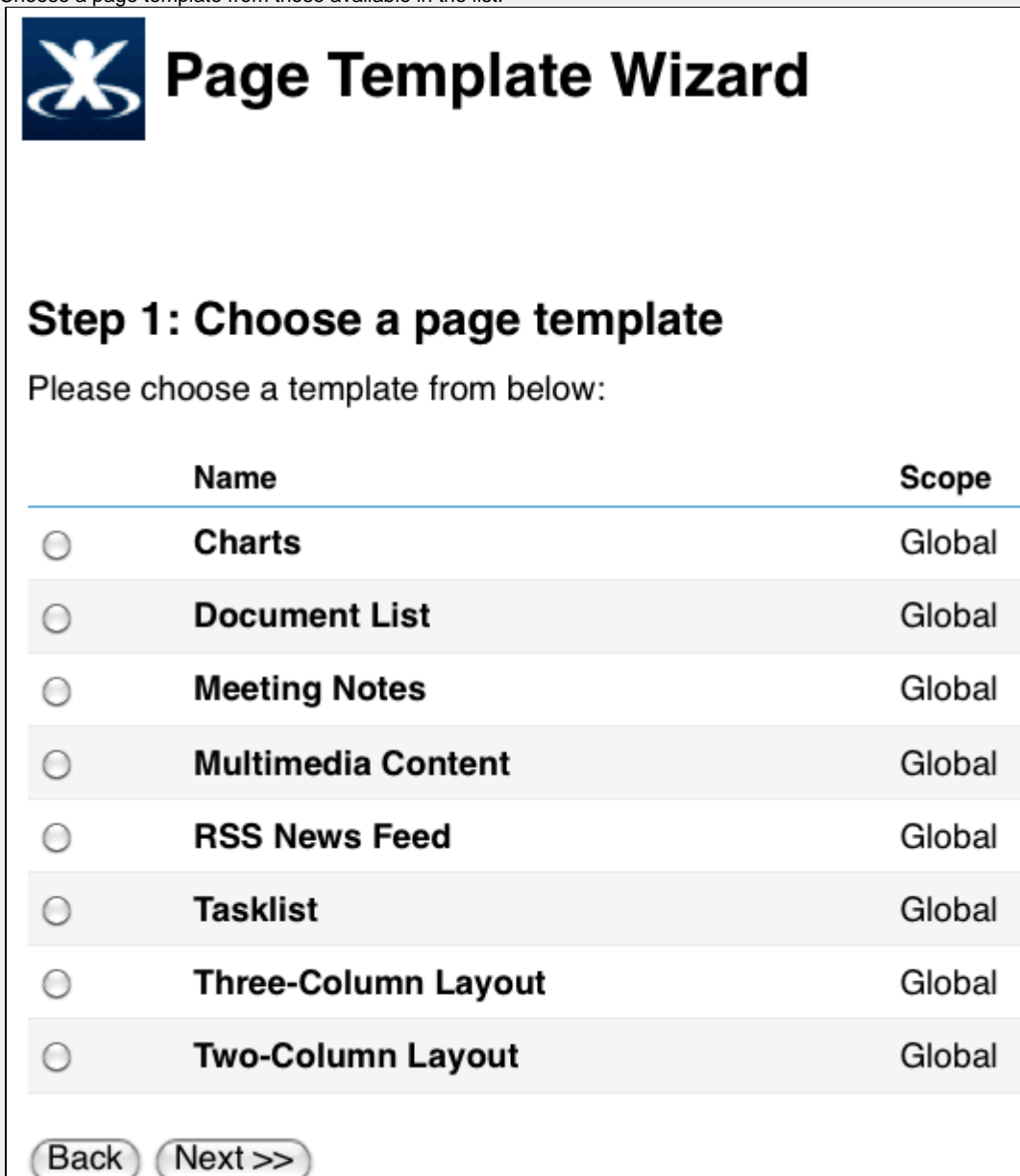
New Page

Select a page template to start from. **(Optional) Base your new page on a template**

Rich Text Wiki Markup Preview

Paragraph **B** *I* U ABC

4. Choose a page template from those available in the list.



Page Template Wizard

Step 1: Choose a page template

Please choose a template from below:

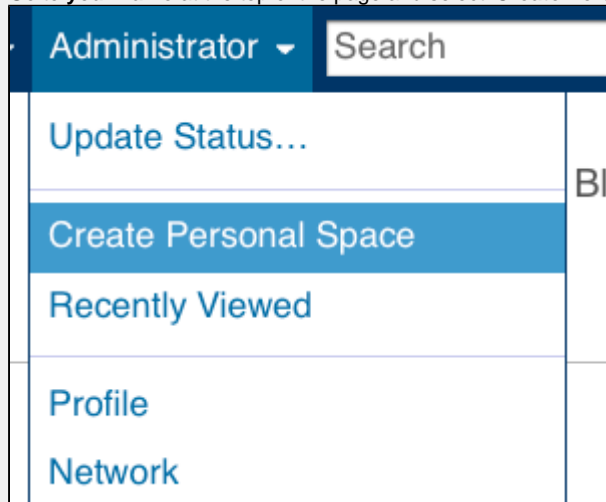
	Name	Scope
<input type="radio"/>	Charts	Global
<input type="radio"/>	Document List	Global
<input type="radio"/>	Meeting Notes	Global
<input type="radio"/>	Multimedia Content	Global
<input type="radio"/>	RSS News Feed	Global
<input type="radio"/>	Tasklist	Global
<input type="radio"/>	Three-Column Layout	Global
<input type="radio"/>	Two-Column Layout	Global

5. Click **'Next'** to populate the editor with the selected template.

Step 7. Set Up your Personal Space

Now that you have created a space for your team, let's create your **personal space**. This is a place where you can publish your own pages and blog posts. Once you have created it, Confluence users can reach your personal space by clicking your name in the [People Directory](#) or by searching for your name via the [quick navigation search box](#).

1. Go to **your name** at the top of the page and select '**Create Personal Space**' from the dropdown list.



2. Enter a few details about your space:
 - Choose who can **view** content.
 - Choose who can **contribute** (create and edit) content.
 - Choose the '**Global Look and Feel**' for your personal space.
3. Click the '**Create**' button.
4. The 'Home' page for your new space is displayed.

Step 8. Publish a Blog Post

Blog posts are a good way of letting your team mates and the company know your news. People can blog about product and strategic ideas, team updates, and things they want to get ideas about. New employees can write blog posts introducing themselves. People write about getting married or the birth of a child. Blog posts are a great way for people to share their visions, get to know their c-oworkers and start lively discussions.

Remember to set your email notifications to alert you about the blog posts published within Confluence, as described in an earlier step.

See [Working with Blog Posts](#) for a full description of adding, editing, viewing and linking to blog posts.

1. Go to a page in your space.
2. Hover over the '**Add**' menu and select '**Blog Post**'.
3. Change the title to suit your needs.
4. Update the content to suit your needs.
5. Click '**Save**' to publish your blog post.

Related Topics

[Setting up a New Global Space](#)
[Global Permissions Overview](#)
[Assigning Space Permissions](#)
[Setting a Page's Restrictions](#)
[Users and Groups](#)